

# **DynaPDF 2.5**

## Reference & Manual

API Reference Version 2.5.4

December 10, 2010

# Legal Notices

Copyright: © 2003-2010 Jens Boschulte, DynaForms GmbH. All rights reserved.

DynaForms GmbH  
Flaskkamp 8  
D-58579 Schalksmuehle, Germany  
Trade Register HRB 6423, District Court Iserlohn  
CEO Jens Boschulte  
Phone: ++49 23 55-50 97 25  
Fax: ++49 23 55-50 97 26

If you have questions please send an email to [info@dynaforms.com](mailto:info@dynaforms.com), or contact us by phone.

This publication and the information herein is furnished as is, is subject to change without notice, and should not be construed as a commitment by DynaForms GmbH. DynaForms assumes no responsibility or liability for any errors or inaccuracies, makes no warranty of any kind (express, implied or statutory) with respect to this publication, and expressly disclaims any and all warranties of merchantability, fitness for particular purposes and no infringement of third-party rights.

Adobe, Acrobat, and PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems Inc. AIX, IBM, and OS/390, are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation. Microsoft, Windows, and Windows NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Apple, Mac OS, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. registered in the United States and other countries. TrueType is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Unicode and the Unicode logo are trademarks of Unicode, Inc. UNIX is a trademark of The Open Group. Solaris is a trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. Tru64 is a trademark of Hewlett-Packard. Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds. Other company product and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

DynaPDF uses parts or modified versions of the following third-party software:

AiCrypto, This product includes software developed by Akira Iwata Laboratory, Nagoya Institute of Technology in Japan (<http://mars.elcom.nitech.ac.jp/>).

LibJasper, JPEG2000 compression library, Copyright (c) 1999-2000 Image Power, Inc., Copyright (c) 1999-2000 The University of British Columbia, Copyright 2001-2003 Michael David Adams.

LibJPEG, Independent JPEG Group's JPEG Software, Copyright 1991-1998 Thomas G. Lane.

LibPNG, PNG Reference Library, Copyright 1998-2004 Glenn Randers-Pehrson.

LibTIFF, TIFF Image Library, Copyright 1988-1997 Sam Leffler, Copyright 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.

Zlib compression library, Copyright 1995-1998 Jean-Loup Gailly and Mark Adler.

DynaPDF contains the RSA Security Inc. MD5 message digest algorithm and RC2 and RC4 encryption algorithms. The Lempel-Ziv-Welch (LZW) algorithm, US Patent 4,558,302 Unisys Corporation. The patent expired worldwide in June 2004.

# Table of Contents

<b>Legal Notices.....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Table of Contents.....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Data types.....</b>	<b>11</b>
Var Parameters .....	12
Structures .....	12
Multi-byte Strings .....	12
Data types used by different programming languages .....	14
<b>Exception handling.....</b>	<b>15</b>
Exception handling in C, C++, C#, Delphi.....	15
Exception handling in Visual Basic, Visual Basic .Net.....	16
Special issues in Visual Basic and .Net.....	17
Customized Exception handling.....	18
<b>Custom Library Changes .....</b>	<b>19</b>
Compiler Switches .....	19
Main object types .....	19
General design requirements.....	20
Requirements to add your own code to DynaPDF .....	21
<b>Language bindings .....</b>	<b>23</b>
Differences between DynaPDF interfaces.....	23
Borland C++ Builder.....	24
Microsoft Visual C++ .....	26
Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0 .....	28
Visual Basic .Net.....	31
Visual C# .....	34
Borland Delphi .....	37
<b>Compiling DynaPDF on Linux / UNIX.....</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>Compiling DynaPDF on Mac OS X .....</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>Interactive Forms.....</b>	<b>44</b>
Field Appearance .....	44
Field Properties .....	45
What is a Group Type?.....	46
How to change the tabulator order? .....	47
Field Names .....	47
<b>Digital Signatures .....</b>	<b>49</b>
Supported Certificate Formats .....	49
External Signatures .....	49
How to export a Windows Certificate? .....	49
Importing signed PDF files.....	50
How to sign a PDF file? .....	50
How to create a signature field?.....	50
How to modify the appearance of a signature field? .....	50
What is stored in a signature field? .....	51

How to validate a signature? .....	51
<b>PDF/A and PDF/X Compatibility .....</b>	<b>52</b>
PDF/X .....	52
PDF/A.....	54
<b>Path Painting and Construction.....</b>	<b>56</b>
Nonzero Winding Number Rule .....	56
Even-Odd Rule .....	57
<b>Color Spaces .....</b>	<b>61</b>
Device Color Spaces .....	61
Device Independent Color Spaces.....	62
Special Color Spaces.....	62
Color Spaces and Images.....	65
<b>Layers (Optional Content) .....</b>	<b>69</b>
<b>PDF Transparency .....</b>	<b>70</b>
Alpha Blending .....	70
Blend Modes.....	71
<b>Function Reference .....</b>	<b>76</b>
AddActionToObj .....	76
AddArticle.....	77
AddBookmark.....	78
AddBookmarkEx .....	80
AddButtonImage .....	81
AddButtonImageEx.....	82
AddContinueText.....	82
AddDeviceNProcessColorants .....	82
AddDeviceNSeparations .....	83
AddFieldToFormAction .....	84
AddFieldToHideAction.....	85
AddFileComment .....	85
AddFontSearchPath .....	86
AddImage.....	87
AddJavaScript.....	88
AddObjectToLayer.....	89
AddPageLabel.....	89
AddRenderingIntent .....	90
AddRenderingIntentEx.....	91
AddValToChoiceField .....	92
Append .....	93
ApplyPattern.....	94
ApplyShading.....	97
AttachFile.....	99
AttachFileEx .....	99
AutoTemplate .....	100
BeginClipPath (Obsolete) .....	101
BeginContinueText.....	101
BeginLayer.....	103
BeginPattern.....	104
BeginTemplate .....	106

Bezier_1_2_3 .....	108
Bezier_1_3 .....	109
Bezier_2_3 .....	109
BuildFamilyNameAndStyle.....	110
CalcWidthHeight .....	111
ChangeAnnotName .....	111
ChangeAnnotPos .....	112
ChangeBookmark.....	112
ChangeFont.....	113
ChangeFontSize.....	113
ChangeFontStyle .....	114
ChangeFontStyleEx.....	114
ChangeJavaScript .....	114
ChangeJavaScriptAction .....	115
ChangeJavaScriptName .....	116
ChangeLinkAnnot.....	116
CheckCollection .....	117
CheckConformance.....	117
CheckFieldNames .....	120
ClearAutoTemplates.....	120
ClearHostFonts.....	120
ClipPath.....	121
CloseAndSignFile.....	122
CloseAndSignFileEx .....	124
CloseAndSignFileExt.....	125
CloseFile .....	128
CloseFileEx.....	128
CloseImage.....	132
CloseImportFile .....	132
ClosePath.....	132
CloseTag.....	133
ComputeBBox.....	133
ConnectPageBreakEvent .....	134
ConvColor.....	134
ConvertColors .....	135
ConvToUnicode .....	135
Create3DAnnot.....	137
Create3DBackground .....	138
Create3DGotoViewAction .....	138
Create3DProjection .....	139
Create3DView.....	140
CreateAnnotAP .....	142
CreateArticleThread .....	143
CreateAxialShading.....	144
CreateButton .....	145
CreateCheckBox .....	146
CreateCIEColorSpace .....	148
CreateCollItemDate .....	150

CreateCollItemNumber .....	150
CreateCollItemString.....	151
CreateCollection .....	151
CreateCollectionField.....	153
CreateComboBox.....	154
CreateDeviceNColorSpace .....	156
CreateExtGState .....	163
CreateGoToAction.....	166
CreateGoToActionEx .....	168
CreateGoToRAction .....	168
CreateGoToRActionEx.....	169
CreateGroupField .....	169
CreateHideAction.....	170
CreateICCBasedColorSpace .....	171
CreateImage .....	172
CreateImportDataAction .....	173
CreateIndexedColorSpace .....	174
CreateJSAction .....	175
CreateLaunchAction .....	176
CreateListBox .....	177
CreateNamedAction .....	178
CreateNamedDest .....	179
CreateNewPDF .....	180
CreateOCG .....	182
CreateOCMD .....	185
CreateRadialShading .....	186
CreateRadioButton.....	187
CreateResetAction .....	188
CreateSeparationCS.....	188
CreateSetOCGStateAction.....	190
CreateSigField .....	194
CreateSigFieldAP.....	196
CreateStdPattern.....	197
CreateStructureTree .....	200
CreateSubmitAction .....	200
CreateTextField.....	205
CreateURIAction .....	207
DecryptPDF.....	207
DeleteAcroForm .....	208
DeleteActionFromObj.....	209
DeleteActionFromObjEx.....	209
DeleteAnnotation .....	211
DeleteBookmark .....	211
DeleteEmbeddedFile.....	212
DeleteField.....	212
DeleteFieldEx .....	212
DeleteJavaScripts .....	213
DeletePage .....	213

DeletePageLabels .....	213
DeletePDF .....	213
DeleteSeparationInfo .....	214
DeleteTemplate.....	214
DeleteTemplateEx .....	214
DeleteXFAForm.....	215
DrawArc.....	215
DrawArcEx .....	218
DrawChord .....	218
DrawCircle .....	219
DrawPie.....	220
EditPage .....	223
EditTemplate .....	223
EditTemplate2 .....	224
Ellipse .....	224
EncryptPDF.....	225
EndContinueText (obsolete) .....	226
EndLayer .....	226
EndPage.....	226
EndPattern .....	226
EndTemplate.....	226
EnumDocFonts .....	227
EnumHostFonts.....	229
EnumHostFontsEx .....	230
ExchangeBookmarks .....	231
ExchangePages .....	231
FileAttachAnnot .....	232
FileLink.....	233
FindBookmark .....	234
FindField .....	235
FindLinkAnnot.....	235
FindNextBookmark .....	236
FinishSignature.....	236
FlattenAnnots .....	236
FlattenForm.....	237
FlushPageContent.....	238
FreeImageBuffer .....	238
FreePDF .....	238
FreeTextAnnot.....	239
FreeUniBuf .....	240
GetActionCount .....	240
GetActionType .....	241
GetActionTypeEx.....	242
GetActiveFont.....	242
GetAllocBy .....	243
GetAnnot (obsolete).....	243
GetAnnotBBox .....	244
GetAnnotCount .....	244

GetAnnotEx.....	245
GetAnnotFlags .....	246
GetAnnotLink .....	248
GetAnnotType .....	249
GetAscent .....	250
GetBBox .....	250
GetBidiMode .....	252
GetBookmark .....	252
GetBookmarkCount .....	253
GetBorderStyle .....	253
GetBuffer.....	253
GetCapHeight .....	254
GetCharacterSpacing .....	254
GetCheckBoxChar .....	255
GetCheckBoxCharEx.....	256
GetCheckBoxDefState .....	256
GetCMap.....	256
GetCMapCount.....	257
GetColorSpace.....	258
GetColorSpaceCount.....	258
GetColorSpaceObj .....	258
GetColorSpaceObjEx.....	259
GetCompressionFilter .....	259
GetCompressionLevel.....	260
GetContent .....	260
GetDefBitsPerPixel .....	261
GetDescent.....	261
GetDeviceNAttributes .....	261
GetDocInfo .....	262
GetDocInfoCount .....	263
GetDocInfoEx.....	263
GetDrawDirection .....	263
GetDynaPDFVersion.....	264
GetEmbeddedFile .....	264
GetEmbeddedFileCount .....	265
GetEMFPatternDistance .....	265
GetErrorMessage .....	265
GetErrorMode .....	265
GetField (obsolete).....	266
GetFieldBackColor .....	268
GetFieldBorderColor .....	268
GetFieldBorderStyle .....	268
GetFieldBorderWidth.....	269
GetFieldChoiceValue .....	269
GetFieldColor .....	270
GetFieldCount.....	270
GetFieldEx .....	271
GetFieldEx2 .....	273

GetFieldExpValCount .....	273
GetFieldExpValue .....	273
GetFieldExpValueEx .....	275
GetFieldFlags .....	277
GetFieldGroupType .....	281
GetFieldHighlightMode .....	282
GetFieldIndex .....	282
GetFieldMapName .....	283
GetFieldName .....	283
GetFieldOrientation .....	284
GetFieldTextAlign .....	285
GetFieldTextColor .....	285
GetFieldToolTip .....	285
GetFieldType .....	286
GetFillColor .....	286
GetFont .....	287
GetFontCount .....	289
GetFontEx .....	289
GetFontOrigin .....	289
GetFontSearchOrder .....	290
GetFontSelMode .....	290
GetFontWeight .....	290
GetFTextHeight .....	290
GetFTextHeightEx .....	291
GetGStateFlags .....	292
GetIconColor .....	292
GetImageBuffer .....	292
GetImageCount .....	293
GetImageCountEx .....	293
GetImageHeight .....	293
GetImageWidth .....	294
GetImportFlags .....	294
GetInBBox .....	295
GetInDocInfo .....	295
GetInDocInfoCount .....	296
GetInDocInfoEx .....	296
GetInEncryptionFlags .....	297
GetInIsCollection .....	297
GetInIsEncrypted .....	297
GetInNamedDest .....	298
GetInNamedDestCount .....	298
GetInIsSigned .....	299
GetInIsTrapped .....	299
GetInIsXFAForm .....	299
GetInOrientation .....	300
GetInPageCount .....	300
GetInPDFVersion .....	300
GetInPrintSettings .....	301

GetIsFixedPich .....	301
GetItalicAngle .....	302
GetJavaScript .....	302
GetJavaScriptAction .....	303
GetJavaScriptAction2 .....	304
GetJavaScriptCount .....	305
GetJavaScriptEx .....	305
GetJavaScriptName .....	306
GetJPEGQuality .....	306
GetLanguage .....	307
GetLastTextPosX, GetLastTextPosY .....	307
GetLeading .....	309
GetLineCapStyle .....	309
GetLineJoinStyle .....	310
GetLineWidth .....	310
GetLinkHighlightMode .....	310
GetLogMetafileSize .....	311
GetLogMetafileSizeEx .....	313
GetMatrix .....	314
GetMaxFieldLen .....	314
GetMetaConvFlags .....	315
GetMissingGlyphs .....	315
GetMiterLimit .....	317
GetNeedAppearance .....	317
GetObjActionCount .....	317
GetOpacity .....	318
GetOrientation .....	318
GetPageAnnot (obsolete) .....	318
GetPageAnnotEx .....	319
GetPageAnnotCount .....	319
GetPageCoords .....	319
GetPageCount .....	320
GetPageField (obsolete) .....	320
GetPageFieldCount .....	320
GetPageFieldEx .....	321
GetPageHeight .....	321
GetPageLabel .....	321
GetPageLabelCount .....	322
GetPageLayout .....	322
GetPageMode .....	323
GetPageNum .....	323
GetPageText .....	323
GetPageWidth .....	335
GetPDFVersion .....	335
GetPrintSettings .....	335
GetResolution .....	336
GetSaveNewImageFormat .....	336
GetSeparationInfo .....	336

GetSpaceWidth.....	336	InsertRawImage.....	371
GetStrokeColor.....	337	IsBidiText.....	373
GetTabLen.....	337	IsColorPage.....	374
GetTemplCount.....	337	IsEmptyPage.....	374
GetTemplHandle.....	338	IsWrongPwd.....	374
GetTemplHeight.....	338	LineTo.....	375
GetTemplWidth.....	338	LoadCMap.....	375
GetTextDrawMode.....	338	LoadFont.....	378
GetTextRect.....	339	LoadFDFData.....	379
GetTextRise.....	339	LoadFDFDataEx.....	379
GetTextScaling.....	340	MovePage.....	380
GetTextWidth.....	340	MoveTo.....	380
GetTextWidth (Font API).....	341	MultiplyMatrix.....	380
GetTextWidthEx.....	342	NewPDF.....	382
GetTransparentColor.....	342	OpenImportBuffer.....	382
GetTrapped.....	343	OpenImportFile.....	383
GetUseExactPwd.....	343	OpenOutputFile.....	386
GetUseGlobalImpFiles.....	343	OpenTag.....	386
GetUserRigths.....	344	PageLink.....	388
GetUseStdFonts.....	344	PageLink2.....	388
GetUseSystemFonts.....	345	PageLinkEx.....	389
GetUseTransparency.....	345	ParseContent.....	392
GetUseVisibleCoords.....	345	PlaceImage.....	415
GetViewerPreferences.....	346	PlaceSigFieldValidateIcon.....	416
GetWMFDefExtent.....	347	PlaceTemplate.....	416
GetWMFPixelPerInch.....	347	PlaceTemplateEx.....	417
GetWordSpacing.....	348	PlaceTemplByMatrix.....	422
HaveOpenDoc.....	348	ReadImageFormat (obsolete).....	422
HighlightAnnot.....	349	ReadImageFormat2 (subject to change).....	423
ImportBookmarks.....	349	ReadImageFormatEx.....	424
ImportCatalogObjects.....	349	ReadImageFormatFromBuffer.....	424
ImportDocInfo.....	350	ReadImageResolution.....	425
ImportPage.....	351	ReadImageResolutionEx.....	425
ImportPageEx.....	352	Rectangle.....	425
ImportPDFFile.....	354	ReEncryptPDF.....	426
InitExtGState.....	355	RenameSpotColor.....	427
InitStack.....	356	ReplaceICCProfile.....	427
InsertBMPFromBuffer (obsolete).....	356	ReplacePageText.....	428
InsertBMPFromHandle.....	356	ReplacePageTextEx.....	429
InsertImage (obsolete).....	357	ResetLineDashPattern.....	429
InsertImageEx.....	357	RestoreGraphicState.....	430
InsertImageFromBuffer.....	362	RotateCoords.....	430
InsertMetafile.....	363	RoundRect.....	432
InsertMetafileEx.....	367	RoundRectEx.....	433
InsertMetafileExt.....	368	SaveGraphicState.....	434
InsertMetafileExtEx.....	369	ScaleCoords.....	435
InsertMetafileFromHandle.....	370	SelfTest.....	436
InsertMetafileFromHandleEx.....	370	Set3DAnnotProps.....	436



Set3DAnnotScript.....	437
SetAllocBy .....	438
SetAnnotBorderStyle .....	438
SetAnnotBorderWidth.....	439
SetAnnotColor .....	439
SetAnnotFlags.....	440
SetAnnotFlagsEx .....	442
SetAnnotHighlightMode.....	442
SetAnnotIcon .....	442
SetAnnotOpenState.....	443
SetAnnotSubject .....	443
SetAnnotString .....	444
SetBBox .....	444
SetBidiMode.....	446
SetBookmarkDest .....	447
SetBookmarkStyle .....	449
SetBorderStyle .....	450
SetCharacterSpacing.....	450
SetCheckBoxChar.....	451
SetCheckBoxDefState.....	452
SetCheckBoxState .....	452
SetCIDFont .....	452
SetCMapDir .....	455
SetColDefFile .....	456
SetColSortField .....	456
SetColors .....	457
SetColorSpace .....	457
SetCompressionFilter .....	458
SetCompressionLevel .....	458
SetContent .....	459
SetDateTimeFormat .....	459
SetDefBitsPerPixel.....	460
SetDocInfo.....	460
SetDocInfoEx .....	461
SetDrawDirection.....	462
SetEMFFrameDPI.....	462
SetEMFPatternDistance.....	463
SetErrorMode .....	463
SetExtColorSpace .....	464
SetExtGState.....	464
SetFieldBackColor.....	464
SetFieldBBox .....	465
SetFieldBorderColor .....	465
SetFieldBorderStyle.....	465
SetFieldBorderWidth.....	466
SetFieldColor .....	466
SetFieldExpValue .....	467
SetFieldFlags.....	468

SetFieldFontSize.....	471
SetFieldHighlightMode .....	472
SetFieldIndex.....	472
SetFieldMapName.....	474
SetFieldName .....	474
SetFieldOrientation .....	475
SetFieldTextAlign .....	475
SetFieldTextColor .....	475
SetFieldToolTip.....	476
SetFillColor .....	476
SetFillColorEx .....	477
SetFillColorSpace.....	477
SetFont .....	478
SetFontEx .....	488
SetFontOrigin .....	489
SetFontSearchOrder .....	489
SetFontSelMode .....	490
SetFontWeight.....	491
SetGStateFlags.....	492
SetIconColor .....	493
SetImportFlags .....	493
SetImportFlags2.....	497
SetItalicAngle .....	498
SetJPEGQuality .....	498
SetLanguage .....	499
SetLeading.....	500
SetLicenseKey .....	500
SetLineCapStyle.....	501
SetLineDashPattern.....	502
SetLineDashPatternEx .....	503
SetLineJoinStyle .....	503
SetLineWidth .....	504
SetLinkHighlightMode .....	505
SetListFont .....	505
SetMatrix.....	506
SetMaxFieldLen .....	507
SetMetaConvFlags.....	507
SetMiterLimit .....	511
SetNeedAppearance.....	511
SetNumberFormat .....	512
SetOnErrorProc.....	513
SetOnPageBreakProc.....	514
SetOpacity .....	515
SetOrientation .....	515
SetOrientationEx.....	515
SetPageCoords .....	517
SetPageFormat .....	517
SetPageHeight.....	519

SetPageLayout .....	519
SetPageMode .....	520
SetPageWidth .....	520
SetPDFVersion .....	520
SetPrintSettings .....	521
SetProgressProc .....	522
SetResolution .....	523
SetSaveNewImageFormat .....	523
SetSeparationInfo .....	524
SetStrokeColor .....	524
SetStrokeColorEx .....	525
SetStrokeColorSpace .....	525
SetTabLen .....	526
SetTextDrawMode .....	527
SetTextFieldValue .....	529
SetTextRect .....	530
SetTextRise .....	530
SetTextScaling .....	531
SetTransparentColor .....	531
SetTrapped .....	531
SetUseExactPwd .....	532
SetUseGlobalImpFiles .....	532
SetUseStdFonts .....	534
SetUseSwapFile .....	534
SetUseSwapFileEx .....	536
SetUseSystemFonts .....	536
SetUseTransparency .....	537
SetUseVisibleCoords .....	537
SetViewerPreferences .....	538
SetWMFDefExtent .....	540
SetWMFPixelPerInch .....	541
SetWordSpacing .....	541
SkewCoords .....	542
SortFieldsByIndex .....	543
SortFieldsByName .....	543
StampAnnot .....	543
StrokePath .....	544
TextAnnot .....	545
TranslateCoords .....	546
TranslateRawCode .....	547
TranslateString (obsolete) .....	548
TranslateString2 .....	549
Triangle .....	550
UTF16ToUTF32 .....	550
UTF16ToUTF32Ex .....	551
UTF32ToUTF16 .....	551
UTF32ToUTF16Ex .....	552
WebLink .....	553

WriteAngleText .....	554
WriteFText .....	556
WriteFTextEx .....	567
WriteText .....	567
WriteTextEx .....	568
WriteTextMatrix .....	568
WriteTextMatrixEx .....	569

## Data types

DynaPDF is a low level library that uses basic data types only. DynaPDF uses generally no default string class or special C++ extensions such as STL or MFC.

The data types used by DynaPDF are defined as follows (C syntax):

```
typedef unsigned char  BYTE;
typedef signed short   SI16;
typedef unsigned short UI16;
typedef double         FFLOAT; // Obsolete, do not use this data type.

#ifdef _WINDOWS
    #if defined(WIN64) || defined(_WIN64)
        typedef int             SI32;
        typedef unsigned int     UI32;
    #else
        typedef long            SI32;
        typedef unsigned long    UI32;
    #endif
#elif (SIZEOF_INT == 4) // declared in drv_conf.h (Linux/UNIX only)
    typedef int             SI32;
    typedef unsigned int     UI32;
#elif (SIZEOF_LONG == 4) // declared in drv_conf.h (Linux/UNIX only)
    typedef long            SI32;
    typedef unsigned long    UI32;
#else
    #error "Only 32 bit and 64 bit targets are supported!"
#endif

typedef SI32 LBOOL; // long boolean (0 = false, not 0 = true)
// This data type is provided for C only since this language does not
// support a Boolean data type.
#ifdef __cplusplus
    typedef enum
    {
        false = 0,
        true  = 1
    } bool;
#endif
```

The data type char is not explicitly defined but also used by DynaPDF.

SI32 and UI32 must always be a 32 bit integer. It is not possible to use DynaPDF on a target system that does not support a 32 bit integer type, such as MS-DOS. DynaPDF can be used on 32 and 64 bit operating systems. The current version was tested with IBM-AIX (4.3, 5.2), HP-UX (10.2, 11, UX for ia64 (Itanium)), Linux for x86 (Suse, Red Hat), Linux for s390, Mac OS X Tiger, Mac OS X Leopard, Sun-Solaris 8 and higher (SPARC), Tru64 (Alpha OSF 4) and MS-Windows.

String values returned by DynaPDF are always null-terminated. It is also recommended that all strings passed to DynaPDF are null-terminated.

A string length returned by DynaPDF is always the length excluding the null-terminator.

### ***Var Parameters***

```
#ifdef __cplusplus
#define ADDR &
#else
#define ADDR *
#endif
```

Functions in DynaPDF, which passes a value to a function parameter are handled differently in C and C++. C does not support the address operator & so that *var* parameters are defined as normal pointers to pointers in C. DynaPDF checks whether a variable or NULL was passed to a function before the function tries to access the variable. However, C++ does not allow to set a parameter to NULL if it was declared with the address operator &.

### ***Structures***

Beginning with DynaPDF 2.5 all structures which can be extended in future versions contain the member **StructSize**. This variable must be set to sizeof(StructureName). The structure size is used to identify the version of a structure so that extensions do not break backward compatibility.

The structure size is automatically set in interfaces for C#, Visual Basic, Visual Basic .Net, and Delphi. C/C++ programmers must set this member before the corresponding function that fills the structure with data can be called:

**Example:**

```
...
TPDFCMap cmap;
cmap.StructSize = sizeof(TPDFCMap);
pdfGetCMap(pdf, handle, &cmap);
...
```

### ***Multi-byte Strings***

#### ***Unicode***

DynaPDF supports Unicode strings in UTF-16-LE format on little-endian machines and UTF-16-BE on big-endian machines. On target systems which use UTF-32 (LE or BE) as default string format such as Linux or most UNIX OS, all strings must be converted to UTF-16 before passing to DynaPDF.

You can use the predefined macro ToUTF16 to do this.

ToUTF16 is defined as follows:

```
// declared in drv_conf.h (Linux/UNIX, Mac OS X)
#if (SIZEOF_WCHAR_T == 4)
    #define ToUTF16(IPDF, s)(pdfUTF32ToUTF16((IPDF), (UI32*)(s)))
#else
    // UTF-16
    #define ToUTF16(IPDF, s)((s))
#endif
```

This macro calls `pdfUTF32ToUTF16()` only if the OS uses UTF-32 as Unicode string format.

On operating systems which use already UTF-16, no conversion is applied; the macro will be removed by the compiler. The function `pdfUTF32ToUTF16()` holds an array of 4 independent string buffers so that the macro can be used in functions which support up to four string parameters. If DynaPDF will ever support a function with more than 4 string parameters, the number of internal string buffers will be incremented.

However, take care when using the macro to initialize string variables of structures which contain more than 4 string members:

#### Example:

```
SOME_STRUCT myStruct;
myStruct.String1 = ToUTF16(pdf, L"String1"); // OK
myStruct.String2 = ToUTF16(pdf, L"String2"); // OK
myStruct.String3 = ToUTF16(pdf, L"String3"); // OK
myStruct.String4 = ToUTF16(pdf, L"String4"); // OK
myStruct.String5 = ToUTF16(pdf, L"String5"); // Wrong!
```

The fifth call above overrides the string buffer of String1 because only 4 internal string buffers are available. If you need to store more than 4 string variables then you must copy the converted string into another variable!

### Unicode File Paths

Unicode file paths are encoded differently depending on the used operating system. While NT based Windows system use UTF-16 encoded Unicode file paths, non-Windows systems use usually UTF-8 encoded Unicode file paths. All DynaPDF functions which open a file convert UTF-16 strings to UTF-8 on non-Windows operating systems. However, to avoid this conversion step it is usually best to use directly the ANSI version of a function and passing an UTF-8 file path to it.

### CJK Multi-byte Strings

CJK multi-byte strings contain mixed 8 bit / 16 bit character codes. A CJK string can be defined as an ANSI string (data type `char*`) and as multi-byte string (data type `UI16*`). The multi-byte format uses two bytes for every character and the byte ordering of the CPU must be considered to get correct results on little-endian and big-endian machines.

However, the multi-byte format is only supported in combination with native CJK fonts and character sets (cpBig5, cpShiftJIS, cpGB2312 and so on), see [SetFont\(\)](#) for further information.

The ANSI format is the usual format for CJK strings and supported by all CJK code pages.

When using CJK to Unicode code pages, DynaPDF must convert the incoming CJK string to Unicode before it can be used with the selected font. The required conversion algorithms are only available in the ANSI version of a string function. Because of this it is not possible to use the multi-byte format with CJK to Unicode code pages.

### ***Data types used by different programming languages***

Not all programming languages support all data types which are available in C or C++. The following table describes the data types which are used by a specific programming language. Types in black color are not natively supported.

C type	C++ type	Delphi type	VB type	VB .Net type	C#
char*	char*	PAnsiChar	String	String	String
UI16*	UI16*	PWideChar	String	String	String
UI32*	UI32*	Pointer	N/A	N/A	N/A
SI32	SI32	Integer	Long	Integer	int
UI32	UI32	Cardinal	Long	Integer	int
double	double	Double	Double	Double	double
LBOOL	LBOOL	LongBool	Long	Integer	lbool (Int32)
bool	bool	Boolean	Boolean	Boolean	bool
void*	void*	Pointer	Long	IntPtr	IntPtr

VB .Net and C# support also unsigned data types such as unsigned integer and so on. However, the .Net framework requires always an explicit conversion if an unsigned type should be passed to a signed type or vice versa. Because of this, the unsigned data types are used for very few functions in VB .Net and C#.

Prior versions of DynaPDF used the abbreviations LONG, ULONG, SHORT, and USHORT in the C/C++ interfaces. For compatibility reasons these data types are still defined on 32 bit Windows, Linux, and UNIX. However, these declarations conflict with existing declarations on 64 bit Windows operating systems so that these types should no longer be used.

## Exception handling

The DynaPDF library uses no native exception handling, it is not recommended to leave a function block after an error occurred. All DynaPDF functions are leaved immediately when a fatal error occurred without displaying further error messages.

The library always holds its internal state consistent, regardless what happens.

### ***Exception handling in C, C++, C#, Delphi***

Error messages and warnings are passed to a callback function (see [SetOnErrorProc\(\)](#)) if set. If no callback function is set, you must check the return value of important functions. Negative return values indicate by default that an error occurred. Call [GetErrorMessage\(\)](#) manually in this case.

However, the Delphi interface uses native language exceptions in the following reasons:

- When loading the dynapdf.dll (Cannot find dynapdf.dll)
- When loading a DynaPDF function (Cannot find function: ...)
- When creating a new instance of the wrapper class TPDF (Out of memory).

Only these three exceptions can occur when using DynaPDF with Delphi. All other errors do not raise an exception; the error callback function is called instead if any.

The error callback function is defined as follows (C/C++):

```
typedef SI32 PDF_CALL TErrorProc(
    const void* Data,          // User defined pointer
    SI32 ErrCode,              // Error code
    const char* ErrorMessage,  // Error message
    SI32 ErrType)              // Error type

#define PDF_CALL __stdcall // Windows only, otherwise empty
```

All callback functions contain a parameter named "Data" which holds a user defined pointer. *Data* can be set with [SetOnErrorProc\(\)](#). If you don't need this pointer, set it to NULL. The pointer *Data* is always passed unchanged to the callback function.

*ErrCode* is a positive error number starting at zero. *ErrType* is a bit mask to determine what kind of error occurred. The following constants are defined:

```
#define E_WARNING          0x02000000
#define E_SYNTAX_ERROR     0x04000000
#define E_VALUE_ERROR      0x08000000
#define E_FONT_ERROR       0x10000000
#define E_FATAL_ERROR      0x20000000
#define E_FILE_ERROR       0x40000000
```

At time of publication only one flag is set at any one time. Future versions may be set multiple flags, e.g. E\_SYNTAX\_ERROR and E\_WARNING.

Because of this, it is recommended to mask out the error type:

```
if (ErrType & E_SYNTAX_ERROR)
{
    // some code
    return 0; // continue processing
}
```

If the error callback function returns a value other than zero, processing stops immediately.

It is highly recommended for all callback functions that the correct calling convention is used. The C definition above contains the macro PDF\_CALL that is defined as `__stdcall` under Windows. Note that a wrongly defined calling convention causes an access violation!

When using DynaPDF with C or C++, you can change the calling convention to `__fastcall` or `__cdecl` by changing the macro PDF\_CALL in the main interface dynapdf.h and in the project settings. However, standard call is strongly recommended. Note that the library must be recompiled when changing the calling convention. Delphi, Visual Basic, and VB .Net require standard call!

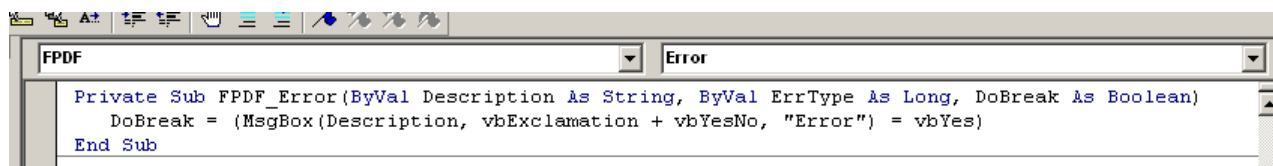
### ***Exception handling in Visual Basic, Visual Basic .Net***

The Visual Basic wrapper class CPDF uses events instead of callback functions to pass error messages and warnings to the user; native language exceptions are not used.

The usage of the event functions is quite easy; just declare a local instance variable of the wrapper class CPDF in the Option Explicit section of the unit as follows:

```
Private WithEvents FPDF As CPDF
```

The command above enables the event support of the class CPDF. The instance variable FPDF is now listed in the left combo box of the VB code editor.



The right combo box contains the available events, when selecting the event "Error" VB adds automatically an empty event procedure to your source code:



```
Private Sub FPDF_Error(ByVal Description As String, ByVal ErrType As
Long, DoBreak As Boolean)
    ' Add your code here
End Sub
```

Now you can enter some code that should be executed when the event is fired. Note that you must still create an instance of the class CPDF before a DynaPDF function can be executed (see [Language bindings/Visual Basic](#) for further information).

The handling of events in VB .Net is exactly the same as in VB 6.0.

### ***Special issues in Visual Basic and .Net***

The usage of events in Visual Basic or VB .Net is quite easy; however, there is a special behaviour that must be taken into account when developing VB applications. When using the DoEvents procedure in a VB function you must make sure that the function cannot be executed again while a previous call of the function is still running.

DoEvents enables the asynchronous processing of the message loop so that the user interface can be updated and the user can execute something while a function is running (e.g. break processing). DoEvents is often used because it is an easy way to avoid blocking of an application without using of threads.

However, when using DoEvents it is possible that a user clicks on the button again that executes DynaPDF functions while a previous call is still running. This is normally no problem but it is impossible to execute an event function inside of a cloned function. When DynaPDF tries to raise an event inside the cloned function an access violation occurs and VB crashes. VB .Net does not crash but raises a System.NullReference exception in that case.

To avoid such problems check whether the function is still running:

```
Option Explicit
Private WithEvents FPDF As CPDF 'Enable event support
Private FRunning As Boolean

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    If FRunning Then Exit Sub 'Check whether a previous call is running
    FRunning = True
    'Call some DynaPDF functions here...
    DoEvents 'Process messages
    FRunning = False
End Sub
```

The code above simply checks whether a previous call of the function is running before the function can be executed again.

## Customized Exception handling

By default, only fatal errors will stop processing. Warnings, syntax errors and so on are all ignored. You can customize the exception handling to your own requirements with the property `Get/SetOnErrorMode()`. With the following constants you can determine what kind of error should be treated as fatal error:

```
typedef SI32 TErrMode;  
#define emIgnoreAll      0x00000000 // default  
#define emSyntaxError    0x00000001  
#define emValueError     0x00000002  
#define emWarning        0x00000004  
#define emFileError      0x00000008  
#define emFontError      0x00000010  
#define emAllErrors      0x0000FFFF  
#define emNoFuncNames    0x10000000 // Do not output function names
```

If a specific flag is set, DynaPDF treats this error type as fatal error; the internal resources will be freed and all changes made before are lost.

DynaPDF never produces a damaged PDF file if a warning or error message was ignored, but certain functions may be not executed. For example, if `SetFont()` cannot find the selected font, it returns with a warning and no font is set, the active font (if any) is left unchanged.

If no other font was set before, it is not possible to output text. All text functions also return then with a warning because there is no active font, but nothing more happens than a warning is issued.

When a fatal error occurred, all functions are leaved immediately. No further warnings or error messages are displayed. It is not possible to execute a function (except global properties which do not change PDF objects directly) after a fatal error occurred.

There is no need to check the return value of each function, and there is no need to leave a function block after a fatal error occurred. The internal error flag is cleared when `CreateNewPDF()` is called the next time.

The special flag *emNoFuncNames* names can be used to avoid the output of the function name in error messages. Error messages start normally always with the function name in which the error occurred. While this information is useful during development, it is often not useful in an end user application.

### Remarks:

The constants are defined as enum in Visual Basic, VB .Net, and C#.

## Custom Library Changes

This section is only of interest if you have a copy of the source codes. If you use a version without source codes you can skip this chapter.

### Compiler Switches

DynaPDF supports several compiler switches to disable unnecessary features. The following macros disable or enable one of the image libraries used by DynaPDF as well as other features. The macros are defined in the header file `/main/drv_type.h`.

```
#define DRV_SUPPORT_AES 1 // AES encryption and decryption
#define DRV_SUPPORT_CJK 1 // about 150 KB (CJK to Unicode conversion)
#define DRV_SUPPORT_EMF 1 // EMF Converter
#define DRV_SUPPORT_GIF 1 // about 1 KB
#define DRV_SUPPORT_IMP 1 // about 50 KB (PDF import)
#define DRV_SUPPORT_JP2K 1 // about 180 KB
#define DRV_SUPPORT_JPEG 1 // about 90 KB (no effect if TIFF is enabled)
#define DRV_SUPPORT_PGM 1 // PBM, PGM, PNM, PPM Image formats, ~1 KB
#define DRV_SUPPORT_PNG 1 // about 100 KB
#define DRV_SUPPORT_PSD 1 // about 1 KB
#define DRV_SUPPORT_RC4 1 // RC4 encryption and decryption
#define DRV_SUPPORT_SIGN 1 // Self sign signatures -> AiCrypto Library
#define DRV_SUPPORT_TIFF 1 // about 310 KB
```

To disable a specific feature set the constant to zero. Note that the TIFF library uses also the JPEG library. Because of this, disabling the JPEG library only does not reduce the library size.

The following constants are used by `WriteFText()` (defined in `dynapdf.h`).

```
#define PDF_MAX_LIST_COUNT 6 // Maximum count of nested list levels
#define PDF_LIST_SEP_WIDTH 10.0 // Default list separator with
#define DEFAULT_LIST_CHAR 159 // Default list character
#define PDF_LIST_FONT "Wingdings-Regular" // Default list font
```

The list font must be the PostScript name of the font (see `SetFont()` for further information). When changing the list font you may also change the default list character. When using DynaPDF under Linux or UNIX you may define a font that is available in one of your font search directories.

Note that the list font can be overridden at runtime with the function `SetListFont()`. So, it is usually better to load the font at runtime with `SetListFont()` since you can properly handle cases in which the font cannot be found.

### Main object types

In PDF, two basic object types can be created, *resource objects* such as fonts, images and so on which are used by content streams and *global objects* such as annotations, bookmarks, form fields and so on. Global objects can use resource objects but not vice versa.

In most cases both object types are defined as normal classes, which contain their own constructors and destructors to initialize and destroy allocated memory.

Global objects can be deleted or marked as deleted at runtime. Resource objects must never be deleted if the object was already used.

### ***General design requirements***

We describe here only the general rules which must be taken into account when extending DynaPDF with certain features. We do not explain how the entire library works; this would fill an entire book. To understand how an object must be written to the file we recommended that you debug especially the function `CloseFile()`. All objects must be prepared for writing in a two stage phase to reserve object numbers. The first stage determines whether an object is used by the first page. The second stage reserves object numbers for all PDF objects. Objects must be written to the file in the exact order in which they were previously prepared for writing. This is highly recommended to create linearized PDF files. A wrong order results always in a damaged PDF file.

A PDF file is described in memory as a large set of classes which can be referenced or used multiple times by other classes. Due to the references which are stored in certain classes we must define a strict set of rules so that no exception occurs if an object must be deleted:

1. The owner of all resources and global objects is CPDF. No other class is permitted to destroy an object class or change its values.
2. All object classes must be derived from the class CBaseObject. This class holds the object number as well as several flags to determine whether the object was used, created, or already written, and whether it is part of the first page. This class contains the function `CreateObject()` which must be called in `CPDF::PreparePageObjects()` if the object is part of a page. If the object is not included in a page object then `CreateObject()` must be called in `CPDF::PrepareObjects()`.
3. All classes which hold pointers to other object classes must check the "Used" flag before writing the object data to the file (`GetUsed()` is a member of CBaseObject and returns true if the used flag is set).
4. All classes must be well initialized so that the class can be deleted at any time without causing memory leaks or other unwanted side effects.
5. No object class is permitted to unset the "Used" flag of other object classes.
6. Page resources such as fonts, images, templates and so on must **NEVER** be deleted at runtime and their "Used" flag must **NEVER** be unset.
7. All resource classes must be derived from CBaseResource.
8. Object classes must set the "Used" flag of the resource object, if the class is used by this object.

9. The "Used" flag of non-page resources can be unset at runtime with `SetUnUsed()`. This will mark the class as an unused or deleted object. When writing the file, such an object must be ignored.
10. Never delete an object if you don't know exactly what you are doing. If a destroyed object is referenced in any other object, the library will crash.
11. If a **used** page resource is deleted or if the "Used" flag is unset at runtime when it was already set, the resulting PDF file will be damaged.
12. Make sure that the function `FreePDF()` can be called at any time without causing memory leaks or other unwanted side effects.

### ***Requirements to add your own code to DynaPDF***

If you want to make your own features permanent, you are welcome to send us your source codes including a description what kind of feature it enables.

However, we cannot accept any old code; your code must be properly written in C++ and tested with certain operating systems and compilers. It must not produce warnings of any kind and it must not use external libraries, except those are already used by DynaPDF (see `drv_type.h` for a full list).

Basic C functions such as `strcpy`, `strcat`, `memcpy` and so on, as well as templates from the STL are **NOT** allowed to use. Take a look into `drv_base_func.h`, `drv_tmpl.h`, or `pdf_utils.h` before using an external function or template. The implementations used by DynaPDF are faster and work on all operating systems without side effects.

Windows GDI functions are normally not permitted too. However, under certain circumstances GDI functions are permitted. DynaPDF uses already a few GDI functions to convert WMF files to EMF or to raster EMF files. Windows specific code must be encapsulated into a `#ifdef _WINDOWS` section.

If your code handles strings, it must **NOT** use an external string class which is available in any standard C++ library. Use the DynaPDF class `CString` or `CPDFString()` instead. These classes support many PDF specific functions.

Your code should be tested with Microsoft Visual C++ 6.0 **AND** Visual Studio 2005 or higher. If possible, you should test your code also with GCC 4.0 or higher under Linux or Mac OS X.

The following important defines are available depending on the operating system and characteristics of the target CPU:

Constant	Test code	Comment
_WINDOWS	<code>#ifdef _WINDOWS</code>	Set on Windows.
MAC_OS_X	<code>#ifdef MAC_OS_X</code>	Set on Mac OS X.
DRV_BIG_ENDIAN	<code>#if (DRV_BIG_ENDIAN == 1)</code>	Endian configuration.
VS_2005_OR_HIGHER	<code>#if (VS_2005_OR_HIGHER == 1)</code>	Functions which are considered as unsafe in Visual Studio 2005 or higher must be replaced with their safe versions. Use this macro to test the compiler version.

To get the full list of available defines take a look into the header file `/main/drv_type.h`. On non Windows operating systems the configure script creates also the header file `/main/drv_conf.h` which contains many OS specific defines. Note that this header file can only be included on non Windows operating systems.

Note also that the class structure in DynaPDF is not fixed. Changes can be made without further notice at any time. So, you cannot assume that a class or member of a class that exists today exists in a newer version too. Although most classes and templates do seldom change, changes can always occur!

To avoid dependencies to a specific source code version it is usually best to ask us for the best strategy if you want to add certain features to the library.

## Language bindings

### ***Differences between DynaPDF interfaces***

DynaPDF can be used with most programming languages which support standard DLLs. The usage of DynaPDF is nearly identical in all programming languages. However, this help file describes all DynaPDF functions in C syntax.

All DynaPDF functions contain an instance pointer of the active PDF instance ( `const void* IPDF` ) as first parameter. This pointer is hidden for the user in the programming languages Visual Basic, Visual Basic .Net, Visual C#, and Borland Delphi. We deliver native wrapper classes for these programming languages which handle the PDF instances automatically.

However, this help file describes the raw API of DynaPDF that is used by the programming languages C and C++. The C/C++ interface is a direct interface that does not encapsulate the DynaPDF API into a class or other structures to improve processing speed.

The usage of DynaPDF is almost identical in all programming languages; you must only consider that the instance pointer IPDF is contained in the C/C++ interface only.

Visual Basic, Visual C#, or Delphi users must create an instance of the wrapper class CPDF or TPDF in Delphi before a DynaPDF function can be executed. The instance of the wrapper class must also be deleted by calling the destructor of the class.

C or C++ programmers must create a PDF instance with the function `pdfNewPDF()` before a DynaPDF function can be executed. This instance must be deleted with the function `pdfDeletePDF()` when it is no longer needed.

We tried also to consider the specific requirements for each programming language so that DynaPDF can always be used without limitations. This causes slightly differences because of the differences between programming languages. For instance, the Visual Basic interfaces uses events instead of callback functions because the usage of callback functions is more complicated in VB as in other programming languages.

## ***Borland C++ Builder***

To use DynaPDF with Borland's C++ Builder, proceed as follows:

1. Open a new project or your favourite project in C++ Builder.
2. Include the header file */include/C\_CPP/dynapdf.h* into the units which will use DynaPDF functions.
3. Add the import library */borland\_lib/dynapdf.lib* to your project.
4. Copy the *dynapdf.dll* into a Windows search path (e.g. Windows/System32) or into the output directory.
5. Finished!

If you want to use DynaPDF with a C++ project, add the line "`using namespace DynaPDF;`" after including the header file *dynapdf.h*.

The usage in C is essentially the same as in C++, with the exception that the namespace DynaPDF must not be declared.

A PDF instance can be used to create an arbitrary count of PDF files. All used resources are automatically freed when the PDF file is closed (except when the PDF file was created in memory). To improve processing speed, use one instance as long as possible.

If you want to use DynaPDF with an older version of C++ Builder, you may rebuild the lib file by using *implib.exe*. *Implib* is delivered with C++ Builder; you find it in the *Bin* directory of your C++ Builder installation directory.

To create a new import library run *implib* from the command line as follows:

```
implib dynapdf.lib dynapdf.dll
```

DynaPDF uses standard call as calling convention. C++ Builder requires for that calling convention no underscores before function names. Because of this the option *-a* must not be used to build the import library (see your C++ Builder help for further information).

Copy *implib* and the *dynapdf.dll* into the same directory and execute the command above.

### **Example (C++ Builder):**

```
// Standard includes by all C++ Builder projects
#include <vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop

#include "Unit1.h"
//-----
#pragma package(smart_init)
#pragma resource "*.dfm"
```



```
// Include the DynaPDF header file (change the path if necessary)
#include "dynapdf.h"
// All data types and functions are declared in the namespace DynaPDF.
using namespace DynaPDF;
// First, we declare an error callback function that is called by
// DynaPDF if an error occurred.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrorMessage, SI32 ErrType)
{
    char errMsg[PDF_MAX_ERR_LEN + 30];
    // An error message returned by DynaPDF is a pointer to a null-
    // terminated static string.
    sprintf(errMsg, "%s\n\nAbort processing?\n", ErrorMessage);
    if (MessageDlg(errMsg, mtError,
    TMsgDlgButtons() << mbYes << mbNo, 0) == mrYes)
        return -1; // break processing
    else
        return 0; // ignore the error
}

// Place a button on the form and double click on it. Add the
// following code to the function.
void __fastcall TForm1::Button1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF(); // Create a new PDF instance
    if (!pdf) return; // Out of memory?
    // Set the error callback first
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, PDFError);
    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:/myfirst.pdf");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diSubject, "My first C++ output");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diProducer, "C++ Builder test application");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diTitle, "My first C++ output");
    // We want to use top-down coordinates
    pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);

    pdfAppend(pdf);
    pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", DynaPDF::fsItalic, 40.0, true, cp1252);
    pdfWriteFText(pdf, DynaPDF::taCenter, "My first C++ output!");
    pdfEndPage(pdf);

    pdfCloseFile(pdf); // Close the file and free all used resources
    pdfDeletePDF(pdf); // Do not forget to delete the PDF instance
}
```

## Microsoft Visual C++

To use DynaPDF with Microsoft's Visual C++, proceed as follows:

1. Open a new project, or your favourite project, in Visual Studio.
2. Include the header file `/include/C_CPP/dynapdf.h` into the units which will use DynaPDF functions.
3. VC++ 6.0 only: Add the file `/include/C_CPP/dynapdf.cpp` to your project (see comment below).
4. Add the import library `/mvs_lib/dynapdf.lib` or `/mvs_lib/dynapdfm.lib` to your project.
5. Copy the `dynapdf.dll` or `dynapdfm.dll` into a Windows search path (e.g. Windows/System32).
6. Finished!

The file `dynapdf.cpp` contains dummy declarations of all exported DynaPDF functions; because the functions are not exported they do not conflict with the original declarations. These declarations enable the usage of Microsoft's Intellisense (code completion) in Visual C++ 6.0. Due to implementation limits of Microsoft's Intellisense, code completion does maybe not work without this file. However, it seems that this issue was solved with Update Pack 6 of Microsoft's Visual Studio. If code completion does not work in your environment then include this file.

See also bug report „190974 PRB: Function Prototypes Do Not Generate Parameter Info“, ([www.microsoft.com](http://www.microsoft.com)).

DynaPDF was compiled and developed with Microsoft Visual Studio 6.0 SP 6. Two versions of the library are delivered:

- `dynapdf.dll` // Compiled with Multithreaded
- `dynapdfm.dll` // Compiled with Multithreaded DLL

Both versions are fully compatible to VC++ 7.0 or higher (Visual Studio .Net). To avoid conflicts with different standard library versions choose the right DynaPDF DLL and import library depending on your project settings. A pre-compiled single threaded version of DynaPDF is not available.

If you want to use DynaPDF with a C++ project, add the line `"using namespace DynaPDF;"` after including the header file `dynapdf.h`.

The usage in C is essentially the same as in C++, with the exception that the namespace DynaPDF must not be declared.

A PDF instance can be used to create an arbitrary count of PDF files. All used resources are automatically freed when the PDF file is closed (except when the PDF file was created in memory). To improve processing speed, use one instance as long as possible.

Most examples are written in C or C++ which can directly be used with a Borland or Microsoft Compiler.

**Example (C++):**

```
// Include the DynaPDF header file (change the path if necessary)
#include "dynapdf.h"
// All data types and functions are declared in the namespace DynaPDF.
using namespace DynaPDF;
// First, we declare an error callback function that is called by
// DynaPDF if an error occurred.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrorMessage, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrorMessage);
    return 0; // Any other return value break processing
}
// Place a button on the form and double click on it. Add the
following
// code to the function.
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF(); // Create a new PDF instance
    if (!pdf) return 2; // Out of memory?
    // Set the error callback first
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, PDFError);
    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:/myfirst.pdf");
    pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown); // We use top-down coordinates
    pdfAppend(pdf);
    pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsItalic, 40.0, true, cp1252);
    pdfWriteFText(pdf, taCenter, "My first C++ output!");
    pdfEndPage(pdf);
    pdfCloseFile(pdf); // Close the file and free all used resources
    pdfDeletePDF(pdf); // Do not forget to delete the PDF instance
}
```

## Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0

The usage of DynaPDF with Visual Basic is essentially the same as with C or C++ except that the exported DLL functions are encapsulated in the wrapper class CPDF to make the usage easier. The instance pointer IPDF which is used by every DynaPDF function is hidden for the user in Visual Basic. The instance pointer is controlled by the wrapper class so that you must not create PDF instances manually.

To use DynaPDF with Visual Basic proceed as follows:

- Add the file */include/Visual\_Basic/DynapDFInt.bas* to your project (menu Project/Add Module/Existing...).
- Add the file */include/Visual\_Basic/CPDF.cls* to your project (menu Project/Add Class Module/Existing...).
- Add the file */include/Visual\_Basic/IPDFCallback.cls* to your project (menu Project/Add Class Module/Existing...).
- At least, make sure that the *dynapdf.dll* can be found by Visual Basic in debug mode; just copy the DLL into the Windows/System32 directory, finished!

All DynaPDF functions are encapsulated in the wrapper class CPDF. This class makes sure that the DynaPDF functions can be used without limitations and programming with DynaPDF becomes more comfortable. You don't need to consider specific return values of the DLL, the class converts special data types automatically to VB data types.

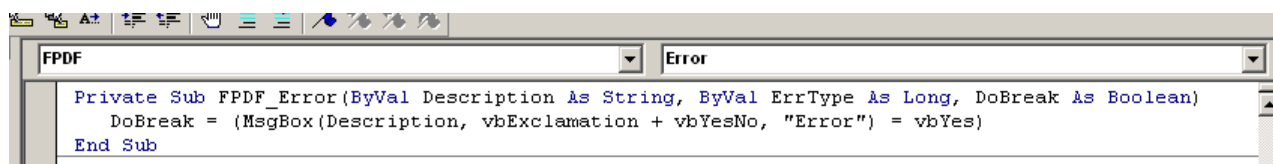
### Exception handling in Visual Basic

The standard exception handling of DynaPDF uses a callback function to pass error messages and warnings to the client application. However, in Visual Basic we use events instead. The usage of events is quite easy and frees you from handling with DynaPDF API function calls.

To enable the event support of the wrapper class CPDF declare a local instance variable as follows:

```
Option Explicit
Private WithEvents FPDF As CPDF 'Enable event support
```

The instance variable FPDF is now listed in the left combo box of the VB code editor.



The right combo box contains the available events, when selecting the event "Error" VB adds automatically an empty event procedure to your source code:

```

Private Sub FPDF_Error(ByVal Description As String, ByVal ErrType As
Long, DoBreak As Boolean)
    ' Add your code here
    ' To break processing after an error occurred set the variable
    ' DoBreak to True
End Sub

```

Now you can enter some code that should be executed when the event is fired. Note that you must still create an instance of the class CPDF before a DynaPDF function can be executed (see the example below).

Note also that VB exceptions are not used so that an error block will normally never be executed. The following declaration has effect in the means of the DynaPDF exception handling:

```

On Error GoTo errPDF
...
' Call some DynaPDF functions...
: errPDF
If Err.Number <> 0 Then
    MsgBox Err.Description
    Exit Sub
End If

```

The error block cannot be executed because DynaPDF does never raise an exception. If an error occurred, the event "Error" is raised instead. However, there are still cases in which a VB exception can occur, e.g. when passing an empty array to a function that requires some values in it. So, the code should still be encapsulated in an error block. All you need to know that this error block does not affect the normal exception handling of DynaPDF.

### ***The DoEvents problem***

The usage of events in Visual Basic is quite easy; however, there is a special behaviour that must be taken into account when developing VB applications. When using the DoEvents procedure in a VB function you must make sure that the function cannot be executed again while a previous call of the function is still running.

DoEvents enables the asynchronous processing of the message loop so that the user interface can be updated and the user can execute something while a function is still running (e.g. press a break button). DoEvents is often used because it is an easy way to avoid blocking of an application without using of threads.

However, when using DoEvents it is possible that a user clicks on the button again that executes DynaPDF functions while a previous call is still running. This is normally no problem but it is impossible to execute an event functions inside of a cloned function. When DynaPDF tries to raise an event inside the cloned function an access violation occurs and VB crashes.

To avoid such problems check whether the function is still running:

```

Option Explicit
Private WithEvents FPDF As CPDF 'Enable event support
Private FRunning As Boolean

Private Sub Command1_Click()
    If FRunning Then Exit Sub 'Check whether a previous call is running
    FRunning = True
    'Call some DynaPDF functions here...
    DoEvents 'Process messages
    FRunning = False
End Sub

```

The code above checks whether a previous call of the function is running before the function can be executed again; a quite simple but effective solution that makes your application stabile.

### Example:

```

Option Explicit
Private WithEvents FPDF As CPDF ' Enable event support
Private Sub Form_Load()
    ' We hold one instance of the class CPDF in memory
    Set FPDF = new CPDF
    If FPDF Is Nothing Then
        MsgBox "Out of memory!", vbCritical, "Fatal error"
    End If
End Sub
Private Sub Form_Terminate()
    ' Delete the class instance
    Set FPDF = Nothing
End Sub
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    FPDF.CreateNewPDFa "c:/vbout.pdf"
    FPDF.SetDocInfoA diAuthor, "Jens Boschulte"
    FPDF.SetDocInfoA diSubject, "My first VB output"
    FPDF.SetDocInfoA diTitle, "My first VB output"
    FPDF.Append
    FPDF.SetFont "Arial", fsItalic, 30#, True, cp1252
    FPDF.WriteFTextA taCenter, "My first VB output"
    FPDF.EndPage
    FPDF.CloseFile
End Sub
' Error event procedure
Private Sub FPDF_Error(ByVal Description As String, ByVal ErrType As
Long, DoBreak As Boolean)
    DoBreak = (MsgBox(Description, vbExclamation Or vbYesNo,
        "Error") = vbYes)
End Sub

```

## ***Visual Basic .Net***

The usage of DynaPDF with Visual Basic .Net is essentially the same as with C or C++ except that the exported DLL functions are encapsulated in the wrapper class CPDF to make the usage easier. The instance pointer IPDF that is used by every DynaPDF function is hidden for the user in VB .Net. The instance pointer is controlled by the wrapper class so that you must not create PDF instances manually.

To use DynaPDF with VB .Net proceed as follows:

- Add the file */include/Visual\_Basic\_Net/DynapPDFInt.vb* to your project (menu Project/Add Existing Element...).
- Add the file */include/Visual\_Basic\_Net/CPDF.vb* to your project (menu Project/Add Existing Element...).
- At least, make sure that the *dynapdf.dll* can be found; just copy the DLL into the Windows/System32 directory, finished!

### **NOTICE:**

Visual Studio .Net copies the interface files into your project directory if the option “Link file” is not selected when adding the files to your project. Make sure that you always link the files to your project. Otherwise you must update the interface files manually whenever you install a newer version of DynaPDF.

All DynaPDF functions are encapsulated in the wrapper class CPDF. This class makes sure that the DynaPDF functions can be used without limitations and programming with DynaPDF becomes more comfortable. You don't need to consider specific return values of the DLL; the class converts API data types automatically to VB .Net data types.

VB .Net supports more data types than VB 6.0 but the usage of the new data types is complicated. For instance, a signed integer cannot be passed to an unsigned integer variable without explicit conversion. The same behaviour is required for nearly all other new data types. This makes the usage of the new types practically impossible.

However, to make the usage of DynaPDF less complicated the VB .Net interface uses only base data types which are already available since VB 6.0. An exception is the definition of pointers. VB .Net supports the new Data IntPtr that is a variable pointer type with a length of 32 bit on a 32 bit Windows machine and 64 bit on a 64 bit Windows machine. This data type is used for all pointers so that the .Net interface can also be used on a 64 bit Windows machine. Note that the 64 bit version of DynaPDF must be used in this case.

### ***Data types used by DynaPDF***

DynaPDF uses a large set of enums and other data types which are mostly declared within the class CPDF. However, a few data types are declared in the file DynaPDFInt.vb, this must be

taken into account when developing VB .Net applications. If you cannot find a data type in the class CPDF then take a look into the file DynaPDFInt.vb.

### ***Exception handling in VB .Net***

The exception handling in Visual Basic .Net is the same as in Visual Basic 6.0. The class CPDF uses per default events instead of callback functions. This makes the usage easier and frees you from handling with unmanaged data types. Please take a look into [Visual Basic Exception handling](#) for a detailed description.

It is also possible to declare callback functions instead of events but the use of callback functions is rather complicated in VB .Net. While C# handles callback functions correctly without further considerations, VB .Net users must test their callback function properly. It seems that VB .Net invalidates sometimes the pointers of callback functions if memory must be reallocated. This error occurs mostly if DynaPDF functions are executed in different classes. If you get a NullReference exception check whether the same error occurs if no error callback function is set. If the exception does no longer occur use the error event handling of DynaPDF instead.

### ***The DoEvents problem***

The usage of events in VB .Net is quite easy; however, there is a special behaviour that must be taken into account when developing .Net applications. When using the DoEvents procedure in a function you must make sure that the function cannot be executed again while a previous call of the function is still running.

DoEvents enables the asynchronous processing of the message loop so that the user interface can be updated and the user can execute something while a function is still running (e.g. press a break button). DoEvents is often used because it is an easy way to avoid blocking of an application without using of threads.

However, when using DoEvents it is possible that a user clicks on the button again that executes DynaPDF functions while a previous call is still running. This is normally no problem but when using events the event functions become invalid. This is the same behaviour as in Visual Basic 6.0 with the exception that .Net does not crash, a System.NullReferenceException is raised instead.

It is not clear why this exception occurs, it seems that this is a general bug in the event handling of Visual Basic 6.0 and VB .Net. A native programming language like C/C++ or Delphi would never cause an access violation or exception here.

However, to avoid such problems check whether the function is still running:

```
Private WithEvents FPDF As CPDF 'Enable event support
Private FRunning As Boolean
```



```

Private Sub Command1_Click(ByVal eventSender As System.Object, ByVal
eventArgs As System.EventArgs) Handles Command1.Click
    If FRunning Then Exit Sub 'Check whether a previous call is running
    FRunning = True
    'Call some DynaPDF functions here...
    DoEvents 'Process messages
    FRunning = False
End Sub

```

The code above checks whether a previous call of the function is running before the function can be executed again. A quite simple but effective solution that makes your application stable.

### Example (Visual Basic .Net):

```

Private WithEvents FPDF As CPDF 'Enable event support

Private Sub Form1_Load(ByVal eventSender As System.Object, ByVal
eventArgs As System.EventArgs) Handles MyBase.Load
    ' We hold one instance of the class CPDF in memory
    FPDF = New CPDF()
End Sub

Private Sub Command1_Click(ByVal eventSender As System.Object, ByVal
eventArgs As System.EventArgs) Handles Command1.Click
    FPDF.CreateNewPDFA("c:/vbout.pdf")
    FPDF.SetDocInfoA(CPDF.TDocumentInfo.diAuthor, "Jens Boschulte")
    FPDF.SetDocInfoA(CPDF.TDocumentInfo.diSubject, "My first VB output")
    FPDF.SetDocInfoA(CPDF.TDocumentInfo.diTitle, "My first VB output")

    FPDF.Append()
    ' The data type TFStyle is defined in DynaPDFInt.vb
    FPDF.SetFontA("Arial", TFStyle.fsItalic, 30.0, True, CPDF.TCodepage.cp1252)
    FPDF.WriteFTextA(CPDF.TTextAlign.taCenter, "My first VB .Net output")
    FPDF.EndPage()
    FPDF.CloseFile()
End Sub

' Error event procedure
Private Sub FPDF_PDFError(ByVal Description As String, ByVal ErrType
As Integer, ByRef DoBreak As Boolean) Handles FPDF.PDFError
    DoBreak = (MsgBox(Description, _
        MsgBoxStyle.Exclamation Or _
        MsgBoxStyle.YesNo, _
        "Error") = MsgBoxResult.Yes)
End Sub

```

## Visual C#

The usage of DynaPDF with Visual C# is essentially the same as with C or C++ except that the exported DLL functions are encapsulated in the wrapper class CPDF to make the usage easier. The instance pointer IPDF that is used by every DynaPDF function is hidden for the user in C#. The instance pointer is controlled by the wrapper class so that you must not create PDF instances manually.

To use DynaPDF with Visual C# proceed as follows:

- Add the file `/include/Visual_C#/CPDF.cs` to your project (menu Project/Add Existing Element...).
- Make sure that the *dynapdf.dll* can be found; just copy the DLL into the Windows/System32 directory, finished!

### NOTICE:

Visual Studio .Net copies the interface file CPDF.cs into your project directory if the option “Link file” is not selected when adding the files to your project. Make sure that you always link the files to your project. Otherwise you must update the interface manually whenever you install a newer version of DynaPDF.

All DynaPDF functions are encapsulated in the wrapper class CPDF. This class makes sure that the DynaPDF functions can be used without limitations and programming with DynaPDF becomes more comfortable. You don't need to consider specific return values of the DLL; the class converts API data types automatically to C# data types.

However, C# uses a very restrictive data type handling that causes that already signed integers cannot be passed to unsigned integer variables of the same type without explicit conversion.

To make the usage of DynaPDF less complicated most function parameters which would normally declared as unsigned integer, e.g. PDF object handles, are declared as signed integer to get rid of permanent explicit data type conversions.

The usage of DynaPDF with C# is nearly identical in comparison to C++. The interface does generally not use events like in VB .Net because callback functions work very well in C#.

### Data types in C#

All structures and enums used by DynaPDF are declared in the namespace [DynaPDF](#). Because it is not possible to declare constants in a namespace, such constants are declared in the class CPDF. All data types, structures, and constants are defined in the file CPDF.cs. No further files are required to use DynaPDF.

**Example (Visual C#):**

```
using System;
using DynaPDF;
using System.Runtime.InteropServices;

namespace hello_world
{
    class Hello_World
    {
        // Error callback function.
        static int PDFError(IntPtr Data, int ErrorCode, IntPtr ErrorMessage,
            int ErrType)
        {
            // The error type is a bitmask.
            Console.WriteLine("{0}\n", PtrToStringAnsi(ErrorMessage));
            Console.WriteLine("\n");
            return 0; // We try to continue if an error occurs.
        }

        [STAThread]
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            try
            {
                String outFile = "c:/c#out.pdf";
                CPDF pdf = new CPDF();
                // Error messages are passed to the callback function.
                pdf.SetOnErrorProc(IntPtr.Zero, new
                    DynaPDF.TErrorProc(PDFError));
                // We open the output file later if no error occurs.
                pdf.CreateNewPDF(null);
                // We use top down coordinates in this example
                pdf.SetPageCoords(DynaPDF.TPageCoord.pcTopDown);
                pdf.Append(); // An an empty page to the file
                // Before printing text you must set a font
                pdf.SetFont("Arial", DynaPDF.TFStyle.fsItalic, 20.0, true,
                    DynaPDF.TCodepage.cp1252);
                pdf.WriteTextA(50.0, 50.0, "My first PDF output...");
                pdf.WriteTextA(50.0, 80.0, "File created: " +
                    DateTime.Now.ToString());
                pdf.EndPage(); // Close the open page
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
        // No fatal error occurred?
        if (pdf.HaveOpenDoc())
        {
            // OK, now we can open the output file.
            if (!pdf.OpenOutputFile(outFile))
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Make sure that you have write access
                                   to drive C:\nor change the output file path!\n");
                Console.ReadLine();
                return;
            }
            if (pdf.CloseFile())
            {
                Console.WriteLine("PDF file \"{0}\" successfully
                                   created!\n", outFile);
            }
        }
        pdf = null;
    } catch (Exception e)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
    }
    Console.ReadLine();
}
}
```

## ***Borland Delphi***

The usage of DynaPDF with Borland's Delphi is essentially the same as with C or C++ except that the exported DLL functions are encapsulated in the wrapper class TPDF to make the usage easier. The instance pointer IPDF that is used by every DynaPDF function is hidden for the user in Delphi. The instance pointer is controlled by the wrapper class so that you must not create PDF instances manually.

To use DynaPDF with Delphi, proceed as follows:

- Add the interface file */include/Delphi/dynapdf.pas* into the units which should use DynaPDF functions.
- Add the file also to your project.
- Copy the *dynapdf.dll* into a Windows search path (e.g. Windows/System32) or into your application directory, finished!

The Delphi interface encapsulates all DLL functions in the wrapper class TPDF. This class can be used like any other VCL class. The class is thread-safe and can be used without synchronization in multithreading applications.

However, some details must be known about the class. When the first instance is created, the constructor loads the dynapdf.dll with the API function LoadLibrary(). When creating a further instance of the wrapper class TPDF, also a new PDF instance is created inside the DLL. Each instance of the wrapper class uses its own DLL instance.

If an instance of the wrapper class TPDF is destroyed, the destructor deletes the used PDF instance; if no other instance uses the library then it will be unloaded with the API function FreeLibrary().

However, the DLL is unloaded each time if the reference count of the DLL is zero. In most cases it makes sense to hold one instance of the wrapper class in memory to avoid unloading the library. The internal resources used by DynaPDF are always freed when [CloseFile\(\)](#) is called (except when the file is created in memory), so that there is no need to destroy the main instance of TPDF.

## ***Exception handling in Delphi***

DynaPDF itself uses no native exception handling. Error messages and warnings are passed to an error callback function if any (see [SetOnErrorProc\(\)](#)). If no callback function is used, then use the function [GetErrorMessage\(\)](#) to get detailed information about the last error.

However, the wrapper class TPDF uses native exceptions in the following cases:

- When creating a new instance of the wrapper class TPDF.
- When loading a DLL function with the API function GetProcAddress() (**all functions**).

If a function listed above fails, then an exception is raised by the class TPDF. Always encapsulate all function calls into a try / except block. Only a few exceptions can occur but these exceptions must not be ignored. Especially when using DynaPDF in multi-threading applications it is highly recommended to use try / except or try / finally blocks. A thread must always catch all exceptions inside the thread.

### ***Using DynaPDF in Multithreading Applications***

The usage of DynaPDF inside a thread is the same as in single-threaded applications.

However, if a callback function should be used, you must make sure that the callback function is declared in the same thread or that each thread uses its own copy of the callback function. In addition, it is highly recommended that only thread-safe functions are called inside the callback function. If any unsafe function must be executed the function that causes the execution of the callback function must be synchronized because it is impossible to synchronize a callback function itself.

Threads should be used completely isolated from the main-thread of the application. Function calls to and from the main-thread must be synchronized. The entire PDF file should be created inside the thread including the instance of the wrapper class TPDF. The class instance must also be deleted before the thread is terminated.

A running thread can be terminated at any time but it is highly recommended to wait for any running functions to end before a thread will be terminated. This can be done easily by checking the property Terminated within the thread before a new function is executed.

After a running function returns, the class instance can be destroyed by using the Free() method for that instance. This will clean up the used resources and the thread can be terminated. The instance of the wrapper class TPDF can be safely destroyed at any time after a running function returned. All internal used resources will be freed, there is no need to call [FreePDF\(\)](#) manually beforehand.

#### **Example (Single threaded):**

In the following example we use a simple message box inside the error callback function. However, in a larger project it makes sense to output error messages into an error log or list box. DynaPDF ignores non-fatal errors by default so that it is possible to continue, but you can protocol each warning and errors during PDF creation.

```
unit Unit1;
```

```
interface
```

```
uses Windows, Messages, SysUtils, Classes, Controls, Forms, Dialogs,
StdCtrls, dynapdf; // Include the file dynapdf.pas to the unit
```

```
type
```

```
    TForm1 = class(TForm)
```

```
    Button1: TButton;
    procedure Button1Click(Sender: TObject);
    private
    public
end;
var Form1: TForm1;
implementation
// First, we define our callback function that is called if an
// error occurred. Note: The calling convention is stdcall!
function ErrProc(const Data: Pointer; ErrCode: Integer; const
ErrMessage: PChar; ErrType: Integer): Integer; stdcall;
var s: String;
begin
    s := Format('%s'#13'Abort processing?', [ErrMessage]);
    if MessageDlg(s, mtError, [mbYes, mbNo], 0) = mrYes then
        Result := -1 // break processing
    else
        Result := 0; // try to continue
end;
procedure TForm1.Button1Click(Sender: TObject);
var pdf: TPDF;
begin
    pdf := nil;
    try
        pdf := TPDF.Create;
        // set the error callback function first
        pdf.SetOnErrorProc(nil, @ErrProc);
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diAuthor, 'Jens Boschulte');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diCreator, 'Delphi sample project');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diSubject, 'My first PDF file...');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diTitle, 'My first Delphi PDF output');
        pdf.SetViewerPreferences(vpDisplayDocTitle, avNone);

        pdf.CreateNewPDFA('c:\dout.pdf');
        pdf.Append;
        pdf.SetFontA('Arial', fsItalic, 40, true, cp1252);
        pdf.WriteFTextA(taCenter, 'My first Delphi output!!!');
        pdf.EndPage;
        pdf.CloseFile;
    except
        on E: Exception do MessageDlg(E.Message, mtError, [mbOK], 0);
    end;
    if pdf <> nil then pdf.Free;
end;
```

## Compiling DynaPDF on Linux / UNIX

The build process of DynaPDF was designed to enable the compilation on most Linux or UNIX operating systems as easy as possible. All Linux and UNIX versions of DynaPDF are compiled with GCC 3.2 or higher which is freely available for most machine types. The configuration files are mainly designed for use with GCC and Autoconf. If you want to use another compiler you must at least change the compiler flags in the file `configure.in` and rebuild then the `configure` script with Autoconf. Note that finding the right compiler flags can be difficult and time consuming so that it is usually best to use GCC instead of another compiler.

### ***System requirements:***

1. Properly installed GCC (3.0 or higher) C and C++ compiler. We strongly recommended GCC 4.0 or higher!
2. GNU make
3. To create a static library of DynaPDF you need also `ar` and `ranlib`

### ***Build process***

1. Copy first the entire directory `dynapdf_2.0` to your Linux or UNIX machine.
2. Change the access permissions of the following files as follows:
  - a. `chmod 777 config.guess`
  - b. `chmod 777 config.sub`
  - c. `chmod 777 confrel`
  - d. `chmod 777 install-sh`
3. Type `"./confrel"` and press enter. This will create the make files for your machine.
4. Type `"make install"` and press enter.
5. Clean up the directory with `"make clean"`, finished!

`Make install` creates a static and shared library of DynaPDF and copies the libraries and header files, which are required to bind DynaPDF, into the subdirectory `/source` of the DynaPDF package.

You find the following files in the subdirectory `/source` after compiling DynaPDF:

- `dynapdf.h` // Main header file of DynaPDF
- `drv_conf.h` // Required configuration file
- `libdynapdf.a` // Static library
- `libdynapdf.so` // Extension `".sl"` on HP-UX or `".dylib"` on Mac OS X

### ***Changing the configuration scripts***

DynaPDF uses the freely available tool Autoconf to create the main configuration script `configure`. Autoconf requires the file `configure.in` as input file which is located in the



subdirectory /source. The final configure script can be executed without changes on all supported Linux and UNIX operating systems as well as on Mac OS X. It creates the make files from the input files makefile.in which are located in all library directories; these files can normally be left unchanged. The top level makefile.in, which is stored in the subdirectory /source too, can be modified if further installation scripts should be executed after the library was successfully compiled. Note that the makefile.in files can be modified without recreating the configure script.

However, if you want to change certain compiler settings, or the compiler itself, modify the file configure.in and execute autoconf without parameters. Autoconf will then rebuild the configure script with the new settings.

### ***Linker flags***

The used linker flags are designed to create a library with minimal dependencies so that DynaPDF can be delivered without other OS specific libraries. Depending on the target OS the linker flags can be changed so that OS specific libraries can be bind dynamically. This results in a smaller library but with more dependencies. To change the linker flags, modify the variable LD\_LIBS in the file configure.in and rebuild the configure script with autoconf.

### ***Compiler flags***

When compiling DynaPDF under HP-UX the flag -fPIC (Position Independent Code) must be set at the minimum to enable the usage as shared library.

### ***Optimization Level***

DynaPDF is compiled with optimization level 3. This level is a good compromise between stable and fast code. The highest optimization level 4 causes a very long compilation time and it is possible that the resulting code is less stable. Test the library properly before using this optimization level by default.

However, a release build should use the optimization level 3 or 4 because certain dependencies to internal GCC specific libraries are only removed if the optimization level is higher than 2.

### ***Recommended compiler version***

DynaPDF is compiled with GCC 3.2 or higher. Due to certain bugs in older versions of GCC make sure that DynaPDF can be compiled at the minimum with GCC 3.0. Especially version 2.96 contains many bugs. If you use a precompiled library of DynaPDF, please note that DynaPDF is not binary compatible to GCC 2.96 or earlier. The GCC compiler should be configured with POSIX compatible thread handling if possible.

## Compiling DynaPDF on Mac OS X

The build process on Mac OS X is very similar to Linux and UNIX operating systems. Since GCC is already the default compiler on Mac OS X it is very easy to compile DynaPDF on this operating system. All you need is a properly installed GCC compiler including make. The XCode package, which is delivered with Mac OS X, contains already the GCC compiler. The easiest way to install GCC is to install XCode 2.5 or higher because it installs GCC 3.3 as well as GCC 4.0 and all required build tools too.

Once the GCC compiler was installed it is already possible to compile DynaPDF in the very same way as described for Linux or UNIX. However, Apple Computers are available with different CPU types and each CPU type requires a DynaPDF version that was compiled for the target CPU.

To make the development easier GCC 4.0 or higher can be used as cross compiler to build libraries for different CPU types on the same host system. It is also possible to build Universal Binaries which contains multiple versions of the same library in one file. The build system of DynaPDF creates always a static and dynamic library so that the output format must not be configured separately.

The GCC compiler supports the parameter `-arch` to define another CPU target than the one of the host system. If only one target is defined, e.g. `"-arch ppc"` or `"-arch i386"`, GCC builds normal binaries for the specified CPU target (`libdynapdf.a` and `libdynapdf.dylib`).

If multiple targets are defined, e.g. `"-arch i386 -arch x86_64 -arch ppc -arch ppc64"`, GCC builds Universal Binaries which contain native versions for each CPU type in one file each. Which targets are supported by the resulting binaries can be checked with the command *file*.

Example:

```
file libdynapdf.a
or
file libdynapdf.dylib
```

### ***How to define the CPU target?***

The configure script of DynaPDF creates by default make files for the current CPU type. If you want to compile DynaPDF for another CPU type as described above or if you want to build Universal Binaries then you must rebuild the configure script of DynaPDF which is located in the subdirectory `/source` of the DynaPDF package. This can be done easily since all required tools are already installed on the system if you have installed the XCode package.

- Open then file `configure.in` in a text editor.
- Scroll down to the line `ARCH=""`.
- Enter the wished CPU target(s):  
e.g. `ARCH="-arch i386 -arch x86_64 -arch ppc -arch ppc64"`

- Save the file and execute the command `autoconf` without parameters. Autoconf creates now a new configure script.
- Enter `./confrel` or `./configure` to create the make files.
- Now you can enter "make install" and the library will be compiled.
- After the library was compiled enter "make clean" to delete unnecessary object files and so on, finished! Use the command *file* to check whether all targets are included in the Universal Binaries.

## Interactive Forms

DynaPDF supports a large set of functions to create and edit form fields incl. predefined actions and JavaScript actions. This section describes how an Interactive Form can be created and how certain features can be used.

### ***Field Appearance***

Interactive Form Fields support user defined background, text and border colors, as well as different border styles. These properties can be set or changed with following functions:

Global properties for new created fields:

- `Get/SetBorderStyle()` // Border style
- `Get/SetFieldBackColor()` // Background color
- `Get/SetFieldBorderColor()` // Border color
- `Get/SetColorSpace()` // Color space
- `Get/SetFieldTextColor()` // Text color
- `Get/SetLineWidth()` // Line width of the border

Functions to change the appearance of an existing field:

- `SetFieldBBox()` // Changes the field's bounding box
- `Get/SetFieldBorderStyle()` // Border style
- `Get/SetFieldBorderWidth()` // Line width of the border
- `Get/SetFieldColor()` // Background, border, or text color
- `SetFieldFontSize()` // Changes the field's font size
- `Get/SetFieldHighlightMode()` // Highlight mode

Global field appearance properties:

- `Get/SetNeedAppearance()` // See below

Other:

- `DeleteAcroForm()` // Delete the entire AcroForm
- `DeleteXFAForm()` // Delete the XFA form of a hybrid form
- `DeleteJavaScripts()` // Delete global Javascripts and JS Actions
- `LoadFDFData()` // Load form data from a FDF file

The global NeedAppearance flag of an Interactive Form defines whether the viewer should create the field appearances on demand when opening the file or whether the existing definitions should be taken from the PDF file. DynaPDF creates always appearance streams for all field types. However, in certain cases it can be useful to let the viewer render fields with their own algorithms because the exact way how Adobe's Acrobat builds the field appearances is not documented.

For example, when editing the contents of a text field in Adobe's Acrobat the viewer rebuilds first the field appearance before placing the editing cursor into the field. The new appearance created from Adobe's Acrobat can be slightly different in comparison to the one that was created by DynaPDF. The visible content, especially of text fields, is sometimes not absolutely stable.

If the NeedAppearance flag is set, the viewer uses already its own algorithms to build the field appearances when opening the file. This avoids visible changes when editing a field. However, the NeedAppearance flag must not be set to true if a form contains page templates.

### ***Important field properties when creating new fields***

The line width of the field border is derived from the current graphics state when a new field is created (see `SetLineWidth()`). No border will be drawn if either the line width is set to zero or if the border color is set to NO\_COLOR (see `SetFieldBorderColor()`). The default background color for new fields is NO\_COLOR; that means the background appears transparent. Form fields support the color spaces DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, and DeviceCMYK. The default background, border, and text color must be defined in the current color space. Note that DynaPDF does not convert the current color values if the color space will be changed.

### ***Field Properties***

Most field properties and values can be read and changed with DynaPDF. The following list gives an overview over the available functions and for what they can be used.

- `GetFieldCount()` // Number of fields in the document
- `GetFieldEx()` // Most important properties
- `GetPageFieldCount()` // Number of fields of a page
- `GetPageFieldEx()` // Same as `GetField()` but per page
- `GetFieldExpValCount()` // Number of values/export values
- `Get/SetFieldExpValue()` // Export value of a field
- `GetFieldExpValueEx()` // Value and export value pair
- `GetFieldGroupType()` // Base type of a field group
- `GetFieldType()` // Field type
- `Get/SetFieldHighlightMode()` // Field highlight mode
- `Get/SetFieldIndex()` // Index within the page field array
- `Get/SetFieldFlags()` // Field flags
- `Get/SetFieldMapName()` // Mapping name -> export name
- `Get/SetFieldName()` // Field name
- `Get/SetFieldOrientation()` // Field orientation
- `Get/SetFieldTextAlign()` // Text alignment of a text field
- `Get/SetFieldToolTip()` // Tool tip or field description
- `Get/SetTextFieldValue()` // Text field value or default value

[GetField\(\)](#) is the most important function to retrieve field properties. Fields can be accessed via the global handle or via the index within the field array of the current page.

### ***What is a Group Type?***

The field type `ftGroup` is used for different purposes depending on how fields are organized. A normal group field is used to create a logical hierarchy or group of fields but group fields are also used to create a so called “Field Group”.

A normal group field is a set of fields which use a parent field of type `ftGroup` to archive a logical hierarchy, e.g. `Address.Street`, `Address.Country`, and so on. The field and group type of the parent group field are both set to `ftGroup` in this case.

One important thing must be considered when accessing children of a group field: The group field does not occur in the field array of a page; it is only available in the global `AcroForm` field array. So, while [GetFieldEx\(\)](#) returns the entire field array including group fields [GetPageFieldEx\(\)](#) returns never group fields! The parent group field can be accessed with the Parent handle of the children in this case.

The second usage of a group field is to archive a so called “Field Group”. A Field Group is an array of fields of the same type which share the same name and value. Such fields are internally organized into a special kind of group field which holds the field name and value, as well as other properties which can be shared among the group.

The children of a Field Group have no name. So, if a field contains no name then you can already assume that it is part of a Field Group because the field name is required to be present otherwise. Children of a Field Group contain always the handle to the parent group field. The field type of this group field is set to `ftGroup` as usual but the group type is set to a field type other than `ftGroup` (see [GetFieldGroupType\(\)](#)).

The unambiguous test whether a group field is an ordinary group field or a terminal field of a Field Group is to compare the group type with the field type. If the group type is something else than `ftGroup` then this is a terminal field of a Field Group.

In this case the field contains the field name of the children as well as the field value, default value, and tooltip. The field flags, background, border and text color, border width, and the border style are inherited from the terminal field but can be overridden by the children.

Please note that Adobe’s Designer creates mostly Field Groups also if only one child is part of the group.

When changing a value or property of a Field Group there is nothing special that must be considered. DynaPDF sets the wished value or property automatically to the right field.

## ***How to change the tabulator order?***

A page which contains form fields contains internally an array of fields which represents the tabulator order. New fields are added to the array in the order in which they are created. To enable the definition of an arbitrary tabulator order, each form field holds an index variable which can be used to sort the fields.

The indexes of new or imported fields of a page start always at 1000. This makes it easier to move a field to the beginning of the array. The field index can be set to any value, but no field of a page must use the same index as another one on the same page. When all indexes are set, the fields must be sorted so that the new tabulator order can be applied. To sort the fields by their index values (in ascending order) call the function `SortFieldsByIndex()` within the open page, finished!

The second way to create a specific tabulator order is to sort the fields by their field names. The fields must still be sorted on a per page basis because the tab order is no global property. To sort the fields by name call the function `SortFieldsByName()` within the open page, finished!

However, sorting fields by their name is not always possible because not all fields have a name. For example, the checkboxes which are part of a radio button field have no name. Sorting such fields by name is not meaningful, the result is undefined.

## ***Field Names***

Interactive Form Fields are identified over the field name in a viewer application. A field name is an ANSI string that should be human readable. All characters within the ANSI character set can be used within a field name, except characters below the character index 32 and the period character (.).

A field name should also not end with a space character because Adobe's Acrobat is then sometimes unable to access such a field with a JavaScript Action or function.

The period (.) is a reserved character; it is used to build the fully qualified field name in a viewer application. The fully qualified field name is constructed from the partial field name of the field and all of its ancestors. For a field with no parent group field, the partial and fully qualified names are the same. For a field that is the child of another field, the fully qualified name is formed by appending the child field's partial name to the parent's fully qualified name, separated by a period. That is why the period character cannot be used in field names.

## ***Fields with identical names***

It is possible to create two or more fields of the same type which use all the same name. Such fields contain always the same value if the value of one field of the group is changed.

Fields with identical names are internally represented as a special type of field group, which is automatically created by DynaPDF. This makes the handling more complicated because the

children of such a group do not contain a field name. The name is set to the parent's group field but not to the children of the group. This can normally be ignored but when enumerating fields with [GetField\(\)](#) or [GetPageField\(\)](#) you must consider that not all fields contain a name, the parent field's handle is set instead.

However, with the exception described above, field names must be unique within the hierarchy in which they appear. This is especially important when multiple Interactive Forms are imported.

When importing multiple Interactive Forms it is highly recommended to check for invalid duplicate field names. This can be done with the function [CheckFieldNames\(\)](#). The function returns the handle of the first field which contains a field name that is already in use. You can then change the field name with [SetFieldName\(\)](#) and execute [CheckFieldNames\(\)](#) again until all invalid field names are changed.

After changing a field name you must also check whether the field is used within a JavaScript Action or function. Such scripts must be changed so that they do not become invalid. Due to the possible references of fields within JavaScript functions and Actions, merging of Interactive Forms is very complicated and should be avoided whenever possible.



## Digital Signatures

A digital signature (PDF 1.3) can be used to authenticate the identity of a user and the document's contents. It stores information about the signer and the state of the document when it was signed. Once a PDF file was digitally signed it is impossible to change the file without invalidating the signature. Because of this, it is always possible to check whether a document has been changed or not.

Depending on the Acrobat version certain signature handlers are supported by Adobe's Acrobat. DynaPDF supports the PPKLite security handler which is supported since Acrobat 4.0.

### ***Supported Certificate Formats***

DynaPDF supports internal and external signatures. When using the internal signature handler of DynaPDF then you need a PKCS#12 certificate file. Certificates are available in different file formats and different encryption key lengths; DynaPDF supports certificates in the file format PKCS#12 with 1024 bit RSA encrypted private/public key pairs. This format is widely used and the default format under Windows. A PKCS#12 certificate contains the public and private key which is required to sign a PDF file. Acrobat 6 and higher versions support encryption key lengths from 1024 bits up to 4096 bits. However, the internal signature handler of DynaPDF supports 1024 bit RSA encrypted private keys only. Note that the private key is only required to sign a document; it is of course **NOT** stored in the PDF file.

When using an external signature handler like the Windows CryptAPI, PKCS#12 certificate files are no longer required but can of course still be used. It is possible to sign the PDF file with any certificate that is installed in systems certificate store, including hardware certificates. See External Signatures below.

### ***External Signatures***

DynaPDF provides also functions to digitally sign a PDF file with an external signature handler or cryptographic library, e.g. with the Windows CryptAPI. This enables the usage of arbitrary certificates of the systems certificate store. This makes it also possible to sign the PDF file with a hardware certificate such as a smart card, USB stick, or something similar. See [CloseAndSignFileExt\(\)](#) for further information.

### ***How to export a Windows Certificate?***

To export a Windows certificate proceed as follows (description for Windows 2000): open the control panel and double click on the icon "Internet Options". Click on the tab "Contents" and then on the button "Certificates...". Select a certificate from the list and click on the button "Export...". The option "Export private key" must be selected (this option is not available if a certificate contains no private key). The private key is required; certificates without a private key cannot be used to sign PDF files. On the next dialog you must enter a password to encrypt

the private key; this password must later be passed to the function [CloseAndSignFile\(\)](#) or [CloseAndSignFileEx\(\)](#) if the file should also be encrypted. Enter now the file name and path of the certificate file, finished! The result is a certificate file with the extension \*.pfx, this file can now be used to digitally sign PDF files.

### ***Importing signed PDF files***

Signed PDF files can only be changed, without invalidating an existing signature, when changes are stored with an incremental update. An incremental update is a special way to modify a PDF file; changes are appended to the end of the file, leaving its original contents intact. This technique is required since altering any existing bytes in the file invalidates existing signatures.

However, incremental updates are not supported by DynaPDF that is the reason why only empty signature fields can be imported. Because DynaPDF creates always a completely new PDF file, it makes no sense to import existing signatures, they would always become invalid.

### ***How to sign a PDF file?***

Signing a PDF file with the internal signature handler of DynaPDF is quite easy; all you need is a PKCS#12 certificate file. Instead of calling the function [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [CloseFileEx\(\)](#) after the document was created, call either [CloseAndSignFile\(\)](#) or [CloseAndSignFileEx\(\)](#) if the file should also be encrypted, finished! A digital signature is always stored in a signature field. If no signature field was created beforehand, DynaPDF creates an invisible signature field on the first page and stores the signature in this field.

If the PDF file should be signed with an external signature handler call [CloseAndSignFileExt\(\)](#), sign the provided hash or byte ranges, and finally finish the signature with [FinishSignature\(\)](#) to insert the signed PKCS#7 object into the PDF file.

### ***How to create a signature field?***

As mentioned above, the function [CloseAndSignFile\(\)](#) or [CloseAndSignFileEx\(\)](#) creates an invisible signature field on the first page if no signature field was already created or imported beforehand. If the signature field should be visible, just create one with the function [CreateSigField\(\)](#) on the page where the field should appear. If multiple signature fields exist, DynaPDF uses the last signature field to sign the PDF file.

### ***How to modify the appearance of a signature field?***

The appearance of a signature field can be fully user defined. The function [CreateSigFieldAP\(\)](#) can be used to create a user defined signature appearance template. You can draw anything you want into this template such as images, vector graphics, text, and it is also possible to import a PDF page into or to draw an EMF file into the template.

### ***What is stored in a signature field?***

When signing a PDF file with the internal signature handler, DynaPDF creates a signature object that contains the file's signature and a PKCS#1 certificate that was extracted from the PKCS#12 certificate. The difference between both certificate types is that a PKCS#1 certificate contains no private key.

A viewer application validates the signature by using the public key that is stored in the PKCS#1 certificate object. Because the private key is not stored in the PDF file it is impossible to sign other PDF files with the certificate that can be extracted from the PDF file.

When signing the file with an external signature handler a PKCS#7 signature object will be stored in the PDF file. This is just another signature format that contains of course no private key too.

### ***How to validate a signature?***

Acrobat validates signatures from unknown certificates not automatically. The certificate must first be added to the list of trusted identities. Once a certificate was added to the list of trusted identities, signatures of other documents which use the same certificate will be automatically validated.

## PDF/A and PDF/X Compatibility

PDF files can be created for different purposes such as printing, publishing, or archiving which have all their own requirements. Due to these different requirements two separate PDF standards were defined by the ISO Committee, PDF/X and PDF/A.

### **PDF/X**

The PDF/X-1a standard addresses blind exchanges where all files should be delivered in CMYK (and/or spot colors), with no RGB or device independent (color-managed) data. This is a common requirement in many areas around the world and in many print sectors – usually tied to an environment where the file supplier wants to retain maximum control of the print job.

PDF/X 3 is like PDF/X 1a an ISO standard for graphic content exchange. The main difference is that PDF/X 3 allows the use of color management and device-independent color in addition to CMYK and spot colors.

The PDF/X standard requires all fonts to be embedded, the appropriate PDF bounding boxes to be specified, and color to appear as CMYK, spot colors, or both. In addition, PDF/X compliant PDF files must contain information describing the printing condition for which they are prepared (see [AddRenderingIntent\(\)](#)).

When creating PDF/X compliant files with DynaPDF you need to know that DynaPDF does not check whether certain features are allowed to use in the selected PDF/X standard. DynaPDF simply writes the required PDF/X key to the file which tells the viewer application that this file is compliant to a specific PDF/X version. Whether this is true or not depends on whether you used allowed features only and whether all required information were added to the file, e.g. the rendering intent (see [AddRenderingIntent\(\)](#)), the document title (see [SetDocInfo\(\)](#)) and the trim box for each page (see [SetBBox\(\)](#)). It is usually best to check the resulting PDF file with a preflight tool before using certain features in a production environment.

However, it is not very difficult to create PDF/X compliant PDF files. The main recommendation is that all fonts are embedded, that at the least the trim box for all pages are set, and that colors are defined in the color space DeviceCMYK (see [SetColorSpace\(\)](#)). In addition, an ICC profile must be embedded in the file (see [AddRenderingIntent\(\)](#)) and images must not be compressed with JPEG2000 compression.

The wished output PDF version must be set with [SetPDFVersion\(\)](#).

Example (C++):

```
// Error callback function.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMsg, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMsg);
    return -1; // We break processing if an error occurs
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return 2; // Out of memory?

    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:/cppout.pdf");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diCreator, "C++ Example project");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diTitle, "PDF/X Compatibility");

    pdfAppend(pdf);
    // Just set the trim box to the same value as the media box if no
    // better value is known.
    TPDFRect b;
    pdfGetBBox(pdf, pbMediaBox, b);
    pdfSetBBox(pdf, pbTrimBox, b.Left, b.Bottom, b.Right, b.Top);

    // The font must be embedded (this should always be the case)
    pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsItalic, 20.0, true, cp1252);
    pdfSetColorSpace(pdf, csDeviceCMYK);
    pdfSetFillColor(pdf, PDF_CMYK(0, 0, 0, 255));
    pdfWriteFText(pdf, taCenter,
        "A very simple PDF/X compliant PDF file...");
    pdfEndPage(pdf);
    // The PDF version should be set before the file is closed because
    // it can be changed when importing a PDF file.
    pdfSetPDFVersion(pdf, pvPDFX1a_2001);
    pdfAddRenderingIntent(pdf,
        "c:/WINNT/System32/spool/drivers/color/USWebCoatedSWOP.icc");
    pdfCloseFile(pdf);

    pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
    return 0;
}
```

## PDF/A

PDF/A is an ISO standard for long-term preservation. These files are primarily used for archiving. PDF/A compliant files can contain text, raster images, vector graphics, as well as annotations, hyperlinks, or bookmarks.

However, PDF/A compliant files must not contain JavaScripts or an Interactive Form. In addition, all fonts must be embedded and PDF/A compliant files must contain information describing the printing condition for which they are prepared (see [AddRenderingIntent\(\)](#)). The output intent can be either CMYK or RGB based. However, only one device color space can be used in a document with the exception that DeviceGray can be combined with RGB or CMYK color spaces.

When creating PDF/A compatible files with DynaPDF it is important to know that DynaPDF does not automatically check whether certain features are allowed to use. DynaPDF writes simply the required PDF/A key to the file which tells the viewer application that the file is compatible to PDF/A 1a:2005 or PDF/A 1b:2005. Whether this is true or not depends on whether no prohibited features were used and whether all required information were added to the file, e.g. the rendering intent.

However, DynaPDF contains the function [CheckConformance\(\)](#) to check and convert non-conformant PDF files to PDF/A 1b. The function was originally developed for the most powerful PDF to PDF/A converter [myPDFConvert](#) powered by the [DETEC GmbH](#) in Germany.

All DynaPDF versions provide a restricted version of [CheckConformance\(\)](#) that does not convert imported PDF files to PDF/A. The conversion of imported PDF files is possible if DynaPDF was licensed with the PDF/A Extension Kit.

[CheckConformance\(\)](#) is a very good helper function to get your PDF file fully PDF/A 1b compatible. [CheckConformance\(\)](#) is not a preflight function, it automatically adjusts anything that is possible to get the file PDF/A 1b compatible. The function supports a large set of flags to specify what should be done if prohibited features were found in the file. Take a look into the function description for further information.

### Example (C++):

```
// Error callback function.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMsg, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMsg);
    // We do not break processing if an error occurs. However, if the
    // file was fully created with DynaPDF we should not receive any
    // warning or other errors.
    return 0;
}
```

```

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    SI32 retval;
    char outFile[] = "c:/cppout.pdf";
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return 2; // Out of memory?
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, PDFError);
    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, NULL); // The output file is opened later
    pdfAppend(pdf);
    // The font must be embedded (this should always be the case).
    pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsItalic, 20.0, true, cp1252);
    pdfWriteFText(pdf, taCenter, "A very simple PDF/A 1b file...");
    pdfEndPage(pdf);
    // Check whether the file is compatible to PDF/A 1b
    retval = pdfCheckConformance(pdf, ctPDF_A_1b_2005, 0, NULL, NULL, NULL);
    switch(retval)
    {
        case 1: pdfAddRenderingIntent(pdf, "sRGB.icc"); break; // RGB
        case 2: pdfAddRenderingIntent(pdf, "CMYK.icc"); break; // CMYK
        case 3: pdfAddRenderingIntent(pdf, "sRGB.icc"); break; // Gray
        default: break;
    }
    // Note: CheckConformance() raises a fatal exception if the file
    // cannot be converted to PDF/A 1b. We check first whether a PDF
    // file is still in memory before we try to open the output file.
    if (pdfHaveOpenDoc(pdf))
    {
        if (!pdfOpenOutputFile(pdf, outFile))
        {
            pdfFreePDF(pdf);
            return -1;
        }
        retval = pdfCloseFile(pdf);
    }
    pdfCloseFile(pdf);
    pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
    return retval;
}

```

DeviceGray is the only device color space that can be combined with RGB or CMYK color spaces. Because special DeviceGray ICC color profiles are rarely available you can safely use a RGB or CMYK ICC profile instead.

## Path Painting and Construction

A vector graphics in PDF consists of paths. A path can be used to draw something on screen or to clip a specific area. A path itself is invisible until it was filled, stroked, or both. In addition, clipping and path painting operators can be combined, e.g. a clipping path can again be stroked or filled.

### Notice:

Although the combination of clipping and path painting operators is supported in all PDF versions, not all viewer applications support this operator combination. To avoid unnecessary problems paths should be clipped and painted in two separate steps, also if the same path must be output twice in this case.

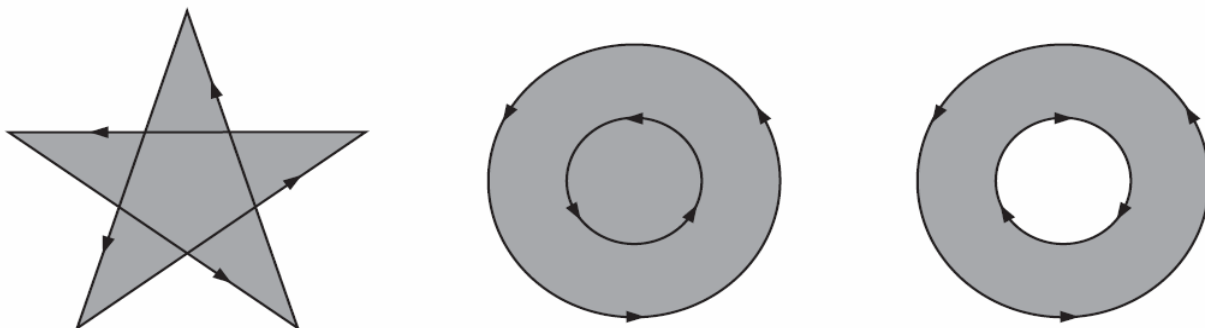
When working with paths two specific rendering techniques should be known to understand for what certain path painting operators are useful:

### ***Nonzero Winding Number Rule***

The *nonzero winding number rule* determines whether a given point is inside a path by conceptually drawing a ray from that point to infinity in any direction and then examining the places where a segment of the path crosses the ray. Starting with a count of 0, the rule adds 1 each time a path segment crosses the ray from left to right and subtracts 1 each time a segment crosses from right to left. After counting all the crossings, if the result is 0 then the point is outside the path; otherwise it is inside.

**Note:** *The method just described does not specify what to do if a path segment coincides with or is tangent to the chosen ray. Since the direction of the ray is arbitrary, the rule simply chooses a ray that does not encounter such problem intersections.*

For simple convex paths, the nonzero winding number rule defines the inside and outside as one would intuitively expect. The more interesting cases are those involving complex or self-intersecting paths like the ones shown in Figure below. For a path consisting of a five-pointed star, drawn with five connected straight line segments intersecting each other, the rule considers the inside to be the entire area enclosed by the star, including the pentagon in the center.





For a path composed of two concentric circles, the areas enclosed by both circles are considered to be inside, provided that both are drawn in the same direction. If the circles are drawn in opposite directions, only the "doughnut" shape between them is inside, according to the rule; the "doughnut hole" is outside (the draw direction for closed shapes can be changed with the property [Get/SetDrawDirection\(\)](#)).

### **Even-Odd Rule**

An alternative to the nonzero winding number rule is the even-odd rule. This rule determines the "insideness" of a point by drawing a ray from that point in any direction and simply counting the number of path segments that cross the ray. If this number is odd, the point is inside; if even, the point is outside. This yields the same results as the nonzero winding number rule for paths with simple shapes, but produces different results for more complex shapes.

The Figure below shows the effects of applying the even-odd rule to complex paths. For the five-pointed star, the rule considers the triangular points to be inside the path, but not the pentagon in the center. For the two concentric circles, only the "doughnut" shape between the two circles is considered inside, regardless of the directions in which the circles are drawn.



The rules described above are applied on vector graphics and clipping paths. DynaPDF supports three basic functions to fill, stroke, or to mark a given path as clipping path. A clipping path can in turn be filled, stroked, or both.

The basic path operating functions are:

- `ClosePath()`
- `ClipPath()`
- `StrokePath()`

`ClosePath()` and `ClipPath()` support a large set of path painting operators. Let us take a look at the available path painting constants:

```
typedef enum
{
    // Nonzero Winding Number Rule
    fmFillNoClose,
```

```

fmStrokeNoClose,
fmFillStrokeNoClose,
fmFill,
fmStroke,
fmFillStroke,
// Even-Odd Rule
fmFillEvOdd,
fmFillStrokeEvOdd,
fmFillEvOddNoClose,
fmFillStrokeEvOddNoClose,
fmNoFill,                // Special meaning see below
fmClose                  // Close the path
}TPathFillMode;

```

The constant `fmNoFill` produces different results when using it with a function that produces a closed shape like `Rectangle()`, `Ellipse()` and so on, or when using it with `ClosePath()` or `ClipPath()`.

Within `ClipPath()` the constant has the meaning, do neither fill or stroke the clipping path, just create the clipping area.

Within `ClosePath()` the constant can be used to discard the previously drawn path. The path in memory will be deleted and nothing will be written to the PDF file.

Within `Rectangle()`, `Ellipse()` and so on, the constant closes the path, the result is exactly the same as if `fmClose` would be used.

Let us now take a look on the different path painting rules.

If we draw two rectangles in the same draw direction the result is different depending on the used filling rule:

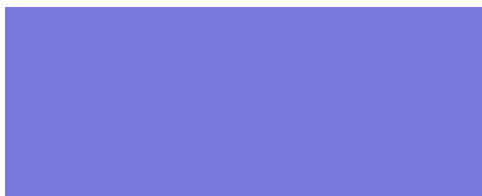
```

...
pdfSetFillColor(pdf, PDF_RGB(120, 120, 220));
pdfRectangle(pdf, 50.0, 50.0, 250.0, 100.0, fmNoFill);
pdfRectangle(pdf, 70.0, 70.0, 210.0, 60.0, fmNoFill);
pdfClosePath(pdf, fmFill); // Non-Zero Winding Number
...

```

Output:

Winding (fmFill):



Even Odd (fmFillEvOdd):



If we change the draw direction of the second rectangle to `ddClockwise` (default is `ddCounterClockwise`) then we get the same result as with Even Odd:

```
...
pdfSetFillColor(pdf, PDF_RGB(120, 120, 220));
pdfRectangle(pdf, 50.0, 50.0, 250.0, 100.0, fmNoFill);
pdfSetDrawDirection(pdf, ddClockwise); // Change the draw direction
pdfRectangle(pdf, 70.0, 70.0, 210.0, 60.0, fmNoFill);
pdfClosePath(pdf, fmFill); // Non-Zero Winding Number
...
```

Output:

Winding (fmFill):



Even Odd (fmFillEvOdd):



The filling rules work also with clipping paths and more complex paths:

```
#include "dynapdf.h"
// First we declare our error callback function
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMessage, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMessage); return 0;
}

void DrawPath(const void* PDF, double x, double y, TClippingMode Mode,
TDrawDirection Direction, UI32 Color)
{
    pdfSaveGraphicState(PDF);
    pdfSetFillColor(PDF, Color);
    pdfTriangle(PDF, x+100, y+50, x+150, y+150, x+50, y+150, fmNoFill);
    pdfSetDrawDirection(PDF, Direction);
    pdfTriangle(PDF, x+100, y+180, x+50, y+80, x+150, y+80, fmNoFill);
    pdfClipPath(PDF, Mode, fmFillStroke);
    pdfSetFont(PDF, "Arial", fsBold | fsItalic, 40, true, cp1252);
    pdfSetFillColor(PDF, 0);
    pdfWriteText(PDF, x+50, y+90, "CLIPPING");
    pdfRestoreGraphicState(PDF);
}

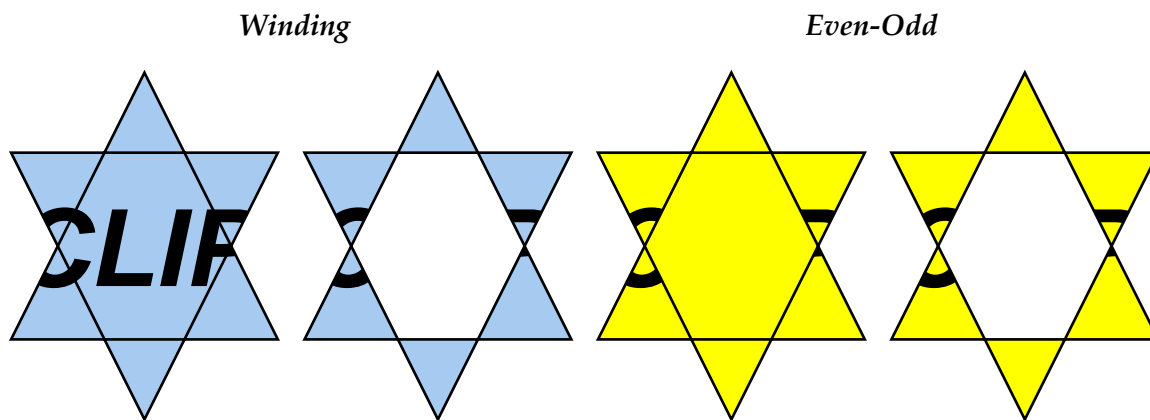
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return 2;

```

```

pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diAuthor, "Jens Boschulte");
pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diCreator, "C sample project");
pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diSubject, "How to use clipping paths");
pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diTitle, "Clipping paths");
pdfSetViewerPreferences(pdf, vpDisplayDocTitle, avNone);
pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:/cppout.pdf");
pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);
pdfAppend(pdf);
// Nonzero Winding Number Rule
DrawPath(pdf, 0, 0, cmWinding, ddCounterClockwise, PDF_SKYBLUE);
DrawPath(pdf, 110, 0, cmWinding, ddClockwise, PDF_SKYBLUE);
// Even Odd Rule
DrawPath(pdf, 220, 0, cmEvenOdd, ddCounterClockwise, PDF_YELLOW);
DrawPath(pdf, 330, 0, cmEvenOdd, ddClockwise, PDF_YELLOW);
pdfEndPage(pdf);
pdfCloseFile(pdf);
pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
}

```



A clipping path is part of the graphics state. The only way to disable a clipping path is to restore the graphics state. If the graphics state was not saved beforehand it is impossible to deactivate the clipping region.

If a second clipping path is drawn while another one is still active then it will be intersected with the current clipping path. The clipping area of the intersected clipping paths is never larger than the initial clipping path.

## Color Spaces

DynaPDF supports all color spaces defined in PDF 1.7. This section describes how color spaces can be created and used with DynaPDF.

Color spaces in PDF can be divided into 3 types:

- Device color spaces such as DeviceRGB, DeviceCMYK, and DeviceGray.
- Device independent color spaces such as CalGray, CalRGB, Lab, and ICCBased. All these color spaces are CIE based color spaces. The ICCBased color space is a special case of a CIE based color space; it uses a color profile to convert colors into the destination space.
- Special color spaces like Indexed, Separation, DeviceN, or NChannel. Pattern is also a special color space but not listed here because DynaPDF uses separate functions to create and apply pattern color spaces.

### ***Device Color Spaces***

The device color spaces enable a page description to specify color values that are directly related to their representation on an output device. Color values in these spaces map directly (or by simple conversions) to the application of device colorants, such as quantities of ink or intensities of display phosphors. This enables a PDF document to control colors precisely for a particular device, but the results may not be consistent from one device to another.

Device color spaces are supported within page descriptions and for interactive objects like annotations and form fields. While form fields support all three available device color spaces, annotations support DeviceRGB only. This behavior must be taken into account when creating such objects. The use of an unsupported color space results in an error and the wished object is not created.

The use of device color spaces is very easy because no creation of a color space object is required before such a color space can be used. All three device color spaces can be set directly with the functions [SetColorSpace\(\)](#), [SetFillColorSpace\(\)](#), and [SetStrokeColorSpace\(\)](#).

Once the color space was set the functions [SetFillColor\(\)](#), [SetStrokeColor\(\)](#), or [SetColors\(\)](#) accept color values of the particular color space:

- DeviceGray controls the intensity of achromatic light, on a scale from black to white. It ranges from 0 to 255 inclusive.
- DeviceRGB controls the intensities of red, green, and blue light, the three additive primary colors used in displays. RGB colors can be created with the macro `PDF_RGB()` or with comparable functions like `rgb()` which are available in most programming languages. See also [Color Values](#).
- DeviceCMYK controls the concentrations of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black inks, the four subtractive process colors used in printing. CMYK colors can be created with the macro

PDF\_CMYK() or with the function CMYK() defined in the DynaPDF interfaces for the used programming language. See also [Color Values](#).

Device color spaces can be set directly with the functions [SetColorSpace\(\)](#), [SetFillColorSpace\(\)](#), and [SetStrokeColorSpace\(\)](#).

## ***Device Independent Color Spaces***

Calibrated color in PDF is defined in terms of an international standard used in the graphic arts, television, and printing industries. CIE-based color spaces enable a page description to specify color values in a way that is related to human visual perception. The goal is for the same color specification to produce consistent results on different output devices, within the limitations of each device. PDF 1.1 supports three CIE-based color space families, named CalGray, CalRGB, and Lab; PDF 1.3 adds a fourth, named ICCBased.

While CalGray, CalRGB, or Lab use relatively simple formulas to convert colors into a device color space, an ICCBased color space uses a color profile instead. A color profile offers much more control over the color conversion process to match the characteristics of an output device precisely.

Device independent color spaces require a color space object that must be created before the color space can be used:

- [CreateCIEColorSpace\(\)](#) creates a CalGray, CalRGB, or Lab color space.
- [CreateICCBasedColorSpace\(\)](#) creates an ICCBased color space.

The functions above return a color space handle on success which is required to set the color space with [SetExtColorSpace\(\)](#). Color values for CIE based color spaces can be created in the very same way as for device color spaces (see previous section) with the exception of Lab colors which require a special treatment depending on the used programming language (see [CreateCIEColorSpace\(\)](#) for further information).

## ***Special Color Spaces***

Special color spaces add features or properties to an underlying color space. There are four special color space families: Pattern, Indexed, Separation, and DeviceN. The Pattern color space is not described here since DynaPDF provides separate functions to create and apply pattern color spaces (see [BeginPattern\(\)](#) for further information).

### ***Indexed Color Space***

An Indexed color space allows a PDF content stream to use small integers as indices into a color map or color table of arbitrary colors in some other space. A PDF consumer application treats each sample value as an index into the color table and uses the color value it finds there. Indexed color spaces are mostly used to reduce the amount of data for sampled images. The usage within a page description is possible but there is normally no advantage to do so. DynaPDF creates indexed color spaces for sampled images automatically if the original data was organized in this way.

However, it is also possible to create an Indexed color space manually and to apply it to an image. This can be useful if a DeviceN color space should be used for an image, e.g. to create a duotone image. An Indexed color space can be used for images with a color depth of 1, 2, 4, or 8 bits with or without a color table. An already existing color table stored in the image file will be replaced with the one of the Indexed color space.

DynaPDF assigns an indexed color space to an image if the graphics state flag `gfUseImageColorSpace` is not set (see [SetGStateFlags\(\)](#)) and if an indexed color space is active when inserting the image.

The color table of the Indexed color space should contain  $2^{\text{BitDepth}}$  color values. It is allowed to use a color table with less colors but this is bad practice and should be avoided.

An indexed color space can be created with the function [CreateIndexedColorSpace\(\)](#) and must be set with [SetExtColorSpace\(\)](#). If you want to use the color space for vector graphics or texts pass the wished index to [SetFillColor\(\)](#), [SetStrokeColor\(\)](#), or [SetColors\(\)](#). The color table is zero based; index 0 refers to the first color; `NumColors - 1` refers to the last color in the table. An Indexed color space can contain up to 256 color values.

### ***Separation Color Space***

Color output devices produce full color by combining primary or process colorants in varying amounts. On an additive color device such as a display, the primary colorants consist of red, green, and blue phosphors; on a subtractive device such as a printer, they typically consist of cyan, magenta, yellow, and sometimes black inks. In addition, some devices can apply special colorants, often called spot colorants, to produce effects that cannot be achieved with the standard process colorants alone. Examples include metallic and fluorescent colors and special textures.

When printing a page, most devices produce a single composite page on which all process colorants (and spot colorants, if any) are combined. However, some devices, such as imagesetters, produce a separate, monochromatic rendition of the page, called a separation, for each colorant. When the separations are later combined - on a printing press, for example - and the proper inks or other colorants are applied to them, the result is a full-color page.

A Separation color space (PDF 1.2) provides a means for specifying the use of additional colorants or for isolating the control of individual color components of a device color space for a subtractive device. When such a space is the current color space, the current color is a single-component value, called a tint, that controls the application of the given colorant or color components only.

A color value in a Separation color space consists of a single tint component in the range 0 to 255. The value 0 represents the minimum amount of colorant that can be applied; 255 represents the maximum. Tints are always treated as subtractive colors, even if the device produces output for the designated component by an additive method. Thus, a tint value of 0 denotes the lightest color that can be achieved with the given colorant, and 255 is the darkest. This convention is the same as for DeviceCMYK color components but opposite to the one for DeviceGray and DeviceRGB.

If the colorant name associated with a Separation color space does not correspond to a colorant available on the device, the application arranges for subsequent painting operations to be performed in an alternate color space. The intended colors can be approximated by colors in a device or CIE-based color space, which are then rendered with the usual primary or process colorants.

The alternate color space is a required parameter of the function [CreateSeparationCS\(\)](#). Therefore, if a CIE based color space should be used as alternate color space then this color space must be created before the Separation color space.

Once the color space was created it can be set with [SetExtColorSpace\(\)](#).

A Separation color space can be applied to vector graphics and images with a color depth of 1, 2, 4, or 8 bits. See also [Color Spaces and Images](#).

### ***DeviceN Color Space***

DeviceN color spaces (PDF 1.3) can contain up to 32 color components. They provide greater flexibility than is possible with standard device color spaces such as DeviceCMYK or with individual Separation color spaces. For example, it is possible to create a DeviceN color space consisting of only the cyan, magenta, and yellow color components, with the black component excluded.

DeviceN color spaces are used in applications such as these:

- High-fidelity color is the use of more than the standard CMYK process colorants to produce an extended gamut, or range of colors. A popular example is the PANTONE Hexachrome system, which uses six colorants: the usual cyan, magenta, yellow, and black, plus orange and green.
- Multitone color systems use a single-component image to specify multiple color components. In a duotone, for example, a single-component image can be used to specify both the black component and a spot color component. The tone reproduction is generally different for the different components. For example, the black component might be painted with the exact sample data from the single-component image; the spot color component might be generated as a nonlinear function of the image data in a manner that emphasizes the shadows.

DeviceN was designed to represent color spaces containing multiple components that correspond to colorants of some target device. As with Separation color spaces, PDF consumer applications must be able to approximate the colorants if they are not available on the current output device, such as a display. To accomplish this, the color space definition provides a tint transformation function that can be used to convert all the components to an alternate color space.

While the transformation function is automatically created for a Separation color space this is not possible for DeviceN color spaces. The transformation function consists always of a Postscript Calculator Function and it is a required parameter of the function [CreateDeviceNColorSpace\(\)](#).

Note that the alternate color space is a required parameter too. Therefore, if a CIE based color space should be used as an alternate color space then this color space must be created before the DeviceN color space can be created.



Once the color space was created it can be set with [SetExtColorSpace\(\)](#). Colors of a DeviceN color space should be set with [SetFillColorEx\(\)](#) or [SetStrokeColorEx\(\)](#) because these functions accept up to 32 color channels.

A DeviceN color space can be applied to text, vector graphics and images with a color depth of 1, 2, 4, or 8 bits, and in addition to images with up to 32 color channels using 8 bits per component. See Color Spaces and Images below and [CreateDeviceNColorSpace\(\)](#).

## Color Spaces and Images

All color spaces can be used with text, vector graphics, and images. While the usage with text and vector graphics requires no further considerations the usage with images is more complicated.

Prior versions of DynaPDF supported device color spaces only and due to this limitation images were always converted to the nearest device color space that was active when inserting an image. This default conversion is not optimal if the original image is defined in a device independent color space. However, in certain circumstances it's a nice to have feature, especially when creating PDF/X-1a compatible PDF files (this standard prohibits the usage of device independent color spaces).

To preserve backward compatibility the following default rules apply depending on the active device color space (the color conversion rules can be modified, see below):

Active color space	Description
DeviceGray	Images defined in another color space are converted to DeviceGray. 1 bit images are always left unchanged.
DeviceRGB	Images defined in a color space with 3 or more color components are converted to DeviceRGB. 1 channel images are converted to DeviceGray. 1 bit images are left unchanged.
DeviceCMYK	Images defined in a 3 channel color space are converted to DeviceCMYK. This conversion is applied to preserve backward compatibility. 1 channel images are converted to DeviceGray. 1 bit images are left unchanged.

## Handling of non-device color spaces

Non-device color spaces can be used to replace an image color space with the active color space. The active color space and the image color space must be compatible. For example, a Lab color space cannot be replaced with a CalRGB color space because this would require a physical conversion of the pixel data. The source and destination color space must contain the same number of color components. If the active color space is not compatible to the image color space DynaPDF reports an error and the image is not inserted.

The following rules apply only if the flag [gfUseImageColorSpace](#) is **not** set (default). See [SetGStateFlags\(\)](#) for further information.

Active color space	Description				
CalGray	The color space can be set to 1 channel images without a color table. The image data should be defined in a color depth of 1 or 8 bits per pixel. Color depths of 2 or 4 bits are unusual and maybe not supported in all versions of Adobe's Acrobat or on the output device. Consider the <a href="#">special treatment of 1 bit images</a> .				
CalRGB	The image color space can be any 3 channel color space with exception of Lab.				
ICCBased	The image color space and the input color space of the corresponding ICC profile must be compatible.				
Indexed	The color space can be set to 1 channel images with or without a color table. An already existing color table in the image file will be replaced. Consider the <a href="#">special treatment of 1 bit images</a> .				
Separation	The color space can be set to 1 channel images without a color table. The image data should be defined in a color depth of 1 or 8 bits per pixel. Color depths of 2 or 4 bits are unusual and maybe not supported in all versions of Adobe's Acrobat or on the output device. 1 channel images without a color table are normally defined in DeviceGray or CalGray but these color spaces are additive color spaces while Separation is a subtractive color space. To get an image in a compatible range DynaPDF inverts the pixel data. This behaviour must be taken into account when creating images for a Separation color space. Consider also the <a href="#">special treatment of 1 bit images</a> .				
DeviceN	<p>The supported bit depths and image color spaces depend on the number of color components defined in the DeviceN color space and which function is used to insert the image. The default function to insert images defined in a DeviceN color space is <a href="#">InsertRawImage()</a>. This function supports images with up to 32 color channels.</p> <p>However, it is also possible to exchange the color space of arbitrary images with a DeviceN color space. The following sub clauses describe the handling if the image is loaded from an arbitrary image file with <a href="#">InsertImage()</a>, <a href="#">InsertImageEx()</a>, or <a href="#">InsertImageFromBuffer()</a>.</p> <p>Images with less than 4 color channels will be inverted because DeviceN is a subtractive color space and images with less than 4 color components are defined in an additive color space in normal image files.</p> <table> <tr> <th>Num Comp.</th><th>Supported image formats</th></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>The image can be any 1 channel image without a color table. However, the image data should be defined in a color depth of 1 or 8 bits per pixel. Color depths of 2 or 4 bits are unusual and maybe not supported in all versions of Adobe's Acrobat or on the output device.</td></tr> </table>	Num Comp.	Supported image formats	1	The image can be any 1 channel image without a color table. However, the image data should be defined in a color depth of 1 or 8 bits per pixel. Color depths of 2 or 4 bits are unusual and maybe not supported in all versions of Adobe's Acrobat or on the output device.
Num Comp.	Supported image formats				
1	The image can be any 1 channel image without a color table. However, the image data should be defined in a color depth of 1 or 8 bits per pixel. Color depths of 2 or 4 bits are unusual and maybe not supported in all versions of Adobe's Acrobat or on the output device.				

2	DeviceN color spaces with 2 color components can be used with 1 bit images without a color table.
3	The image color space can be any 3 channel color space with exception of Lab.
4	The image data must be defined in DeviceCMYK.
up to 32	Images with more than 4 color components are supported by <a href="#">InsertRawImage()</a> only.

### ***Special treatment of 1 bit images***

1 bit images without a color table are treated as an image mask if image transparency is enabled (see [SetUseTransparency\(\)](#)). In this case black pixels are drawn in the current fill color while white pixels produce no visible output. The fill color can be defined in an arbitrary color space.

If image transparency is disabled the active color space will be assigned to the image as long as it is compatible to the image color space which is usually DeviceGray. Note that a 1 bit image with a color table is treated as a color image. However, this format is unusual and not supported by all devices and Acrobat versions. The usage of this image format should be avoided if possible.

### ***How to preserve the image color space?***

The default conversion rules can be changed if necessary with [SetGStateFlags\(\)](#). The most important flag is *gfUseImageColorSpace*. If set, the color space is taken from the image file and the active color space is ignored.

Another important flag is *gfIgnoreICCProfiles*. If set, an ICC profile available in the image file is not used to create an ICCBased color space for the image. The image is inserted in the base color space in this case. This flag is not meaningful if the flag *gfUseImageColorSpace* is absent.

The creation of ICCBased color spaces should only be enabled if it is known that the image contains an ICC profile that is compatible to the output device.

Note that many PDF workflows are not able to replace the ICC profile of an ICCBased color space and this can cause big problems if an image contains a profile that is not compatible to the output device.

It is usually better to add a global rendering intent to the document (see [AddRenderingIntent\(\)](#)) instead of using automatically created ICCBased color spaces on a per image basis.

A rendering intent is essentially the same as an ICCBased color space but it is used for all images in the file, as well as for text and vector graphics, which are defined in the underlying base color space. The advantage is that the ICC profile of a rendering intent can be easily replaced with another one and this change affects the entire document. The entire document should of course be created in the same base color space, e.g. DeviceCMYK, DeviceRGB, DeviceGray, or Lab.

### ***Image Resolution***

DynaPDF supports a high quality scaling algorithm to enable downscaling of high resolution images to a specified output resolution (see [SetResolution\(\)](#)). This algorithm is applied if an image is provided in a higher resolution than specified and if image scaling is enabled (see [SetSaveNewImageFormat\(\)](#)).

However, the scaling algorithm supports device color spaces as well as CalGray, CalRGB, ICCBased, Separation, and DeviceN (one channel only) color spaces as long as the underlying base or alternate color space is a device space. Images defined in an incompatible color space are inserted unchanged.

## Layers (Optional Content)

Layers in PDF are defined with so called Optional Content Groups (OCGs). When we talk about a layer then we mean a piece of content that belongs to an OCG.

Layers provides the ability to dynamically hide or unhide graphical contents. The available API functions to create and manipulate the visibility state of layers with DynaPDF are:

- `CreateOCG()` // Optional Content Group (OCG)
- `CreateOCMD()` // Optional Content Membership Dictionary (OCMD)
- `AddObjectToLayer()` // Connects an object with a layer
- `BeginLayer()` // Opens a layer to add graphical contents to it
- `EndLayer()` // Closes the last open layer
- `CreateSetOCGStateAction()` // Changes the visibility of a layer

The creation of a layer begins always with the creation of an OCG. An OCG specifies the layer name, the initial visibility state, and whether the layer should be displayed in the user interface of a conforming reader.

Note that the visibility of a layer in the user interface has nothing to do with the visibility of the contents that belongs to it. Invisible layers can be used to avoid interaction with the user interface. This can be useful if the document contains `SetOCGState` or `JavaScript` actions which change the visibility states depending on certain criteria, e.g. when printing the document, and when the user should not be able to override these settings.

Normal page contents such as text, images, and vector graphics can be connected with a layer with `BeginLayer()` / `EndLayer()`. Anything that is drawn between these function calls becomes part of layer. `BeginLayer()` calls can be nested to express dependencies to more than one layer. The visibility of an inner layer depends then also on the visibility of the outer layer(s).

Annotations and Form Fields are not automatically added to a layer when created between `BeginLayer()` / `EndLayer()` calls. These objects must be added to a layer with `AddObjectToLayer()`.

Annotations and form fields can be connected with exactly one OCG or OCMD. OCMDs are used if the visibility should depend on more than one layer. An OCMD accepts an array of OCG handles and a visibility expression that specifies when the associated contents should become visible or invisible. OCMDs can also be used with `BeginLayer()` to create more complex visibility expressions.

Images and templates can be explicitly connected with an OCG or OCMD too. This can be useful in situations where too many nested `BeginLayer()` calls would be required to create the same visibility expression.

## PDF Transparency

The PDF format supports different types of transparency for images, vector graphics, and text. The simplest type of transparency is called Color Key Masking. This kind of transparency is used to mask areas of a specific color in image so that they become transparent. Color Key Masking works with a transparent color that must be specified beforehand.

Color Key Masking can produce unpredictable results with JPEG or JPEG2000 compressed images because these filters are lossy filter. The use of a lossy filter means that the output is only an approximation of the original data. Therefore, these filters may lead to slight changes in the color values of image samples, possibly causing samples that were intended to be masked to be unexpectedly painted instead, in colors slightly different from the mask colour.

Another technique to mask images is the use of an explicit image mask. This type of masking does not depend on the source color and produces predictable results with all kind of image compression filters. The PDF format supports 1 bit image masks (PDF 1.3) as well as soft masks (PDF 1.4) which can be defined as 1 bit or 8 bit grayscale image. The latter format represents essentially the alpha channel of an image.

### ***Alpha Blending***

PDF 1.4 introduced a new kind of transparency which based on alpha blending. Alpha blending combines the backdrop and shape colors with an arbitrary opacity factor (alpha) which can be in the range 0.0..1.0. The alpha constant can be defined separately for fillings and strokes. Note that the fill alpha value is considered for images and text if the text draw mode is dmNormal.

The wished alpha values can be defined in an extended graphics state object that must be created with [CreateExtGState\(\)](#) and applied with [SetExtGState\(\)](#). An extended graphics state is valid until the modified values are restored with another extended graphics state that sets the values back to their defaults.

Note that the functions [Save/RestoreGraphicState\(\)](#) do not affect members of an extended graphics state. This circumstance must be considered when creating transparent objects.

#### **Example (C++):**

```
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    pdfCreateNewPDF(PDF, "c:/cppout.pdf");
    pdfSetPageCoords(PDF, pcTopDown);

    TPDFExtGState gs;
    pdfInitExtGState(&gs);
    gs.FillAlpha = 0.5f;
    SI32 gs1 = pdfCreateExtGState(PDF, &gs);

    gs.FillAlpha = 1.0f;
    SI32 gs2 = pdfCreateExtGState(PDF, &gs);
```

```
double x = 150.0;
double y = 150.0;

pdfAppend(PDF);

pdfSetExtGState(PDF, gs1); // Apply the extended graphics state
pdfSetFillColor(PDF, PDF_RGB(255, 0, 0));
pdfDrawCircle(PDF, x, y, 50.0, fmFill);

pdfSetFillColor(PDF, PDF_RGB(0, 255, 0));
pdfDrawCircle(PDF, x + 75.0, y, 50.0, fmFill);

pdfSetFillColor(PDF, PDF_RGB(0, 0, 255));
pdfDrawCircle(PDF, x + 37.5, y + 50.0, 50.0, fmFill);

// Restore the fill alpha to fully opaque
pdfSetExtGState(PDF, gs2);

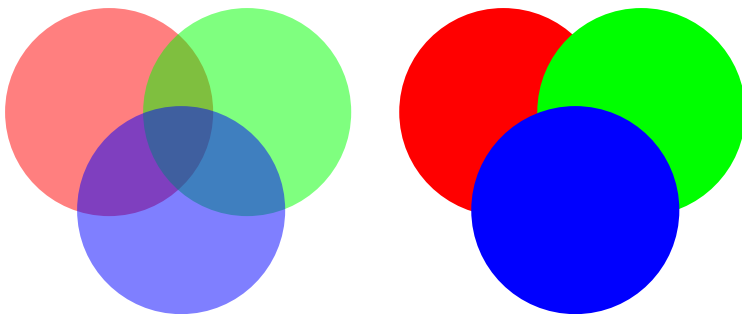
x += 200.0;
pdfSetFillColor(PDF, PDF_RGB(255, 0, 0));
pdfDrawCircle(PDF, x, y, 50.0, fmFill);

pdfSetFillColor(PDF, PDF_RGB(0, 255, 0));
pdfDrawCircle(PDF, x + 75.0, y, 50.0, fmFill);

pdfSetFillColor(PDF, PDF_RGB(0, 0, 255));
pdfDrawCircle(PDF, x + 37.5, y + 50.0, 50.0, fmFill);

pdfEndPage(PDF);
return pdfCloseFile(PDF);
}
```

Output:



## ***Blend Modes***

In addition to alpha blending the PDF standard defines several predefined blend modes (PDF 1.4) to archive certain special effects. Like the alpha constants the blend mode is part of an extended

graphics state object. The usage is identically in comparison to alpha transparency; that means the wished blend mode must be applied with an extended graphics state object and the only way to restore it is to apply another extended graphics state that sets the blend mode back to `bmNormal`.

Blend functions are applied in a blend color space which is normally the current color space. Valid blend color spaces are `DeviceGray`, `DeviceRGB`, `DeviceCMYK`, `CalGray`, `CalRGB`, and `ICCBased` color spaces which are equivalent to the other ones.

Lab and corresponding `ICCBased` color spaces are no valid blend color spaces because the blend functions produce no meaningful results with these color spaces.

However, the ICC profile of an `ICCBased` color space must contain both `AToB` and `BToA` transformations. This condition can be problematic because there is no easy way to determine whether this is the case. DynaPDF provides no function to determine whether an ICC profile contains both transformations.

### Remarks:

Please not that the rendering results of blend modes depend strongly on the color management settings of the viewer application. Consistent results cannot be guaranteed with blend modes.

### Example (C++):

```
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode,
const char* ErrorMessage, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrorMessage);
    return 0;
}

void AddCircles(const void* PDF, SI32 Templ, TPDFExtGState &ExtGS,
SI32 DefGS, TBlendMode Mode, double &x, double &y)
{
    ExtGS.BlendMode = Mode;

    pdfSetExtGState(PDF, DefGS);
    pdfSetFillColor(PDF, PDF_BLACK);
    x += 30.0;
    y -= 20.0;
    switch(Mode)
    {
        case bmNormal:      pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, " Normal"); break;
        case bmColorBurn:   pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, "ColorBurn"); break;
        case bmColorDodge:  pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, "ColorDodge"); break;
        case bmDarken:      pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, " Darken"); break;
        case bmDifference:  pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, "Difference"); break;
        case bmExclusion:    pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, "Exclusion"); break;
        case bmHardLight:   pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, "HardLight"); break;
        case bmHue:         pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, " Hue"); break;
        case bmLighten:     pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, " Lighten"); break;
        case bmLuminosity:  pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, "Luminosity"); break;
    }
}
```



```
        case bmMultiply:    pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, " Multiply"); break;
        case bmOverlay:    pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, " Overlay"); break;
        case bmSaturation: pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, "Saturation"); break;
        case bmScreen:     pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, " Screen"); break;
        case bmSoftLight:  pdfWriteText(PDF, x, y, "SoftLight"); break;
    }

    x -= 30.0;
    y += 20.0;

    SI32 gs = pdfCreateExtGState(PDF, &ExtGS);
    pdfSetExtGState(PDF, gs);

    pdfPlaceTemplate(PDF, Templ, x, y, 0.0, 0.0);

    x += 120.0f;
    if (x > 500.0)
    {
        x = 70.0;
        y += 120.0;
    }
}

void TestBlendModes(void)
{
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return -1; // Out of memory
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, PDFError);

    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "test.pdf");
    pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);
    pdfSetColorSpace(pdf, csDeviceRGB);

    TPDFExtGState gs, def;
    pdfInitExtGState(&gs);
    pdfInitExtGState(&def);

    def.BlendMode = bmNormal;

    SI32 defGS = pdfCreateExtGState(pdf, &def);

    double x = 70.0;
    double y = 110.0;

    SI32 tmp1 = pdfBeginTemplate(pdf, 105.0, 90.0);

    pdfSetFillColor(pdf, pdf_RGB(255, 0, 0));
    pdfDrawCircle(pdf, 30.0, 30.0, 30.0, fmFill);
    pdfSetFillColor(pdf, pdf_RGB(0, 255, 0));
    pdfDrawCircle(pdf, 75.0, 30.0, 30.0, fmFill);
```

```
pdfSetFillColor(pdf, pdf_RGB(0, 0, 255));
pdfDrawCircle(pdf, 52.5, 60.0, 30.0, fmFill);

pdfEndTemplate(pdf);

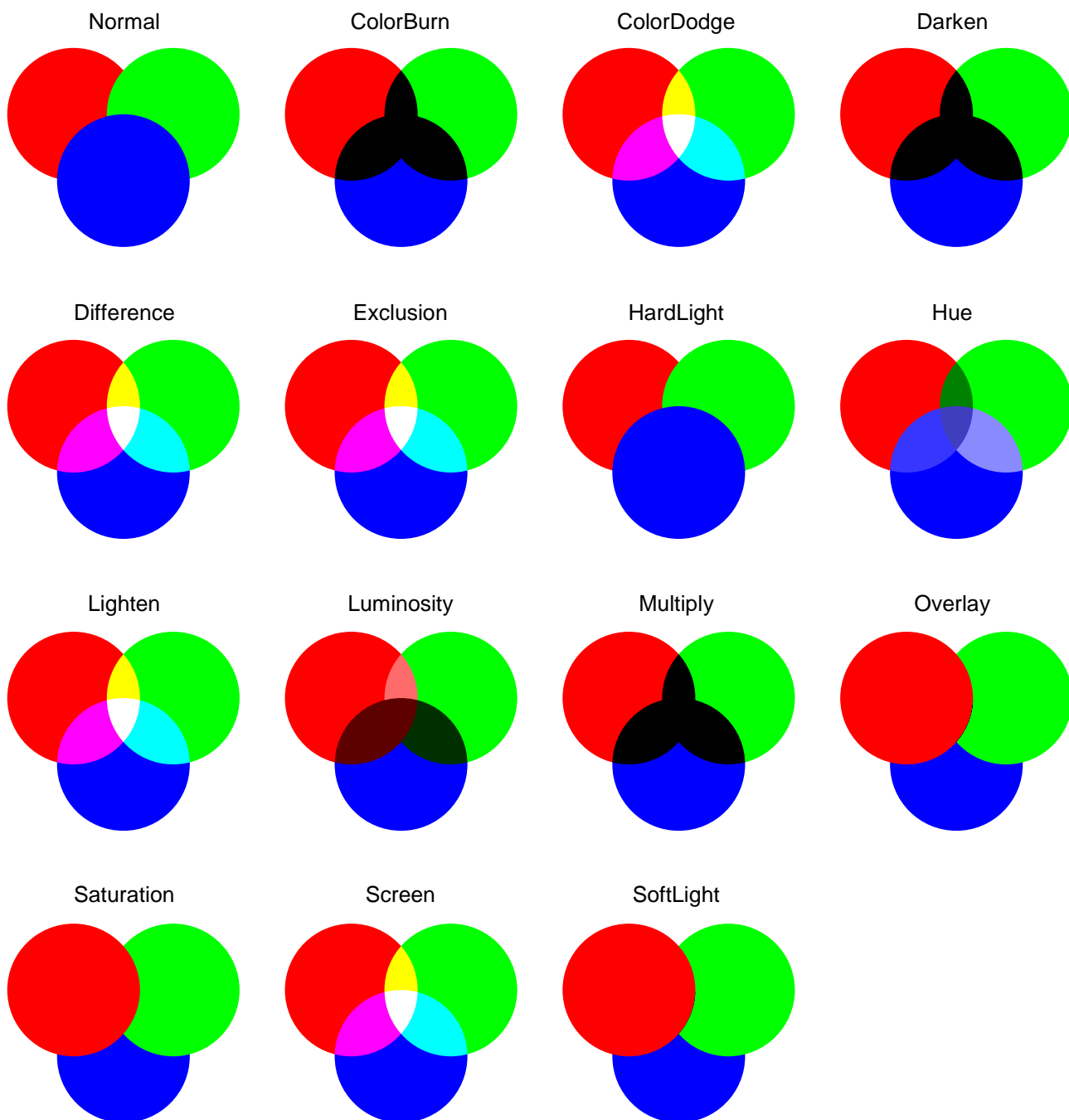
pdfAppend(pdf);

pdfSetFont(PDF, "Helvetica", fsBold, 20.0, false, cp1252);
pdfWriteFTextEx(PDF, 50.0, 50.0, pdfGetPageWidth(PDF)-100.0, -1.0,
                taCenter, "Blend Modes");

pdfSetFont(PDF, "Helvetica", fsRegular, 10.0, false, cp1252);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmNormal, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmColorBurn, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmColorDodge, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmDarken, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmDifference, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmExclusion, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmHardLight, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmHue, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmLighten, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmLuminosity, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmMultiply, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmOverlay, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmSaturation, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmScreen, x, y);
AddCircles(pdf, tmpl, gs, defGS, bmSoftLight, x, y);
pdfEndPage(pdf);

pdfCloseFile(pdf);
pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
}
```

## Blend Modes



## Function Reference

This section describes all supported functions of DynaPDF in detail. Most examples in this chapter are written in C, C++, or Borland Delphi. However, as you can see, the usage of DynaPDF is nearly identical with all programming languages.

### ***AddActionToObj***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddActionToObj(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TObjType ObjType, // The type of object that should get the action
    TObjEvent Event,  // Which event should trigger the action
    UI32 ActHandle,    // Action Handle
    UI32 ObjHandle)    // Object Handle (see notes below)

typedef enum
{
    otAction,
    otAnnotation,
    otBookmark,
    otCatalog,          // PDF 1.4
    otField,
    otPage,
    otPageLink
}TObjType;

typedef enum
{
    oeNoEvent,          // Internal use only -> DO NOT USE THIS VALUE!!!
    oeOnOpen,           // Catalog, Pages
    oeOnClose,          // Pages only
    oeOnMouseUp,        // All fields, page link annotations, bookmarks
    oeOnMouseEnter,     // Form fields only
    oeOnMouseExit,      // Form fields only
    oeOnMouseDown,      // Form fields only
    oeOnFocus,          // Form fields only
    oeOnBlur,           // Form fields only
    oeOnKeyStroke,      // Text fields only
    oeOnFormat,         // Text fields only
    oeOnCalc,           // Text fields, combo boxes, list boxes
    oeOnValidate,       // All form fields, except buttons
    oeOnPageVisible,    // PDF 1.5 -> Form fields only
    oeOnPageInVisible,  // PDF 1.5 -> Form fields only
    oeOnPageOpen,       // PDF 1.5 -> Form fields only
    oeOnPageClose,      // PDF 1.5 -> Form fields only
    oeOnBeforeClosing,  // PDF 1.4 -> Catalog, must be a JavaScript Action
    oeOnBeforeSaving,   // PDF 1.4 -> Catalog, must be a JavaScript Action
    oeOnAfterSaving,    // PDF 1.4 -> Catalog, must be a JavaScript Action
    oeOnBeforePrinting, // PDF 1.4 -> Catalog, must be a JavaScript Action
```

```
oeOnAfterPrinting // PDF 1.4 -> Catalog, must be a JavaScript Action
}TObjEvent;
```

This function adds an action to a PDF object. The parameter `ActHandle` requires a handle that was returned by a function that creates an action object such as `CreateGoToAction()`, etc. The object handle is also a return value of its creation function. If the object type is a page, then use the page number as handle.

It is possible to add multiple actions to one object, but note that DynaPDF does not check whether all actions are valid. For example, it is possible to add more than one action to a text field to the `OnFormat` event, but Acrobat executes only the first one. Always test your actions with different Acrobat versions because each version handles actions in a different manner.

The `OnMouseUp` event is the standard event supported by all objects. This event type supports also all action types. The other events are handled differently depending on the Acrobat version. Acrobat 4 supports JavaScript actions only in non-`OnMouseUp` events. Newer versions support also predefined action types. However, test your forms with the Acrobat versions that should be supported - this is the only way to find incompatibilities.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1, if the function fails the return value is 0.

## AddArticle

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddArticle(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of the Article
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of the Article
    double Width,     // Width in unscaled units
    double Height)    // Height in unscaled units
```

This function creates a new article and adds it to the currently open article thread that must be created with `CreateArticleThread()` beforehand.

Some types of document may contain sequences of content items that are logically connected but not physically sequential. For example, a news story may begin on the first page of a newsletter and run over onto one or more non-consecutive interior pages. To represent such sequences of physically discontinuous but logically related items, a PDF document may define one or more articles.

The sequential flow of an article is defined by an article thread; the individual content items that make up the article are called beads on the thread. PDF viewer applications such as Adobe's Acrobat provide navigation facilities to allow the user to follow a thread from one bead to the next.

**Remarks:**

Due to a bug in Acrobat 6 articles can cause a zoom out. The pages of a document appear then as small thumb nails.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the article, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***AddBookmark***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddBookmark(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const char* Title,    // Title of the bookmark  
    SI32 Parent,          // Parent bookmark in the tree structure if any  
    UI32 DestPage,        // Destination page  
    LBOOL Open)           // Open or close the node
```

This function adds a bookmark to the global outline tree of the document. It sets also the page mode to pmUseOutlines (see [SetPageMode\(\)](#)). If the outline tree should not be shown when opening the document, set the page mode back to pmUseNone or any other value before closing the document.

The parameter *Parent* must be a handle of a previously created bookmark or **-1** if the bookmark should appear as root node. The parameter *DestPage* defines the page which should be opened when activating on the bookmark.

**Related functions:**

```
SetBookmarkDest()  
SetBookmarkStyle()
```

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The ANSI Version supports ANSI strings of the code page 1252 only. To create a bookmark in an arbitrary encoding convert the string to Unicode with the function [ConvToIncode\(\)](#) and use the Unicode version to create the bookmark.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the bookmark, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

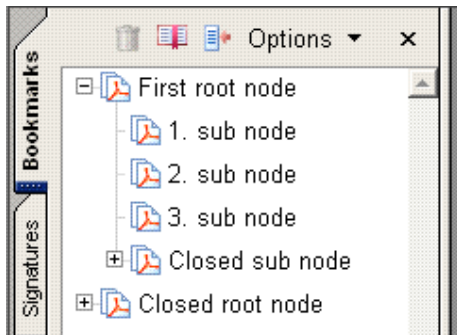
**Example (C++):**

```
#include "dynapdf.h"
using namespace DynaPDF;

// first we declare an error callback function
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMsg, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMessage); // just display the error message
    return 0;
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return 2;
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:\\cppout.pdf");
    pdfAppend(pdf);
    // we store the font handle, so that we can use pdfChangeFont() later
    SI32 f = pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsItalic, 40, true, cp1252);
    pdfWriteFText(pdf, taCenter, "How to create an outline tree...");
    pdfEndPage(pdf);
    // we create a few dummy pages to test the bookmarks
    char s[30];
    for (i = 0; i < 7; i++)
    {
        pdfAppend(pdf);
        pdfChangeFont(pdf, f); // set the font with same parameters
        sprintf(s, "Page %d", i+2);
        pdfWriteFText(pdf, taLeft, s);
        pdfEndPage(pdf);
    }
    // The first item is always a root node, Parent must be -1.
    SI32 bmk = pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "First root node", -1, 1, true);
    pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "1. sub node", bmk, 2, false);
    pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "2. sub node", bmk, 3, false);
    pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "3. sub node", bmk, 4, false);
    bmk = pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "Closed sub node", bmk, 5, false);
    pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "1. sub node", bmk, 6, false);
    pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "2. sub node", bmk, 7, false);
    bmk = pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "Closed root node", -1, 1, false);
    pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "1. sub node", bmk, 4, false);
    pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "2. sub node", bmk, 8, false);
    pdfCloseFile(pdf);
    return 0;
}
```

Output:



## AddBookmarkEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddBookmark(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const char* Title,    // Title of the bookmark
    SI32 Parent,          // Parent bookmark in the tree structure if any
    UI32 NamedDest,       // Named Destination handle
    LBOOL Open)           // Open or close the node
```

This function adds a bookmark to the global outline tree of the document. It sets also the page mode to pmUseOutlines (see [SetPageMode\(\)](#)). If the outline tree should not be shown when opening the document, set the page mode back to pmUseNone or any other value before closing the document.

The parameter *Parent* must be a handle of a previously created bookmark or **-1** if the bookmark should appear as root node. The parameter *NamedDest* must be a valid handle of a Named Destination.

If the named destination lies in another document then create a normal bookmark with [AddBookmark\(\)](#), create then an extended go to remote action (see [CreateGoToRActionEx\(\)](#)) and add the action finally to the bookmark with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The ANSI Version supports ANSI strings of the code page 1252 only. To create a bookmark in an arbitrary encoding convert the string to Unicode with the function [ConvToUnicode\(\)](#) first and use the Unicode version to create the bookmark.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the bookmark, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.



## AddButtonImage

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddButtonImage(  
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer  
    UI32 BtnHandle,        // Handle of the button which should get the image  
    TButtonState State,    // Button state, see below  
    const char* Caption,    // Caption to be printed over the image or NULL  
    const char* ImgFile)   // Image file  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    bsUp,                // Normal up state of the button  
    bsDown,              // Down state, button is pressed  
    bsRollOver           // Rollover state, when moving the cursor over the button  
}TButtonState;
```

The function adds an image to a push button to one or more of the three different states of a button. The parameter *BtnHandle* must be handle of a button field that was returned by a [CreateButton\(\)](#) function call. The parameter *State* defines the button state in which the image should appear. Each state is optional; it is possible to add different images to all three states of the button. The rollover state should get a different image than the other states. If two states should get the same image, the image is physically inserted only once to the PDF file.

DynaPDF checks whether duplicate images are already available before inserting an image again. Depending on the parameter *UseTransparency* the image appears with a transparent background or opaque (default transparent). However, note that the background of the button must be transparent too to get a transparent button. Otherwise the button is still opaque due the opaque background of the button.

The parameter *Caption* is optional, it can be NULL. Each state can contain its own caption which is drawn horizontally and vertically centered by default. The alignment can be changed with the function [SetFieldTextAlign\(\)](#). Because each button state is directly drawn when calling the function, the alignment must be set before this function is called.

If a button has already an image for a specific button state, the existing image will be replaced with the new one.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## AddButtonImageEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddButtonImageEx(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    UI32 BtnHandle,        // Handle of the button which should get the image
    TButtonState State,    // Button state, see below
    const char* Caption,    // Caption to be printed over the image or NULL
    void* hBitmap)         // HBITMAP handle of a memory bitmap
```

The function adds a memory bitmap to a push button in the same ways as [AddButtonImage\(\)](#) but accepts a HBITMAP handle as input image. The usage of the function is described under [AddButtonImage\(\)](#).

### Remarks:

The bitmap must **not** be selected into a device context when the application calls this function. This function is not thread-safe; it must be synchronized in multi-threaded applications.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## AddContinueText

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddContinueText(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const char* AText)     // Text to be printed
```

The function prints a single text line and moves the text cursor to the next line. Text lines created by this function are handled as a separate block. Before calling the function the first time, the usage must be prepared with [BeginContinueText\(\)](#). After all text lines are printed call [EndContinueText\(\)](#) to finish the text block.

The distance between two text lines can be adjusted with [SetLeading\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## AddDeviceNProcessColorants

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfAddDeviceNProcessColorants(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    UI32 DeviceNCS,        // Handle of a DeviceN or NChannel color space
    const char** Colorants, // Array of colorant names
    UI32 NumColorants,     // Number of colorants in the array
    TExtColorSpace ProcessCS, // Process color space
    SI32 Handle)           // Color space handle or -1
```

The function adds a dictionary to a DeviceN or NChannel color space that describes the process color space whose components are included in the DeviceN or NChannel color space.

The array *Colorants* holds the process colorant names which are included in the process color space. The names must appear in the normal color space order, e.g. Red, Green, and Blue, for a RGB color space and the number of colorant names must match the number of color components in the process color space. However, the names in the *Colorants* array need not match the actual color space names. For example, a Red component need not be named Red.

Definitions of process colorants must not appear in the definition of spot colorants (see [AddDeviceNSeparations\(\)](#)).

The reserved names Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black are always considered to be process colors, which do not necessarily correspond to the colorants of a specific device; they are not required to have entries in the process dictionary.

If *NumColorants* is zero the functions deletes existing definitions of process colorants in the DeviceN or NChannel color space. Otherwise, existing definitions will be overridden.

#### Remarks:

Process colorant names must be defined in the code page 1252 (WinAnsi).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## AddDeviceNSeparations

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfAddDeviceNSeparations(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 DeviceNCS,             // Handle of a DeviceN or NChannel color space
    const char** Colorants,     // Array of colorant names
    UI32* SeparationCS,         // Array of Separation color space handles
    UI32 NumColorants)          // Number of colorants and handles in the arrays
```

The function adds a dictionary to a DeviceN or NChannel color space that describes the spot colorants which are used in the color space.

This dictionary provides information about the individual colorants that may be useful to some applications. In particular, the alternate color space and tint transformation function of a Separation color space describe the appearance of that colorant alone, whereas those of a DeviceN color space describe only the appearance of its colorants in combination.

The array *Colorants* holds the spot colorant names and the array *SeparationCS* holds the corresponding Separation color space handles. The colorant names in the array must match the names in the corresponding Separation color spaces. In addition, the colorants must be included in the DeviceN or NChannel color space.

If *NumColorants* is zero the functions deletes existing definitions of spot colorants in the DeviceN or NChannel color space. Otherwise, existing definitions will be overridden.

### **Encoding of Colorant Names**

Colorant names are interpreted in the code page 1252 by default. Because colorant names are stored in UTF-8 Unicode format in PDF, it is also possible to pass UTF-8 encoded Unicode strings to the function. However, the function must be able to distinguish between both string formats. To archive this, the parameter *NumColorants* accepts the special flag 0x10000000 that specifies that the *Colorants* array contains UTF-8 encoded strings. The flag must be combined with the number of colorants with a binary or operator:

```
numColorants |= 0x10000000;           // C/C++, C#
numColorants = numColorants Or &H10000000 // Visual Basic
numColorants := numColorants or $10000000 // Delphi
```

#### **Remarks:**

The definition of spot colors is required to enable the output preview in Adobe's Acrobat.

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### **AddFieldToFormAction**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddFieldToFormAction(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 Action,       // Handle of a submit or reset form action
    UI32 AField,       // Handle of a field that should be added to array
    LBOOL Include)     // Include or exclude this field from submitting?
```

Instead of simply submitting all field values of an interactive form to a web server, it is also possible to submit the values of specific fields only. A submit form and reset form action can hold an optional array of fields which can be included or excluded from the action. For example, if a form contains 20 fields which all should be submitted to the web server apart from two of those fields, then add the two fields to the submit form action and set the parameter *Include* to false.

Note, that parameter *Include* is handled reversed if the submit flag *sfExclude* is set (see also [CreateSubmitAction\(\)](#), [CreateResetAction\(\)](#)). The fields are then excluded if *Include* is true and vice versa.

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***AddFieldToHideAction***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddFieldToHideAction(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 HideAct,      // Handle of the hide action  
    UI32 AField)       // Field handle
```

This function adds a field to a hide action. An arbitrary count of fields can be added to a hide action.

### **Remarks:**

Acrobat 4 does not support radio buttons or group fields inside a hide action. The fields of a group field or the check boxes of a radio button field must be added to a hide action separately. Since Acrobat 5, group fields and radio buttons are supported too.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***AddFileComment***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddFileComment(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* AText) // The comment that should be added
```

Under certain circumstances it can be useful to add one or more comments to a PDF file which are not visible on screen or elsewhere in PDF viewer applications. The function AddFileComment() can be used to add such comments to the end of the PDF file.

Comments are stored behind the %%EOF marker of the PDF file. The required space to save all comments should not exceed 1024 bytes. However, all tests with larger comments didn't produce an error in Adobe's Acrobat, but Ghostview fails if the space exceeds ~2000 bytes.

### **Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. However, Unicode strings are converted back to ANSI; unsupported characters appear as question mark (?).

File comments are prohibited in certain PDF standards like PDF/A.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## AddFontSearchPath

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddFontSearchPath(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const char* APath,    // Path to font file directory  
    SI32 Recursive)       // Include subdirectories (search recursively)
```

This function adds a search path to the list of available font search paths. An arbitrary number of search paths can be added at runtime. Subdirectories are included recursively if the parameter *Recursive* is true.

DynaPDF requires no separate metric files for Type1 fonts.

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. However, Unicode file paths are converted back to ANSI on Windows. On non-Windows operating systems the path is converted to UTF-8 and passed to the ANSI version of the function.

The list of search directories can be cleared at runtime with the function [ClearHostFonts\(\)](#).

### Remarks:

If system fonts are enabled (default) DynaPDF adds the default font directories of the operating system automatically to the list of font search paths (Windows and Mac OSX only, see [SetUseSystemFonts\(\)](#) for further information). On Windows this is the %Windows%/Fonts directory as well as fonts listed in the Registry and linked fonts.

On Mac OSX the following directories are added to the list of font search paths (in this order):

- ~/Library/Fonts
- /Library/Fonts
- /System/Library/Fonts

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the function returns the number of found font files (this is maybe not the number of available fonts, because the list is cleared each time all fonts in the list are processed during font selection). If the function fails a negative error code is returned.

## AddImage

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfAddImage(
const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
TCompressionFilter Filter,  // See below
TImageConversionFlags Flags, // See below
struct TPDFImage* Image)    // Image structure

typedef enum
{
    cfFlate      = 0, // PDF or TIFF output
    cfJPEG       = 1, // PDF, JPEG, or TIFF output
    cfCCITT3     = 2, // PDF or TIFF output -> B&W CCITT Fax G3 compression
    cfCCITT4     = 3, // PDF or TIFF output -> B&W CCITT Fax G4 compression
    cfLZW        = 4, // TIFF or GIF output -> Much faster than flate
    cfReserved   = 5, // Reserved for future extensions.
    cfFlateBW    = 6, // TIFF, PNG, or BMP output -> Dithered black & white.
                    // The resulting image is compressed with Flate or left
                    // uncompressed if the output image format is a bitmap.
                    // If you want to use CCITT Fax 4 compression (TIFF
                    // only) then set the flag icUseCCITT4.
    cfJP2K       = 7  // PDF or JPEG2000 output
}TCompressionFilter;

typedef enum
{
    icNone        = 0, // Default
    icUseCCITT4   = 1  // Use CCITT Fax 4 for dithered images.
}TImageConversionFlags;
```

The function adds an image that was returned by the content parser to the current open image file. The output image must be opened with `CreateImage()` beforehand.

If the output format is TIFF, multiple images can be added to the file while each image can be compressed with a different compression filter. All other image formats support only one image. So, the image must be closed with `CloseImage()` after the image was added to the file in this case. Depending on the output format the compression filter cannot be freely chosen. For example, PNG is the native image format for Flate compression. This format supports Flate compression only. If an incompatible filter is set the function uses the default filter for the output format, e.g. Flate for PNG, JPEG for JPG, and so on.

The compression level can be adjusted with the function `SetCompressionLevel()`. The JPEG quality can be set with `SetJPEGQuality()`.

The function is able to create up to 2 GB large TIFF files. So far the images are compressed with the original filters it is usually always possible to add all images of a PDF file to one TIFF file.

### Return values:

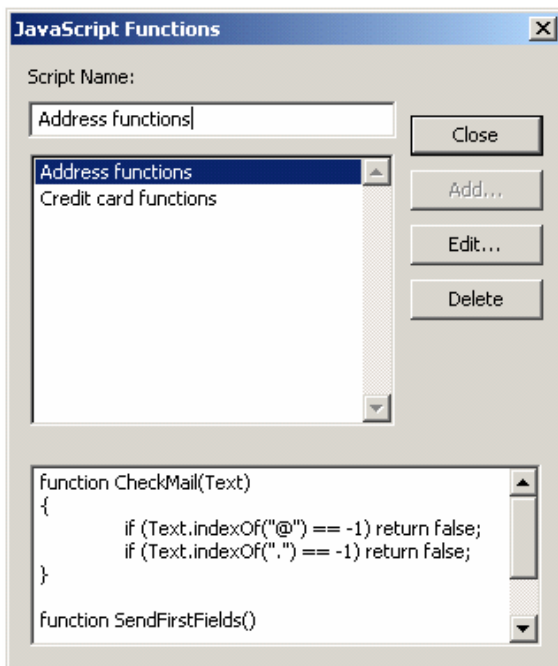
If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## AddJavaScript

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddJavaScript(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const char* Name,    // Name of the script (required)  
    const char* Script) // JavaScript (required)
```

The function adds a global JavaScript to the PDF file. The parameter *Name* must be a unique name to identify the script in the user interface:



Note that the name is **NOT** used to identify a function inside the JavaScript. The parameter *Script* must be a JavaScript function or a set of JavaScript functions. DynaPDF does not check whether the script is valid. A JavaScript is always stored unchecked and unchanged to the PDF file. The JavaScript functions inside a script can be used by JavaScript actions to enable parameterized function calls (see also [CreateJSAction\(\)](#)).

### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Because JavaScript 1.2 is not Unicode compatible, Unicode encoded scripts are translated to a platform specific encoding prior to interpretation by the JavaScript engine. Note that there is no advantage when using Unicode encoded scripts in a PDF file. To avoid unnecessary problems JavaScripts should be stored in ANSI format.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the JavaScript, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.



## AddObjectToLayer

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfAddObjectToLayer(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    UI32 OCG,            // Must be a OCG or OCMD handle
    TOCObject ObjType,   // See below
    UI32 Handle)         // Object handle

typedef enum
{
    ooAnnotation,
    ooField,
    ooImage,
    ooTemplate
}TOCObject;
```

The function adds an object to an Optional Content Group (OCG) or Optional Content Membership dictionary (OCMD). See also [CreateOCG\(\)](#) and [CreateOCMD\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## AddPageLabel

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddPageLabel(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    UI32 StartRange,     // Page number where labelling starts
    TPageLabelFormat Format, // Label format
    const char* Prefix,   // Optional prefix
    SI32 FirstPageNum)    // Page number to be displayed in the label
```

The function creates a page label object. The parameter *StartRange* must be the page number where labelling should start. The first page is denoted by 1. The parameters *Prefix* and *AddNum* are both optional. *FirstPageNum* represents the numeric portion of the first page label in the range. This value is incremented on subsequent pages in the range. The value must be greater zero, otherwise it will be ignored. Numbering of the range starts at one in this case.

A document can contain multiple page label objects. Each of them represents a labelling range which is a series of consecutive pages using the same numbering system.

Pages within a range are numbered sequentially in ascending order. A page's label consists of a numeric portion based on its position within its labelling range, optionally preceded by a label prefix denoting the range itself. For example, the pages in an appendix might be labelled with decimal numeric portions prefixed with the string A; the resulting page labels would be A-1, A-2, and so on.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the page label handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

***AddRenderingIntent***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddRenderingIntent(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const char* ICCFile) // File path of the ICC profile
```

This function adds an ICC color profile to the PDF file that should be used to render device dependent colors. ICC profiles are available for different input color spaces and for different output devices classes. PDF viewer applications support the device classes mntr, prtr, scnr, and spac.

The input color space can be DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, DeviceCMYK, or Lab. Other input color spaces are not supported by DynaPDF. It is recommended that all colors in the entire document are defined in the color space that the ICC profile supports with exception of DeviceGray; this color space can be combined with RGB or CMYK color output.

An ICC color profile is always required to create PDF/X compatible PDF files. PDF/A-1 compatible files must contain a rendering intent too if the document uses device dependent color spaces (DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, or DeviceCMYK).

ICC profiles are available in different versions. Which profile versions are allowed to use depends on the output PDF version:

PDF Version	ICC Specification Version	ICC Profile Version Number
PDF 1.3	3.3 or earlier	2.10
PDF 1.4	ICC.1:1998-09 and its addendum ICC.1A:1999-04	2.20
PDF 1.5	ICC.1:2001-12	4.00
PDF 1.6	ICC.1:2003-09	4.10
PDF 1.7	ICC.1:2004-10	4.20

Please note that neither PDF/A-1 nor PDF/X-1 and PDF/X-3 support ICC profile major versions higher than 2. The function checks the profile version only if the output version was set to a PDF/A or PDF/X compatible version.

The function scans the document always for a suitable profile which is maybe already available in an ICC-based color space. If a suitable profile can be found the function uses the already existing one so that a profile must not be embedded twice.

The profile should be embedded at the end of processing, that means directly before calling [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [CloseFileEx\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the Rendering Intent object, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

***AddRenderingIntentEx***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddRenderingIntentEx(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const void* Buffer,  // File buffer of an ICC profile  
    UI32 BufSize)        // Buffer size in bytes
```

The function adds an ICC profile to the PDF file like [AddRenderingIntent\(\)](#) but accepts a file buffer as input. See also [AddRenderingIntent\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the Rendering Intent object, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## AddValToChoiceField

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAddValToChoiceField(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Field,                // Handle of a combo box or list box  
    const char* ExpValue,      // Export value (can be NULL)  
    const char* Value,         // Visible choice value (required)  
    LBOOL Selected)           // Select this values?
```

This function adds a value to a choice field. The parameter *Field* must be a handle of a combo box or list box. The parameter *ExpValue* defines the export value that will be submitted to a web server if the value is selected in Adobe's Acrobat. The export value can be an empty string (NULL) and it is possible to use one export value for multiple values.

The parameter *Value* is the visible text that can be selected inside the combo box or list box. Value must be a unique string inside the combo box or list box values. *Value* is required; it must not be an empty string.

If the parameter *Selected* is true the value appears as selected value in Adobe's Acrobat. List boxes support multiple selected values depending on whether the flag `ffMultiSelect` was set or not (see [SetFieldFlags\(\)](#) and [CreateListBox\(\)](#) for further information). If the flag `ffMultiSelect` is not set, a selected value disables all others (default).

### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Because Unicode is not supported by interactive form fields, it is recommended that Unicode values contain characters of the actual used code page only. At time of publication CJK strings are not supported.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## Append

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAppend(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function appends an empty page to the document. The default page format for new created pages is DIN A4. However, when changing the page format, the next page is created in the same format as the previous one. The [CropBox](#) is also set to the values of the previous page. The other bounding boxes such as [ArtBox](#), [BleedBox](#) and so on must be set manually for each page.

The page format can be changed with the function [SetPageFormat\(\)](#) if a predefined format should be used, or manually with [SetBBox\(\)](#). [SetBBox\(\)](#) must also be used to set a user defined bounding box ([ArtBox](#), [BleedBox](#), [CropBox](#), [TrimBox](#)).

The meaning of the bounding boxes are described under the property [Get/SetBBox\(\)](#).

The graphics state of a new page is initialized to the following default values:

Parameter	Data type	Initial Value
CharSpacing	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f
Clipping Path	Vector array	Crop box or Media box
DashPattern	<a href="#">double</a> *	NULL (Solid line)
DashPhase	UI32	0
FillColor	BYTE[32]	Black
FillColorSpace	TTextColorSpace, IColorSpace*	esDeviceRGB, NULL
FillPattern	IPattern*	NULL
Font	IFont*	NULL
Leading	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f
LineCapStyle	TLineCapStyle	csButtCap
LineJoinStyle	TLineJoinStyle	jsMiterJoin
LineWidth	<a href="#">float</a>	1.0f
Matrix	TCTM	{1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0}
MiterLimit	<a href="#">float</a>	10.0f
StrokeColor	BYTE[32]	Black
StrokeColorSpace	TTextColorSpace, IColorSpace*	esDeviceRGB, NULL
StrokePattern	IPattern*	NULL
TextDrawMode	TDrawMode	dmNormal
TextScale	<a href="#">float</a>	100.0f
WordSpacing	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is zero.

## ApplyPattern

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfApplyPattern(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    SI32 PattHandle,           // Handle of the pattern
    TColorMode ColorMode,      // Color mode (fill or stroke color or both)
    UI32 Color)                // uncolored patterns only

typedefed enum
{
    cmFill,                    // use the pattern as fill color
    cmStroke,                  // use the pattern as stroke color
    cmFillStroke // use the pattern as fill and stroke color
}TColorMode;
```

The function sets a tiling pattern as current fill, stroke or fill and stroke color. Two types of patterns are supported; colored tiling patterns which contain their own color information and uncolored tiling patterns which can be used with a user defined color.

The parameter *PattHandle* must be a valid pattern handle that was returned by [BeginPattern\(\)](#) or [CreateStdPattern\(\)](#). The parameter *Color* is ignored for colored tiling patterns. Uncolored tiling patterns are applied like a mask in the user defined color. The color must be defined in the current color space.

To disable a pattern just change the current fill or stroke color with [SetFillColor\(\)](#), [SetStrokeColor\(\)](#) or [SetColors\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Example (Borland Delphi):

```
implementation
{$R *.dfm}
uses dynapdf; // include the unit dynapdf.pas
// First we define our callback function that is called if an
// error occurred. Note: The calling convention is stdcall!
function ErrProc(const Data: Pointer; ErrCode: Integer; const ErrorMessage:
PChar; ErrType: Integer): Integer; stdcall;
var s: String;
begin
    s := Format('%s'#13'Abort processing?', [ErrorMessage]);
    if MessageDlg(s, mtError, [mbYes, mbNo], 0) = mrYes then
        Result := -1 // break processing
    else
        Result := 0; // try to continue
end;
```

```
procedure TForm1.Button1Click(Sender: TObject);
var pdf: TPDF; pat: Integer; cw, h: Single;
begin
  pdf := nil;
  try
    pdf := TPDF.Create;
    // Set the error callback first. No need to check return values.
    pdf.SetOnErrorProc(nil, @ErrProc);
    pdf.SetDocInfoA(diAuthor, 'Jens Boschulte');
    pdf.SetDocInfoA(diCreator, 'Delphi sample project');
    pdf.SetDocInfoA(diSubject, 'How to use patterns');
    pdf.SetDocInfoA(diTitle, 'Vector graphics');
    pdf.SetViewerPreferences(vpDisplayDocTitle, avNone);
    pdf.CreateNewPDFa('c:\dout.pdf');

    pdf.Append;
    // create a colored tiling pattern
    pat := pdf.BeginPattern(ptColored, ttFastConstSpacing, 20, 20);
    pdf.SetFontA('ZapfDingbats', fsNone, 12, false, cp1252);
    h := pdf.GetAscent;
    cw := pdf.GetTextWidthA(#171);
    pdf.SetFillColor(clRed);
    pdf.WriteTextA(0, 0, #171);
    pdf.SetFillColor(clGreen);
    pdf.WriteText(cw + 2, 0, #170);
    pdf.SetFillColor(clBlue);
    pdf.WriteTextA(0, 20 - h, #169);
    pdf.SetFillColor(clBlack);
    pdf.WriteTextA(cw + 2, 20 - h, #168);
    pdf.EndPattern;

    pdf.ApplyPattern(pat, cmFill, 0);
    pdf.SetPageCoords(pcTopDown);
    pdf.DrawCircle(100, 160, 50, fmFillStroke);
    pdf.DrawCircle(160, 60, 50, fmFillStroke);
    pdf.DrawCircle(220, 160, 50, fmFillStroke);
    pdf.Triangle(100, 160, 160, 60, 220, 160, fmFillStroke);
    pdf.SetPageCoords(pcBottomUp);

    // create an uncolored tiling pattern
    pat := pdf.BeginPattern(ptUnColored, ttFastConstSpacing, 20, 20);
    pdf.SetFontA('ZapfDingbats', fsNone, 12, false, cp1252);
    h := pdf.GetAscent;
    cw := pdf.GetTextWidthA(#171);
    pdf.WriteTextA(0, 0, #171);
    pdf.WriteTextA(cw + 2, 0, #170);
    pdf.WriteTextA(0, 20 - h, #169);
    pdf.WriteTextA(cw + 2, 20 - h, #168);
    pdf.EndPattern;
```

```

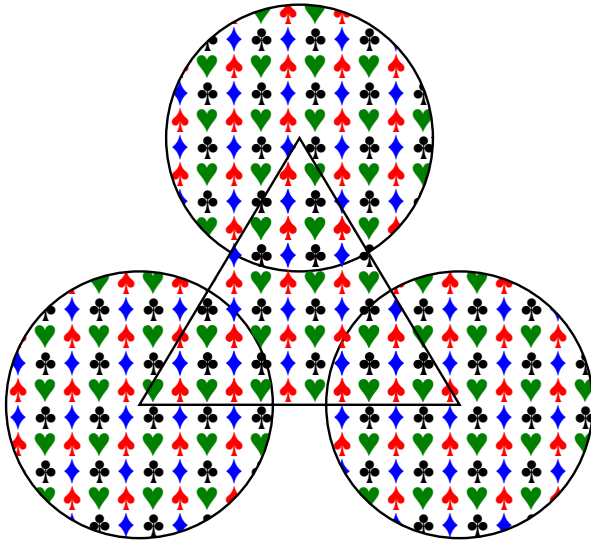
pdf.SetPageCoords(pcTopDown);
// use the pattern as fill color with different colors
pdf.ApplyPattern(pat, cmFill, clGreen);
pdf.DrawCircle(350, 160, 50, fmFillStroke);
pdf.ApplyPattern(pat, cmFill, clBlue);
pdf.DrawCircle(410, 60, 50, fmFillStroke);
pdf.ApplyPattern(pat, cmFill, clRed);
pdf.DrawCircle(470, 160, 50, fmFillStroke);
pdf.ApplyPattern(pat, cmFill, clMaroon);
pdf.Triangle(350, 160, 410, 60, 470, 160, fmFillStroke);
pdf.EndPage;

pdf.CloseFile;
except
  on E: Exception do MessageDlg(E.Message, mtError, [mbOK], 0);
end;
if pdf <> nil then pdf.Free;
end;

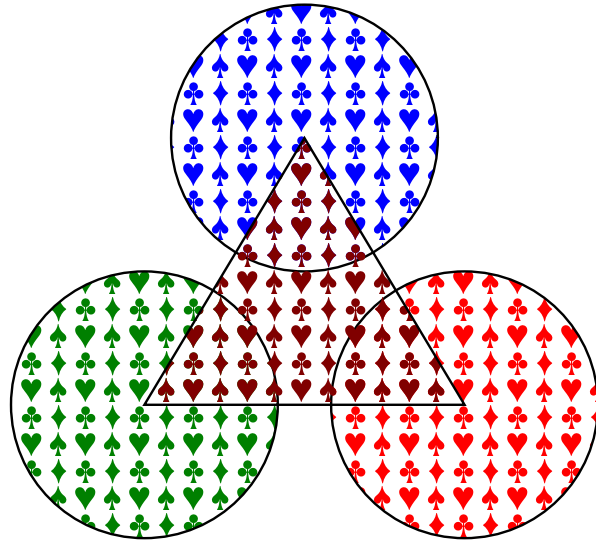
```

Output:

*Colored Tiling Pattern*



*Uncolored Tiling Pattern*





## ApplyShading

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfApplyShading(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    SI32 ShadHandle) // Handle of the shading
```

This function applies a shading to the current clipping path, or if no clipping is active, to the entire page. See also [CreateAxialShading\(\)](#), [CreateRadialShading\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Example (C):

```
// First we declare our error callback function
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMessage, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMessage);
    return 0;
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    SI32 sh;
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return 2; // Out of memory?

    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diAuthor, "Jens Boschulte");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diCreator, "C sample project");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diSubject, "How to use shadings");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diTitle, "Shadings");
    // we use top-down coordinates
    pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);

    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:/cppout.pdf");

    pdfAppend(pdf);

    pdfSaveGraphicState(pdf);
    pdfBeginClipPath(pdf);
    pdfRectangle(pdf, 50, 50, 200, 30, fmNoFill);
    pdfClipPath(pdf, cmWinding, fmFill);
    sh = pdfCreateAxialShading(pdf, 50, 0, 250, 0, 1.5, PDF_WHITE,
        PDF_BLUE, false, false);
    pdfApplyShading(pdf, sh);
    pdfRestoreGraphicState(pdf);
```

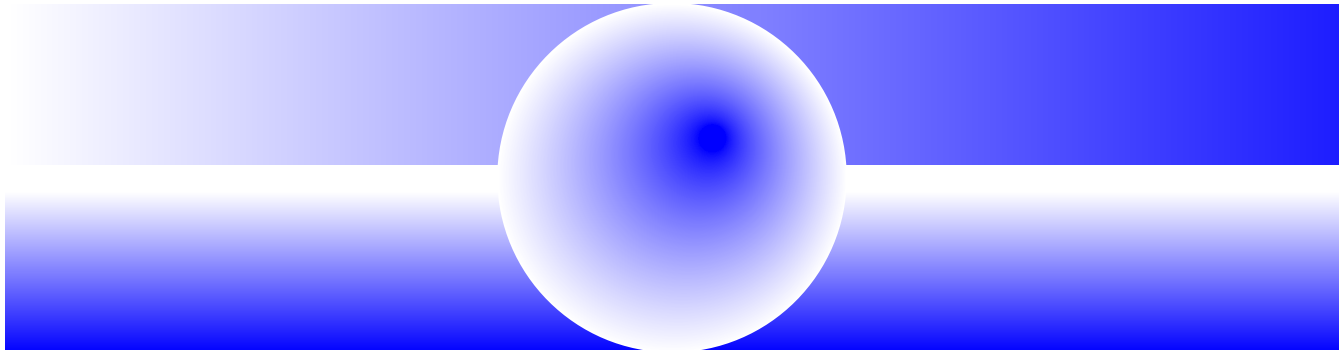
```
pdfSaveGraphicState(pdf);
pdfBeginClipPath(pdf);
pdfRectangle(pdf, 50, 90, 200, 30, fmNoFill);
pdfClipPath(pdf, cmWinding, fmFill);

sh = pdfCreateAxialShading(pdf, 0, 120, 0, 90, 1.5, PDF_WHITE,
    PDF_BLUE, false, false);
pdfApplyShading(pdf, sh);
pdfRestoreGraphicState(pdf);

// The radial shading can be drawn outside of a clipping path
sh = pdfCreateRadialShading(pdf, 165, 70, 5, 150, 85, 35, 0.7,
    PDF_BLUE, PDF_WHITE, true, false);
pdfApplyShading(pdf, sh);

pdfEndPage(pdf);
pdfCloseFile(pdf);
pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
}
```

Output:



## ***AttachFile***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAttachFile(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const char* FilePath,      // File that should be attached  
    const char* Description,    // Optional description  
    LBOOL Compress)            // If true, the file will be compressed
```

The function attaches a file to the document. The description is optional, the parameter can be set to NULL. The embedded file is compressed if the parameter *Compress* is set to true. Otherwise it is left uncompressed. It is not always useful to compress embedded files especially if the file is already compressed, e.g. Zip files or already compressed image formats require no further compression. In the worst case the compressed files becomes larger. However, text files and most document formats should be compressed to reduce the file size.

### **Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Note that Unicode file paths are not supported under Linux and UNIX. The file path is converted back to ANSI on these operating systems before trying to open the file. This conversion can cause problems if the file name contains special characters which are not convertible to ANSI.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the embedded file, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***AttachFileEx***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAttachFileEx(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const void* Buffer,        // File buffer  
    UI32 BufSize,              // Buffer size  
    const char* FileName,      // File name to display in a viewer  
    const char* Description,    // Optional description  
    LBOOL Compress)            // If true, the file will be compressed
```

The function attaches a file to the document in the same way as [AttachFile\(\)](#) but accepts a file buffer instead of a file path. The description is optional, the parameter can be set to NULL. The embedded file is compressed if the parameter *Compress* is set to true. Otherwise it is left uncompressed. It is not always useful to compress embedded files especially if the file is already compressed, e.g. Zip files or already compressed image formats require no further compression. In the worst case the compressed files becomes larger. However, text files and most document formats should be compressed to reduce the file size.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the embedded file, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***AutoTemplate***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfAutoTemplate(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Templ,       // Template handle  
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate  
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate  
    double Width,     // Scaled with  
    double Height)    // Scaled height
```

Templates can be used on multiple pages, e.g. as background, custom logos and so on. To insert a template automatically on newly created pages, use the function [AutoTemplate\(\)](#).

The parameter *Templ* must be a valid template handle. The width and height can be calculated as follows:

- If *Width* or *Height* is **-1** the function uses the original width or height from the template.
- If *Width* or *Height* is **0**, the missing value is calculated in relation to the given value of *Height* or *Width* to preserve the template's aspect ratio. The resulting output is a template with exact proportions relative to its original size.
- If *Width* and *Height* is **0**, the original size is used (same effect as -1).
- A negative value of *Width* or *Height* mirrors the template on the x- and or y-axis.

**Remarks:**

The templates are inserted on new pages by using the function [PlaceTemplate\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***BeginClipPath (Obsolete)***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfBeginClipPath(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

It is not longer required to call this function before a clipping path can be created. The function is included in DynaPDF for compatibility reasons only. Do not longer use it, it executes nothing. See also [ClipPath\(\)](#), [Path Construction and Painting](#).

## ***BeginContinueText***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfBeginContinueText(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of the first text line
    double PosY)      // Y-Coordinate of the first text line
```

This function prepares the output of multiple text lines with [AddContinueText\(\)](#). The distance between two text lines can be adjusted with [SetLeading\(\)](#). If no leading was defined it will be set to the font size. Note that the function changes the leading of the graphics state if it was not defined beforehand. Subsequent calls use then the leading that was set in a prior call. If the font or font size will be changed it is strongly recommended to set the leading to a correct value. The default leading is the font size. The leading, font, character spacing, word spacing, text scaling, or the text color can be changed before calling [AddContinueText\(\)](#) the next time.

The point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the baseline of the first text line if the coordinate system is bottom-up, otherwise the top-left corner of the text's bounding box. The origin can be changed with the function [SetFontOrigin\(\)](#).

If the font uses horizontal writing mode the text cursor moves from top to bottom. In vertical writing mode the text cursor moves from left to right.

### **Remarks:**

A font must be set before this function can be used (see also [SetFont\(\)](#), or [SetCIDFont\(\)](#)).

In DynaPDF versions prior 2.0 it was required to finish the text block with [EndContinueText\(\)](#). Because the function uses now internally [WriteText\(\)](#) to output the text, it is no longer required to finish the text block with this function. [EndContinueText\(\)](#) does nothing in DynaPDF 2.0 or higher.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### **Example (Borland Delphi):**

```
uses dynapdf;
// First we declare an error callback function
function ErrProc(const Data: Pointer; ErrCode: Integer; const ErrorMessage:
PChar; ErrType: Integer): Integer; stdcall;
```

```
var s: String;
begin
  s := Format('%s'#13'Abort processing?', [ErrMsg]);
  if MessageDlg(s, mtError, [mbYes, mbNo], 0) = mrYes then
    Result := -1 // break processing
  else Result := 0; // try to continue
end;
procedure TForm1.Button1Click(Sender: TObject);
var pdf: TPDF;
begin
  try
    pdf := TPDF.Create;
    pdf.SetOnErrorProc(nil, @ErrProc);
    pdf.SetDocInfoA(diAuthor, 'Jens Boschulte');
    pdf.SetDocInfoA(diCreator, 'Delphi sample project');
    pdf.SetDocInfoA(diSubject, 'How to use ContinueText');
    pdf.SetDocInfoA(diTitle, 'ContinueText');
    pdf.SetViewerPreferences(vpDisplayDocTitle, avNone);
    pdf.CreateNewPDFA('c:\dout.pdf');
    pdf.Append;
    pdf.SetFontA('Arial', fsNone, 12, true);
    pdf.ChangeFontStyle(fsUnderlined);
    pdf.BeginContinueText(50, 780);
    pdf.AddContinueTextA('Underlined text...');
    pdf.ChangeFontStyle(tsNone);
    pdf.AddContinueTextA('Normal text!');
    pdf.ChangeFontStyle(fsStriked);
    pdf.AddContinueTextA('Strikeout text!');
    pdf.EndContinueText;

    pdf.EndPage;
    pdf.CloseFile;
  except
    on E: Exception do MessageDlg(E.Message, mtError, [mbOK], 0);
  end;
  pdf.Free;
end;
```

Output:

Underlined text...

Normal text!

~~Strikeout text!~~

## BeginLayer

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfBeginLayer(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 OCG)          // OCG or OCMD handle
```

The function opens a layer in the current open page or template. The layer must be closed with [EndLayer\(\)](#) when finish. The parameter *OCG* must be valid handle of an Optional Content Group (OCG) or Optional Content Membership Dictionary (OCMD) (see [CreateOCG\(\)](#) and [CreateOCMD\(\)](#) for further information). The OCG or OCMD controls the visibility of the contents that is included in the layer.

[BeginLayer\(\)](#) / [EndLayer\(\)](#) calls connect normal page contents, such as text, images, and vector graphics with a layer but no interactive objects like annotations or form fields. Annotations and Form Fields can be added to a layer with [AddObjectToLayer\(\)](#).

It is not required to draw the entire contents of a layer in one pass. The page contents can be drawn as usual and delimited into [BeginLayer\(\)](#) / [EndLayer\(\)](#) calls as necessary. Only contents that is delimited into [BeginLayer\(\)](#) / [EndLayer\(\)](#) calls becomes part of a layer.

Layers can be nested by calling [BeginLayer\(\)](#) more than one time with different OCGs or OCMDs. The visibility of an inner layer depends then also on the visibility of the out ones (see example below). If an outer layer is invisible then all inner layers are invisible too, regardless of the visibility settings of the inner layers.

### Remarks:

A layer is **not** part of the graphics state. Neither [BeginLayer\(\)](#) nor [EndLayer\(\)](#) change any parameter of the graphics state. [BeginLayer\(\)](#) must not be called within an open path.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Example (C++):

```
...
pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "test_layer.pdf");

// We use three layers in this example
SI32 oc1 = pdfCreateOCG(pdf, "Anything", true, true, oiView);
SI32 oc2 = pdfCreateOCG(pdf, "Text and Annotations", true, true, oiView);
SI32 oc3 = pdfCreateOCG(pdf, "Images", true, true, oiView);

pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);

pdfAppend(pdf);
// The main layer controls the visibility of all three layers in this
// example.
pdfBeginLayer(pdf, oc1);
```

```

pdfBeginLayer(pdf, oc2);
    pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsRegular, 12.0, true, cp1252);
    char someText[] = "Some text with a link!!!";
    pdfWriteText(pdf, 50.0, 50.0, someText);
    double tw = pdfGetTextWidth(pdf, someText);
    // To reflect the same nesting as the text layer we must
    // use an OCMD for the annotation because the visibility of the
    // layer oc2 depends on oc1 at this position.
    pdfSetBorderStyle(pdf, bsUnderline);
    pdfSetStrokeColor(pdf, PDF_BLUE);
    SI32 annot = pdfWebLink(pdf, 50, 51, tw, 12, "www.dynaforms.com");
    UI32 ocgs[2] = {oc1, oc2};
    SI32 ocmd = pdfCreateOCMD(pdf, ovAllOn, ocgs, 2);
    pdfAddObjectToLayer(pdf, ocmd, ooAnnotation, annot);
pdfEndLayer(pdf);

pdfBeginLayer(pdf, oc3);
    InsertImageEx(pdf, 50.0, 70.0, 300.0, 200.0, "c:/Imgs/test.tif", 1);
pdfEndLayer(pdf);

pdfEndLayer(pdf);

pdfWriteText(pdf, 50.0, 300.0, "This text is not part of a layer!");

pdfEndPage(pdf);

pdfCloseFile(pdf);
...

```

## ***BeginPattern***

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfBeginPattern(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    TPatternType PatternType,    // Pattern type
    TTilingType TilingType,      // Tiling type
    double Width,               // Cell width
    double Height)              // Cell height

typedef enum
{
    ptColored,
    ptUnColored
}TPatternType;

typedef enum
{
    ttConstSpacing,
    ttNoDistortion,
    ttFastConstSpacing

```



```
}TTilingType;
```

This function creates a new tiling pattern. The graphics state is initialized to its default state when opening a pattern. See [Append\(\)](#) for further information. The parameters *Width* and *Height* define the bounding box of the pattern cell.

### **Colored Tiling Patterns**

Colored tiling patterns can be created like a normal PDF page or template. The only difference is that the pattern must be enclosed in [BeginPattern\(\)](#) and [EndPattern\(\)](#) calls. The objects inside the pattern are drawn in the usual way. After all objects are drawn the pattern must be finished with [EndPattern\(\)](#).

### **Uncolored Tiling Patterns**

Uncolored patterns are also painted in the usual way. That means all object types can be inserted such as text, vector graphics or images. However, an uncolored tiling pattern must **NOT** include any color information. Because of this inserting a color image into an uncolored tiling pattern is not allowed, only 1 bit images can be used. This type of pattern can be painted in a user defined color that can be applied with [ApplyPattern\(\)](#).

The color information of a colored tiling pattern is fixed, it can not be changed.

A pattern can be used like a color. It is not recommended to save the graphics state before using a pattern. A pattern is active as long as the used color is changed by [SetFillColor\(\)](#) or [SetStrokeColor\(\)](#). See [ApplyPattern\(\)](#) for an example application.

The current graphics state is saved entirely before the pattern will be entered. This graphics state is restored when the pattern is closed with [EndPattern\(\)](#). That means, the current font, line width, fill color and so on are all restored to its values before entering the pattern.

#### **Remarks:**

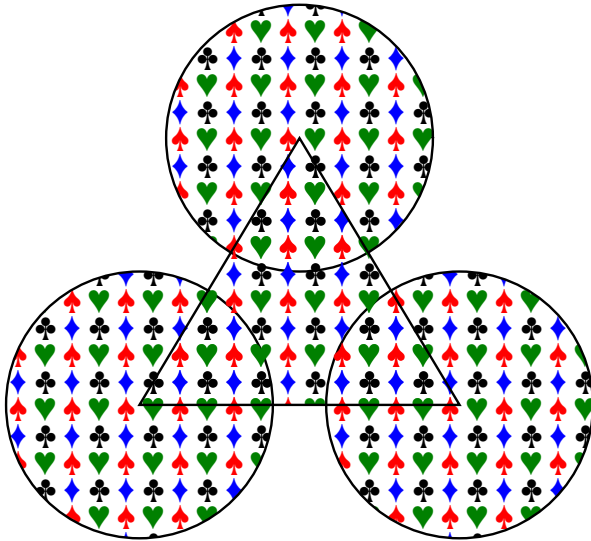
Patterns are invisible as long as they are not applied by the function [ApplyPattern\(\)](#). The initial graphic state defines a zero line width in Acrobat 5. If a pattern should contain any line art or stroked paths, the line width must be explicitly set before an object is drawn. If the line width is not set, the results can vary between different Acrobat versions. In general a pattern should not contain very complex objects to improve graphics speed.

#### **Return values:**

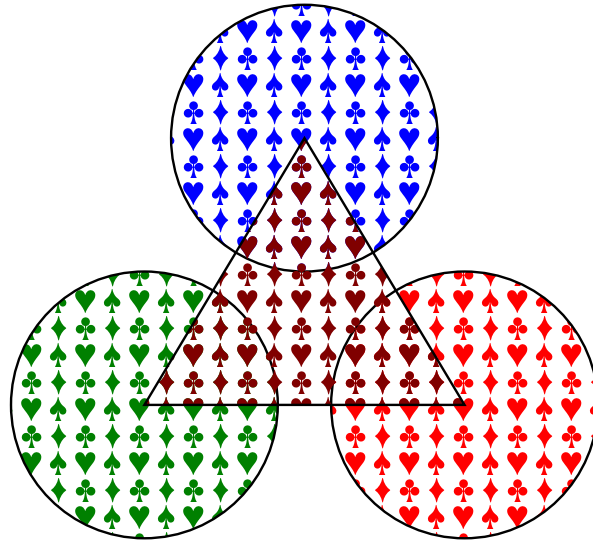
If the function succeeds, the return value is a pattern handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

Pattern types:

*Colored Tiling Pattern*



*Uncolored Tiling Pattern*



## ***BeginTemplate***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfBeginTemplate(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double Width,      // Width of the template  
    double Height)     // Height of the template
```

A template is a special PDF object type (Form XObject in PDF syntax) that can be used like an image.

However, unlike images, a template can contain vector graphics, text, sampled images, and all other object types which are supported by normal PDF pages.

The background of a template is transparent, it can be used multiple times, and it is possible to scale a template to different sizes, without loss of quality. Loss-less means that vector graphics inside a template are scaled to the desired size. If a template contains an image it is also scaled with the template, but scaling of images is not loss-less, also when included in a template.

Templates can be used for logos, custom page backgrounds, and other repeating contents. If a template is used multiple times, it is stored in the PDF file only once. This saves disk space, and you do not have to paint a fixed background each time a new page is created.

Templates support the same objects as normal PDF pages with exception of interactive objects like annotations, form fields, or artical beads.

Once the objects of a template are drawn, the template must be finished with [EndTemplate\(\)](#). To insert the template on a page use [PlaceTemplate\(\)](#).

The current graphics state is saved before the template will be entered and it is restored when the template is closed with [EndTemplate\(\)](#). That means, the current font, line width, fill color and so on

are all restored to their values before entering the template. However, the current graphics state is initialized to its default state when opening a template. See [Append\(\)](#) for further information.

A template can be inserted automatically to new created pages if the template was added to the list of auto-templates (see [AutoTemplate\(\)](#) for further information). This can be useful if a template represents a fixed page background that must appear on all pages.

#### Remarks:

A template remains invisible until it was placed on a page with [PlaceTemplate\(\)](#). Unused templates are deleted when [CloseFile\(\)](#) is called, they are not added to the PDF file.

Templates can be created outside of an open page and it is also possible to create a template outside of an open PDF file. But note: it is not possible to create a persistent template that can be used with multiple PDF files. All objects will be deleted when [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [FreePDF\(\)](#) is called.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the template handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

#### Example (C):

```
#include "dynapdf.h"
// First we declare our error callback function
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMsg, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMessage);
    return 0;
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    SI32 tmpl;
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:/cppout.pdf");
    pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);

    pdfAppend(pdf);

    tmpl=pdfBeginTemplate(pdf,pdfGetPageWidth(pdf),pdfGetPageHeight(pdf));
    pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsItalic, 40, true, cp1252);
    pdfWriteFText(pdf, taCenter, "This is a template!");
    pdfEndTemplate(pdf);

    pdfPlaceTemplate(pdf, tmpl, 0, 0, 0, 0);
    pdfPlaceTemplate(pdf, tmpl, 0, 50, 500, 0);
    pdfPlaceTemplate(pdf, tmpl, 0, 100, 450, 0);

    pdfEndPage(pdf);
```

```
pdfCloseFile(pdf);
pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
}
```

Output:

*This is a template!*

*This is a template!*

*This is a template!*

### **Bezier\_1\_2\_3**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfBezier_1_2_3(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double x1,         // X-Coordinate of the first control point P1
    double y1,         // Y-Coordinate of the first control point P1
    double x2,         // X-Coordinate of the second control point P2
    double y2,         // Y-Coordinate of the second control point P2
    double x3,         // X-Coordinate of the end point P3
    double y3)         // Y-Coordinate of the end point P3
```

Curved path segments are specified as cubic Bézier curves. Such curves are defined by four points: the two endpoints (the current point P0 and the final point P3) and two control points P1 and P2. Given the coordinates of the four points, the curve is generated by varying the parameter  $t$  from 0.0 to 1.0 in the following equation:

$$R(t) = (1 - t)^3 P_0 + 3t(1 - t)^2 P_1 + 3t^2(1 - t) P_2 + t^3 P_3$$

When  $t = 0.0$ , the value of the function  $R(t)$  coincides with the current point P0; when  $t = 1.0$ ,  $R(t)$  coincides with the final point P3. Intermediate values of  $t$  generate intermediate points along the curve. The curve does not, in general, pass through the two control points P1 and P2. Cubic Bézier curves have two desirable properties:

- The curve can be very quickly split into smaller pieces for rapid rendering.
- The curve is contained within the convex hull of the four points defining the curve, most easily visualized as the polygon obtained by stretching a rubber band around the outside of the four points. This property allows rapid testing of whether the curve lies completely outside the visible region, and hence does not have to be rendered.

The most general type of curve in PDF is the cubic Bézier curve with two control points. The starting point P0 is the current point that was set before by a painting operator ([MoveTo\(\)](#), [LineTo\(\)](#) and so on). PDF also supports two other Bézier curves with only one control point (see [Bezier\\_1\\_3\(\)](#) and

[Bezier\\_2\\_3\(\)](#)). These two curve types are rarely used but still supported by all Acrobat versions incl. DynaPDF.

As mentioned earlier the function requires a start point that must be set with [MoveTo\(\)](#) or another painting operator beforehand. Once the start point was set, multiple curve segments can be drawn to build circles, ellipses or other curved paths. The DynaPDF functions [DrawArc\(\)](#), [DrawCircle\(\)](#), [Ellipse\(\)](#) and so on use all [Bezier\\_1\\_2\\_3\(\)](#) to construct the path.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### **Bezier\_1\_3**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfBezier_1_3(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double x1,         // X-Coordinate of the first control point P1
    double y1,         // Y-Coordinate of the first control point P1
    double x3,         // X-Coordinate of the end point P3
    double y3)         // Y-Coordinate of the end point P3
```

This function paints a Bézier curve with one control point. The second control point P2 coincides with the final point P3 of the curve. The start point P0 must be set with [MoveTo\(\)](#) or any other painting operator before.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### **Bezier\_2\_3**

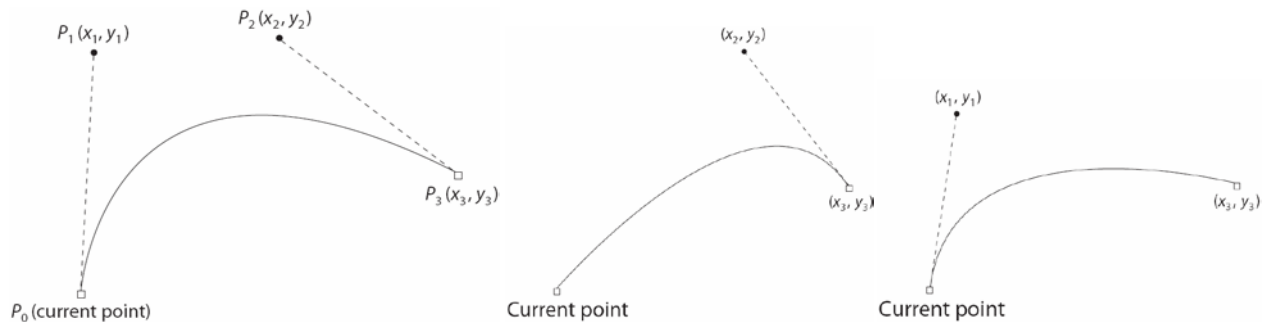
Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfBezier_2_3(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double x2,         // X-Coordinate of the second control point P2
    double y2,         // Y-Coordinate of the second control point P2
    double x3,         // X-Coordinate of the end point P3
    double y3)         // Y-Coordinate of the end point P3
```

The third supported Bézier curve type paints also a curve with one control point. In this version the first control coincides with initial point P0 of the curve. The start point P0 must be set with [MoveTo\(\)](#) or any other painting operator before.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

**Bézier curves:*****BuildFamilyNameAndStyle*****Syntax:**

```

LBOOL fntBuildFamilyNameAndStyle(
    const void* IFont, // Pointer to font object
    char Name[128],    // 128 bytes long font name buffer
    TFStyle ADDR Style) // Font style

```

The function tries to extract the family name and font style from a font object. If the family name is not available or could not be algorithmically identified, the postscript name is copied to the parameter *Name* instead. The return value indicates whether the copied font name is probably a family name or a postscript name. The font selection mode should be set according to the return value when trying to load the font from the system (see [SetFontSelMode\(\)](#)).

**Return values:**

If the family name could be extracted the return value is 1. If the font does not contain a family name or if there is no safe indication whether the font name represents a family name the return value is false.

**Example (C++):**

```

SI32 SetPDFFont(const void* IFont)
{
    SI32 retval;
    TFStyle style;
    TFontSelMode selMode;
    char fontName[128];
    // Get the font name
    if (fntBuildFamilyNameAndStyle(IFont, fontName, fontStyle))
        selMode = smFamilyName;
    else
        selMode = smPostScriptName;
    // Set font selection mode for the first search run
    pdfSetFontSelMode(pdf, selMode);
    if ((retval = pdfSetFont(pdf, fontName, style, 12, true, cp1252)) < 0)
    {
        // If the font cannot be found then search again with reversed font
        // selection mode.
    }
}

```

```

    if (selMode == smFamilyName)
        selMode = smPostScriptName;
    else
        selMode = smFamilyName;
    pdfSetFontSelMode(pdf, selMode);
    return pdfSetFont(pdf, fontName, style, 12.0, true, cp1252);
} else
    return retval;
}

```

## CalcWidthHeight

Syntax:

```

double pdfCalcWidthHeight(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    double OrgWidth,       // Original width of the image or template
    double OrgHeight,      // Original height of the image or template
    double ScaledWidth,    // Scaled Width
    double ScaledHeight)   // Scaled Height

```

This function calculates the scaled width or height of a given size in the same way as [InsertImage\(\)](#) or [PlaceTemplate\(\)](#). It can be used to calculate the new width or height of an image or template before it will be inserted to the page.

- If *ScaledWidth* == 0 and fabs(*ScaledHeight*) > 0 the function returns the scaled **width** with exact proportions in relation to the given values of *OrgWidth* and *OrgHeight*.
- If fabs(*ScaledWidth*) > 0 and *ScaledHeight* == 0 the function returns the scaled **height** with exact proportions in relation to the given values of *OrgWidth* and *OrgHeight*.

The function fabs() is used to get the absolute value so that the parameters can be negative. The parameters *OrgWidth* and *OrgHeight* must be greater zero.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is unequal -1. If the function fails the return value is -1.

## ChangeAnnotName

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfChangeAnnotName(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,           // Annotation handle
    const char* Name)      // Annotation name or NULL

```

This function changes or deletes the optional name of an annotation. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid annotation handle. If the parameter *Name* contains an empty string, or if it is set to NULL, the annotation name is deleted.

**Remarks:**

This function is available in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***ChangeAnnotPos***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfChangeAnnotPos(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,      // Annotation handle
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of the annotation
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of the annotation
    double Width,     // Width in unscaled units
    double Height)    // Height in unscaled units
```

This function changes the position and size of an annotation. Annotations which contain a visible appearance such as 3D annotations should be scaled without changing the annotation's aspect ratio.

Example:

```
...
TPDFRect bbox;
pdfGetAnnotBBox(pdf, annot, bbox);
double w = bbox.Right - bbox.Left;
double h = bbox.Top - bbox.Bottom;
// The annotation should be scaled to a width of 300 units.
// The scaled height can be calculated as follows:
h = pdfCalcWidthHeight(pdf, w, h, 300.0, 0.0);
pdfChangeAnnotPos(pdf, annot, 50.0, 50.0, 300.0, h);
...
```

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***ChangeBookmark***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfChangeBookmark(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    SI32 ABmk,        // Handle of a bookmark
    const char* Title, // New title
    SI32 Parent,      // New parent bookmark
    UI32 DestPage,    // New destination page
    SI32 Open)        // Open the bookmark?
```

This function changes an existing bookmark. There is no difference between imported bookmarks and bookmarks which are created with DynaPDF. The parameter *ABmk* requires a valid bookmark



handle. The parameter *Title* can be NULL if it should be deleted. The parameter *Open* will be ignored if the bookmark contains no children. The function checks not whether the destination page exists. Invalid destinations are set to page 1 when the outline tree is written to the file.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The ANSI Version supports ANSI strings of the code page 1252 only. To create a title in an arbitrary encoding, convert the string to Unicode with the function [ConvToIncode\(\)](#) first and use the Unicode version to change the bookmark.

To get the handle of a specific bookmark use the functions [FindBookmark\(\)](#) and [FindNextBookmark\(\)](#) to find the bookmark.

It is also possible to enumerate all bookmarks by using [GetBookmarkCount\(\)](#) and [GetBookmark\(\)](#) until the used bookmark was found (see [GetBookmark\(\)](#) for further information).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ChangeFont***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfChangeFont(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 AHandle)      // Handle of the new font
```

This function changes or sets the font to the one of the parameter *AHandle*. *AHandle* must be a valid font handle that was returned by [SetFont\(\)](#), [SetFontEx\(\)](#), [SetCIDFont\(\)](#), or [LoadFont\(\)](#).

The font size is taken from the current font if any. If no font is active when the function is called, the font size will be set to the value that was used to load font the last time.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ChangeFontSize***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfChangeFontSize(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer  
    double Size)       // New font size
```

This function changes the font size of the current font. The font size must be greater zero.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ChangeFontStyle

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfChangeFontStyle(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TFStyle Style)     // New font style  
  
typedef SI32 TFStyle;  
#define fsNone      0  
#define fsUnderlined 4  
#define fsStriked   8
```

This function changes the style of the current font. Only the style flags `fsUnderlined` and `fsStriked` can be set with this function. The font styles `fsBold` and `fsItalic` requires another font file that must be selected with `SetFont()`.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ChangeFontStyleEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfChangeFontStyleEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TFStyle Style)     // New font style
```

The function changes the font style of a font like `ChangeFontStyle()` but it accepts also font styles like `fsBold` or `fsItalic`. These flags can be used to explicitly enable the emulation of a missing font style.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ChangeJavaScript

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfChangeJavaScript(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AHandle,     // Handle of global JavaScript  
    const char* NewScript) // New JavaScript
```

The function replaces a global JavaScript with a new one. The parameter *AHandle* must be a valid handle of a global JavaScript. The parameter *NewScript* must be a valid JavaScript. The script is not checked by DynaPDF whether it is valid or not. Note that older Acrobat versions do not support all JavaScript functions. Due to several bugs in certain Acrobat versions invalid scripts can cause access violations in Adobe's Acrobat. Test your scripts carefully with all Acrobat versions which must be supported.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. However, because JavaScript 1.2 is not Unicode compatible, Unicode encoded scripts are translated to a platform specific encoding prior to interpretation by the JavaScript engine. This conversion is done in the viewer application and can cause errors. The usage of scripts in Unicode format should be avoided if possible.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ChangeJavaScriptAction***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfChangeJavaScriptAction(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AHandle,              // Handle of a JavaScript action  
    const char* NewScript) // New JavaScript
```

The function replaces the script of a JavaScript action with a new one. The parameter *AHandle* must be a valid handle of a JavaScript action. The parameter *NewScript* must be a valid JavaScript. The script is not checked by DynaPDF whether it is valid or not. Note that older Acrobat versions do not support all JavaScript functions. Due to several bugs in certain Acrobat versions invalid scripts can cause access violations in Adobe's Acrobat. Test your scripts carefully with all Acrobat versions which must be supported.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Because JavaScript 1.2 is not Unicode compatible, Unicode encoded scripts are translated to a platform specific encoding prior to interpretation by the JavaScript engine. This conversion is done in the viewer application and can cause errors. The usage of scripts in Unicode format should be avoided if possible.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ChangeJavaScriptName***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfChangeJavaScript(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AHandle,      // Handle of global JavaScript  
    const char* Name) // New name of the script
```

This function changes the name of a global JavaScript. The parameter *Name* defines the name of this script. This name is **NOT** used to identify a function inside the JavaScript; it is only used in Adobe's Acrobat to select a specific script. Script names must be unique; two scripts must not use the same name.

**Return value:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ChangeLinkAnnot***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfChangeLinkAnnot(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle,       // Annotation handle  
    const char* URL)   // URL or file path
```

This function changes the link of a file link or web link annotation. The parameter *AHandle* must be a valid handle of a file link, page link, or web link Annotation. The parameter *URL* can be either a file path or a URL to an internet resource; it must not be an empty string or NULL. Note that you cannot change the type of the annotation with this function. For example, a web link annotation requires still a URL to an internet resource, while a file link annotation requires usually a path to a file on a local hard drive.

**Remarks:**

Imported file link or web link annotations are mostly defined as page link annotation because it is impossible to distinguish between these types during import. Use the function [FindLinkAnnot\(\)](#) if you need to change an imported file link or web link annotation.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## CheckCollection

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfCheckCollection(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function checks whether user defined data fields in embedded files are consistently defined with collection fields. User defined collection fields can be used to provide additional information relating to embedded files. It is also possible to use such fields to sort the list of embedded files in an arbitrary manner. However, the data types used in the embedded file specification must correspond to the definition in the collection.

This function is especially useful to check the integrity of the file if multiple PDF collections were merged into one file.

See also [CreateCollection\(\)](#), [CreateCollectionField\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## CheckConformance

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCheckConformance(
    const void* IPDF,                // Instance pointer
    TConformanceType Type,           // PDF Version to check
    TCheckOptions Options,           // various options
    const void* UserData,            // User defined pointer
    TOnFontNotFoundProc* OnFontNotFound, // Font replacement callback
    TOnReplaceICCProfile* OnReplaceICCProfile) // ICC profile callback
```

```
typedef enum
{
    ctPDFA_1b_2005, // Compatibility to PDF/A 1b 2005
    ctNormalize      // Requires a separate license
} TConformanceType;
```

```
typedef UI32 TCheckOptions;
#define coDefault                0x00000FFF // Default flags
#define coEmbedSubsets           0x00000001 // Already done
#define coDeleteTransferFuncs    0x00000002 // Can not occur
#define coDeleteMultiMediaContents 0x00000004 // Makes no sense
#define coDeleteActionsAndScripts 0x00000008 // Makes no sense
#define coDeleteInvRenderingIntent 0x00000010 // Can not occur
#define coFlattenFormFields       0x00000020 // Flatten form fields
#define coReplaceV4ICCProfiles    0x00000040 // Can not occur
#define coDeleteEmbeddedFiles     0x00000080 // Makes no sense
#define coDeleteOPIComments       0x00000100 // Can not occur
#define coDeleteSignatures        0x00000200 // Can not occur
#define coReplCCITTFaxWithFlate  0x00010000 // Makes no sense
```

```

#define coNoFontEmbedding          0x10000000 // Makes no sense

typedef SI32 PDF_CALL TOnFontNotFoundProc(
    const void* Data,           // Pointer UserData of CheckConformance
    const void* PDFFont,       // PDF font handle
    const char* FontName,      // PostScript name of the font
    SI32 Style,                // Font style
    SI32 StdFontIndex,         // Standard font index
    LBOOL IsSymbolFont);      // Set to 1 if the font is a symbol font

typedef SI32 PDF_CALL TOnReplaceICCProfile(
    const void* Data,           // Pointer UserData of CheckConformance
    TICCProfileType Type,      // Required ICC profile type to be embedded
    SI32 ColorSpace);          // Color space handle

```

The function converts a PDF file to a specific PDF standard according to the parameter *Type*. At time of publication two conformance types are defined: ctPDF\_A\_1b\_2005 (compatibility to PDF/A 1b) and ctNormalize. Further conformance types maybe available in future versions of DynaPDF.

The function was originally developed for [DETEC Decision Technology Software GmbH in Germany](#). It is used in [myPDFConvert](#) to check and convert arbitrary PDF files to PDF/A 1b.

However, DynaPDF contains a restricted version of [CheckConformance\(\)](#) which cannot be used if one or more pages from external PDF files were imported. The conversion of arbitrary imported PDF files requires a separate license of the PDF/A Extension Kit.

If the parameter *Type* is set to ctNormalize the functions checks the PDF file for errors, rebuilds all embedded fonts, optionally embeds non-embedded fonts, and repairs potential file errors if possible. The resulting PDF file is easy to read and should not produce any printing error. Because this feature is part of the PDF/A Extension Kit for DynaPDF it is not further described here.

The function supports a large set of processing options but most of them are not meaningful when processing PDF files which were fully created with DynaPDF.

However, the function can be used to find the right settings if PDF/A compatible files should be created. Therefore, it is usually best to set the parameter *Options* to zero. The function raises then always a fatal exception if a prohibited object is found.

It is important to understand that only a few settings can be adjusted with the processing options, most of them are meaningful only when processing arbitrary imported PDF files. The function modifies many objects automatically and produces a warning, e.g. if the print flag of annotations or form fields are not set. If the error callback function returns 0, the function assumes that the changes were accepted and processing continues.

Note that it is very important to set an error callback function before executing this function (see [SetOnErrorProc\(\)](#)). Otherwise it is not possible to determine whether certain objects were modified.

The function supports two additional callback functions:

- `OnFontNotFound()` -> The function is called if a non-embedded font cannot be found in the font directories. This event can only occur if one of the 14 Standard fonts were used. The callback function provides information about which font could not be found.
- `OnReplaceICCProfile()` -> This function is called if a device color space was used on a page that must be replaced with an ICCBased color space. The callback function is optional but processing stops immediately if a required ICC profile cannot be loaded. If set, the application must execute the function `ReplaceICCProfile()` to load the required ICC profile. The return value of the callback function should be either the one of `ReplaceICCProfile()` or -1 if the required profile is not available on the system. See also Color Space handling below.

The pointer *UserData* of `CheckConformance()` is always passed unchanged to the callback functions.

### **Color space handling**

PDF/A compliant files should use one color space for the entire document. However, with a few restrictions it is also possible to use more than one device color space. In this is the case, the callback function `OnReplaceICCProfile` must be set. `CheckConformance()` uses this function to dynamically replace device color spaces with ICC based color spaces. Within the callback function the function `ReplaceICCProfile()` must be called with the path to the requested ICC profile type.

### **Return values**

If the PDF file is compatible to PDF/A 1b the function returns one of the following values:

- **0** -> The PDF file is fully compatible to PDF/A 1b. Close the file with `CloseFile()`, finished.
- **1** -> A RGB ICC profile must be added to the document with `AddRenderingIntent()`.
- **2** -> A CMYK ICC profile must be added to the document with `AddRenderingIntent()`.
- **3** -> A Gray, RGB, or CMYK ICC profile must be added to the document with `AddRenderingIntent()`. DeviceGray compatible ICC profiles are rarely available. However, you can use a RGB or CMYK profile instead (a RGB profile is preferred due to the smaller size).
- **< 0** -> A negative return value indicates that an error occurred during conversion to PDF/A. Note that the function raises always fatal exceptions, there is no PDF file in memory if the conversion fails.

### **Remarks:**

The return values of the function must not be ignored. If a required ICC profile was not added to file the resulting PDF file cannot be compatible to PDF/A. The PDF file must be closed with `CloseFile()`. The usage of `CloseFileEx()` is prohibited because PDF/A compliant files must not be encrypted.

`CheckConformance()` can be called after the entire document was fully created. You must not call the function multiple times on the same document in memory.

## ***CheckFieldNames***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCheckFieldNames(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function checks all currently defined interactive form fields for invalid duplicate field names. Use this function if multiple interactive forms were imported. DynaPDF does not check or change duplicate field names during import. Therefore, check the field names and change invalid names if necessary before closing the document. If an interactive form contains duplicate field names of fields with different types, the document will be damaged.

### **Remarks:**

If a form contains invalid duplicate field names, the names must be changed with [SetFieldName\(\)](#). However, if such a field is used in a JavaScript action or by a global JavaScript, the JavaScript(s) must also be changed to avoid error messages in Adobe's Acrobat.

Global JavaScripts can be accessed with the function [GetJavaScript\(\)](#) and changed with the function [ChangeJavaScript\(\)](#). A JavaScript action can be accessed with the function [GetJavaScriptAction\(\)](#) and changed with the function [ChangeJavaScriptAction\(\)](#).

### **Return values:**

The function returns the handle of the first invalid field name that was found, that is a value greater or equal zero. If no invalid field name was found the return value is **-1**.

## ***ClearAutoTemplates***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfClearAutoTemplates(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function deletes the array of templates which are automatically added to newly created pages. See [AutoTemplate\(\)](#) for further information.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ClearHostFonts***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfClearHostFonts(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function deletes the array of fonts included in all currently defined font search paths. After the list was deleted it is still possible to use the fonts which are already in use. The 14 standard fonts are also available depending on whether the property UseStdFonts ([Get/SetUseStdFonts\(\)](#)) is true or



false. If no font was already in use and if the property [UseStdFonts](#) is set to false it is not possible to select a font until a new font search path was added (see [AddFontSearchPath\(\)](#)).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ClipPath

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfClipPath(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TClippingMode ClipMode,    // Clipping mode (Winding or Even-Odd)
    TPathFillMode FillMode)    // Path fill mode

typedef enum
{
    cmEvenOdd, // Use the Even-Odd rule
    cmWinding  // Use the nonzero Winding Number rule
}TClippingMode;

typedef enum
{
    fmFillNoClose,          // not allowed, path must be closed
    fmStrokeNoClose,        // not allowed, path must be closed
    fmFillStrokeNoClose,    // not allowed, path must be closed
    fmFill,                 // fill the path (winding)
    fmStroke,               // stroke the path (winding)
    fmFillStroke,           // fill and stroke the path (winding)
    fmFillEvOdd,            // fill the path (even-odd)
    fmFillStrokeEvOdd,      // fill and stroke the path (even-odd)
    fmFillEvOddNoClose,     // not allowed, path must be closed
    fmFillStrokeEvOddNoClose, // not allowed, path must be closed
    fmNoFill,               // close but do not paint the path
    fmClose                 // same as fmNoFill
}TPathFillMode;
```

This function marks the current path as clipping path. The function must be called after a closable path was created. A path that consists of a [MoveTo\(\)](#) and [LineTo\(\)](#) only call cannot be closed!

A clipping path can also be filled, stroked, or both in one pass. However, the combination of a clipping path operator with a path painting operator is seldom used and not supported in all PDF viewers. To avoid unnecessary problems a path should always be clipped and painted in two separate steps, also if this causes some unnecessary overhead.

Once the clipping was created and activated with [ClipPath\(\)](#) you can draw arbitrary contents into it, such as images, text, or vector graphics.

A clipping path is part of the current graphics state. The only way to deactivate a clipping path is to restore the graphics state with [RestoreGraphicState\(\)](#). This assumes that it was saved with [SaveGraphicState\(\)](#) before the clipping path was created.

Note that it is not possible to extend or widen an active clipping path. It is only possible to intersect it with a new one. The intersection of two clipping paths is never larger than the initial clipping path.

**Remarks:**

Text objects are handled separately in PDF for use as clipping path. See [SetTextDrawMode\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***CloseAndSignFile***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCloseAndSignFile(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const char* CertFile,      // File path to a PKCS#12 certificate file  
    const char* Password,      // Password to decrypt the cert's private key  
    const char* Reason,        // Optional reason string  
    const char* Location)      // Optional signers location string
```

This function finishes the PDF file, digitally signs it, and frees all used resources if the file was not created in memory. The parameter *CertFile* must be a valid path to a PKCS#12 certificate file.

The internal signature handler of DynaPDF supports certificate files with 1024 bits encrypted private keys only. However, if certificates with a stronger encryption should be used it is possible to sign the file with an external signature handler, like the Windows CryptAPI (see [CloseAndSignFileExt\(\)](#) for further information).

The parameter *Password* holds the password to decrypt the private key. The parameters *Reason* and *Location* are both optional. These strings are printed into the signature field if set.

Digital signatures are stored in a signature field which is a special type of Interactive Form field. If no signature field exist when the function is called, DynaPDF creates an invisible one on the first page at the position 50.0, 50.0 measured in top down coordinates. The size of the field is 200.0 x 50.0 units. Hidden signature fields appear in the left navigation tab of Adobe's Acrobat.

If one or more signature fields exist when the function is called then the first signature field is used for signing. Signature fields can be created with the function [CreateSigField\(\)](#) but it is also possible to import empty signature fields from an external PDF file.

## ***Importing signed PDF files***

Signed PDF files can only be changed, without invalidating existing signatures, when changes are stored with an incremental update. An incremental update is a special way to modify a PDF file; changes are appended to the end of the file, leaving its original contents intact. This technique is required since altering any existing bytes in the file invalidates existing signatures.

However, incremental updates are not supported by DynaPDF that is the reason why only empty signature fields are imported. Because DynaPDF creates always a completely new PDF file, it makes no sense to import existing signatures, they would become invalid.

### ***Possible function errors***

When trying to sign a PDF file the function must first parse the certificate file before a signature can be created. This process can fail, due to an invalid file path or due to an unsupported certificate file format that was passed to the function. The PDF file will only be closed and signed if the certificate file was valid and if no other error occurred during the parsing process.

If an error occurred due to an invalid certificate file, invalid file path and so on, the function returns zero and passes an error message to the error callback function if any. All errors during the parsing process of the certificate file are non-fatal so that the PDF file is still in memory when the function returns. It is then possible to change the certificate file and trying to sign the PDF file again.

To determine whether the PDF was already deleted or of it is still in memory use the function [HaveOpenDoc\(\)](#). The function returns true if the PDF file is still in memory. If the function returns false, the last error was fatal and the PDF file has already been deleted.

The buffer of a memory based PDF file can be returned by [GetBuffer\(\)](#) after this function was called. Note that [GetBuffer\(\)](#) does not free the used resources because it returns a pointer to the original buffer. After the buffer was processed by your application call [FreePDF\(\)](#) to free the uses resources.

See also [CreateNewPDF\(\)](#), [GetBuffer\(\)](#), [FreePDF\(\)](#).

### **Remarks:**

Further information about digital signatures can be found under [Digital Signatures](#). To encrypt and sign a PDF file use the function [CloseAndSingFileEx\(\)](#). The appearance of a signature field can be user defined. See [CreateSigFieldAP\(\)](#) for further information.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***CloseAndSignFileEx***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCloseAndSignFileEx(  
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer  
    const char* OpenPwd,        // Optional Open password  
    const char* OwnerPwd,       // Optional Owner password  
    TKeyLen KeyLen,             // Key length (40 or 128 bit)  
    TRestrictions Restrict,     // Restrictions  
    const char* CertFile,       // File path to a PKCS#12 certificate file  
    const char* Password,       // Password to decrypt the cert's private key  
    const char* Reason,         // Optional reason string  
    const char* Location)       // Optional signers location string
```

This function finishes the PDF file, encrypts it, digitally signs it, and frees all used resources if the file was not created in memory. The first five parameters have the same meaning as of the function [CloseFileEx\(\)](#). The remaining parameters are identical to [CloseAndSignFile\(\)](#). This function simply combines both functions because a PDF file must be encrypted and digitally signed in one pass. The encryption parameters are described in detail under [CloseFileEx\(\)](#).

The parameter *CertFile* must be a valid path to a PKCS#12 certificate file. DynaPDF supports certificate files with 1024 bits encrypted private keys only. The parameter *Password* holds the password to decrypt the private key. The parameters *Reason* and *Location* are both optional. These strings are printed into the signature field if set.

Digital signatures are stored in a signature field which is a special type of Interactive Form field. If no signature field exist when the function is called, DynaPDF creates an invisible signature field on the first page at the position 50.0, 50.0 measured in top down coordinates. The size of the field is 200.0 x 50.0 units. Hidden signature fields appear in the left navigation tab of Adobe's Acrobat.

If one or more signature fields exist when the function is called then the first signature field is used for signing. Signature fields can be created with the function [CreateSigField\(\)](#) but it is also possible to import empty signature fields from an external PDF file.

### ***Importing signed PDF files***

Signed PDF files can only be changed, without invalidating an existing signature, when changes are stored with an incremental update. An incremental update is a special way to modify a PDF file; changes are appended to the end of the file, leaving its original contents intact. This technique is required since altering any existing bytes in the file invalidates existing signatures.

However, incremental updates are not supported by DynaPDF that is why only empty signature fields are imported. Because DynaPDF creates always a completely new PDF file, it makes no sense to import existing signatures, they would become invalid.

### **Possible function errors**

When trying to sign a PDF file the function must first parse the certificate file before a signature can be created. This process can fail, due to an invalid file path or due to an unsupported certificate file format that was passed to the function. The PDF file will be closed and signed if the certificate file was valid and no other error occurred during the parsing process of the certificate file.

If an error occurred during the parsing process, e.g. invalid certificate file, invalid file path and so on, the function returns zero and passes an error message to the error callback function if any. All errors during the parsing process of the certificate file are non-fatal so that the PDF file is still in memory when the function returns. It is then possible to change the certificate file and trying to sign the PDF file again.

To determine whether the PDF was already deleted or of it is still in memory call the function [HaveOpenDoc\(\)](#). The function returns true if the PDF file is in memory. If the function returns false, the last error was fatal and the PDF file has already been deleted.

The buffer of a memory based PDF file can be returned by [GetBuffer\(\)](#) after this function was called. Note that [GetBuffer\(\)](#) does not free the used resources because it returns a pointer to the original buffer. After the buffer was processed by your application call [FreePDF\(\)](#) to free the uses resources.

See also [CreateSigFieldAP\(\)](#), [CreateNewPDF\(\)](#), [GetBuffer\(\)](#), [FreePDF\(\)](#).

#### **Remarks:**

Further information about digital signatures can be found under [Digital Signatures](#). The appearance of a signature field can be user defined. See [CreateSigFieldAP\(\)](#) for further information.

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### **CloseAndSignFileExt**

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfCloseAndSignFileExt(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    struct TPDFSigParms* SigParms) // Important parameters

typedef enum
{
    htDetached, // Byte ranges of the finish PDF file will be returned
    htSHA1      // The SHA1 hash to be signed will be returned
}THashType;

struct TPDFSigParms
{
    UI32          StructSize; // Must be set to sizeof(TSignParms)
    UI32          PKCS7ObjLen; // Max length of the signed PKCS#7 object
    THashType      HashType;   // See description
    const BYTE*    Rangel;     // Out -> Hash or byte range
    UI32          RangelLen;   // Out -> Length of the buffer

```

```

const BYTE*   Range2;           // Out -> Set only if HashType = htDetached
UI32          Range2Len;        // Out -> Length of the buffer
const char*   ContactInfoA;     // Optional, e.g. an email address
const UI16*   ContactInfoW;     // Optional, e.g. an email address
const char*   LocationA;        // Optional location of the signer
const UI16*   LocationW;        // Optional location of the signer
const char*   ReasonA;          // Optional reason why the file was signed
const UI16*   ReasonW;          // Optional reason why the file was signed
const char*   SignerA;          // Optional, see comment
const UI16*   SignerW;          // Optional, see comment
LBOOL         Encrypt;          // If true, the file will be encrypted
// These members will be ignored if Encrypt is set to false
const char*   OpenPwd;          // Optional open password
const char*   OwnerPwd;         // Optional owner password
TKeyLen       KeyLen;           // Key length to encrypt the file
TRestrictions Restrict;         // What should be restricted?
};

```

The function closes the PDF file and returns either the file hash or the byte ranges to be signed by an external signature handler. The member *StructSize* must be initialized to `sizeof(TPDFSigParms)` (C/C++ only).

Most string values can be set either with an Ansi or Unicode string. If both strings are present the Ansi version takes precedence. The string *Signer* is normally taken from the PKCS#7 certificate and not displayed in PDF viewer applications. The string is only used if the issuer of the certificate cannot be extracted.

If *Encrypt* is set to true the PDF file will also be encrypted.

Signing a PDF file with an external signature handler is a five step process:

1. Open a certificate from the certificate store or file
2. Compute the size of the signed PKCS#7 object with a dummy string
3. Call `CloseAndSignFileExt()` to obtain the file hash or the byte ranges to be signed
4. Sign the provided hash or byte ranges with a cryptographic library
5. Call `FinishSignature()` to write the signature to the PDF file and to finish the signing process.

As described above the size of the PKCS#7 object must be computed **before** the function can be called. How this must be done depends on the used signature handler. When using the Windows CryptAPI, pass a 20 bytes long dummy string to `CryptSignMessage()` and set the parameter *pbSignedBlob* to NULL. The size of the PKCS#7 object is then copied to the parameter *pcbSignedBlob*. When creating a detached signature the length of the dummy string can be just one byte long because the length of the PKCS#7 object does not depend on the string length.

The member *HashType* specifies whether the function should return the SHA1 hash or the byte ranges of the PDF file. In the latter case the signature handler must create a detached signature. However, when using programming languages like Visual Basic, VB. Net, or C# it is recommended to sign a SHA1 hash because it is not required to copy the PDF buffer in this case.

The hash algorithm that is used to sign the hash or byte ranges can be MD2, MD5, SHA1, SHA256, SHA384, SHA512, or RIPEMD160. MD2 and MD5 are not documented in the PDF Reference but work very well too.

Detached signatures require no data to be encapsulated in the PKCS#7 SignedData field. When signing a SHA1 hash the signature handler must store the hash in the SignedData field of the PKCS#7 object.

### ***Supported PKCS#7 Format***

PKCS #7 objects are ASN1 encoded binary objects. The ASN1 standard defines a set of Basic Encoding Rules (BER) which describes how ASN1 objects must be encoded. This Standard defines also a set of Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER) and a set of Canonical Encoding Rules (CER) both of which provide constraints on the Basic Encoding Rules (BER). The key difference between them is that DER uses the definite length form of encoding while CER uses the indefinite length form.

PDF compatible PKCS#7 objects must be DER encoded because Adobe's Acrobat or Reader does not support indefinite length encoding. However, not all cryptographic providers support definite length encoding. Whether this is the case or not is also often not documented.

The Windows CryptAPI creates DER encoded PKCS#7 objects which are fully PDF compatible. However, when using another cryptographic library and if Adobe's Acrobat or Reader reports an error like "Error reading BER encoded object" when trying to validate the signature, the library does probably not create definite length encoded PKCS#7 objects.

### ***Hardware Certificates***

Signing a PDF file with a hardware certificate works exactly in the same way as with a software certificate as long as the certificate was installed in the certificate store of the operating system.

Hardware certificates like smart cards, USB sticks, or something similar are normally delivered with software that is able to install the certificate on the operating system. Once a certificate was installed in the certificate store it can be used like every other certificate.

The Windows CryptAPI for example, hides the certificate type fully for the developer. Whether the user selects a software or hardware certificate is simply not of interest because nothing special must be done in either case. You still call `CryptSignMessage()`, that's all. If a password is required the CryptAPI displays automatically a dialog to enter the password. The communication with the hardware is done in background.

#### **Remarks:**

If the function succeeds the signature must be written to the PDF file with [FinishSignature\(\)](#). Take a look into the example `external_signatures` to determine how the function can be used. It is usually best to open the the output file right before [FinishSignature\(\)](#) will be called (see [OpenOutputFile\(\)](#)).

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.



## CloseFile

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCloseFile(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function finishes the PDF file and frees all used resources if the file was not created in memory. The buffer of a memory based PDF file can be returned by [GetBuffer\(\)](#) after this function was called. Note that [GetBuffer\(\)](#) does not free the used resources because it returns a pointer to the original buffer. After the buffer was processed by your application call [FreePDF\(\)](#) to free the used resources. See also [CreateNewPDF\(\)](#), [GetBuffer\(\)](#), [FreePDF\(\)](#).

### Remarks:

To encrypt a PDF file use [CloseFileEx\(\)](#) instead of [CloseFile\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## CloseFileEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCloseFileEx(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    const char* OpenPwd,        // Open password (can be NULL)
    const char* OwnerPwd,       // Owner password (can be NULL)
    TKeyLen KeyLen,             // Key length (40 or 128 bit)
    TRestrictions Restrict) // Flags to restrict certain features

typedef enum
{
    kl40bit      = 0, // RC4 Encryption -> PDF 1.2, Acrobat 3 or higher
    kl128bit     = 1, // RC4 Encryption -> PDF 1.4, Acrobat 5 or higher
    kl128bitEx   = 2, // RC4 Encryption -> PDF 1.5, Acrobat 6 or higher
    klAES128     = 3, // AES Encryption -> PDF 1.6, Acrobat 7 or higher
    klAES256     = 4  // AES Encryption -> PDF 1.7, Acrobat 9 or higher
}TKeyLen;

typedef SI32 TRestrictions;
#define rsDenyNothing      0x00000000 // Encrypt the file only
#define rsDenyAll          0x00000F3C // Deny anything
#define rsPrint            0x00000004 // Deny printing
#define rsModify           0x00000008 // Deny modification of contents
#define rsCopyObj          0x00000010 // Deny copying of contents
#define rsAddObj           0x00000020 // No commenting
/* 128/256 bit encryption only -> ignored if 40 bit encryption is used */
#define rsFillInFormFields 0x00000100 // requires rsModify + rsAddObj
#define rsExtractObj       0x00000200 // requires rsModify
#define rsAssemble         0x00000400 // requires rsModify
#define rsPrintHighRes     0x00000800 // Disable high res. printing
```



```
#define rsExlMetadata      0x00001000 // PDF 1.5 Exclude metadata streams
#define rsEmbFilesOnly    0x00002000 // PDF 1.6 AES Encryption only
```

This function finishes the PDF file, encrypts it, and frees all used resources if the file was not created in memory. The buffer of a memory based PDF file can be accessed with [GetBuffer\(\)](#) after the function was called. Note that [GetBuffer\(\)](#) does not free the used resources because it returns a pointer to the original buffer. After the buffer was processed by your application call [FreePDF\(\)](#) to free the used resources. See also [CreateNewPDF\(\)](#), [GetBuffer\(\)](#), [FreePDF\(\)](#).

The parameter *KeyLen* specifies the encryption filter and key length which should be used to encrypt the PDF file. The parameter *Restrict* specifies which features which should be disabled in a viewer application. Note that several restriction flags depend on the used encryption filter. Flags which are not supported by the encryption filter will be ignored.

However, the restriction flags cannot be combined in any order; only specific flag combinations are allowed. Valaid flag combinations are described in detail on the next page.

## **Passwords**

PDF files support two different passwords to decrypt a PDF file. A viewer asks for the owner password if the user tries to change the encryption settings. So, the owner password grants full access to the PDF file. If no open password is set, a viewer opens the PDF file with user privileges without asking for a password.

If an open password is set, the PDF file cannot be opened without entering the open or owner password. The open password causes the file to be opened with privileges. So, the user cannot change the security settings and only non-restricted features can be used.

Beginning with PDF 1.6 it is possible to encrypt embedded files only (flag *rsEmbFilesOnly*). The PDF file is left unencrypted in this case but access to the embedded file can be restriced. The open password can be used to grand access on the embedded file to authorized persons only. A viewer asks for the password only if it is set and if the user tries to open or extract the embedded file.

Note that this feature is supported since Adobe's Acrobat or Reader 7. Prior versions cannot open such a PDF file also if it is unencrypted.

In no password is set the PDF file is still encrypted and the file is opened with user privileges in a viewer. However, the seecurity settings can be easily changed in this case if the user tests an empty password.

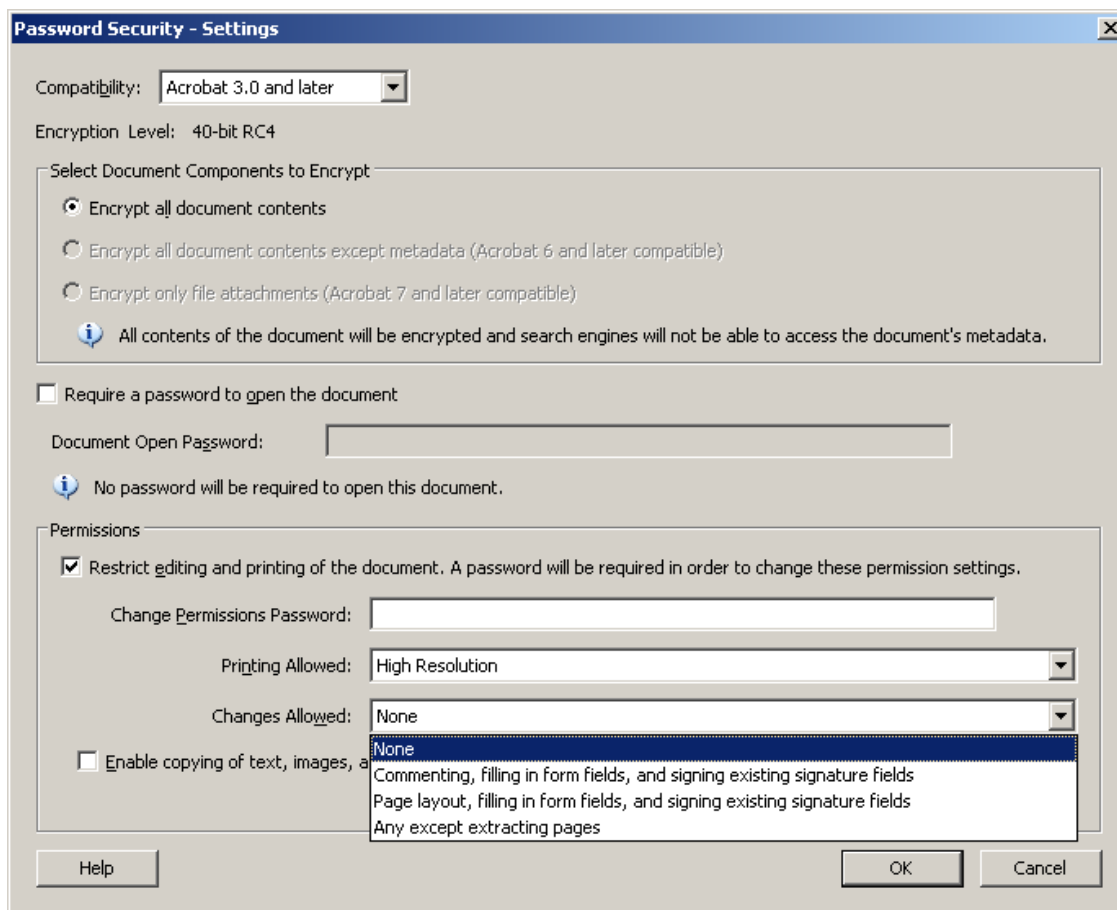
Because the PDF file can be decrypted without requiring a password if no open password was set, it is easy to remove the entire encryption settings, this can be done by many tools incl. DynaPDF.

## **Password encodings**

On Windows operating systems passwords are converted to the code page 1252 (WinAnsi) and then to PDFDoc encoding. On Mac OS X passwords are converted to MacRoman and then to PDFDoc encoding. PDFDoc encoding is a superset of WinAnsi and MacRoman encoding that ensures that a password can be correctly interpreted on these operating systems.

## Encryption flags

As mentioned earlier only specific flag combinations are allowed to use depending on the encryption filter. We want now determine how the 40 bit encryption flags can be used in comparison to the Acrobat input mask. The input mask of Acrobat 9 looks as follows:



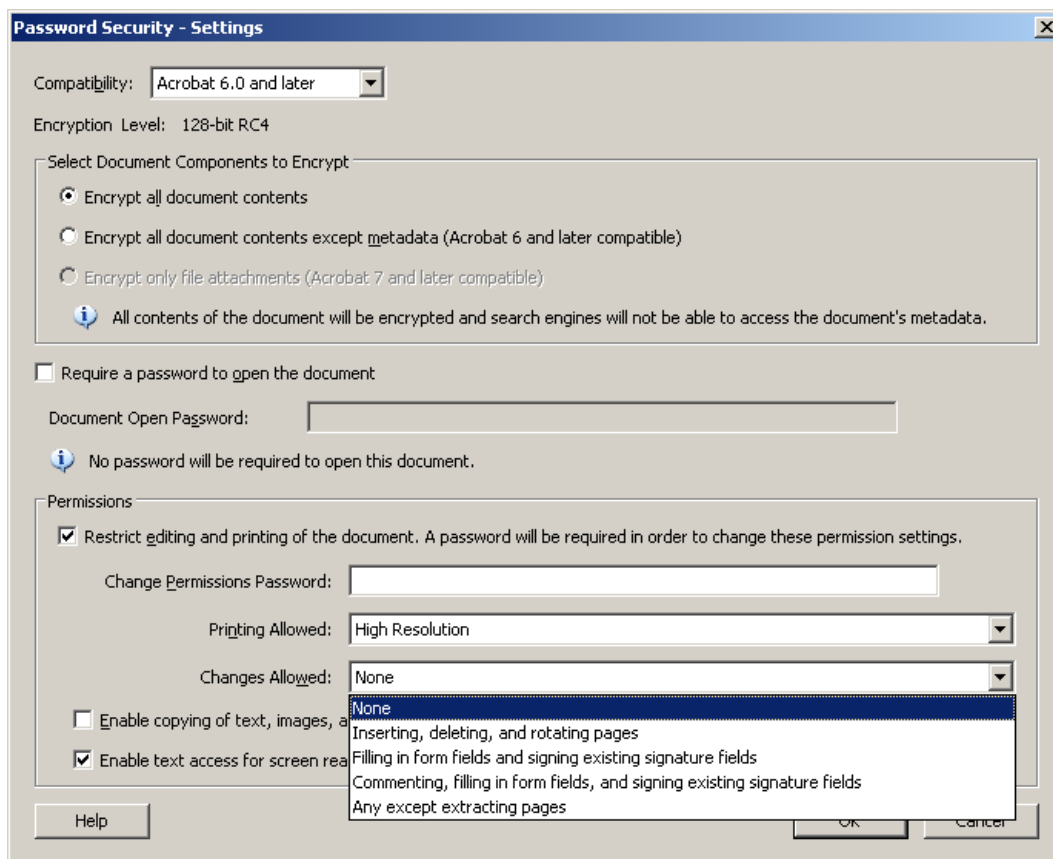
The combo box at "Printing Allowed" sets the flag **rsPrint** if printing should be **disabled**. The combo box at "Changes Allowed" sets the following flag combinations:

- *None:* **rsModify + rsAddObj**
- *Commenting, Filling in form fields and signing:* **rsModify**
- *Page layout, filling in form fields:* **No additional flags!**
- *Any except extracting pages:* **No additional flags!**

As you can see above the third and forth options set the same flags. The forth value is just a duplicate of the third with another description.

The check box "Enable copying of text, images, and other..." sets the flag **rsCopyObj** if it is **unchecked**! Multiple flags must be combined with a binary **or** operator.

The input mask for the key lengths kl128bit (Acrobat 5) and kl128bitEx (Acrobat 6) look nearly identically. However, only the latter one supports the additional flag rsExcludeMetaData.



The first combo box at "Printing Allowed" contains now three choice values which sets the following flags:

- *None*: **rsPrint**
- *Low Resolution (150 DPI)*: **rsPrintHighRes**
- *High Resolution*: **No additional flags!**

The second combo box at "Changes Allowed" sets the following flags:

- *None*: **rsModify + rsAddObj + rsFillInFormFields + rsAssemble**
- *Inserting, deleting, and...*: **rsModify + rsAddObj + rsFillInFormFields**
- *Filling in form field...*: **rsModify + rsAddObj**
- *Commenting, filling in...*: **rsModify**
- *Any except extracting...*: **No additional flags!**

The check box "Enable copying of text, images, and other..." sets the flag **rsCopyObj**, if unchecked!

The check box "Enable text access for screen readers..." sets the flag **rsExtractObj**, if unchecked!

The key lengths klAES128 and klAES256 support also the flag rsEmbFiles only. If this flag is set all other flags are ignored because the PDF file is left unencrypted in this case (with exception of embedded files).

**Remarks:**

Due to a bug in Acrobat 6 the permission *rsPrintHighRes* is not displayed in the security settings but it is still applied.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***CloseImage***

Syntax:

```
pdfCloseImage(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function closes the current open image file and frees the internal used resources if the image was not created in memory. The buffer of a memory based image file can be returned by `GetImageBuffer()` after this function was called. Note that `GetImageBuffer()` does not free the internal used resources because it returns a pointer to the original buffer. After the buffer was processed by your application call `FreeImageBuffer()` to free the used resources. See also `CreateImage()`, `GetImageBuffer()`, `FreeImageBuffer()`.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***CloseImportFile***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfCloseImportFile(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function closes an open import file that was be opened by `OpenImportFile()` or `OpenImportBuffer()`. If no import file was opened before the functions returns without an error.

This function cannot fail; the return value is always 1.

***ClosePath***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfClosePath(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TPathFillMode FillMode) // see below

typedef enum
{
    // Nonzero Winding Number Rule
    fmFillNoClose,          // Fill but do not close the path
    fmStrokeNoClose,        // Stroke but do not close the path
    fmFillStrokeNoClose,    // Fill and stroke but do not close the path
    fmFill,                  // Fill the path
    fmStroke,                // Stroke the path
```

```

    fmFillStroke,           // Fill and stroke the path
    // Even-Odd Rule
    fmFillEvOdd,           // Fill the path
    fmFillStrokeEvOdd,     // Fill and stroke the path
    fmFillEvOddNoClose,    // Fill but do not close the path
    fmFillStrokeEvOddNoClose, // Fill and stroke but do not close the path
    fmNoFill,              // Discard the path
    fmClose                // Close the path and begin a new sub path
}TPathFillMode;

```

In PDF all vector graphics are paths. Paths can be filled, stroked, or both. Filled path can be drawn by applying the nonzero winding number rule or the even-odd rule (see [Path Construction and Painting](#) for further information). Both rules produce different results on complex paths but they have no effect on simple paths like rectangles, circles, and so on.

The filling rules are can be used to produce holes in a path; an area that is left unpainted. The draw direction is important when drawing simple shapes like rectangles and so on. See [SetDrawDirection\(\)](#) for further information.

The flag fmNoFill can be used to discard a path that was already drawn.

#### Remarks:

Paths are invisible until they will be filled or stroked. DynaPDF displays a warning if an unused path is in memory when drawing an image, text, or when closing the page. The function checks whether a path is in memory prior execution. If no open path is detected the function returns with an error message.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### CloseTag

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfCloseTag(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

```

The function closes the current open tag that was opened by [OpenTag\(\)](#) beforehand.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ComputeBBox

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfComputeBBox(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    struct TPDFRect ADDR BBox,  // TPDFRect structure
    TCompBBoxFlags Flags)       // See below

```

```
typedef UI32 TCompBBoxFlags;
#define cbfNone 0x00000000
#define cbfIgnoreWhiteAreas 0x00000001 // Ignore white areas
#define cbfParse1BitImages 0x00000002 // Process 1 bit images
#define cbfParseGrayImages 0x00000004 // Process gray images.
#define cbfParseColorImages 0x00000008 // Process color images
#define cbfParseAllImages 0x0000000E // Process all images.
```

The function computes the visible area of the current opened page. If images are processed, DynaPDF decompresses the images and computes the visible area by checking for non-white pixels. Images which use a complex color space like DeviceN or Separation are converted into the alternate color space beforehand. Please note that every non-white pixel is considered as part of the visible area.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***ConnectPageBreakEvent***

Syntax:

```
Public Sub ConnectPageBreakEvent(
    ByVal Connect As Boolean) // If True, the event is connected
```

This procedure connects the OnPageBreakEvent with the internal callback function so that the event function can be raised by the wrapper class CPDF. This function is included in the Visual Basic and VB .Net interfaces only. The manually connection of the event function is required to avoid different runtime behaviour of the function [WriteFText\(\)](#).

### ***ConvColor***

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfConvColor(
    const double* Color, // Array of color components
    UI32 NumComps, // Number of color components
    TExtColorSpace SourceCS, // Source color space
    const void* IColorSpace, // Pointer to internal color space object
    TExtColorSpace DestCS) // Destination color space
```

The function converts a color returned by the content parser to a device color space. The parameter *DestCS* defines the destination color space into which the color should be converted. The device color spaces *esDeviceGray*, *esDeviceRGB*, and *esDeviceCMYK* are the only allowed values at this time.

The remaining parameters can be taken from the corresponding callback functions (*TSetFillColor* or *TSetStrokeColor*) of the parser interface (see *TPDFParseInterface*).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the color value defined in the destination color space. If the function fails the return value is zero without further error indication. However, the function cannot fail if valid values were passed to the function.

**ConvertColors**

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfConvertColors(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TColorConvFlags Flags,     // See below
    const void* Reserved)     // Must be NULL

typedef enum
{
    ccfBW_To_Gray  = 0, // Default, RGB B/W to gray
    ccfRGB_To_Gray = 1  // RGB to gray
}TColorConvFlags;
```

The function converts colors set with inline operators in the current open page to gray. At time of publication only inline operators like rg and RG are processed.

The conversion of RGB inline color operators can be useful if the document was created with a GDI application, e.g. Microsoft Word, Excel and so on and if the file must be split into black & white and color pages. [IsColorPage\(\)](#) can then be used to determine whether the page contains still colored objects.

The advantage is that RGB black & white values, which are used for text and vector graphics, are already removed so that [IsColorPage\(\)](#) returns only true if any other object uses a color, e.g. an image.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

**ConvToUnicode**

Syntax:

```
UI16* pdfConvToUnicode(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    const char* AString,       // Null-terminated string
    TCodepage CP)              // Used base encoding

typedef enum
{
    cp1250,                    // Eastern European
    cp1251,                    // Cyrillic
    cp1252,                    // Latin 1 Western European
    cp1253,                    // Greek
    cp1254,                    // Turkish
```

```
cp1255,          // Hebrew
cp1256,          // Arabic
cp1257,          // Baltic
cp1258,          // Vietnamese
cp8859_2,        // Latin 2 Central Europe
cp8859_3,        // Latin 3 Maltese
cp8859_4,        // Baltic
cp8859_5,        // Cyrillic
cp8859_6,        // Arabic
cp8859_7,        // Greek
cp8859_8,        // Hebrew
cp8859_9,        // Latin 5 Turkish
cp8859_10,       // Latin 6 Nordic Area
cp8859_13,       // Latin 7 Baltic Rim
cp8859_14,       // Latin 8 Celtic
cp8859_15,       // Latin 9 French
cp8859_16,       // Latin 10 Hungarian
cpSymbol,        // Symbol
cp437,           // DOS USA
cp737,           // DOS Greek
cp775,           // DOS Baltic Rim
cp850,           // DOS Multilingual
cp852,           // DOS Slavic
cp855,           // DOS Cyrillic
cp857,           // DOS Turkish
cp860,           // DOS Portuguese
cp861,           // DOS Icelandic
cp862,           // DOS Hebrew
cp863,           // DOS French (Canada)
cp864,           // DOS Arabic
cp865,           // DOS Nordic
cp866,           // DOS Russian
cp869,           // DOS Modern Greek
cp874,           // DOS Thai
cpUnicode,       // We convert to Unicode -> NOT ALLOWED!
cpCJK_Big5_Uni,  // Big5 plus HKSCS extension
cpCJK_EUC_JP_Uni, // EUC-JP
cpCJK_EUC_KR_Uni, // EUC-KR
cpCJK_EUC_TW_Uni, // CNS-11643-1992 (Planes 1-15)
cpCJK_GBK_Uni,   // MS code page 936 (GB2312, EUC-CN plus GBK)
cpCJK_GB12345_Uni, // GB-12345-1990 (Trad. Chinese form of GB-2312)
cpCJK_HZ_Uni,    // Mixed ASCII / GB-2312 encoding
cpCJK_2022_CN_Uni, // ISO-2022-CN-EXT (GB-2312 plus ISO-11643)
cpCJK_2022_JP_Uni, // ISO-2022-JP
cpCJK_2022_KR_Uni, // ISO-2022-KR
cpCJK_646_CN_Uni, // ISO-646-CN (GB-1988-80)
cpCJK_646_JP_Uni, // ISO-646-JP (JIS_C6220-1969-RO)
cpCJK_IR_165_Uni, // ISO-IR-165 (extended version of GB-2312)
cpCJK_932_Uni,   // Microsoft extended version of SHIFT_JIS
cpCJK_949_Uni,   // EUC-KR extended with UHC (Unified Hangul Codes)
```



```

cpCJK_950_Uni,      // Microsoft extended version of Big5
cpCJK_JOHAB_Uni,    // JOHAB
// These are character sets, not code pages. The character sets can
// not be used for Unicode conversion.
cpShiftJIS,        // Use cpCJK_932_Uni or cpCJK_EUC_JP_Uni instead.
cpBig5,            // Use cpCJK_Big5_Uni instead.
cpGB2312,          // Use cpCJK_GBK_Uni instead.
cpWansung,         // Use cpCJK_949_Uni or cpCJK_JOHAB_Uni instead.
cpJohab            // Use cpCJK_JOHAB_Uni instead.
cpMacRoman         // Mac Roman encoding
}

```

This function converts a string of a specific 8 bit or CJK encoding to Unicode. It can be used especially to convert strings for use with bookmarks or other global objects such as text annotations and so on which do not support 8 bit encodings but Unicode.

The function can be used multiple times without causing a memory leak. The internal used conversion buffer is freed automatically before the function is executed. However, the buffer can be freed manually with the function [FreeUniBuf\(\)](#).

#### Remarks:

This function depends not on an open PDF file; it can be used at any time. The conversion algorithms are binary save but because no string length is used the string must not contain null characters (except to terminate the string). No error messages are displayed if this function fails.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is a pointer to null-terminated Unicode string in the byte ordering supported by the CPU. If the function fails the return value is NULL.

## Create3DAnnot

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfCreate3DAnnot(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    double PosX,           // X-Coordinate of the annotation
    double PosY,           // Y-Coordinate of the annotation
    double Width,          // Width of the annotation
    double Height,         // Height of the Annotation
    const char* Author,    // Optional author
    const char* Name,      // Optional annotation name
    const char* U3DFile,   // Required U3D file
    const char* Image)     // Optional image to display the closed annotation

```

The function creates a 3D annotation from a U3D file. The image is used to create the default appearance of the annotation; it is shown when the annotation is deactivated or when viewing the file with a viewer that does not support 3D annotations. If no image file is provided the background is filled with the current field background color (see [SetFieldBackColor\(\)](#)). Note that the default

background color is transparent, that means no background will be drawn if the color was not changed beforehand.

The annotation's name can be used to access the annotation from a JavaScript or JavaScript action. The name must be unique if defined. Make sure that no other annotation exists with the same name. Note that DynaPDF performs no duplicate check during creation of the annotation.

A 3D annotation requires usually at least a default view that defines the rendering mode and lighting scheme to get suitable results (see [Create3DView\(\)](#)). Without a view the viewer application use default settings to display the annotation.

#### Remarks:

3D annotations are supported since Acrobat 7 or Acrobat Reader 7. However, Acrobat Reader versions prior 7.0.9 contain several bugs in the 3D rendering engine. These bugs were solved in Acrobat Reader 7.0.9.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

### Create3DBackground

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfCreate3DBackground(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const void* IView,   // 3D View handle
    UI32 BackColor);     // RGB background color
```

The function creates a background dictionary for a 3D annotation that is used to change the annotation's background color. The background color must be defined in RGB color space.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Create3DGotoViewAction

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreate3DGotoViewAction(
    const void* IPDF,        // Instance pointer
    UI32 Base3DAnnot,        // 3D Annotation handle
    const void* IView,       // 3D View handle or
    T3DNamedAction Named)    // Named 3D action

typedef enum
{
    naDefault,
    naFirst,
    naLast,
```

```

    naNext,
    naPrevious
}T3DNamedAction;

```

A go to 3D view action can be used to dynamically change the view of a 3D annotation. If the parameter *IView* is not NULL the created action opens explicitly the defined view. The parameter *Named* is ignored in this case. If *IView* is NULL, the named action is used instead.

A go to 3D view action can be used like any other action. The action can be added with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#) to a bookmark, page link, or interactive form field, e.g. a button field.

#### Remarks:

Due to certain bugs in the 3D rendering engine of Adobe's Acrobat Reader versions prior to 7.0.9, go to 3D view actions do not properly work in these Acrobat Reader versions. The bugs were solved in Acrobat Reader 7.0.9. Make sure that your customers use the latest version.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## Create3DProjection

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfCreate3DProjection(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    const void* IView,          // 3D View handle (required)
    T3DProjType ProjType,       // Projection type
    T3DScaleType ScaleType,      // Scaling type
    double Diameter,            // Scale factor, see below
    double FOV)                 // Field of View, see below

typedef enum
{
    pt3DOrthographic, // Orthographic projection
    pt3DPerspective   // Perspective projection
}T3DProjType;

typedef enum
{
    st3DValue, // Default for orthographic projection, see description
    st3DWidth, // Default for perspective projection
    st3DHeight,
    st3DMin,
    st3DMax
}T3DScaleType;

```

The function creates a projection dictionary for a 3D annotation. A projection dictionary defines the mapping of 3D camera coordinates onto the target coordinate system. A projection dictionary can only be added to a 3D view of a 3D annotation. The 3D view must be created beforehand with [Create3DView\(\)](#).

The parameter *ProjType* defines the kind of projection that should be used, e.g. orthographic or perspective projection. Depending on the projection type the parameters *ScaleType*, *Diameter*, and *FOV* have different meanings:

### ***Perspective projection***

The parameter *ScaleType* specifies the scaling used when projecting the 3D artwork onto the annotation's target coordinate system. If *ScaleType* is set to *st3DValue* the parameter *Diameter* defines the diameter of the circle formed by the intersection of the near plane and the cone specified by *FOV*. *Diameter* must be a positive number in this case. If *ScaleType* is set to another value than *st3DValue* the parameter *Diameter* is ignored.

The parameter *FOV* must be a number between 0.0 and 180.0, inclusive, specifying the field of view of the virtual camera in degrees. It defines a cone in 3D space centered on the z axis and a circle where the cone intersects the near clipping plane. The circle, along with the value of *Diameter* and *ScaleType*, specify the scaling of the projected artwork when rendered in the 2D plane of the annotation. See also PDF Reference 1.7.

### ***Orthographic projection***

The parameter *ScaleType* specifies the strategy for scaling to fit the near plane's x and y coordinates onto the annotation's target coordinate system. The value *st3DValue* refers to absolute scaling, that means no scaling should occur due to binding. The parameter *Diameter* is ignored if orthographic projection is used.

The parameter *FOV* specifies the scale factor to be applied to both the x and y coordinates when projecting onto the annotation's target coordinate system (the z coordinate is discarded). The default value is 1.0.

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## **Create3DView**

Syntax:

```
void* pdfCreate3DView(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    UI32 Base3DAnnot,         // 3D Annotation handle
    const char* Name,          // Unique name that describes the view (required)
    LBOOL SetAsDefault,        // If true, the view is used as default view
    double* Matrix,            // Optional 3D transformation matrix
    double CamDistance,        // Camera distance or 0.0 if not known
    T3DRenderingMode RM,       // 3D Rendering mode
    T3DLightingScheme LS)     // 3D Lighting scheme

typedef enum
{
    rmBoundingBox,
```

```

    rmHiddenWireframe,
    rmIllustration,
    rmShadedIllustration,
    rmShadedVertices,
    rmShadedWireframe,
    rmSolid,
    rmSolidOutline,
    rmSolidWireframe,
    rmTransparent,
    rmTranspBBox,
    rmTranspBBoxOutline,
    rmTranspWireframe,
    rmVertices,
    rmWireframe,
    rmNotSet
}T3DRenderingMode;

typedef enum
{
    lsArtwork, // Lights from file
    lsBlue,
    lsCAD,
    lsCube,
    lsDay,
    lsHard,
    lsHeadlamp,
    lsNight,
    lsNoLights,
    lsPrimary,
    lsRed,
    lsWhite,
    lsNotSet
}T3DLightingScheme;

```

The function creates a 3D view for a 3D annotation. A 3D annotation can contain multiple 3D views while one 3D view should always be marked as default view. Note that a default view does not appear in the list of views in the model tree of Adobe's Acrobat 7 or 8.

A 3D view must always define a unique name that describes the view, e.g. Left, Right, Top, or any other string. Note that the name is shown in the model tree, it should be human readable.

The parameter *Matrix* can be used to transform the 3D coordinate space, e.g. to rotate the 3D artwork. The matrix is optional, if set, it must consist of an array of double that contains exactly 12 entries. A 3D matrix is usually created interactively in a 3D viewer application. Without a visual feedback it is practically impossible to define the matrix.

The parameter *CamDistance* specifies a distance in the camera coordinate system along the z axis to the center of orbit for this view. If zero, the viewer application must determine the center of orbit. See PDF Reference 1.7 for further information.

**Notice:**

If a correct 3D matrix cannot be calculated in your application then set the parameter *Matrix* to NULL and **NOT** to the identity matrix. The viewer application tries then to fit the 3D artwork into the annotation's bounding box.

The last two parameters *RM* and *LS* define the 3D rendering mode and lighting scheme to be used to render the 3D artwork.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is a pointer to the view. If the function fails the return value is NULL.

## **CreateAnnotAP**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateAnnotAP(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Annot)        // Annotation handle
```

The function creates a user defined appearance stream for an annotation and activates it so that arbitrary contents can be drawn into it, such as text, images, or vector graphics. An appearance stream is a normal template in the size of the annotation. The template must be closed when finish with [EndTemplate\(\)](#).

Note that the template is reserved for the annotation and must not be used on pages or other templates.

At time of publication user defined appearance streams can be created for Stamp and FreeText annotations. However, the main application is the creation of user defined stamps. The appearance stream of a FreeText annotation should correspond to the annotation's value.

It is allowed to insert an EMF file into a user defined appearance stream. If the contents should be imported from an external PDF file then import the wished page with [ImportPage\(\)](#) and place the resulting template into this one with [PlaceTemplate\(\)](#) or [PlaceTemplateEx\(\)](#). The latter version is preferred because it considers the original page orientation and bounding boxes. See [PlaceTemplateEx\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the template that was created for the annotation, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## **CreateArticleThread**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateArticleThread(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const char* ThreadName) // Name of the thread
```

This function creates a new article thread. An article thread is a container for articles which must be created separately with [AddArticle\(\)](#). A document can contain an arbitrary count of article threads. The names of the threads should be unique otherwise it is not possible to distinguish between them in Adobe's Acrobat.

Some types of documents may contain sequences of content items that are logically connected but not physically sequential. For example, a news story may begin on the first page of a newsletter and run over onto one or more non-consecutive interior pages. To represent such sequences of physically discontinuous but logically related items, a PDF document may define one or more articles.

The sequential flow of an article is defined by an article thread; the individual content items that make up the article are called beads on the thread. PDF viewer applications such as Adobe's Acrobat provide navigation facilities to allow the user to follow a thread from one bead to the next.

### **Remarks:**

Due to a bug in Acrobat 6 articles can cause a zoom out. The pages of a document appear then as small thumb nails. It is highly recommended to test your articles with Acrobat 6.

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The ANSI Version supports ANSI strings of the code page 1252 only. To create an article thread in an arbitrary encoding convert the string to Unicode with the function [ConvToIncode\(\)](#) first and use the Unicode version to create the article thread.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the article thread, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateAxialShading

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateAxialShading(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double sX,        // X-Coordinate of the start point
    double sY,        // Y-Coordinate of the start point
    double eX,        // X-Coordinate of the end point
    double eY,        // Y-Coordinate of the end point
    double SCenter,   // Shading center
    UI32 SColor,      // Start color
    UI32 EColor,      // End color
    LBOOL Extend1,    // Extend the shading beyond the start point
    LBOOL Extend2)    // Extend the shading beyond the end point
```

Axial shadings define a color blend that varies along a linear axis between two endpoints and extends indefinitely perpendicular to that axis. The shading may optionally be extended beyond either or both endpoints by continuing the boundary colors indefinitely.

The shading center defines the point from where the first color will blend into the other. A value of 1 determines the exact center between the starting and ending point of the shading. Smaller values shift the shading center in direction to the start point, greater values in the direction to the end point.

Axial shadings can be drawn into a clipping path to restrict painting into this path. If the shading is drawn outside of a clipping path it is applied to the entire page. Not that extended shadings are opaque, objects behind the shading becomes invisible if they are overprinted by the shading.

Shadings are drawn by using the current coordinate system. It is recommended to understand that shadings have its own dimension like a normal shape. The parameters *Extend1* and *Extend2* extend the shading beyond its dimension. If the shading is extended it must normally be drawn into a clipping path to avoid overprinting of other objects.

Shadings support the color spaces DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, and DeviceCMYK. The color values of the start and end color must be defined in the current color space. See also [SetColorSpace\(\)](#).

Shadings are invisible as long they are not drawn by using the function [ApplyShading\(\)](#). [ApplyShading\(\)](#) requires a shading handle that was returned by this function.

### Remarks:

See the function [ApplyShading\(\)](#) for an example application.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the shading, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.



## CreateButton

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateButton(  
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer  
    const char* Name,      // Name of the button  
    const char* Caption,   // Caption  
    SI32 Parent,           // Parent group field or -1  
    double PosX,           // X-Coordinate of the button  
    double PosY,           // Y-Coordinate of the button  
    double Width,          // Width in unscaled units  
    double Height)         // Height in unscaled units
```

This function creates a push button. The parameter *Name* must be a unique name for the button field. It is not allowed to create two buttons with an identical name within the hierarchy in which they appear.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the button. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

Like all form fields, the width and height is measured incl. the line width of the border. The size of normal vector graphics is measured without the line width; this must be taken into account when calculating the width and height of a form field.

The border is drawn by using the current line width and border style (see [SetBorderStyle\(\)](#)). However, interactive form fields support natively the line width 1, 2 and 3 units only (thin, medium, thick). Other values can be applied but the appearance can be changed by Adobe's Acrobat when the form is reset by a [Reset Form Action](#).

The appearance can be influenced with the following properties:

- `Get/SetFieldBackColor()` // Background color
- `Get/SetFieldBorderColor()` // Border color
- `Get/SetFieldColor()` // Change a specific color of a field
- `Get/SetFieldTextColor()` // Color of the caption
- `Get/SetLineWidth()` // Line width of the border

The border and background color can be set to `NO_COLOR`, the background or border appears then transparent. The border appears also transparent when the line width was set to zero.

DynaPDF supports also image buttons. To create an image button store the handle of the button in a variable and add one or more images to the different button states (see [AddButtonImage\(\)](#) for further information). The caption of the button will be overridden when an image to the up state is added.

Buttons are used to execute an action; the following events are supported by button fields:

- `OnMouseUp`
- `OnMouseDown`
- `OnMouseExit`

- OnFocus
- OnBlur

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. However, CJK encodings or Unicode are **NOT** supported by form fields. It is possible to use Unicode strings but the font must **NOT** use the code page cpUnicode. Unicode strings must contain characters of the actual used 8 bit code page.

Buttons requires a font, if no font was set before Helvetica is used to draw the caption by using the code page 1252. The caption is centred horizontally and vertically. By default the caption is drawn on multiple lines if it does not fit into a single line. To avoid a line break inside a button field remove the flag `ffMultiline` (see [SetFieldFlags\(\)](#)).

Buttons are excluded from printing by default. If a button should be printable set the flag `ffPrint` (see [SetFieldFlags\(\)](#) for further information).

**Remarks:**

Interactive form fields can be structured into several groups by passing a handle of a group field to the parameter *Parent*. See [CreateGroupField\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the field handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateCheckBox

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateCheckBox(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    const char* Name,           // Name of the check box (see note below)
    const char* ExpValue,       // Export value (required)
    LBOOL Checked,              // If true, the check box appears checked
    SI32 Parent,                // A parent group or radio button field or -1
    double PosX,                // X-Coordinate of the button
    double PosY,                // Y-Coordinate of the button
    double Width,               // Width of the check box
    double Height)              // Height of the check box
```

This function creates a check box. A check box can be a subfield of a radio button or of a group field (see also [CreateRadioButton\(\)](#), [CreateGroupField\(\)](#)). If the parameter *Parent* is **-1** the check box is creates as stand alone field.

The parameter *Name* is ignored if the check box is a sub control of a radio button field, it can be NULL in the latter case. However, the name is required if the check box is used as stand alone field.

The parameter *ExpValue* defines the export value of the check box for the on state. This value is exported if the state of the check box is on and if the form is submitted to a web server. The export value must not be an empty string. The export value for the off state is always "Off".

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the button. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

Like all form fields the width and height is measured incl. the line width of the border. The size of normal vector graphics is measured without the line width; this must be taken into account when calculating the width or height of a form field. The line width of the border is derived from the current graphics state (see [SetLineWidth\(\)](#)), it should be either 0, 1, 2, or 3 units (no border, thin, medium, or thick). The border style can be changed with the functions [SetBorderStyle\(\)](#) or [SetFieldBorderStyle\(\)](#).

Check boxes use always the standard font ZapfDingbats to draw the check box symbol. It is not possible to change the font but it is possible to use a custom font size. The font size is used from the active font; the kind of font that is active is ignored. There is no need to set ZapfDingbats as active font to enable the usage of a custom font size. The font size is calculated to an optimal value if the size of the active font is set to 1 unit or if no font is active.

The check box character can be changed with the property [Get/SetCheckBoxChar\(\)](#). If the check box character is ccCircle, the border appears circular if the check box is a sub control of a radio button field. If the check box is used stand alone, the border appears always rectangular.

#### Specific flags supported by check boxes only:

- `ffRadioIsUnion`: If set, a group of radio buttons within a radio button field that use the same export value for the on state will turn on and off in unison; that is if one is checked, they are all checked. This flag requires Acrobat 6 or higher.

#### Remarks:

Interactive form fields can be structured into several groups by passing a handle of a group field to the parameter *Parent*. See [CreateGroupField\(\)](#) for further information.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the field handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateCIEColorSpace

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateCIEColorSpace(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TExtColorSpace CS, // Allowed values: esCalGray, esCalRGB, esLab
    float* WhitePoint, // White point -> required
    float* BlackPoint, // Optional black point
    float* Gamma, // Optional gamma value per component or Range in Lab
    float* Matrix) // Optional transformation matrix -> CalRGB only
```

The function creates a CIE-based color space. Three CIE-based color spaces are supported: CalGray, CalRGB, and Lab.

The semantics of CIE-based color spaces are defined in terms of the relationship between the space's components and the tristimulus values X, Y, and Z of the CIE 1931 XYZ space. The CalRGB and Lab color spaces (PDF 1.1) are special cases of three-component CIE-based color spaces, known as CIE-based ABC color spaces. These spaces are defined in terms of a two-stage, nonlinear transformation of the CIE 1931 XYZ space. See PDF Reference for further information.

A CalGray color space (PDF 1.1) is a special case of a single-component CIEbased color space, known as a CIE-based A color space. This type of space is the one-dimensional (and usually achromatic) analog of CIE-based ABC spaces. Color values in a CIE-based A space have a single component, arbitrarily named A.

The white point is an array of three numbers [XW YW ZW] specifying the tristimulus value, in the CIE 1931 XYZ space, of the diffuse white point. The numbers XW and ZW must be positive, and YW must be equal to 1.0. The parameter *WhitePoint* is always required.

The optional black point is an array of three numbers [XB YB ZB] specifying the tristimulus value, in the CIE 1931 XYZ space, of the diffuse black point. All three of these numbers must be non-negative. Default value: [0.0 0.0 0.0].

The parameter *Gamma* is optional and its meaning is different depending on the underlying color space. If the color space is CalRGB or CalGray the array must contain gamma values for each component. Default value: [1.0 1.0 1.0].

The Lab color space does not support gamma but it supports a range array which can be used to define the valid ranges of the a\* and b\* components of the color space. So, the parameter *Gamma* can be named as *Range* when a Lab color space will be created. If set, the array must contain exactly 4 values in the form [a<sub>min</sub> a<sub>max</sub> b<sub>min</sub> b<sub>max</sub>]. Default value: [-100 100 -100 100]. The valid range of the L\* component is always 0 to 100.

The parameter *Matrix* is optional and used in CalRGB color spaces only. If set, the array must contain exactly 9 numbers representing a 3 × 3 matrix which specifies the linear interpretation of the decoded A, B, and C components of the color space with respect to the final XYZ representation.

### ***How to define CalGray colors?***

Since CalGray colors consist of only one component which ranges from 0 to 255 the colors can be defined as if you would use DeviceGray. No further conversion function is required.

### ***How to define CalcRGB colors?***

CalRGB can be used in the same way as DeviceRGB. Each component of a CalRGB color space ranges from 0 to 255. Use the macro PDF\_RGB() to convert color components to a 32 bit integer. Other programming languages than C/C++ support mostly a function like rgb() which does essentially the same as the C macro PDF\_RGB().

### ***How to define Lab colors?***

The Lab color space is a three component space where each component supports different ranges:

- L\*      0 to 100
- a\*   -128 to 127
- b\*   -128 to 127

The ranges above define the maximum ranges which can be used in a Lab color space. In comparison to RGB each component is defined as signed char while in RGB each component is defined as unsigned char. C/C++ programmers can still use the macro PDF\_RGB() to convert Lab colors to 32 bit integers.

If you use another programming language it is usually best to convert negative component values to unsigned char before passing the value to a function like rgb().

#### **Example:**

```
if (component_value < 0)
    result = 256 + component_value; // Note that we add a negative number!
else
    result = component_value;
```

#### **Notice:**

Non-device color spaces cannot be used for interactive objects such as annotations or form fields. The active color space must always be changed to a device color space before creating interactive objects; see [SetColorSpace\(\)](#). Note also that annotations support DeviceRGB only. Form fields support DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, and DeviceCMYK.

#### **Remarks:**

Use the function [SetExtColorSpace\(\)](#) to activate the color space in the graphics state. To set a color of a CIE-based color space convert the color value to a 32 bit integer as described above and pass the result to [SetFillColor\(\)](#), [SetStrokeColor\(\)](#), or [SetColors\(\)](#).

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the color space handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateCollItemDate

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfCreateCollItemDate(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    UI32 EmbFile,        // Handle of an embedded file  
    const char* Key,      // The key defined in the collection field  
    long Date,           // The date time value as integer  
    const char* Prefix) // Optional prefix to be added to the value
```

The function creates a user defined collection item which accepts a date time value. The parameter *Key* must be the key that was used in the related collection field in which the value should be shown.

The parameter *Date* is passed to the ANSI function `localtime()` or `gmtime()` to create a PDF compatible date time value. Therefore, the value must be defined in the format which these functions accept. It is usually defined as the number of seconds elapsed since midnight (00:00:00), January 1, 1970. However, depending on the operating system, the base date can be different.

The parameter *Prefix* is optional. If set, it is concatenated with the text string presented to the user. This entry is ignored when a PDF viewer application sorts the items in the collection.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## CreateCollItemNumber

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfCreateCollItemNumber(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    UI32 EmbFile,        // Handle of an embedded file  
    const char* Key,      // The key defined in the collection field  
    double Value,         // The value for the key  
    const char* Prefix) // Optional prefix to be added to the value
```

The function creates a user defined collection item which accepts an arbitrary number as value.

The parameter *Key* must be the key that was used in the related collection field in which the value should be shown. The parameter *Value* can be any positive or negative number. The parameter *Prefix* is optional. If set, it is concatenated with the text string presented to the user. This entry is ignored when a PDF viewer application sorts the items in the collection.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## CreateCollItemString

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfCreateCollItemString(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    UI32 EmbFile,        // Handle of an embedded file  
    const char* Key,      // The key defined in the collection field  
    const char* Value,    // The value for the key  
    const char* Prefix)   // Optional prefix to be added to the value
```

The function creates a user defined collection item which accepts an arbitrary string as value.

The parameter *Key* must be the key that was used in the related collection field in which the value should be shown. The parameter *Value* can be an arbitrary string. However, the string should be human readable because it is displayed in the user interface.

The parameter *Prefix* is optional. If set, it is concatenated with the text string presented to the user. This entry is ignored when a PDF viewer application sorts the items in the collection.

### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## CreateCollection

```
LBOOL pdfCreateCollection(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TColView View)    // Initial view
```

The function marks the current PDF file in memory as PDF collection, also known as PDF Package.

Beginning with PDF 1.7, PDF documents can specify how a viewer application's user interface presents collections of file attachments, where the attachments are related in structure or content. Such a presentation is called a portable collection.

The intent of portable collections is to present, sort, and search collections of related documents, such as email archives, photo collections, and engineering bid sets. There is no requirement that files in a collection have an implicit relationship or even a similarity; however, showing differentiating characteristics of related documents can be helpful for document navigation.

A collection consists of a normal PDF document (container PDF) that can be created in the usual way, and of a set of file attachments. The difference between a normal PDF file and a portable collection is that the viewer application provides navigation facilities for the file attachments and it is possible to open attached PDF files directly in the viewer application without losing the navigation plane of the container PDF.



When a PDF 1.7-compliant viewer application first opens a PDF document containing a collection, it displays the contents of the initial document, along with a list of the embedded files.

The initial document is usually taken from the embedded files while the container PDF consists of only one page that displays a message that this PDF file is a collection that requires a PDF 1.7 compliant viewer which is aware of PDF collections.

Older viewer applications display just the container PDF while a PDF 1.7 compliant viewer opens the initial document taken from the embedded files in this case.

However, the initial document can be the container PDF or one of the embedded documents. The default initial document is the container PDF. If an embedded file should be initially opened then mark the embedded file as default file with [SetColDefFile\(\)](#).

The embedded files of a collection are shown in a list view in Acrobat or Reader 8. Without adding further information to the collection, the list view contains a set of default columns such as file name, description, modification date and so on, displayed in the current language of the viewer. The information displayed in the rows is taken from the embedded files.

The information displayed in the list view can be customized to your own requirements. To understand how this works keep in mind that a list view consists of columns and rows. The columns which should be displayed are defined in the collection (collection fields) while the information displayed in the rows is taken from the embedded files.

To customize the list view of a collection you must first create one or more collection fields with [CreateCollectionField\(\)](#). The function defines the column name as well as the key and data type to be used for that column. The information for the collection field is stored in the embedded files.

Therefore, each field that was defined in the collection should have a related collection item in **all** embedded files file specification dictionaries. However, only user defined fields require a collection item. Depending on the data type that was defined for a specific collection field, the collection items can be added to the embedded files with the following functions:

- [CreateColItemDate\(\)](#)
- [CreateColItemNumber\(\)](#)
- [CreateColItemString\(\)](#)

The functions above require always the embedded file's handle, the key, and the data for that key. The key was defined in the prior [CreateCollectionField\(\)](#) call. Note that the key of a collection field is used to find the data in the embedded files file specification dictionaries. The column name is used to display it in the user interface.

Once the collection fields and items were defined it is possible to mark one field as sort field. The list is then sorted by this field either in ascending or descending order (see [SetColSortField\(\)](#) for further information).



**Remarks:**

DynaPDF contains example projects which demonstrate how collection fields and items can be created. Use the function [CheckCollection\(\)](#) to determine whether the connection between collection fields and collection items is valid.

The container PDF should always consist of only one page that displays the compatibility message as described above and shown in the demo projects. Collections which are created in this way are very suitable for merging multiple collections into one file. If the container PDF is a normal PDF file, many advantages of collections are lost. Especially merging of such files is then as difficult as with normal PDF files.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

**CreateCollectionField**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateCollectionField(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    TColColumnType ColType,     // Data type for the column
    SI32 Column,                // Column index or -1, see below
    const char* Name,           // Column name to be displayed in the viewer
    const char* Key,            // Key to find the data for that column
    LBOOL Visible,              // If false, the column is not displayed
    LBOOL Editable)             // If true, the column is editable

typedef enum
{
    cisCreationDate, // Predefined column, no collection item required
    cisDescription,  // Predefined column, no collection item required
    cisFileName,     // Predefined column, no collection item required
    cisModDate,      // Predefined column, no collection item required
    cisSize,         // Predefined column, no collection item required
    cisCustomDate,   // User defined date
    cisCustomNumber, // User defined number
    cisCustomString  // User defined string
}TColColumnType;
```

The function creates a user defined collection field. A collection field represents a column in the list view of the user interface of a PDF 1.7 compliant PDF viewer. The parameter *ColType* defines the type of the column that should be added to the list. Predefined columns are already available in the embedded files file specification dictionaries; there is no need to create collection items for these fields.

User defined fields are available for three basic data types depending on the value that should be stored in the collection item. User defined column types require always relating collection items in all embedded files file specification dictionaries. A collection item holds the data that should be

displayed in a given column. See also [CreateCollItemDate\(\)](#), [CreateCollItemNumber\(\)](#), [CreateCollItemString\(\)](#).

The parameter *Name* represents the column name that should be displayed in the list view of the viewer application. The parameter *Key* is used to find the value for the column in the embedded files file specification dictionaries. It should be defined as a 7 bit ASCII string without any special character. The key is also required to create the relating collection items for the embedded files. Make sure that you use exactly the same key to create the collection items and that the right data type is used.

Use the function [SetColSortField\(\)](#) to sort the list of embedded files by a specific collection field.

It is usually best to check the validity of the collection with [CheckCollection\(\)](#) after it was fully created. This is especially important if multiple collections were merged into one file.

The order in which collection fields and collections items are created can be arbitrary. The collection items can be created before the collection fields and vice versa.

#### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible variant. The relationship between collection fields and collection items is explained in more detail under [CreateCollection\(\)](#). DynaPDF contains also example projects which demonstrate how collection fields and items can be created. Use the function [CheckCollection\(\)](#) to determine whether the connection between collection fields and collection items is valid.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the collection field, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateComboBox

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateComboBox(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    const char* Name, // Name of combo box
    LBOOL Sort,       // Sort the choice values
    SI32 Parent,      // Parent group field or -1
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of the combo box
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of the combo box
    double Width,     // Width of the combo box
    double Height)    // Height of the combo box
```

This function creates a combo box. The choice values of the combo box must be added with the function [AddValToChoiceField\(\)](#). This function requires the field handle that was returned by this function.

A combo box can contain value that is not included in the array of choice values. This value can be used to display a string in the combo box when no choice value is selected, e.g. "Select a value!".

The field value can be set with the function `SetFieldExpValue()` as follows:

The parameter *ValIndex* of the function `SetFieldExpValue()` must be set to `PDF_MAX_INT` and the parameter *Value* must contain the wished value or `NULL`. If *Value* is `NULL` or an empty string, a maybe existing field value will be deleted. The choice values of the combo box get the state unselected when setting a field value in this way.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the button. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

Like all form fields the width and height is measured incl. the line width of the border. The size of normal vector graphics is measured without the line width; this must be taken into account when calculating the width or height of a form field. The line width of the border is derived from the current graphics state (see `SetLineWidth()`), it should be either 0, 1, 2, or 3 units (no border, thin, medium, or thick). The border style can be changed with the functions `SetBorderStyle()` or `SetFieldBorderStyle()`.

The values of the combo box are sorted if the parameter *Sort* is true.

A combo box requires a font. If no font is active the standard font Helvetica is used. Note: If the form must be compatible to Acrobat 4 the used fonts by the form fields must be restricted to the 14 standard fonts (see `SetFont()` for further information). Acrobat 4 does not support interactive forms that use other fonts than the 14 standard fonts. Such a form requires Acrobat 5 or higher.

However, it is possible to use an arbitrary font as long as the code page 1252 is used.

The font size of a combo box is set to "auto" if either the font size of the active font is set to 1.0 unit or if no font is active when the field is created.

#### Specific flags supported by combo boxes:

- `ffEdit` // Enable adding of values in Adobe's Acrobat
- `ffSorted` // Change the sort flag if necessary
- `ffCommitOnSelCh` // Submit the new value immediately (PDF 1.5)
- `ffDoNotSpellCheck` // Disable spell checking (requires `ffEdit`)

#### Remarks:

Earlier versions of DynaPDF allowed the usage of arbitrary 8 bit code pages. Due to changes in Acrobat viewer applications it is no longer possible to use another code page than 1252. In addition, it seems that Acrobat versions greater 6 do no longer support Type1 fonts in form fields, with the exception of the 14 standard fonts.

Interactive form fields can be structured into several groups by passing a handle of a group field to the parameter *Parent*. See `CreateGroupField()` for further information.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the combo box, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateDeviceNColorSpace

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateDeviceNColorSpace(  
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer  
    const char** Colorants,     // Array of colorant names (required)  
    UI32 NumColorants,         // Number of colorants in the array  
    const char* PostScriptFunc, // Postscript calculator function (required)  
    TExtColorSpace Alternate,    // Alternate color space  
    SI32 Handle)                // Handle of the alternate color space or -1
```

The function creates a DeviceN color space. DeviceN color spaces (PDF 1.3) can contain up to 32 color components. They provide greater flexibility than is possible with standard device color spaces such as DeviceCMYK or with individual Separation color spaces. For example, it is possible to create a DeviceN color space consisting of only the cyan, magenta, and yellow color components, with the black component excluded.

Colors of a DeviceN color space are always treated as subtractive colors, even if the device produces output for the designated component by an additive method. Thus, a tint value of 0 denotes the lightest color that can be achieved with the given colorant and 255 the darkest. This convention is the same one as for DeviceCMYK color components but opposite to the one for DeviceGray or DeviceRGB.

DeviceN was designed to represent color spaces containing multiple components that correspond to colorants of some target device. As with Separation color spaces, PDF consumer applications must be able to approximate the colorants if they are not available on the current output device, such as a display. To accomplish this, the color space definition provides a tint transformation function that can be used to convert all the components to an alternate color space.

The tint transformation function consists of a PostScript calculator function that is called with *n* tint values and returns *m* color component values, where *n* is the number of components needed to specify a color in the DeviceN color space and *m* is the number of components required by the alternate color space.

Note: Painting in the alternate color space may produce a good approximation of the intended color when only opaque objects are painted. However, it does not correctly represent the interactions between an object and its backdrop when the object is painted with transparency or when overprinting is enabled (see also [CreateExtGState\(\)](#)).

A DeviceN color space supports the special colorant name *None* which produces no visible output on the device. When a DeviceN color space is painting the named device colorants directly, color components corresponding to *None* colorants are discarded. However, when the DeviceN color space reverts to its alternate color space, those components are passed to the tint transformation function, which can use them as desired.

Note: A DeviceN color space whose component colorant names are all *None* always discards its output, just the same as a Separation color space for *None*; it never reverts to the alternate color

space. Reversion occurs only if at least one color component (other than *None*) is specified and is not available on the device.

### **Encoding of Colorant Names**

Colorant names are interpreted in the code page 1252 by default. Because colorant names are stored in UTF-8 Unicode format in PDF, it is also possible to pass UTF-8 encoded Unicode strings to the function. However, the function must be able to distinguish between both string formats. To archive this, the parameter *NumColorants* accepts the special flag 0x10000000 that specifies that the *Colorants* array contains UTF-8 encoded strings. The flag must be combined with the number of colorants with a binary or operator:

```
numColorants |= 0x10000000;           // C/C++, C#
numColorants = numColorants Or &H10000000 // Visual Basic
numColorants := numColorants or $10000000 // Delphi
```

### **DeviceN Attributes**

DeviceN and NChannel color spaces can contain optional attributes describing further characteristics of the color space. The most important attributes are the definitions of the spot and process colorants which are used by the color space. These attributes are required to enable certain features in a viewer application, e.g. the Output Preview in Adobe's Acrobat depends on it.

Notice: Although the definition of spot and process colorants is optional, it is bad practice to create a DeviceN color space without this information.

#### **Spot colorant attributes**

Spot colorants can be defined as normal Separation color spaces and then added as an attribute to the color space with [AddDeviceNSeparations\(\)](#). The advantage is that the alternate color space and tint transformation function of the Separation color space describe the appearance of that colorant alone, whereas those of a DeviceN color space describe only the appearance of its colorants in combination. The definition of the spot colorants is optional but strongly recommended because it is the only way to render a spot colorant alone. Note that the Output Preview in Adobe's Acrobat depends on properly defined spot colorants.

#### **Process colorant attributes**

If a DeviceN color space contains components of a process color space then it should include information about the color space in which these components are defined. This can be done with the function [AddDeviceNProcessColorants\(\)](#) which accepts an array of colorant names and the underlying process color space. The process color space can be any device or CIE based color space. If an ICCBased color space is specified, it must provide calibration information appropriate for the process color components specified in the names array of the DeviceN color space.

The array of colorant names must correspond, in order, to the components of the process color space. For example, an RGB color space must have three names corresponding to red, green, and blue. The names may be arbitrary (that is, not the same as the standard names for the color space components)

but must match those specified in the DeviceN color space, even if not all components are present in the DeviceN color space.

The definition of process colorants of a DeviceCMYK color space is optional since the colorant names Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black are always considered as color components of a DeviceCMYK color space.

### ***How to create the PostScript Calculator Function?***

A PostScript calculator function is represented as a string containing code written in a small subset of the PostScript language. The language that can be used in a PostScript calculator function contains expressions involving integers, real numbers, and boolean values only. There are no composite data structures such as strings or arrays, no procedures, and no variables or names.

The following operators are supported in a PostScript calculator function:

Operator type	Operators					
Arithmetic operators	abs	cvi	floor	mod	sin	
	add	cvr	idiv	mul	sqrt	
	atan	div	ln	neg	sub	
	ceiling	exp	log	round	truncate	
	cos					
Relational, boolean, and bitwise operators	and	false	le	not	true	
	bitshift	ge	lt	or	xor	
	eq	gt	ne			
Conditional operators	if	ifelse				
Stack operators	copy	exch	pop			
	dup	index	roll			

For more information on these operators, see Appendix B of the PostScript Language Reference, Third Edition. The operand syntax for PostScript calculator functions follows PDF conventions rather than PostScript conventions. The entire code defining the function is enclosed in braces { }. Braces also delimit expressions that are executed conditionally by the **if** and **ifelse** operators:

```
boolean { expression } if
```

```
boolean { expression1 } { expression2 } ifelse
```

This construct is purely syntactic; unlike in PostScript, no "procedure objects" are involved.

When executing the function, the application pushes first the tint values of the setcolor operator or the corresponding image components on the stack. The function is then executed and the remaining components on the stack are adjusted to the valid input range of the alternate color space and then passed to it.

Note also that the remaining components on the stack must match the number of input colorants of the alternate color space. It is an error to leave more or less components on the stack than supported by the alternate color space.

### **Example 1:**

In this example we create a DeviceN color space that contains the process colorants Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow. The alternate color space is of course DeviceCMYK. The definition of the PostScript calculator function is very simple in this example because we need to add the missing Black component only. The array *cls* includes also the Black component here because we need the colorant names later to add the definition of the process components to the DeviceN color space:

```
...
const char* cls[] = {"Cyan", "Magenta", "Yellow", "Black"};
const char  ps[] = "{0}"; // Just add the missing Black component

pdfAppend(pdf);

// Note that the Black component is not part of the DeviceN color space
SI32 cs = pdfCreateDeviceNColorSpace(pdf, cls, 3, ps, esDeviceCMYK, -1);
// Optional but strongly recommended: Add the definition of the process
// colorants to the DeviceN color space.
pdfAddDeviceNProcessColorants(pdf, cls, 4, esDeviceCMYK, -1);

// Draw a rectangle in the alternate DeviceCMYK color space
pdfSetFillColorSpace(pdf, csDeviceCMYK);
pdfSetFillColor(pdf, PDF_CMYK(135, 65, 160, 0));
pdfRectangle(pdf, 50.0, 50.0, 200.0, 100.0, fmFill);
// Now we use the DeviceN color space. The colors of both rectangles must
// be identically. If you see a difference, then disable the output
// preview in Adobe's Acrobat, since the color is converted into the
// simulation profile otherwise...
pdfSetExtColorSpace(pdf, cs);
BYTE color[] = {135, 65, 160};
pdfSetFillColorEx(pdf, color, 3);
pdfRectangle(pdf, 50.0, 150.0, 200.0, 100.0, fmFill);

pdfEndPage(pdf);
...
```

### **Example 2:**

In this example we want to define a DeviceN color space that contains 2 spot colors and the process color yellow. The alternate color space for the spot colors is DeviceCMYK in this example and the process colorant is defined in this color space too.

The tint transformation function for such a color space must be able to compute one color from arbitrary combinations of these three colors. So, we need essentially a blend function expressed in PostScript syntax.



The definition of a blend function is not difficult but long because the entire code is stack based. However, let us first keep in mind what we need to do. We have already three values on the stack when the function is executed. These are the tint values which were passed to the DeviceN color space. We need to multiply the tint values with the four components of the alternate color representations of all three channels and finally we need to combine these three colors so that we get the resulting output color. This sounds difficult, because a lot of multiplications and additions are required to produce the wished result, but you'll see it's easier as it looks like.

The used colors in the DeviceN color space are defined as follows:

Colorant name	CMYK representation
PANTONE 345 CVC (coated)	{0.38, 0.00, 0.34, 0.0} or { 97, 0, 87, 0}
PANTONE 293 CVC (coated)	{1.00, 0.56, 0.00, 0.0} or {255, 143, 0, 0}
Yellow	{0.00, 0.00, 1.00, 0.0} or { 0, 0, 255, 0}

The CMYK color values of the spot colors are taken from the color picker of Adobe's Photoshop.

Now, we have all information we need to create the PostScript calculator function.

The multiplication of the color channels with the tint values must be done for all three colors included in the color space. Because these are repeating operations we can easily develop a function that creates the necessary code for us:

```
// The following function creates the PostScript code to multiply the tint
// values with the components of the CMYK color representation. 0 and 1
// color values are optimized to more efficient code.
UI32 AddOperator(char* Dest, float Value, UI32 Index)
{
    if (Value == 0.0f)        // Zero is always zero
        return sprintf(Dest, "0 ");
    else if (Value == 1.0f) // 1.0 represents the tint value
        return sprintf(Dest, "%d index ", Index);
    else // Other color values must be multiplied with the tint value
        return sprintf(Dest, "%d index %.2f mul ", Index, Value);
}

// Note that this function does not allocate memory. The string must be
// long enough to hold the resulting PostScript code. The function can
// be used to create the blend function for DeviceN color spaces with up
// to 32 color channels. The alternate color space must be DeviceCMYK or
// an ICCBased color space whose base color space is in turn DeviceCMYK.
// Since the alternate color space must be DeviceCMYK, NumColorants is
// always a multiple of 4!
void CreateBlendFunction(
    char* Dest,           // Destination string buffer
    float* Colorants,     // Array of color values
    UI32 NumColorants) // Must be a multiple of 4!
{
    UI32 i, j, len = 1;
    UI32 numColors = NumColorants / 4;
    UI32 index = numColors - 1;
```



```

Dest[0] = '{'; // The PostScript code must be enclosed in braces
for (i = 0; i < 4; i++, index++)
{
    for (j = 0; j < NumColorants; j += 4)
    {
        // Create code to multiply the tint values with the color values
        len += AddOperator(Dest + len, Colorants[i+j], index);
    }
    // Add the resulting components. No range check is required...
    for (j = 0; j < numColors - 1; j++)
        len += sprintf(Dest + len, "add ");
}
// We are nearly finish. Place the tint values on top of the stack
len += sprintf(Dest + len, "%d 4 roll", index + 1);
// Remove the tint values from the stack
for (j = 0; j < numColors; j++)
    len += sprintf(Dest + len, " pop");
strcpy(Dest + len, "}"); // Finish the code with a brace
}

```

Now we have a simple function that creates the required PostScript code for us. The usage is as follows:

```

// This is our error callback function.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode,
const char* ErrorMessage, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrorMessage);
    return 0;
}

SI32 TestDeviceNColorSpace(const void* PDF)
{
    SI32 cs;
    char psFunc[512]; // Buffer that holds the PostScript code
    const char* cls[] = {"PANTONE 345 CVC", "PANTONE 293 CVC", "Yellow"};
    const char* pcs[] = {"Cyan", "Magenta", "Yellow", "Black"};
    float colors[] =
    {
        // The CMYK color values are taken from Adobe's Photoshop
        0.38f, 0.00f, 0.34f, 0.0f, // Definition of the first spot color
        1.00f, 0.56f, 0.00f, 0.0f, // Definition of the second spot color
        0.00f, 0.00f, 1.00f, 0.0f // Definition of the process color
    };

    pdfSetOnErrorProc(PDF, NULL, PDFError);
    if (!pdfCreateNewPDF(PDF, "test.pdf")) return -2;

    pdfAppend(PDF);
}

```

```
// We need to create the PostScript calculator function first because
// it is a required parameter of pdfCreateDeviceNColorSpace().
CreateBlendFunction(psFunc, colors, sizeof(colors) / sizeof(float));
// Create the DeviceN color space
cs = pdfCreateDeviceNColorSpace(
    PDF,           // Instance pointer
    cls,           // The colorants array
    3,             // Number of colorants in the array
    psFunc,        // Our PostScript tint transformation function
    esDeviceCMYK,  // Alternate color space
    -1);          // No handle is required for a device color space

if (cs < 0) return cs;

// We create also Separation color spaces for the spot colors and add
// these color spaces as an attribute to the DeviceN color space:
UI32 separations[2];
// First spot color
separations [0] = pdfCreateSeparationCS(
    PDF,
    cls[0],
    esDeviceCMYK,
    -1,
    PDF_CMYK(97, 0, 87, 0)); // 0.38 * 255, 0 * 255, 0.34 * 255, 0 * 255

// Second spot color
separations[1] = pdfCreateSeparationCS(
    PDF,
    cls[1],
    esDeviceCMYK,
    -1,
    PDF_CMYK(255, 143, 0, 0)); // 1.0 * 255, 0.56 * 255, 0 * 0, 0 * 0

// Add the separation color spaces to the DeviceN color space.
pdfAddDeviceNSeparations(
    PDF,           // Instance pointer
    cs,            // DeviceN color space handle
    cls,           // Colorants array
    separations,   // Separation color space handles for these colorants
    2);           // Number of Separation color spaces

// Because the DeviceN color space uses a process color we add also
// the attributes of the process color space to it. Note that all
// colorant names must be defined, also if the DeviceN color space
// uses only one component of the process color space.
pdfAddDeviceNProcessColorants(
    PDF,           // Instance pointer
    cs,            // DeviceN color space handle
    pcs,           // Array of process colorants
    4,            // Number of process colorants
```

```

    esDeviceCMYK, // The used process color space
    -1);         // No handle is required for a device color space

// The DeviceN color space is now fully created so that we can use it
BYTE color[] = {150, 100, 100};
pdfSetExtColorSpace(PDF, cs);    // Set the DeviceN color space
pdfSetFillColorEx(PDF, color, 3); // Set a fill color

// Draw a rectangle with this color
pdfRectangle(PDF, 50.0, 690.0, 200.0, 100.0, fmFill);

pdfEndPage(PDF);

return pdfCloseFile(PDF);
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    SI32 retval;
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return -1; // Out of memory?

    retval = TestDeviceNColorSpace(pdf);

    pdfFreePDF(pdf);
    return retval;
}

```

As you can see the creation of a DeviceN color space with multiple spot and process colorants is not difficult. With the helper function that creates the required PostScript calculator function, you can easily create DeviceN color spaces with up to 32 color channels.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the color space handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateExtGState

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfCreateExtGState(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    struct TPDFExtGState* GS) // Extended graphics state structure

struct TPDFExtGState
{
    UI32          AutoStrokeAdjust; // PDF_MAX_INT if not set
    TBlendMode    BlendMode;        // Default bmNotSet
    float         FlatnessTol;      // -1.0 if not set
    UI32          OverPrintFill;    // PDF_MAX_INT if not set
}

```

```

    UI32          OverPrintStroke;    // PDF_MAX_INT if not set
    UI32          OverPrintMode;      // PDF_MAX_INT if not set
    TRenderingIntent RenderingIntent; // riNone if not set
    float         SmoothnessTol;      // -1.0 if not set
    float         FillAlpha;           // -1.0 if not set
    float         StrokeAlpha;         // -1.0 if not set
    UI32          AlphaIsShape;        // PDF_MAX_INT if not set
    UI32          TextKnockout;        // PDF_MAX_INT if not set
    void*         Reserved1;
    void*         Reserved2;
    void*         Reserved3;
    void*         Reserved4;
    void*         Reserved5;
    void*         Reserved6;
    void*         Reserved7;
    void*         Reserved8;
    void*         Reserved9;
};

typedef enum
{
    bmNotSet      = 0,
    bmNormal      = 1,
    bmColor       = 2,
    bmColorBurn   = 3,
    bmColorDodge  = 4,
    bmDarken      = 5,
    bmDifference  = 6,
    bmExclusion    = 7,
    bmHardLight   = 8,
    bmHue         = 9,
    bmLighten     = 10,
    bmLuminosity  = 11,
    bmMultiply    = 12,
    bmOverlay     = 13,
    bmSaturation  = 14,
    bmScreen      = 15,
    bmSoftLight   = 16
}TBlendMode;

typedef enum
{
    riAbsoluteColorimetric = 0,
    riPerceptual           = 1,
    riRelativeColorimetric = 2,
    riSaturation            = 3,
    riNone                  = 4 // Internal
}TRenderingIntent;

```

The function creates an extended graphics state object from the structure `GS`. An extended graphics state can be used to adjust certain properties which are not part of the normal graphics state. Such properties can only be modified with a special PDF object called the Extended Graphics State.

The most important properties of an extended graphics state are the transparency settings (PDF 1.4) and the overprint control (PDF 1.2 or 1.3, see below).

The structure `GS` must always be initialized with `InitGState()`. After the structure was initialized certain members of the structure can be changed. Pass the variable then to `CreateExtGState()`. The function creates an internal graphics state object and returns the handle of it. The extended graphics state can be applied with `SetExtGState()`. Note that the only way to restore the values of an extended graphics state is to apply a second extended graphics state that restores the values changed before.

The following values are allowed:

- `AlphaIsShape` -> 0 or 1 (PDF 1.4)
- `AutoStrokeAdjust` -> 0 or 1 (PDF 1.4)
- `BlendMode` -> see enum `TBlendMode` (PDF 1.4)
- `FlatnessTol` -> -1.0 or a value greater or equal 1.0
- `FillAlpha` -> 0.0..1.0 (PDF 1.4)
- `OverPrintFill` -> 0 or 1 (PDF 1.2 if used alone, PDF 1.3 otherwise)
- `OverPrintStroke` -> 0 or 1 (PDF 1.3)
- `OverPrintMode` -> 0 or 1 (PDF 1.3)
- `RenderingIntent` -> see enum `TRenderingIntent` (PDF 1.1)
- `SmoothnessTol;` -> 0.0..1.0 (PDF 1.3)
- `StrokeAlpha` -> 0.0..1.0 (PDF 1.4)
- `TextKnockout` -> 0 or 1 (PDF 1.4)

A value that should not be modified must not be changed.

The structure contains many reserved fields which are not used at this time. Future extensions will replace reserved fields. Therefore, it is strongly recommended to initialize the structure `GS` always with `InitGState()`.

If an image should be inserted with transparency it is usually best to disable image transparency which based on color key masking (see `SetUseTransparency()`). Images use the fill alpha constant as alpha channel. Blend modes can be applied too. However, the use of blend modes should be avoided if possible because most Acrobat versions produce different results depending on the color management settings.

#### Remarks:

Transparency and blend modes are discussed in detail in the section [PDF Transparency](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the extended graphics state handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateGoToAction

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateGoToAction(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    TDestType DestType,  // Destination type
    UI32 PageNum,        // Destination page
    double a,            // Various, depends on destination type
    double b,            // Various, depends on destination type
    double c,            // Various, depends on destination type
    double d)            // Various, depends on destination type

typedef enum
{
    dtXY_Zoom,    // Three parameters (a, b, c) -> (X, Y, Zoom)
    dtFit,        // No parameters
    dtFitH_Top,   // One parameter      (a)
    dtFitV_Left,  // One parameter      (a)
    dtFit_Rect,   // Four parameters   (left, bottom, right, top)
    dtFitB,       // No parameters
    dtFitBH_Top,  // One parameter     (a)
    dtFitBV_Left // One parameter     (a)
}TDestType;
```

A go-to action changes the view to a specific destination (page, location, and magnification factor).

This action type is useful if a specific destination must be used by several objects such as bookmarks and page links.

Destination type	Description
dtXY_Zoom	<p>Display the page designated by page with the coordinates (left, top) positioned at the top-left corner of the window and the contents of the page magnified by the factor zoom. A zero value for any of the parameters left top or zoom specifies that the current value of that parameter is to be retained unchanged.</p> <p><b>Example:</b>  pdfCreateGotoAction(pdf, dtXY_Zoom, 1, 0, 750, 0, 0);</p>
dtFit	<p>Display the page designated by page with its contents magnified just enough to fit the entire page within the window both horizontally and vertically. If the required horizontal and vertical magnification factors are different, use the smaller of the two, centering the page within the window in the other dimension. This destination type has no parameters, the values of a, b, c, d are ignored.</p>

Destination type	Description
dtFitH_Top	<p>Display the page designated by page with the vertical coordinate top positioned at the top edge of the window and the contents of the page magnified just enough to fit the entire width of the page within the window.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>// The parameter a specifies the top coordinate pdfCreateGotoAction(pdf, dtFitH_Top, 1, 565, 0, 0, 0);</pre>
dtFitV_Left	<p>Display the page designated by page with the horizontal coordinate left positioned at the left edge of the window and the contents of the page magnified just enough to fit the entire height of the page within the window.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>// The parameter a specifies the left edge pdfCreateGotoAction(pdf, dtFitV_Left, 1, 60, 0, 0, 0);</pre>
dtFitRect	<p>Display the page designated by page with its contents magnified just enough to fit the rectangle specified by the coordinates left bottom right and top entirely within the window both horizontally and vertically. If the required horizontal and vertical magnification factors are different, use the smaller of the two, centering the rectangle within the window in the other dimension. Note, the maximum zoom factor supported by Adobe's Acrobat is limited to 16 (Acrobat 4/5) or 64 if Acrobat 6 is used. It is not possible to zoom into the rectangle if it is too small.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>pdfCreateGotoAction(pdf, dtFit_Rect, 1, 150, 550, 450, 700);</pre>

The destination types *dtFitB*, *dtFitBH\_Top*, and *dtFitBV\_Left* use always the media box of the page to fit the page into the window. All other destination types use the crop box if any.

**Remarks:**

Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateGoToActionEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateGoToActionEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 NamedDest)    // Handle of a named destination
```

The function creates a go-to action which uses a named destination to open the target page. A named destination can be used if the destination should be accessible from another PDF file. See also [CreateNamedDestination\(\)](#).

### Remarks:

Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateGoToRAction

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateGoToRAction(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* FileName, // File path to external PDF file  
    UI32 PageNum)        // Destination page
```

This function creates a go-to-remote action. A go-to-remote action opens an external PDF file and jumps to the page defined by the parameter *PageNum*. If the destination page does not exist the first page is displayed.

### Remarks:

The path to the external PDF file should be defined as relative path. Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

### Return value:

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.



## CreateGoToRActionEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateGoToRActionEx(  
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer  
    const char* FileName,  // File path to another PDF file  
    char* DestName,        // Named Destination to access  
    LBOOL NewWindow)       // If true, the file is opened in a new window
```

The function creates a go-to-remote action that opens a named destination in an external PDF file. The parameter *DestName* must be the name of a named destination located in the external PDF file. Note that this is a byte string which must be specified exactly and case-sensitive. If the name was originally defined as Unicode string the go-to remote action must the same format, otherwise the destination can not be found. See also [CreateNamedDestination\(\)](#).

### Remarks:

The path to the external PDF file should be defined as relative path. Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

### Return value:

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateGroupField

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateGroupField(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* Name, // Name of the field  
    SI32 Parent)      // Parent group field if any or -1
```

This function creates a group field. A group field is a simple array of fields which can be used to separate fields into several groups. The field itself has no appearance, it is invisible.

For example, if an interactive form contains fields for private personal data and fields for company data in any kind, the fields can be structured into two base parts: *PersonalData* and *CompanyData*. The field names of each part must be unique inside its own hierarchy. However, duplicate field names of fields of the same type are still allowed.

### Field names and Group fields

The name of a specific interactive form field is the partial field name. The fully qualified name is not explicitly defined, but is constructed from the partial field name of the field and all of its ancestors.

For a field with no parent, the partial field name and the fully qualified name are the same; for a field that is the child of a parent (group) field, the fully qualified name is formed by appending the child field's partial name to the parent's fully qualified name, separated by a period (.):

`parent_field_name.child_partial_name`

For example, if a group field with the partial field name *PersonalData* has a child whose partial field name is *Address*, which in turn has a child with the partial field name *ZipCode*, then the fully qualified name of this last field would be

`PersonalData.Address.ZipCode`

Thus all fields descended from a common ancestor will share the ancestor's fully qualified field name as a common prefix in their own fully qualified names.

The naming scheme must be taken into account when accessing fields of a group in JavaScript functions.

#### Remarks:

Acrobat 4 does not support group fields inside a hide or form action. For example, if a group field will be added to a hide action, the entire group becomes invisible if the action is executed in Acrobat 5 or higher. Acrobat 4 ignores the group field; each field of the group must be manually added to the hide action.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the field handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

### **CreateHideAction**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateHideAction(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle of a field that should be hidden  
    LBOOL Hide)       // Hide or unhide the fields?
```

A hide action hides or shows one or more interactive form fields on screen by setting or clearing their hidden flags. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle. If the parameter *Hide* is true, the fields become invisible. If *Hide* is false, the fields become visible if their hidden flag was set before.

#### Remarks:

To add more fields to the action use the function [AddFieldToHideAction\(\)](#). Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateICCBasedColorSpace

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateICCBasedColorSpace(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    const char* ICCProfile) // File path of an ICC profile
```

The function creates an ICC-based color space. ICC-based color spaces (PDF 1.3) are based on a cross-platform color profile as defined by the International Color Consortium (ICC). Unlike the CalGray, CalRGB, and Lab color spaces, which are characterized by entries in the color space dictionary, an ICC-based color space is characterized by a sequence of bytes in a standard format.

An ICC profile describes the color characteristics of a particular device and it provides necessary information to convert color data between native device color spaces and device independent color spaces. The ICC specification classifies color devices according to their use as input or output devices such as monitors, scanners, cameras or printers. Depending on the output PDF format different device classes are supported.

Supported device classes in PDF 1.3 or higher and PDF/A-1:

- scnr -> Scanners
- mntr -> Monitors
- prtr -> Printers
- spac -> Color conversion profile

Supported device classes in PDF/X-1 and PDF/X-3:

- prtr -> Printers

ICC profiles are available in different versions. Which profile versions are allowed to use depends on the output PDF version:

PDF Version	ICC Specification Version	ICC Profile Version Number
PDF 1.3	3.3 or earlier	2.10
PDF 1.4	ICC.1:1998-09 and its addendum ICC.1A:1999-04	2.20
PDF 1.5	ICC.1:2001-12	4.00
PDF 1.6	ICC.1:2003-09	4.10
PDF 1.7	ICC.1:2004-10	4.20

Please note that neither PDF/A-1 nor PDF/X-1 and PDF/X-3 support ICC profile major versions higher than 2. The functions [CreateICCBasedColorSpace\(\)](#) and [AddRenderingIntent\(\)](#) check the profile version only if the output version was set to a PDF/A or PDF/X compatible version (see [SetPDFVersion\(\)](#)).

ICC profiles are available for different input color spaces such as DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, DeviceCMYK, or Lab. Color values must be defined in the very same as for the corresponding device color spaces.

#### Notice:

Non-device color spaces cannot be used for interactive objects such as annotations or form fields. The active color space must always be changed to a device color space before creating interactive objects; see [SetColorSpace\(\)](#). Note also that annotations support DeviceRGB only. Form fields support DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, and DeviceCMYK.

#### Remarks:

Use the function [SetExtColorSpace\(\)](#) to activate the color space in the graphics state. To set a color of an ICC-based color space convert the color value to a 32 bit integer in the very same way as for DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, or DeviceCMYK depending on the base color space and pass the resulting color value to [SetFillColor\(\)](#), [SetStrokeColor\(\)](#), or [SetColors\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the color space handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateImage

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfCreateImage(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const char* FileName,  // Output file name or NULL
    TImageFormat Format)   // Output image format

typedef enum
{
    ifmTIFF,      // RGB, CMYK, Gray, B&W -> CCITT 3/4, JPEG, Flate, LZW
    ifmJPEG,      // RGB, CMYK, Gray -> JPEG compression
    ifmPNG,       // Gray, RGB, B&W -> Flate compression
    ifmReserved,  // Reserved for future extensions
    ifmBMP,       // Gray, RGB, B&W -> Uncompressed
    ifmJPC        // RGB, CMYK, Gray -> JPEG2000 compression
}TImageFormat;
```

The function creates an empty image in the specified format. This is a helper function to create image files from raw images returned by the content parser. See [ParseContent\(\)](#) for further information.

After the image was created one or more images can be added to it with [AddImage\(\)](#). Note that TIFF is the only supported multi-page format. All other formats support exactly one image.

If the parameter *FileName* is set to NULL the image is created in memory. In this case the image buffer is available after [CloseImage\(\)](#) was called. To get the file buffer call the function [GetImageBuffer\(\)](#). Note that the internal resources of memory based images must be manually freed with [FreeImageBuffer\(\)](#) in this case.

**Remarks:**

CreateImage() can be used in combination with [ParseContent\(\)](#) and [AddImage\(\)](#) to extract images from a PDF file.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***CreateImportDataAction***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateImpDataAction(  
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer  
    const char* DataFile) // File path to FDF file
```

An import data action imports FDF data into the document's interactive form. FDF data files are normally created by Adobe's Acrobat when submitting a form to a web server.

Note that the XML based format XFDF is not supported by Adobe's Acrobat.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. However, because Acrobat does not support Unicode strings as file paths, the path is converted back to ANSI. A Unicode string must not contain characters outside of the code page 1252.

Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateIndexedColorSpace

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateIndexedColorSpace(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    TExtColorSpace Base,       // Base color space  
    SI32 Handle,               // Color space handle or -1 depending on Base  
    const void* ColorTable,    // Array of colors  
    UI32 NumColors)            // Number of colors in the array
```

The function creates an indexed color space which can be used for vector graphics and text output. The parameter *Base* defines the underlying base color space. It can be any device or ICC-based color space or separation space, but not a pattern space or another indexed space.

The parameter *Handle* must be a handle of the underlying base color space if no device color space is used. If a device color space is used the parameter *Handle* is ignored.

The color table must be defined as an array of color values defined in the corresponding base color space. For example, if the base color space is DeviceRGB, the values in the color table are to be interpreted as red, green, and blue components; if the base color space is a CIE-based *ABC* space such as a CalRGB or Lab space, the values are to be interpreted as *A*, *B*, and *C* components.

The number of components is taken from the base color space. The parameter *NumColors* defines the number of color values defined in the array. An indexed color space cannot contain more than 256 colors.

The length of the color table in bytes must be *NumColors \* NumComponents*.

### Notice:

Non-device color spaces cannot be used for interactive objects such as annotations or form fields. The active color space must always be changed to a device color space before creating interactive objects, see [SetColorSpace\(\)](#). Note also that annotations support DeviceRGB only. Form fields support DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, and DeviceCMYK.

### Remarks:

This function does not activate the color space in the graphics state. Use the function [SetExtColorSpace\(\)](#) to activate the color space in the graphics state. To set a color of the indexed color space pass the color index to [SetFillColor\(\)](#), [SetStrokeColor\(\)](#), or [SetColors\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is a color space handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateJSAction

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateJSAction(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const char* Script) // Must be one or more JavaScript functions
```

This function creates a JavaScript action. A JavaScript Action causes a script to be compiled and executed by the JavaScript interpreter of Adobe's Acrobat. Depending on the nature of the scripts, this can cause various interactive form fields in the document to update their values or change their visual appearances.

The parameter *Script* must be a valid JavaScript. The script is not checked by DynaPDF whether it is valid or not. Note that older Acrobat versions of Adobe's Acrobat do not support all JavaScript functions. Due to several bugs in Acrobat 4/5 an invalid JavaScript can cause an access violation in Adobe's Acrobat. Test your scripts carefully with all Acrobat versions which must be supported.

**Helpful Adobe documents available at <http://www.adobe.com>:**

- [Acrobat Forms API Reference \(Technical Note #5181\)](#)
- [Acrobat Forms JavaScript Object Specification \(Technical Note #5186\) Version 5.1](#)
- [Acrobat JavaScript Scripting Guide \(Technical Note #5430\) Version 6.0](#)
- [Acrobat JavaScript Scripting Reference \(Technical Note #5431\) Version 6.0](#)

### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Because JavaScript 1.2 is not Unicode compatible, Unicode encoded scripts are translated to a platform specific encoding prior to interpretation by the JavaScript engine. This conversion is done by Adobe's Acrobat. Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateLaunchAction

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateLaunchAction(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    TFileOP OP,                // Kind of operation (open or print the file)  
    const char* FileName,      // File name (required)  
    const char* DefDir,        // Default directory (can be NULL)  
    const char* Param,         // Optional parameters (can be NULL)  
    LBOOL NewWindow)           // Open the file in a new window?  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    foOpen,  
    foPrint  
}TFileOP;
```

A launch action launches an application or opens or prints a document. Acrobat passes the parameters of a launch action directly to the API function `ShellExecute()`. The parameter *FileName* can be an absolute or relative file path but relative file paths are preferred.

The parameter *DefDir* defines a default directory in which the file should be searched. The parameter *Param* defines an optional parameter string which can be passed to the application. This parameter should be omitted if the *FileName* designates a document. The parameters *DefDir* and *Param* are both optional, they can be NULL. See also `ShellExecute()` of your Windows API reference for further information.

The last parameter *NewWindow* specifies whether the file should be opened in a new window or not. This parameter is ignored if the file is not a PDF file.

### Remarks:

Adobe's Acrobat displays a warning before executing a launch action. Actions must be added to a PDF object with `AddActionToObj()`.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.



## CreateListBox

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateListBox(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* Name, // Name of the list box  
    LBOOL Sort,       // Sort the choice values?  
    SI32 Parent,      // Parent group field if any or -1  
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of the list box  
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of the list box  
    double Width,     // Width of the list box  
    double Height)    // Height of the list box
```

This function creates a list box. The choice values of the list box must be added with the function [AddValToChoiceField\(\)](#). This function requires the field handle that was returned by this function.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the list box. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

Like all form fields, the width and height is measured incl. the line width of the border. The size of normal vector graphics is measured without the line width; this must be taken into account when calculating the width or height of a form field. The line width of the border is derived from the current graphics state (see [SetLineWidth\(\)](#)), it should be either 0, 1, 2, or 3 units (no border, thin, medium, or thick). The border style can be changed with the functions [SetBorderStyle\(\)](#) or [SetFieldBorderStyle\(\)](#).

The values of the list box are sorted if the parameter *Sort* is true. List boxes support multiple selected values. To enable multi selection add the flag `ffMultiSelect` to the field (see [SetFieldFlags\(\)](#) for further information).

A list box requires a font. If no font is active the standard font Helvetica is used. Note that if the form must be compatible to Acrobat 4, the used fonts by the form fields must be restricted to the 14 standard fonts (see [SetFont\(\)](#) for further information). Acrobat 4 does not support interactive forms that use other fonts than the 14 standard fonts. Such a form requires Acrobat 5 or higher.

However, it is possible to use an arbitrary font as long as the code page 1252 is used.

The font size of a list box is set to "auto" if either the font size of the active font is set to 1.0 unit or if no font is active when the field is created.

A text field can be formatted and the allowed input values can be restricted to specific data formats. See [SetDateTimeFormat\(\)](#), [SetNumberFormat\(\)](#) for further information.

### Specific flags supported by list boxes:

- `ffSorted` // Change the sort flag if necessary
- `ffMultiSelect` // Enable multi selection

**Remarks:**

Earlier versions of DynaPDF allowed the usage of arbitrary 8 bit code pages. Due to changes in Acrobat viewer applications it is no longer possible to use another code page than 1252. In addition, it seems that Acrobat versions greater 6 do no longer support Type1 fonts in form fields, with the exception of the 14 standard fonts.

Interactive form fields can be structured into several groups by passing a handle of a group field to the parameter *Parent*. See [CreateGroupField\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the combo box, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

**CreateNamedAction**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateNamedAction(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    TNamedAction Action) // Kind of action that should be executed

typedef enum
{
    naFirstPage,      // Go to the first page of the document
    naLastPage,       // Go to the last page of the document
    naNextPage,       // Go to the next page
    naPrevPage,       // Go to the previous page
    naGoBack,         // Go back to last page and position
    naOpenDlg,        // Display the file open dialog
    naPrintDlg,        // Display the print dialog
    naGeneralInfo,     // Display the general info tab
    naFontsInfo,       // Display the fonts info tab
    naSaveAs,          // Display the save as dialog (requires Acrobat)
    naSecurityInfo,    // Display the security settings
    naFitPage,         // Fit the page into the window
    naDeletePages      // Delete one or more pages
} TNamedAction;
```

This function creates a named action. A named action is a predefined action that is supported by Adobe's Acrobat viewer applications.

**Remarks:**

Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateNamedDest

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateNamedDest(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const char* Name,    // Name of the destination (byte string)  
    UI32 DestPage,       // Destination page  
    TDestType DestType,  // Destination type  
    double a,            // Various, depends on destination type  
    double b,            // Various, depends on destination type  
    double c,            // Various, depends on destination type  
    double d)            // Various, depends on destination type
```

The function creates a named destination that can be accessed from external PDF files. Named destinations are especially useful when the destination is located in another PDF document. For example, a link to the beginning of Chapter 3 in another document might refer to the destination by a name, such as Chap3.begin, instead of by an explicit page number in the other document. Then, the location of the chapter in the other document could change without invalidating the link.

Named destinations can be used in the same document by bookmarks, page links, and go-to actions. This makes it possible to share named destinations with external and internal links. Named destinations which are located in another document can be accessed with a go-to-remote action (see [CreateGoToRActionEx\(\)](#) for further information).

Named destinations can be defined in ANSI or Unicode format. However, the Unicode format is very unusual and should not be used if possible.

The different destination types and required parameters to define it are explained in detail under [CreateGoToAction\(\)](#).

### Remarks:

Make sure that the same string format is used in a named destination and in a go-to remote action that tries to access it. Note that the destination cannot be found if the string format is different, e.g. ANSI in the named destination and Unicode in the go-to remote action.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the destination handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateNewPDF

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateNewPDF(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const char* OutPDF) // File name of the output file or NULL
```

This function creates a new PDF file. If the parameter *OutPDF* is an empty string the PDF file is created in memory. This function resets also the internal error flag if it was set before.

A memory based PDF file is available after [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [CloseFileEx\(\)](#) was called. To get the file buffer call the function [GetBuffer\(\)](#). Note that the internal used resources must be freed manually if a PDF was created in memory. See also [GetBuffer\(\)](#).

It is also possible to open the output file with [OpenOutputFile\(\)](#) right before [CloseFile\(\)](#) is called. The advantage is that the entire PDF file can be processed before opening the output file. If an error occurred during processing the creation of the output file can be discarded so that no empty file will be left on disk.

### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. On Windows operating systems Unicode file names are supported on NT based systems only (Win NT, 2000, XP, and so on). Non-Windows operating systems use the UTF-8 format to encode Unicode file paths. Therefore, the ANSI version should be used to open the file. If the Unicode version is used instead the file path is converted to UTF-8 and passed to the ANSI version of the function.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Examples (C):

#### Example 1: Creating a PDF file in memory:

```
// First we declare an error callback function that is called if an
// error occurred.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMsg, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMsg);
    return 0;
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    FILE* f; char* buffer; UI32 bufSize;
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return 2; // Out of memory?
    // No need to check return values.
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
```

```

pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diAuthor, "Jens Boschulte");
pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diCreator, "C sample project");
pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diSubject, "How to create a PDF file in memory?");
pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, NULL);

pdfAppend(pdf);
pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsItalic, 40.0, true, cp1252);
pdfWriteFText(pdf, taCenter, "My first memory based PDF...");
pdfEndPage(pdf);

pdfCloseFile(pdf);
// The file must be opened in binary mode!
if ((f = fopen("c:/cout.pdf", "wb")) == NULL)
{
    pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
    printf("Cannot open output file!");
    return 3;
}

buffer = pdfGetBuffer(pdf, &bufSize); // Get the file buffer
if (buffer)
{
    // We write the buffer as it is to the file.
    fwrite(buffer, 1, bufSize, f);
    fclose(f);
}
// We created a new PDF instance inside the function. When the
// instance is deleted all used resources are freed. However, in most
// cases it is a better way to use one PDF instance for multiple PDF
// files to improve processing speed. In the latter case we must call
// pdfFreePDF(pdf); to free the internal used resources.
pdfDeletePDF(pdf); // Delete the PDF instance
return 0;
}

```

#### Example 2: Usage of OpenOutputFile()

```

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return 2; // Out of memory?
    // No need to check return values.
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diSubject, "Usage of OpenOutputFile()...");
    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, NULL);

    pdfAppend(pdf);
    pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsItalic, 40.0, true, cp1252);
    pdfWriteFText(pdf, taCenter, "We use OpenOutputFile() now...");
    pdfEndPage(pdf);
}

```

```

// No fatal error occurred?
if (pdfHaveOpenDoc(pdf))
{
    // OK, now we can open the output file.
    /* Note that the function can also be called in a while statement
     * e.g. to display a file open dialog if the file could not be
     * opened...
     */
    if (!pdfOpenOutputFile(pdf, "c:/test.pdf"))
    {
        pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
        printf("Cannot open output file!\n");
        return -1;
    }
    if (pdfCloseFile(pdf))
    {
        printf("PDF file successfully created!\n");
    }
}
pdfDeletePDF(pdf);

```

## CreateOCG

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfCreateOCG(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const char* Name,    // Layer name (required)
    LBOOL DisplayInUI,   // Display the OCG in the user interface?
    LBOOL Visible,       // Initial state of the OCG
    TOCGIntent Intent)  // see below

typedef enum
{
    oiDesign = 2,
    oiView   = 4, // Default
    oiAll    = 8,
    oiEmpty  = 16 // Internal (refers to oiView if used)
}TOCGIntent;

```

The function creates an Optional Content Group (OCG). Content that belongs to an OCG can be made visible or invisible dynamically by users of conforming readers. OCGs are mostly called Layers because Optional Content and Layers share the same basic functionality. A layer is a piece of content that is associated with an OCG.

The parameter *DisplayInUI* specifies whether the OCG should be displayed in a user interface of a conforming reader. The state of invisible layers can only be changed programmatically, e.g. with a [SetOCGState](#) or Javascript actions. Also if *DisplayInUI* is set to false, the parameter *Name* is still required.

The parameter *Visible* specifies the initial state of the OCG. If set to false, contents that belongs to this OCG remains invisible until the state will be changed due to interaction with the user interface or programmatically with a [SetOCGState](#) or [Javascript](#) action.

The parameter *Intent* specifies the intended use of the graphics in the group. It provides a way to distinguish between different intended uses of optional content. For example, many document design applications, such as CAD packages, offer layering features for collecting groups of graphics together and selectively hiding or viewing them for the convenience of the author. However, this layering may be different (at a finer granularity, for example) than would be useful to consumers of the document. Therefore, it is possible to specify different intents for optional content groups within a single document. A conforming reader may decide to use only groups that are of a specific intent.

The *Intent* entry can be used to create different configurations for viewing and design applications. However, this functionality is not yet implemented in DynaPDF.

### ***How to make content optional?***

Page contents, such as text, images, and vector graphics can be associated with an OCG with [BeginLayer\(\)](#) / [EndLayer\(\)](#). Anything that is drawn between these function calls becomes part of the layer or OCG.

Interactive objects such as Annotations and Form Fields can be added to a layer with [AddObjectToLayer\(\)](#). However, interactive objects can be associated with exactly one layer at time. In cases where the visibility should depend on more than one OCG it is possible to connect the object with an Optional Content Membership Dictionary (OCMD). OCMDs accept an array of OCG handles and a visibility expression that defines when the associated content should become visible or invisible (see [CreateOCMD\(\)](#) for further information). OCMDs can also be used with [BeginLayer\(\)](#) although this is mostly not required.

Images and templates can be associated with an OCG or OCMD too. This can be useful if the object must be drawn outside of the parent layers or to archive more complex visibility expressions.

#### **Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Unused OCGs will not be written to the PDF file.

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the OCG handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

**Example (C++):**

```
...
pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "test_layer.pdf");

// We use three layers in this example
SI32 oc1 = pdfCreateOCG(pdf, "Anything", true, true, oiAll);
SI32 oc2 = pdfCreateOCG(pdf, "Text and Annotations", true, true, oiAll);
SI32 oc3 = pdfCreateOCG(pdf, "Images", true, true, oiAll);

pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);

pdfAppend(pdf);
// The main layer controls the visibility of all three layers in this
// example.
pdfBeginLayer(pdf, oc1);

    pdfBeginLayer(pdf, oc2);
        pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsRegular, 12.0, true, cp1252);
        char someText[] = "Some text with a link!!!";
        pdfWriteText(pdf, 50.0, 50.0, someText);
        double tw = pdfGetTextWidth(pdf, someText);
        // To reflect the same nesting as the text layer we must
        // use an OCMD for the annotation because the visibility of the
        // layer oc2 depends on oc1 at this position.
        pdfSetBorderStyle(pdf, bsUnderline);
        pdfSetStrokeColor(pdf, PDF_BLUE);
        SI32 annot = pdfWebLink(pdf, 50, 51, tw, 12, "www.dynaforms.com");
        UI32 ocgs[2] = {oc1, oc2};
        SI32 ocmd = pdfCreateOCMD(pdf, ovAllOn, ocgs, 2);
        pdfAddObjectToLayer(pdf, ocmd, ooAnnotation, annot);
    pdfEndLayer(pdf);

    pdfBeginLayer(pdf, oc3);
        InsertImageEx(pdf, 50.0, 70.0, 300.0, 200.0, "c:/Imgs/test.tif", 1);
    pdfEndLayer(pdf);

pdfEndLayer(pdf);

pdfWriteText(pdf, 50.0, 300.0, "This text is not part of a layer!");

pdfEndPage(pdf);

pdfCloseFile(pdf);
...
```



## CreateOCMD

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateOCMD(  
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer  
    TOCVisibility Visibility,    // When should the OCMD be visible?  
    UI32* OCGs,                 // Array of OCG handles (required)  
    UI32 Count)                 // Number of handles in the array (required)  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    ovAllOff,  
    ovAllOn,  
    ovAnyOff, // Default  
    ovAnyOn,  
    ovNotSet  // Internal (defaults to ovAnyOn if used)  
}TOCVisibility;
```

The function creates an Optional Content Membership Dictionary (OCMD). OCMDs can be used to create visibility expressions which depend on more than one optional content group.

OCMDs are mostly used with Annotations and Form Fields because these objects can only be associated with one OCG or one OCMD. In cases where the visibility should depend on more than one OCG or if the object should be used in different layers, an OCMD must be used.

The parameter *Visibility* specifies when the associated objects should become visible. The parameter *OCGs* must be an array of valid OCG handles. A viewer application inspects the array of OCGs and the visibility parameter to determine whether the associated content should be visible or invisible.

### Remarks:

Unused OCMDs will not be written to the PDF file.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the OCMD handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateRadialShading

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateRadialShading(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double sX,        // X-Coordinate of the inner circle
    double sY,        // Y-Coordinate of the inner circle
    double R1,        // Radius of the inner circle
    double eX,        // X-Coordinate of the outer circle
    double eY,        // Y-Coordinate of the outer circle
    double R2,        // Radius of the outer circle
    double SCenter,   // Shading center
    UI32 SColor,      // Start color
    UI32 EColor,      // End color
    LBOOL Extend1,    // Extend the inner circle
    LBOOL Extend2)    // Extend the outer circle
```

Radial shadings define a color blend that varies between two circles. The shading may optionally be extended beyond the starting or ending circles by continuing the boundary colors indefinitely. Shadings of this type are commonly used to depict three-dimensional spheres and cones.

The shading center defines the point from where the first color will blend into the other. A value of 1 determines the exact center between the starting and ending point of the shading. Smaller values shift the shading center in direction to the start circle, greater values in the direction to the end circle.

Radial shadings can be drawn into a clipping path to restrict painting into this path. If the shading is drawn outside of a clipping path it is applied to the entire page. Not that extended shadings are opaque, objects behind the shading becomes invisible if they are overprinted by the shading.

Shadings are drawn by using the current coordinate system. It is recommended to understand that shadings have its own dimension like a normal shape. The parameters *Extend1* and *Extend2* extend the shading beyond its dimension. If the shading is extended it must normally be drawn into a clipping path to avoid overprinting of other objects.

Shadings support the color spaces DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, and DeviceCMYK. The color values of the start and end color must be defined in the current color space. See also [SetColorSpace\(\)](#).

Shadings are invisible as long they are not drawn by using the function [ApplyShading\(\)](#). [ApplyShading\(\)](#) requires a shading handle that was returned by this function.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the shading handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateRadioButton

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateRadioButton(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const char* Name,          // Name of the radio button  
    const char* ExpValue,      // Export value of the first check box  
    SI32 Checked,              // If true, the check box appears checked  
    SI32 Parent,               // Parent group field if any or -1  
    double PosX,               // X-Coordinate of the first check box  
    double PosY,               // Y-Coordinate of the first check box  
    double Width,              // Width of the first check box  
    double Height)             // Height of the first check box
```

A radio button field is a set of related toggle controls (check boxes), at most one of which may be on at any given time; selecting any one of the button automatically deselects all others.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the first check box that is automatically created by this function. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

Like all form fields, the width and height is measured incl. the line width of the border. The size of normal vector graphics is measured without the line width; this must be taken into account when calculating the width or height of a form field. The line width of the border is derived from the current graphics state (see [SetLineWidth\(\)](#)), it should be either 0, 1, 2, or 3 units (no border, thin, medium, or thick). The border style can be changed with the functions [SetBorderStyle\(\)](#) or [SetFieldBorderStyle\(\)](#).

This type of field supports an additional flag, *ffNoToggleToOff*, which specifies, if set, that exactly one of the radio buttons must be selected at all times (see also [SetFieldFlags\(\)](#)). In the latter case, clicking the currently selected button has no effect. If the *ffNoToggleToOff* flag is clear, clicking the selected button deselects it, leaving no button selected (the flag *ffNoToggleToOff* is set per default, see also [SetFieldFlags\(\)](#)).

### Remarks:

It is not possible to add an action to a radio button field. Actions must be added to the check boxes which are included in the radio button instead. The handle of the first check box can be calculated by adding 1 to the handle value of the radio button field. For example, if the handle of the radio button is 1, then the handle of the first check box is 2.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the handle of the radio button, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateResetAction

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateResetAction(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

A reset form action resets all or specific fields of an interactive form to their default values. If only a few specific fields should be reset then add these fields with [AddFieldToFormAction\(\)](#) to the action. It is possible to exclude or include only specific fields when resetting the form. However, if no specific fields are added to the action, all fields are reset to their default values, this is the normal case.

### Remarks:

Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateSeparationCS

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateSeparationCS(  
    const void* IPDF)           // Instance pointer  
    const char* Colorant,       // Colorant name -> required  
    TExtColorSpace Alternate,    // Alternate color space  
    SI32 Handle,                // Alternate color space handle or -1  
    UI32 Color)                 // Color value defined in the alt. color space
```

The function creates a Separation color space.

Color output devices produce full color by combining primary or process colorants in varying amounts. On an additive color device such as a display, the primary colorants consist of red, green, and blue phosphors; on a subtractive device such as a printer, they typically consist of cyan, magenta, yellow, and sometimes black inks. In addition, some devices can apply special colorants, often called spot colorants, to produce effects that cannot be achieved with the standard process colorants alone. Examples include metallic and fluorescent colors and special textures.

When printing a page, most devices produce a single composite page on which all process colorants (and spot colorants, if any) are combined. However, some devices, such as imagesetters, produce a separate, monochromatic rendition of the page, called a separation, for each colorant. When the separations are later combined—on a printing press, for example—and the proper inks or other colorants are applied to them, the result is a full-color page.

A Separation color space (PDF 1.2) provides a means for specifying the use of additional colorants or for isolating the control of individual color components of a device color space for a subtractive

device. When such a space is the current color space, the current color is a single-component value, called a tint, that controls the application of the given colorant or color components only.

The parameter *Colorant* specifies the colorant name which this Separation color space is intended to represent. The special colorant name *All* refers collectively to all colorants available on an output device, including those for the standard process colorants. When a Separation space with this colorant name is the current color space, painting operators apply tint values to all available colorants at once. This is useful for purposes such as painting registration targets in the same place on every separation.

Such marks are typically painted as the last step in composing a page to ensure that they are not overwritten by subsequent painting operations.

The special colorant name *None* never produces any visible output. Painting operations in a Separation space with this colorant name have no effect on the current page.

The parameter *Alternate* specifies the alternate color space in which the color should be rendered if the device does not support the specified colorant. The alternate color space can be any Device or CIE based color space but not in turn a special color space like Separation, Indexed, or DeviceN.

The parameter *Handle* specifies the handle of the alternate color space if a CIE based color space should be used. If the alternate color space is a device color space the parameter *Handle* is ignored.

The parameter *Color* specifies the alternate color value, defined in the alternate color space, which is used if the device does not support the colorant.

A color value in a Separation color space consists of a single tint component in the range 0 to 255. The value 0 represents the minimum amount of colorant that can be applied; 255 represent the maximum. Tints are always treated as subtractive colors, even if the device produces output for the designated component by an additive method. Thus, a tint value of 0 denotes the lightest color that can be achieved with the given colorant, and 255 is the darkest. This convention is the same as for DeviceCMYK color components but opposite to the one for DeviceGray and DeviceRGB.

### **Encoding of Colorant Names**

Colorant names are interpreted in the code page 1252 (WinAnsi) by default. Because colorant names are stored in UTF-8 Unicode format in PDF, it is also possible to pass UTF-8 encoded Unicode strings to the function. However, the function must be able to distinguish between both string formats. To archive this, the parameter *Handle* accepts the special flag 0x10000000 that specifies that the parameter *Colorant* contains a UTF-8 encoded string. The flag must be combined with the handle as follows:

```
handle |= 0x10000000;           // C/C++, C#
handle = handle Or &H10000000 // Visual Basic
handle := handle or $10000000  // Delphi
```

If the alternate color space is a device color space, simply set the parameter to 0x10000000 to specify that the colorant name is a UTF-8 string.

**Notice:**

Non-device color spaces cannot be used for interactive objects such as annotations or form fields. The active color space must always be changed to a device color space before creating interactive objects; see [SetColorSpace\(\)](#). Note also that annotations support DeviceRGB only. Form fields support DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, and DeviceCMYK.

**Remarks:**

Use the function [SetExtColorSpace\(\)](#) to activate the color space in the graphics state. To set a color of a Separation space pass the wished color value to [SetFillColor\(\)](#), [SetStrokeColor\(\)](#), or [SetColors\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the color space handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateSetOCGStateAction

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateSetOCGStateAction(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32* On,          // Array of OCG handles which should be set to On
    UI32 OnCount,      // Number of OCGs handles in the On array
    UI32* Off,         // Array of OCG handles which should be set to Off
    UI32 OffCount,     // Number of OCG handles in the Off array
    UI32* Toggle,      // Array of OCG handles which should toggle the state
    UI32 ToggleCount,  // Number of OCG handles in the Toggle array
    LBOOL PreserveRB) // Preserve radio button relationships if any?
```

The function creates a SetOCGState action that can be used to change the visibility state of certain Optional Content Groups (OCGs). All arrays of OCG handles are optional but at least one array must be provided. The parameter *PreserveRB* should be set to true to preserve radio button state relationships, if any. If set to false, radio button state relationships will be ignored when setting the visibility state of affected OCGs.

Actions must be added to a PDF object so that they can be executed. See [AddActionToObj\(\)](#) for further information and the example on the next page.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

**Example (C++):**

This example creates a document in two languages. The text for the different languages is placed into separate layers. A JavaScript Action selects the correct layer depending on the viewer language when opening the file. It is also possible to change the language with two bookmarks. The bookmarks are connected with a SetOCGState action that simply toggles the layer states from on to off or vice versa.

```

SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode,
                      const char* ErrorMessage,
                      SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrorMessage);
    return 0; // We try to continue
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    SI32 oc1, oc2, bmkDE, bmkEN, act, retval = -2;
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return -1; // Out of memory?

    // Pass warnings and errors to this error callback function
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, PDFError);

    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, NULL);

    oc1 = pdfCreateOCG(pdf, "Deutsch", true, false, oiAll);
    oc2 = pdfCreateOCG(pdf, "English", true, true, oiAll);

    bmkDE = pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "Deutsch", -1, 1, false);
    bmkEN = pdfAddBookmark(pdf, "English", -1, 1, false);

    UI32 toggle[2] = {oc1, oc2};
    // Simply toggle the state from On to Off or vice versa
    act = pdfCreateSetOCGStateAction(pdf, NULL, 0, NULL, 0, toggle, 2, true);

    // Add the action to the bookmarks
    pdfAddActionToObj(pdf, otBookmark, oeOnMouseUp, act, bmkDE);
    pdfAddActionToObj(pdf, otBookmark, oeOnMouseUp, act, bmkEN);

    pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);

    pdfAppend(pdf);

    pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsRegular | fsItalic, 12.0, true, cp1252);

    // Text for the German layer
    pdfBeginLayer(pdf, oc1);
    pdfWriteFTextEx(

```

```

        pdf,
        50.0,
        50.0,
        pdfGetPageWidth(pdf) - 100.0,
        pdfGetPageHeight(pdf) - 100.0,
        taLeft,
        "Dieses Beispiel zeigt wie ein mehrsprachiges Dokument "
        "erzeugt werden kann.\n\n"
        "Zunächst wird beim Öffnen des Dokuments die Sprache mit "
        "einer JavaScript Aktion eingestellt.\n\n"
        "Zusätzlich kann die Sprache auch über zwei Lesezeichen "
        "ausgewählt werden. Hierbei wird lediglich ein Layer ein- "
        "bzw. ausgeblendet.\n\n"
        "Der Seiteninhalt muss natürlich zweimal erzeugt werden, einmal "
        "in Deutsch und einmal in Englisch in diesem Beispiel, jeweils "
        "in unterschiedlichen Layern.");

pdfEndLayer(pdf);

// Text for the English layer
pdfBeginLayer(pdf, oc2);
    pdfWriteFTextEx(pdf,
        50.0,
        50.0,
        pdfGetPageWidth(pdf) - 100.0,
        pdfGetPageHeight(pdf) - 100.0,
        taLeft,
        "This example shows how a multi-language document can be "
        "created.\n\n"
        "The language is initially selected with a JavaScript "
        "Action when opening the file.\n\n"
        "Additionally, the wished language can be selected with two "
        "bookmarks. The bookmarks simply hide or unhide a layer.\n\n"
        "The page contents must of course be created twice, one time "
        "in English and one time in German in this example, but in "
        "different layers.");

pdfEndLayer(pdf);

pdfEndPage(pdf);

// This script displays the correct layer depending on the viewer
// language.
SI32 actLang = pdfCreateJSAction(pdf,
    "if (app.viewerVersion >= 6.0)\n"
    "{\n"
    "    var ocgArray = this.getOCGs();\n"
    "    var de = (app.language == \"DEU\");\n"
    "    for (var i = 0; i < ocgArray.length; i++)\n"
    "        {\n"

```



```
"        if(ocgArray[i].name=="English")\n"        {\n"            ocgArray[i].state = !de;\n"        }else\n"        {\n"            ocgArray[i].state = de;\n"        }\n"    }\n"    }";
```

```
pdfAddActionToObj(pdf, otCatalog, oeOnOpen, actLang, -1);
```

```
if (pdfHaveOpenDoc(pdf))  
{  
    if (pdfOpenOutputFile(pdf, "test_layer.pdf"))  
    {  
        retval = pdfCloseFile(pdf);  
    }  
}  
pdfDeletePDF(pdf);  
return retval;  
}
```

## CreateSigField

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateSigField(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    const char* Name,  // Name of the signature field (required)
    SI32 Parent,       // Parent group field if any or -1
    double PosX,       // X-Coordinate of the field
    double PosY,       // Y-Coordinate of the field
    double Width,      // Width of the field box
    double Height)     // Height of the field
```

This function creates an empty signature field which can be used to digitally sign the PDF file. If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the signature field. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

Like all form fields, the width and height is measured incl. the line width of the border. The size of normal vector graphics is measured without the line width; this must be taken into account when calculating the width or height of a form field. The line width of the border is derived from the current graphics state (see [SetLineWidth\(\)](#)), it should be either 0, 1, 2, or 3 units (no border, thin, medium, or thick). The border style can be changed with the functions [SetBorderStyle\(\)](#) or [SetFieldBorderStyle\(\)](#).

If the PDF file should be digitally signed by DynaPDF call the function [CloseAndSignFile\(\)](#) or [CloseAndSignFileEx\(\)](#) after all pages has been created. The first signature field is used for signing if multiple signature fields exist. In this case it is also possible to create a user defined appearance for the signature field. See [CreateSigFieldAP\(\)](#) for further information.

A signature field can be visible or invisible depending on your requirements. To create a hidden signature field set the flag `ffHidden` to the field (see also [SetFieldFlags\(\)](#)).

### How to lock an Interactive Form after signing?

If an Interactive Form should be filled in and signed within the full version of Adobe's Acrobat 4 or higher then it is possible to create an empty signature field which executes a special JavaScript Action to lock the form after it has been signed. This can be done with a JavaScript Action which contains the JavaScript function *AFSignature\_Format()*. This function can be called within the *OnFormat* event of the signature field. Note that this is the one and only event that signature fields support.

The function supports two parameters, the first parameter defines whether all or only specific fields should be locked, the second parameter contains either an empty array or an array of full qualified field names delimited by a comma:

- `AFSignature_Format("ALL", new Array (""));`
- `AFSignature_Format("THESE", new Array ("Field1, Field2"));`
- `AFSignature_Format("EXCEPT", new Array ("Field1, Field2"));`

**Notice:** If a form contains a button with a [Submit Form Action](#) then it is recommended to exclude the button field from locking so that it is still possible to submit the form data. Otherwise, the entire form is locked, incl. the submit button, and it is impossible to submit the form data to a web server.

### Example (C++):

In this example we create a simple form with only one text field and an empty signature field. The form should be signed by the user after it has been filled in and then submitted to a web server. The submit button is hidden when the form is created; it becomes visible after the document has been signed. Note that this example works only with the full version of Adobe's Acrobat 5 or higher.

```
#include "dynapdf.h"
using namespace DynaPDF;
// Error callback function.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrorMessage, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrorMessage);
    return -1; // We break processing if an error occurs
}
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return 2; // Out of memory?
    char outFile[] = "c:/cppout.pdf";
    // Error messages and warnings are passed to the callback function.
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, PDFError);
    if (!pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, outFile))
    {
        pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
        (void)getch();
        return 1;
    }
    pdfAppend(pdf);
    pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);
    pdfCreateTextField(pdf, "Test", -1, false, 0, 50.0, 50.0, 200.0, 16.0);
    SI32 sig = pdfCreateSigField(pdf, "Signature", -1, 50.0, 70.0, 200.0, 30.0);
    // We exclude the button from locking, otherwise it would be impossible
    // to execute the submit form action. The submit button becomes
    // visible after the document has been signed.
    char s[] = "AFSignature_Format(\"EXCEPT\", new Array(\"Submit\"));\n"
"var f = this.getField(\"Submit\");\n f.hidden=false;\n";
    SI32 act = pdfCreateJSAction(pdf, s);
    pdfAddActionToObj(pdf, otField, oeOnFormat, act, sig);
    pdfSetBorderStyle(pdf, bsBevelled);
    pdfSetFieldBackColor(pdf, PDF_SILVER);
    SI32 btn = pdfCreateButton(pdf, "Submit", "Submit", 1, 50, 110, 100, 20);
    pdfSetFieldFlags(pdf, btn, ffHidden, false);

    // The entire PDF file should be submitted to our web server.
```

```
act = pdfCreateSubmitAction(pdf, sfPDF, "http://www.test.com/pdf.php");
pdfAddActionToObj(pdf, otField, oeOnMouseUp, act, btn);
pdfEndPage(pdf);
pdfCloseFile(pdf);
pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
printf("PDF file %s successfully created!\n", outFile);
return 0;
}
```

**Remarks:**

The height of a signature field should be large enough to display at least 3 lines of text. If the optional strings "Location" and "Reason" of the function [CloseAndSignFile\(\)](#) should be set, set the field height to a value so that up to 5 lines of text can be printed into the field. The resulting font size depends on the height of the field divided by the number of text lines.

Interactive form fields can be structured into several groups by passing a handle of a group field to the parameter *Parent*. See [CreateGroupField\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the field handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***CreateSigFieldAP***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateSigFieldAP(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
    UI32 SigField)     // Handle of a signature field
```

The function creates a signature appearance template in the exact size of the base signature field. The created template is already opened if the function succeeds and you can draw arbitrary contents into it. After the appearance has been defined the template must be closed with [EndTemplate\(\)](#).

Note that the template is reserved for the signature field. It must not be placed on pages or other templates.

When creating a user defined appearance for a signature field you should also place the validation icon properly so that it does not overprint the entire contents. See also [PlaceSigFieldValidateIcon\(\)](#).

**Remarks:**

An example application that demonstrates the creation of a user defined signature appearance is delivered with DynaPDF (see example `signature_ap`).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## CreateStdPattern

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateStdPattern(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    TStdPattern Pattern,    // Kind of pattern
    double LineWidth,      // Line width to draw the pattern
    double Distance,       // Distance between the lines
    UI32 LineColor,        // Color of the lines
    UI32 BackColor)        // Background color or NO_COLOR if transparent

typedef enum
{
    spHorizontal, /* ----- */
    spVertical,   /* ||||| */
    spRDiagonal,  /* \\\ */
    spLDiagonal,  /* /// */
    spCross,      /* +++++ */
    spDiaCross    /* xxxxx */
}TStdPattern;
```

This function creates a hatch pattern. Several types of hatch pattern can be created with this function. The line width, line distance, and line color can be set individually. If the pattern should be transparent set the background color to [NO\\_COLOR](#).

The function creates a colored tiling pattern. See [BeginPattern\(\)](#) for further information.

A pattern can be used like a color, it is not required to save the graphics state before applying a pattern. A pattern remains active until the corresponding color is changed with [SetFillColor\(\)](#) or [SetStrokeColor\(\)](#).

### Remarks:

Patterns are invisible as long as they are not applied by the function [ApplyPattern\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the pattern handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

**Example (C):**

```
// First we declare an error callback function.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMsg, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMsg);
    return 0;
}
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    SI32 pat1, pat2, pat3;
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return 2; // Out of memory?
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, PDFError);
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diSubject, "Standard hatch patterns");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diCreator, "C example test project");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diTitle, "Standard hatch patterns");
    pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);

    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:/cppout.pdf");

    pdfAppend(pdf);

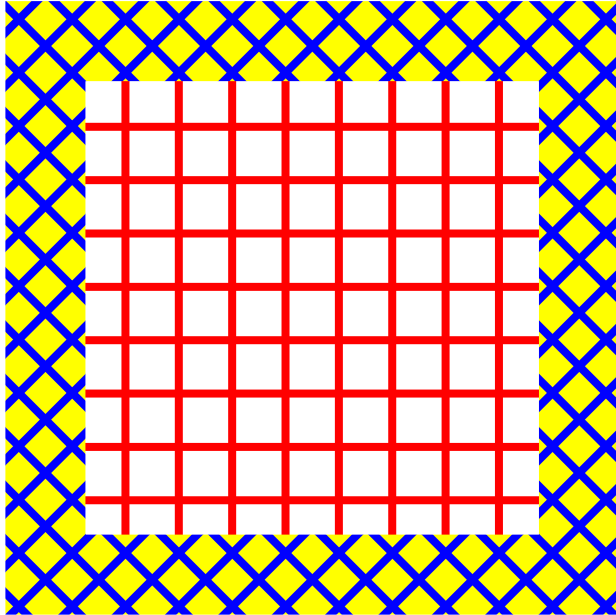
    pat1 = pdfCreateStdPattern(pdf, spCross, 2, 8, PDF_RED, NO_COLOR);
    pat2 = pdfCreateStdPattern(pdf, spDiaCross, 1, 4, PDF_BLUE, PDF_YELLOW);
    pat3 = pdfCreateStdPattern(pdf, spDiaCross, 1, 4, PDF_BLUE, NO_COLOR);

    pdfApplyPattern(pdf, pat1, cmFill, 0);
    pdfApplyPattern(pdf, pat2, cmStroke, 0);
    pdfSetLineWidth(pdf, 10.0);
    pdfRectangle(pdf, 50, 50, 50, 50, fmFillStroke);
    pdfApplyPattern(pdf, pat3, cmStroke, 0);
    pdfRectangle(pdf, 120, 50, 50, 50, fmFillStroke);

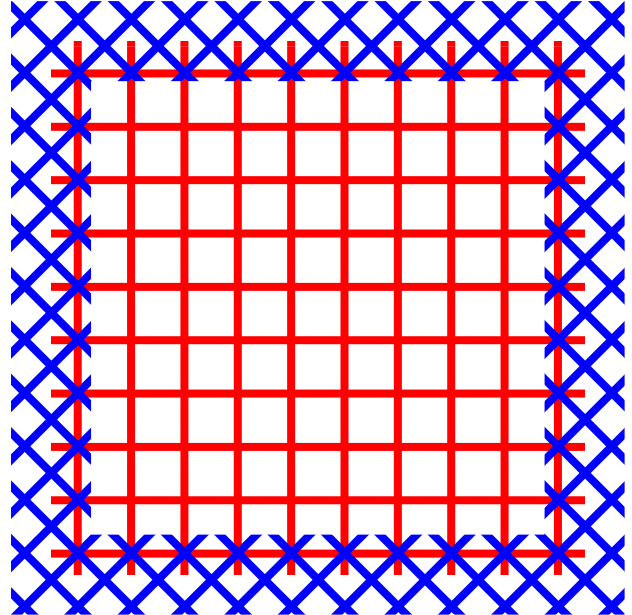
    pdfEndPage(pdf);
    pdfCloseFile(pdf);
    pdfDeletePDF(pdf); // Do not forget to delete the PDF instance
}
```

Output:

**Opaque background (border)**



**Transparent background (border)**



## CreateStructureTree

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfCreateStructureTree(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function creates a global structure tree that is required to create Tagged PDF files.

If a structure tree was already created or imported from an external PDF file the function does nothing. Additional tags will be added to the existing structure tree in this case.

However, note that DynaPDF is not able to merge structure trees from different PDF files. If two tagged PDF files will be imported the entire structure information will be deleted and it is not possible to create a new structure tree.

When creating Tagged PDF files it is important to create the PDF file in the right order.

- If an external PDF file must be imported then import it before creating other contents. In addition, import the entire PDF file with [ImportPDFFile\(\)](#) including tagging information (see [SetImportFlags\(\)](#) for further information).
- Avoid the usage of [ImportPage\(\)](#) or [ImportPageEx\(\)](#) because these functions cannot import tagging information. If pages of a tagged PDF file were imported with these functions it is no longer possible to create a structure tree.
- Do not create a structure tree and import a PDF file later. The created structure will be deleted if the PDF file contains tagging information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is zero.

## CreateSubmitAction

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateSubmitAction(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    TSubmitFlags Flags,  // Additional flags see below
    const char* URL)     // URL of the web server

typedef SI32 TSubmitFlags;
#define sfNone           0x00000000 // No flags -> FDF format
#define sfExclude        0x00000001 // Excl. the fields of the action
#define sfInclNoValFields 0x00000002 // Include empty fields
#define sfHTML           0x00000004 // HTML format
#define sfGetMethod      0x00000008 // Use Get instead of Post
#define sfSubmCoords     0x00000010 // Mouse coordinates
#define sfXML             0x00000024 // XFDF format PDF 1.4
#define sfInclAppSaves   0x00000040 // Include append saves PDF 1.4
#define sfInclAnnots     0x00000080 // Include annotations PDF 1.4
#define sfPDF            0x00000100 // PDF 1.4
#define sfCanonicalFormat 0x00000200 // Canonical date format PDF 1.4
```



```
#define sfExlNonUserAnnots 0x00000400 // PDF 1.4
#define sfExlFKey          0x00000800 // PDF 1.4
#define sfEmbedForm        0x00002000 // PDF 1.5 Embed the form into FDF
```

A submit form action submits the field values of an interactive form to a web server. It is also possible to submit the entire PDF file; however, this feature requires the full version of Adobe's Acrobat (version 5 or higher).

Instead of simply submitting all field values to a web server it also possible to submit the values of specific fields only. The fields must be added to the action with the function [AddFieldToFormAction\(\)](#). The fields of the action can be included or excluded depending whether the flag `sfExclude` was set or not.

**Remarks:**

Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

The flags are described on the next page.

Flag	Description
<code>sfNone</code>	Use default settings. Field values are transmitted in Forms Data format (FDF).
<code>sfExclude</code>	Exclude the fields in the submit form action if any. These fields must be added to the form action with <a href="#">AddFieldToFormAction()</a> .
<code>sfInclNoValFields</code>	If set, all fields designated by the fields array of the form action are submitted, regardless whether they have a value, only the field name is transmitted. If no fields are added to form action this flag is applied to all fields included in the interactive form.
<code>sfHTML</code>	If set, the field names and values are submitted in HTML format. If clear, they are submitted in Forms Data Format (FDF). This flag is meaningful only when the flag <code>sfXML</code> is clear; if set, this flag is ignored.
<code>sfGetMethod</code>	Use HTTP GET request instead of POST.
<code>sfSubmCoords</code>	<p>If set, the coordinates of the mouse click that caused the submitform action are transmitted as part of the form data. The coordinate values are relative to the upper-left corner of the field 's bounding box. They are represented in the data in the format</p> <pre>name.x = xval &amp; name.y = yval</pre> <p>where name is the field name. This flag is meaningful only when the <code>sfHTML</code> flag is set; if <code>sfHTML</code> is clear, this flag must also be clear.</p>
<code>sfXML</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, field names and values are submitted in XFDF format.
<code>sfInclAppSaves</code>	(PDF 1.4) Meaningful only when the form is being submitted in Forms Data Format (that is, when both the <code>sfXML</code> and <code>sfHTML</code> flags are clear). If set, the submitted FDF file includes the contents of all incremental updates to the underlying PDF document, as contained in the Differences entry in the FDF dictionary; if clear, the incremental updates are not included.

Flag	Description
<code>sfInclAnnots</code>	(PDF 1.4) Meaningful only when the form is being submitted in Forms Data Format (that is, when both the <code>sfXML</code> and <code>sfHTML</code> flags are clear). If set, the submitted FDF file includes all annotations in the underlying PDF document; if clear, the annotations are not included.
<code>sfPDF</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, the document is submitted in PDF format, using the MIME content type <code>application/pdf</code> (described in Internet RFC 2045, Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME), Part One: Format of Internet Message Bodies). If this flag is set, all other flags are ignored except <code>sfGetMethod</code> . This flag is not supported by Adobe's Acrobat Reader.
<code>sfCanonicalFormat</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, any submitted field values representing dates are converted to a standard format ( <a href="#">see next page</a> ). The interpretation of a form field as a date is not specified explicitly in the field itself, but only in the JavaScript code that processes it.
<code>sfExlNonUserAnnots</code>	(PDF 1.4) Meaningful only when the form is being submitted in Forms Data Format (that is, when both the <code>sfXML</code> and <code>sfHTML</code> flags are clear) and the <code>sfInclAnnots</code> flag is set. If set, will include only those annotations whose title matches the name of the current user, as determined by the remote server to which the form is being submitted. The title, which specifies the text label to be displayed in the title bar of the annotation's pop-up window, is assumed to represent the name of the user authoring the annotation. This allows multiple users to collaborate in annotating a single remote PDF document without affecting one another's annotations.
<code>sfExlFKey</code>	(PDF 1.4) Meaningful only when the form is being submitted in Forms Data Format (that is, when both the <code>sfXML</code> and <code>sfHTML</code> flags are clear). If set, the submitted FDF will exclude the "F" entry (the PDF document file that this FDF file was exported from).

Flag	Description
<code>sfEmbedForm</code>	(PDF 1.5) Meaningful only when the form is being submitted in Forms Data Format (that is, when both the <code>sfXML</code> and <code>sfHTML</code> flags are clear). If set, the F entry of the submitted FDF will be a file specification containing an embedded file stream representing the PDF file from which the FDF is being submitted. This flag is not supported by Adobe's Acrobat Reader.

### ***The standard date format***

PDF defines a standard date format, which closely follows that of the international standard ASN.1 (Abstract Syntax Notation One), defined in ISO/IEC 8824.

A date string is defined as follows:

(D:YYYYMMDDHHmmSSOHH'mm')

where

**YYYY** is the year

**MM** is the month

**DD** is the day (01 –31)

**HH** is the hour (00 –23)

**mm** is the minute (00 –59)

**SS** is the second (00 –59)

**O** is the relationship of local time to Universal Time (UT), denoted by one of the characters +, -, or Z (see below)

**HH** followed by ' is the absolute value of the offset from UT in hours (00 –23)

**mm** followed by ' is the absolute value of the offset from UT in minutes (00 –59)

The apostrophe character (') after HH and mm is part of the syntax. All fields after the year are optional. The default values for MM and DD are both 01; all other numerical fields default to zero values. A plus sign (+) as the value of the O field signifies that local time is later than UT, a minus sign (-) that local time is earlier than UT, and the letter Z that local time is equal to UT. If no UT information is specified, the relationship of the specified time to UT is considered to be unknown. Whether or not the time zone is known, the rest of the date should be specified in local time.

For example, December 23, 2004, at 7:52 PM, U.S. Pacific Standard Time, is represented by the string:

D:200412231952-08'00'

## CreateTextField

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateTextField(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    const char* Name, // Name of the text field
    SI32 Parent,      // Parent group field if any or -1
    LBOOL Multiline,  // Enable multi line text output
    SI32 MaxLen,       // Maximum length of the text or 0
    double PosX,       // X-Coordinate of the text field
    double PosY,       // Y-Coordinate of the text field
    double Width,      // Width of the text field
    double Height)     // Height of the text field
```

This function creates a text field. A text field is a box or space in which the user can enter text from the keyboard. The text is may be restricted to a single line or may be allowed to span multiple lines, depending whether the parameter *Multiline* is true or false. The parameter *MaxLen* specifies if the length of the text should be restricted; if zero, the length is not restricted.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the text field. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

Like all form fields, the width and height is measured incl. the line width of the border. The size of normal vector graphics is measured without the line width; this must be taken into account when calculating the width or height of a form field.

The line width of the border is taken from the current graphics state (see [SetLineWidth\(\)](#)), it should be either 0, 1, 2, or 3 units (no border, thin, medium, or thick). The border style can be changed with the functions [SetBorderStyle\(\)](#) or [SetFieldBorderStyle\(\)](#).

A text field requires a font. If no font is active the standard font Helvetica is used. Note that when the form must be compatible to Acrobat 4, the used fonts by the form fields must be restricted to the 14 standard fonts (see [SetFont\(\)](#) for further information). Acrobat 4 does not support interactive forms that use other fonts than the 14 standard fonts. Such a form requires Acrobat 5 or higher.

However, it is possible to use an arbitrary font as long as the code page 1252 is used.

The alignment of the text can be changed with the function [SetFieldTextAlign\(\)](#).

The font size of a text field is set to "auto" if the flag `ffMultiline` is not set and if either the font size of the active font is set to 1.0 unit or if no font is active when the field is created.

A text field can be formatted and the allowed input values can be restricted to specific data formats. See [SetDateTimeFormat\(\)](#), [SetNumberFormat\(\)](#) for further information.

### Remarks:

Earlier versions of DynaPDF allowed the usage of arbitrary 8 bit code pages. Due to changes in Acrobat viewer applications it is no longer possible to use another code page than 1252. In addition,

it seems that Acrobat versions greater 6 do no longer support Type1 fonts in form fields, with exception of the 14 standard fonts.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the field handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

#### ***Specific flags supported by text fields:***

Flag	Description
<code>ffMultiline</code>	If set, the field may contain multiple lines of text; if clear, the field's text is restricted to a single line.
<code>ffPassword</code>	If set, the field is intended for entering a secure password that should not be echoed visibly to the screen. Characters typed from the keyboard should instead be echoed in some unreadable form, such as asterisks or bullet characters. To protect password confidentiality, the value of the text field is not stored in the PDF file if this flag is set.
<code>ffFileSelect</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, the text entered in the field represents the pathname of a file whose contents are to be submitted as the value of the field.
<code>ffDoNotSpellCheck</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, the text entered to the field will not be spell-checked.
<code>ffDoNotScroll</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, the field will not scroll (horizontally for single-line fields, vertically for multiple-line fields) to accommodate more text than will fit within its annotation rectangle. Once the field is full, no further text will be accepted.
<code>ffComb</code>	(PDF 1.5) Meaningful only if <code>MaxLen</code> is set and if the flags <code>ffMultiline</code> , <code>ffPassword</code> , and <code>ffFileSelect</code> flags are clear. If set, the field is automatically divided up into as many equally spaced positions, or combs, as the value of <code>MaxLen</code> , and the text is laid out into those combs.

## CreateURIAction

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfCreateURIAction(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* URL)  // URL of a website
```

A uniform resource identifier (URI) is a string that identifies (resolves to) a resource on the internet - typically a file that is the destination of a hyperlink, although it can also resolve to a query or other entity. A URI action causes a URI to be resolved. The parameter URL must be 7-bit ASCII string.

### Remarks:

Actions must be added to a PDF object with [AddActionToObj\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the action handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## DecryptPDF

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDecryptPDF(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* FileName, // PDF file to be decrypted  
    TPwdType PwdType, // Password type used to decrypt the file  
    const char* Password) // Password
```

This function decrypts a PDF file by using the supplied password and password type. If the file is not encrypted the parameter password is ignored. The file is recompressed during import; this reduces the file size in most cases.

By using specific import flags (see [SetImportFlags\(\)](#)), it is also possible to remove unwanted objects from the PDF file, such as annotations, form fields, bookmarks and so on.

If the input file contains a compressed object structure, it will be converted back to a normal PDF file.

The input PDF file will be replaced with the new one if no error occurred during import. If an error occurred the file is left unchanged.

If document information entries are set before calling the function, existing entries in the PDF file will be replaced with the new values, see the example below.

### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The Unicode version is supported by Windows NT systems only. The file path is converted back to ANSI if the Unicode version is used under Linux or UNIX.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 0. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code. The returned error code can be used to determine whether a wrong password was supplied to the function. This can be done with the macro `PDF_WRONG_PWD()`. This macro returns true if the password was wrong. In Delphi, the C macro is defined as a normal function.

**Example (C++):**

```
#include "dynapdf.h"
using namespace DynaPDF;
// First we declare an error callback function.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMsg, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMsg);
    return 0;
}
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(NULL, PDFError);
    // The document info entries are changed by the function if set
    pdfSetDocInfo(diSubject, "Decrypt PDF files");
    pdfSetDocInfo(diCreator, "C++ example test project");
    pdfSetDocInfo(diTitle, "Changed title");

    pdfDecryptPDF("c:/test.pdf", ptOpen, NULL);
    return 0;
}
```

**DeleteAcroForm**

Syntax:

```
void pdfDeleteAcroForm(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function deletes a maybe existing Interactive Form. If the document contains no interactive form the function does nothing.



## ***DeleteActionFromObj***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDeleteActionFromObj(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TObjType ObjType, // Object type  
    UI32 ActHandle,    // Action handle  
    UI32 ObjHandle)    // Object handle  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    otAction,  
    otAnnotation,  
    otBookmark,  
    otCatalog,  
    otField,  
    otPage,  
    otPageLink  
}TObjType;
```

This function deletes an action from a PDF object. If the object type is page, then use the page number as handle. If the handle of the action is not known, because the object was may be imported from an external PDF file, then use the function [DeleteActionFromObjEx\(\)](#) instead.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***DeleteActionFromObjEx***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDeleteActionFromObjEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TObjType ObjType, // Object type  
    UI32 ObjHandle,    // Object handle  
    UI32 ActIndex)     // Action index (see below)
```

This function can be used to delete an action from an object without using an action handle. The action handle is often not known because the object was may be imported from an external PDF file. In this case the actions of the object can be enumerated in a *while* statement and deleted by this function if necessary (see example below).

The maximum index is decremented each time an action was deleted.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

**Example (C):**

```
// In this example, all actions are removed from the object. The action
// index can be zero because the next action gets the position of the
// deleted one.
SI32 actCount, objHandle;
...
actCount = pdfGetObjActionCount(otBookmark, objHandle);
while (actCount > 0)
{
    pdfDeleteActionFormObjEx(objHandle, 0);
    --actCount;
}
// Now, we want to delete all actions except JavaScript actions from the
// object.
SI32 i, actCount, actType;
...
actCount = pdfGetObjActionCount(otPage, 2); // Page 2
for (i = 0; i < actCount; i++)
{
    // Check whether an error occurred
    if ((actType = pdfGetActionTypeEx(otPage, 2, i)) < 0) break;
    if (actType != (SI32)atJavaScript)
    {
        pdfDeleteActionFormObjEx(objHandle, i);
        break;
    }
}
```

## DeleteAnnotation

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDeleteAnnotation(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AHandle)      // Annotation handle
```

This function deletes an annotation. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid annotation handle.

Annotations are global objects. To delete specific annotations of a PDF file use the functions [GetAnnotCount\(\)](#), [GetAnnotType\(\)](#) and [DeleteAnnotation\(\)](#) (see example below).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Example (C++):

```
// This example deletes all web links contained in the document  
using namespace DynaPDF;  
...  
SI32 aType, annotCount = pdfGetAnnotCount();  
for (SI32 i = 0; i < annotCount; i++)  
{  
    if ((aType = pdfGetAnnotType(i)) < 0) break;  
    if ((TAnnotType)aType == atWebLink)  
        pdfDeleteAnnotation(i);  
}  
...
```

## DeleteBookmark

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDeleteBookmark(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 ABmk)        // Bookmark handle
```

This function deletes a bookmark. The parameter *ABmk* must be a valid bookmark handle. Please note that this function invalidates all bookmark handles which are numerically greater than *ABmk*. DynaPDF supports several functions to find or enumerate bookmarks. It is safe to delete a bookmark within a search run. See the following functions for further information:

- [GetBookmarkCount\(\)](#)
- [GetBookmark\(\)](#)
- [FindBookmark\(\)](#), [FindNextBookmark\(\)](#)

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the remaining number of bookmarks. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***DeleteEmbeddedFile***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfDeleteEmbeddedFile(  
    const void* IPDF,  
    UI32 Handle)
```

The function deletes an embedded file. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid embedded file handle. Such a handle is a simple array index. [GetEmbeddedFileCount\(\)](#) returns the remaining number of embedded files. If all embedded files should be deleted then delete the files from top to bottom by decrementing the loop variable. This is faster because it is not required to reorganize the array in which the files are stored in this case. All handles above the deleted file index become invalid after the file was deleted.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***DeleteField***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDeleteField(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField)      // Field handle
```

This function deletes an interactive form field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle.

If the field is a radio button or group field, the child fields used are also deleted. There is no need to delete each field separately.

A field is never physically deleted. All field handles are still valid after a field was deleted, but the "Used" flag of the field is set to false (see [GetField\(\)](#) for further information). If a field contained an action that was not used by another object then the action is also deleted.

Fields can also be deleted by using its name instead of the handle. See [DeleteFieldEx\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***DeleteFieldEx***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDeleteFieldEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* Name) // Full qualified field name
```

This function deletes an interactive form field by using its full qualified name, that is the name of any parent group field separated by a period (.) plus the field name.

**Remarks:**

Check boxes of a radio button have no name. It is not possible to delete such a check box by using this function, use [DeleteField\(\)](#) instead. However, the entire radio button can be deleted with this function.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## **DeleteJavaScripts**

Syntax:

```
void pdfDeleteJavaScripts(  
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer  
    LBOOL DelJavaScriptActions) // Delete Javascript Actions?
```

The function deletes all global Javascripts and optionally all Javascript Actions from the document.

## **DeletePage**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDeletePage(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 PageNum)     // Page number
```

This function deletes a page. The parameter *PageNum* must be the page number that should be deleted. The first page has the number 1, the second 2 and so on. A page is physically deleted by this function but no objects used by the page. All other pages and objects are still valid.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the remaining number of pages. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## **DeletePageLabels**

Syntax:

```
void pdfDeletePageLabels(  
    void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function deletes all page labels contained in the current open document, if any.

## **DeletePDF**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDeletePDF(  
    void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function deletes a PDF instance that was previously created with the function [NewPDF\(\)](#).

This function is automatically called in the wrapper classes for Visual Basic, Visual Basic .Net and Delphi.

### **DeleteSeparationInfo**

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfDeleteSeparationInfo(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    LBOOL AllPages)    // Delete the separation info of all pages?
```

The function deleted the separation of the current open page or of all pages if the parameter *AllPages* is set to true.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### **DeleteTemplate**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDeleteTemplate(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle)       // Template handle
```

This function deletes a template. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid template handle. A template is not physically deleted by this function, only the content stream is cleared. Templates can be references in other content stream so that it is quite complex to delete a template physically at runtime. However, this behaviour is maybe changed in a future version of DynaPDF.

Imported PDF pages are converted to templates by default. The handles of such templates are often not known, however, it is possibly to delete them by using the function [DeleteTemplateEx\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### **DeleteTemplateEx**

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDeleteTemplateEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Index)        // Index of the template inside the page's array
```

This function deletes a template by using an index instead of a template handle. The parameter *Index* represents an index into the array of templates used by the current open page. The number of templates used by a page is returned by the function [GetTemplCount\(\)](#).

It is not easy to identify a specific template, all templates used by a page can be deleted easily, but it is much more complex to delete a specific template if the page contains more than one.

However, if a template contains text, then the functions [EditTemplate\(\)](#) and [GetPageText\(\)](#) can be used to identify a template, but in most cases it is easier to delete a template and check the file with Acrobat or Reader to determine whether it was the right one.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

#### Example (C++):

```
// In this example, we have a document with 10 imported pages.
// The entire document was imported with the function ImportPDFFile()
// so that all interactive features are also imported. However, the
// third page contains invalid contents that should be removed. The
// imported pages were converted to templates during import (it is also
// possible to import pages without conversion). The template handles
// of the imported pages are not known so that we use the indexes instead.
...
pdfEditPage(3);
SI32 tmplCount = pdfGetTemplCount();
for (SI32 i = 0; i < tmplCount; i++)
    pdfDeleteTemplateEx(i);
pdfEndPage();
...
```

### DeleteXFAForm

Syntax:

```
void pdfDeleteXFAForm(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function deletes a maybe existing XFA form (XML based form) if any. This can be useful if the PDF file contains a hybrid form because DynaPDF does not allow editing form fields as long as an XFA form is present.

### DrawArc

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDrawArc(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of the midpoint of the arc
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of the midpoint of the arc
    double Radius,     // Radius
    double StartAngle, // Start angle
    double EndAngle)  // End angle
```

This function draws an arc by using a start and end angle. A full circle is drawn if the start and end angles are the same. The path is not closed, stroked or filled so that it will be invisible as long it is not stroked, filled or both (see [ClosePath\(\)](#), [StokePath\(\)](#) for further information).

The current point is connected with the start point of the arc and then updated to end point of the arc, see example below.

The draw direction can be changed with the function `SetDrawDirection()`. The start and end angles are always measured counter clockwise independent of the drawing direction.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

**Example (Borland Delphi):**

```
implementation
uses dynapdf;
procedure TForm1.Button1Click(Sender: TObject);
var pdf: TPDF;
begin
    pdf := nil;
    try
        pdf := TPDF.Create;
        // Declaration of the error callback (see SetOnErrorProc())
        pdf.SetOnErrorProc(nil, @ErrProc);

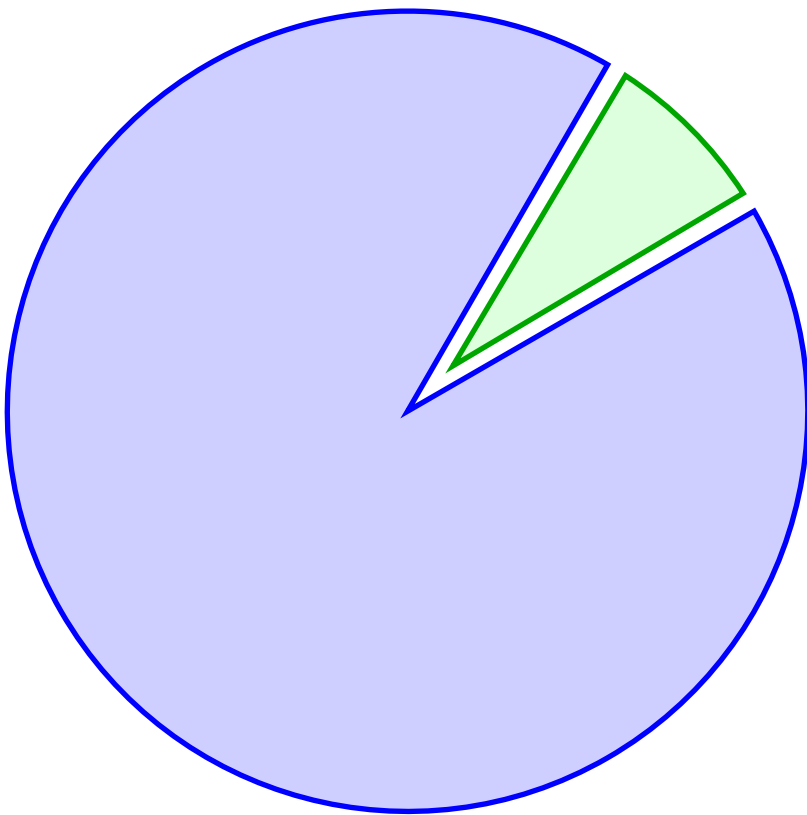
        pdf.CreateNewPDFA('c:\dout.pdf');

        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diAuthor, 'Jens Boschulte');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diCreator, 'Delphi sample project');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diSubject, 'How to draw an arc segment');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diTitle, 'Vector graphics');

        pdf.Append;
        pdf.SetStrokeColor(clBlue);
        pdf.SetFillColor($00FFCFCF);
        pdf.SetDrawDirection(ddClockwise);
        pdf.MoveTo(250, 500);
        pdf.DrawArc(250, 500, 50, 30, 60);
        pdf.ClosePath(fmFillStroke);
        pdf.SetDrawDirection(ddCounterClockwise);
        pdf.SetStrokeColor($0000A600);
        pdf.SetFillColor($00DDFFDD);
        pdf.MoveTo(255, 505);
        pdf.DrawArc(250, 500, 50, 33, 57);
        pdf.ClosePath(fmFillStroke);
        pdf.EndPage;
        pdf.CloseFile;
    except
        on E: Exception do MessageDlg(E.Message, mtError, [mbOK], 0);
    end;
    if pdf <> nil then pdf.Free;
end;
```



Output:



## DrawArcEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDrawArcEx(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of the midpoint of the arc
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of the midpoint of the arc
    double Width,        // Width of the bounding rectangle
    double Height,       // Height of the bounding rectangle
    double StartAngle,   // Start angle
    double EndAngle)     // End angle
```

This function draws an elliptical arc. A full ellipse is drawn if the start and end angles are the same. The path is not closed, stroked or filled so that it will be invisible as long it is not stroked, filled or both (see [ClosePath\(\)](#), [StokePath\(\)](#) for further information).

The current point is connected with the start point of the ellipse and then updated to the end point of the ellipse.

The draw direction can be changed with the function [SetDrawDirection\(\)](#). The start and end angles are always measured counter clockwise independent of the drawing direction.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## DrawChord

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDrawChord(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of the midpoint of the chord
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of the midpoint of the chord
    double Width,        // Width of the bounding rectangle
    double Height,       // Height of the bounding rectangle
    double StartAngle,   // Start angle
    double EndAngle,     // End angle
    TPathFillMode FillMode) // Fill mode
```

This function draws an elliptical chord (a region bounded by the intersection of an ellipse and a line segment, called a secant).

The draw direction can be changed with the function [SetDrawDirection\(\)](#). The start and end angles are always measured counter clockwise independent of the drawing direction.

A chord is a closed path that can be filled, stroked or both. It is also possible to draw a chord invisible to apply the filling rules nonzero winding number or even-odd. The filling rules are described under [ClipPath\(\)](#). The parameter *FillMode* is ignored if the chord is drawn inside a clipping path. The fill modes are described under [ClosePath\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***DrawCircle***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfDrawCircle(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,                // X-Coordinate of the midpoint of the circle  
    double PosY,                // X-Coordinate of the midpoint of the circle  
    double Radius,              // Radius  
    TPathFillMode FillMode) // Fill mode
```

This function draws a circle. The draw direction can be changed with the function [SetDrawDirection\(\)](#).

A circle is a closed path that can be filled, stroked or both. It is also possible to draw a circle invisible to apply the filling rules nonzero winding number or even-odd. The filling rules are described under [ClipPath\(\)](#). The parameter *FillMode* is ignored if the circle is drawn inside a clipping path. The fill modes are described under [ClosePath\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## DrawPie

Syntax:

```
SI32 PDF_CALL pdfDrawPie(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    double PosX,               // X-Coordinate of the midpoint of the pie
    double PosY,               // Y-Coordinate of the midpoint of the pie
    double Width,              // Width of the bounding rectangle
    double Height,             // Height of the bounding rectangle
    double StartAngle,         // Start angle
    double EndAngle,           // End angle
    TPathFillMode FillMode) // Fill mode
```

The function draws a pie-shaped wedge bounded by the intersection of an ellipse and two angles.

The draw direction can be changed with the function [SetDrawDirection\(\)](#). The start and end angles are always measured counter clockwise independent of the drawing direction.

A pie is a closed path that can be filled, stroked or both. It is also possible to draw a pie invisible to apply the filling rules nonzero winding number or even-odd. The filling rules are described under [ClipPath\(\)](#). The parameter *FillMode* is ignored if the pie is drawn inside a clipping path. The fill modes are described under [ClosePath\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Example (Borland Delphi):

#### implementation

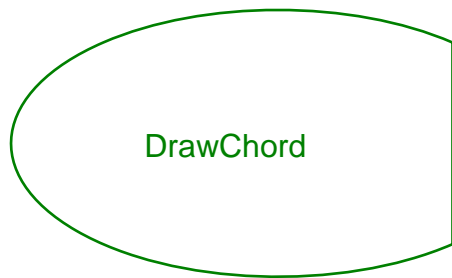
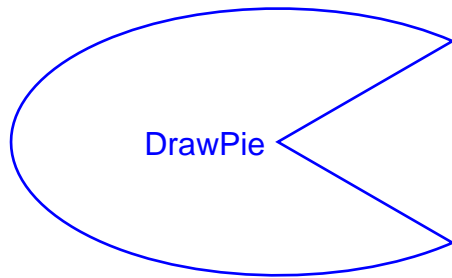
```
uses DynaPDF;
// First we declare an error callback function
function ErrProc(const Data: Pointer; ErrCode: Integer; const ErrMessage:
PChar; ErrType: Integer): Integer; stdcall;
var s: String;
begin
    s := Format('%s'#13'Abort processing?', [ErrMessage]);
    if MessageDlg(s, mtError, [mbYes, mbNo], 0) = mrYes then
        Result := -1 // break processing
    else
        Result := 0; // try to continue
end;
```

```
procedure TForm1.Button1Click(Sender: TObject);
var pdf: TPDF;
begin
    pdf := nil;
    try
        pdf := TPDF.Create;
        pdf.SetOnErrorProc(nil, @ErrProc);
        pdf.CreateNewPDFa('c:\dout.pdf');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diAuthor, 'Jens Boschulte');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diCreator, 'Delphi sample project');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diSubject, 'Simple shapes');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diTitle, 'Vector graphics');

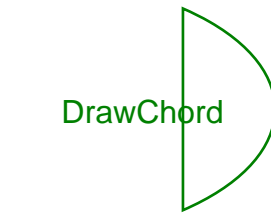
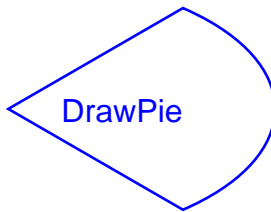
        pdf.Append;
        pdf.SetPageCoords(pcTopDown);
        pdf.SetFontA('Arial', fsNone, 12, true, cp1252);
        // default draw direction counter clockwise
        pdf.SetColors(clRed);
        pdf.WriteTextA(380, 143, 'DrawArcEx');
        pdf.DrawArcEx(360, 150, 200, 100, 330, 30);
        pdf.StrokePath;
        pdf.SetColors(clBlue);
        pdf.WriteTextA(380, 253, 'DrawPie');
        pdf.DrawPie(360, 260, 200, 100, 330, 30, fmStroke);
        pdf.SetColors(clGreen);
        pdf.WriteTextA(380, 363, 'DrawChord');
        pdf.DrawChord(360, 370, 200, 100, 330, 30, fmStroke);
        // new draw direction
        pdf.SetDrawDirection(ddClockWise);
        pdf.SetColors(clRed);
        pdf.WriteTextA(200, 143, 'DrawArcEx');
        pdf.DrawArcEx(250, 150, 200, 100, 330, 30);
        pdf.StrokePath;
        pdf.SetColors(clBlue);
        pdf.WriteTextA(200, 253, 'DrawPie');
        pdf.DrawPie(250, 260, 200, 100, 330, 30, fmStroke);
        pdf.SetColors(clGreen);
        pdf.WriteTextA(200, 363, 'DrawChord');
        pdf.DrawChord(250, 370, 200, 100, 330, 30, fmStroke);
        pdf.EndPage;
        pdf.CloseFile;
    except
        on E: Exception do MessageDlg(E.Message, mtError, [mbOK], 0);
    end;
    if pdf <> nil then pdf.Free;
end;
```

Output:

**Draw direction counter clockwise**



**Draw direction clockwise**



## ***EditPage***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfEditPage(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 PageNum)      // Page number
```

This function prepares a page for editing. If the page does exist (*PageNum* is greater than the number of pages in the document), new pages are appended until the number of pages is equal *PageNum*. An open page must be closed with [EndPage\(\)](#) after the required changes are made.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***EditTemplate***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfEditTemplate(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Index)        // Array index of the template inside the page
```

This function prepares a template for editing. The parameter *Index* is the array index inside the page that contains the template. To get the number of templates used by a page call the function [GetTemplCount\(\)](#).

The current graphics state is saved entirely before the template will be opened. This graphics state is restored when the template is closed with [EndTemplate\(\)](#). That means, the current font, line width, fill color and so on are all restored to its values before entering the template.

[EndTemplate\(\)](#) requires an open page that must be opened with [EditPage\(\)](#) beforehand. After the changes are made the template must be closed with [EndTemplate\(\)](#).

### **Remarks:**

[EditTemplate\(\)](#) is mostly used to extract text strings from imported PDF files because imported pages are converted to templates by default. See [GetPagetext\(\)](#) for an example application.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***EditTemplate2***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfEditTemplate2(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle)       // Template handle
```

Templates can be edited multiple times in the same way as normal PDF pages. Therefore, the function prepares the template for editing. The current graphics state is saved entirely before the template will be opened and restored when the template will be closed with [EndTemplate\(\)](#). The current font, line width, fill color and so on are all restored to its values before entering the template.

The function depends not on an open page.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***Ellipse***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfEllipse(  
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,                 // X-Coordinate of the bounding rectangle  
    double PosY,                 // Y-Coordinate of the bounding rectangle  
    double Width,                // Width of the bounding rectangle  
    double Height,               // Height of the bounding rectangle  
    TPathFillMode FillMode) // Fill mode
```

This function draws an ellipse.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the bounding rectangle. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

The draw direction can be changed with the function [SetDrawDirection\(\)](#).

An ellipse is a closed path that can be filled, stroked or both. It is also possible to draw an ellipse invisible to apply the filling rules nonzero winding number or even-odd. The filling rules are described under [ClipPath\(\)](#). The parameter *FillMode* is ignored if the ellipse is drawn inside a clipping path. The fill modes are described under [ClosePath\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.



## ***EncryptPDF***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfEncryptPDF(  
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer  
    const char* FileName,       // File to encrypt  
    const char* OpenPwd,        // Open password (user password)  
    const char* OwnerPwd,       // Owner password  
    TKeyLen KeyLen,             // Key length for RC4 encryption  
    TRestrictions Restrict) // Restrictions
```

This function encrypts a PDF file. The input file must be unencrypted or no open password must be set and the property [SetUseExactPwd\(\)](#) must be set to false. The file is recompressed during import; this reduces the file size in most cases.

By using specific import flags (see [SetImportFlags\(\)](#)), it is also possible to remove unwanted objects from the PDF file, such as annotations, form fields, bookmarks and so on.

If the input file contains a compressed object structure, it will be converted back to a normal PDF file.

The input PDF file will be replaced by the new one if no error occurred during import. If an error occurred the file is left unchanged.

It is not possible to change the file except removing specific objects by using specific import flags. However, the document info entries are changed to new values if they were set beforehand. See [SetDocInfo\(\)](#) for further information.

### **Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The Unicode version is supported by Windows NT systems only. The file path is converted back to ANSI if the Unicode version is used under Linux or UNIX.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 0. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code. The returned error code can be used to determine whether a password is required to open the file. Pass the return value to the macro [PDF\\_WRONG\\_PWD\(\)](#). If the return value of the macro is true, use the function [ReEncryptPDF\(\)](#) instead.

## ***EndContinueText (obsolete)***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfEndContinueText(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

It is no longer required to finish a text block with this function. The function returns always true.

## ***EndLayer***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfEndLayer(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function closes a layer that was opened by [BeginLayer\(\)](#).

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***EndPage***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfEndPage(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function closes an open page that was opened by [Append\(\)](#) or [EditPage\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***EndPattern***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfEndPattern(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function closes an open pattern that was opened by [BeginPattern\(\)](#) or [CreateStdPattern\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***EndTemplate***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfEndTemplate(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function closes an open template that was opened by [BeginTemplate\(\)](#), [EditTemplate\(\)](#) or [EditTemplate2\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***EnumDocFonts***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfEnumDocFonts(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    const void* Data,           // User defined pointer
    TEnumFontProc2* EnumProc) // Callback function see below

typedef SI32 PDF_CALL TEnumFontProc2(
    const void* Data,           // User defined pointer
    const void* PDFFont,       // Pointer to font object for use with GetFont()
    TFontType Type,            // PDF Font type
    const char* BaseFont,       // Base font (PostScript or Family Name)
    const char* FontName,       // Font name taken from the font descriptor
    LBOOL Embedded,            // If true, the font is embedded
    LBOOL IsFormFont,          // If true, the font is reserved for form fields
    UI32 Flags)                 // Various font properties

#define PDF_CALL __stdcall // Windows only, otherwise empty

typedef enum
{
    ftMMType1 = 0, // Multiple Master
    ftTrueType = 1, // TrueType font
    ftType0 = 2, // CID font (multi-byte font)
    ftType1 = 3, // Type1 font
    ftType3 = 4 // Type3 font (constructed with PDF objects)
} TFontType;
```

The function enumerates all fonts used in the current PDF document. If the parameter *EnumProc* is set to NULL the function returns the number of fonts used in the document. The callback function provides the most important properties of the font as well as a pointer to the font object that can be used to get further information about the font with [GetFont\(\)](#). The return value of the callback must be 0, every other value breaks processing.

The parameters *BaseFont* and *FontName* represent the original values stored in the font object or font descriptor. Both strings are provided because many PDF drivers set incorrect or different values to the font name and base font.

However, font names returned by the callback function begin often with a prefix like "AOMDMK+". Such a prefix is used to mark a font as a subset. In general, the parameter *BaseFont* contains either the family name or the postscript name of the font.

The real font name can be extracted with the function [fntBuildFamilyNameAndStyle\(\)](#). The function inspects the font names and other variables of the font object and font descriptor to determine what kind of name is provided and to extract the font style.

The parameter *Flags* provides further information about the font characteristics:

Bit	Value	Description
1	1	Fixed pitch.
2	2	Serif font.
3	4	Symbolic font.
4	8	Script. Glyphs resemble cursive handwriting.
6	32	Non-symbolic font. Either bit 3 or bit 6 is set at time.
7	64	Italic. Glyphs have dominant vertical strokes that are slanted.
19	262144	Force Bold. Indication for a bold font. (Ignore this flag for non Type1 fonts)

DynaPDF supports a special import flag to enable high performance access on the font objects of PDF files. This makes it possible to enumerate the fonts of a large number of PDF files as fast as possible.

The usage is as follows (C++):

```
...
pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, NULL);
pdfSetImportFlags(ifEnumFonts); // Import font objects only
pdfOpenImportFile(pdf, "c:/test.pdf", ptOpen, NULL);
pdfImportPDFFile(pdf, 1, 1.0, 1.0);
// Now we can enumerate all PDF fonts
pdfEnumDocFonts(pdf, NULL, pdf_EnumDocFontProc);
// Only the font objects were imported. Delete the PDF file now.
pdfFreePDF(pdf);
...
```

The import flag `ifEnumFonts` causes that only font objects are imported. Anything else that can be discarded is not imported. After the fonts were enumerated the PDF file must be deleted. Do not try to write the file on disk, this would cause errors because certain required PDF objects are not available. To speed up processing make sure that the PDF instance is not always deleted and newly created when a PDF file is processed. This is especially important if a large number of PDF files must be processed. One PDF instance can be used on an arbitrary number of PDF files; there is no need to delete it every time a PDF file was processed.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is number of fonts enumerated. If the parameter `EnumProc` is set to `NULL` the function returns the number of used fonts in the document.

## EnumHostFonts

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfEnumHostFonts(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    const void* Data,          // User defined pointer
    TEnumFontProc* EnumProc) // Callback function see below

typedef SI32 PDF_CALL TEnumFontProc(
    const void* Data,          // User defined pointer
    const UI16* FamilyName,    // Family name of the font (Unicode)
    const char* PostScriptName, // PostScript name of the font
    SI32 Style);               // Font style (bold, italic, bold+italic)

#define PDF_CALL __stdcall    // Windows only, otherwise empty
```

This function enumerates all fonts found in the search directories by passing the font names to a callback function. If the parameter *EnumProc* is NULL the function returns the number of available font files which are found in the search directories. This is may be not the number of font files which are returned by the callback function!

Fewer fonts can be enumerated if the search directories contain invalid font files. However, it is also possible that more fonts are enumerated as font files were found!

This can happen if TrueType Collection font files are stored in the search directories. Such fonts contain more than one font in a font file, so that the number of fonts can be greater than the number of font files. If the font names should be stored in an array you must make sure that memory can be reallocated if the number of fonts exceeds the number of font files.

The font names passed to the callback function are null-terminated and sorted in ascending order by PostScript name. Note that the family name is in Unicode format. The user defined pointer *Data* is passed unchanged to the callback function. If this pointer is not required set it to NULL.

Enumeration stops immediately if the return value of the callback function is nonzero. This function depends not on an open PDF file.

### Remarks:

The function does not display error messages or warnings. The internal exception handling of DynaPDF is not used by this function.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of available font files or zero if no font files were found. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code. At time of publication negative error codes are not returned.

### Example (Borland Delphi):

```
// In this example we have a combo box on the form that should be
// filled with the available fonts when the form is created.
// The font names passed to the callback function are already sorted in
```

```

// ascending order by PostScript name, so that we do not need to sort
// them again.

// Note that the font selection mode must be set to smPostScriptName
// if you want to use postscript names for font selection.
function EnumFontProc(const Data: Pointer; const FamilyName: PWideChar;
const PostScriptName: PChar; Style: TFStyle): Integer; stdcall;
var cb: TComboBox;
begin
    // Data holds the pointer of our combo box cbFonts.
    cb := Data;
    cb.AddItem(PostScriptName, nil);
    Result := 0; // Any other return value break enumeration!
end;
procedure TForm1.FormCreate(Sender: TObject);
begin
    // First, we create an instance of the class TPDF. This is our main
    // instance used until the form will be destroyed. cbFonts is the
    // combo box on our form that should be used for font selection.
    PDF := TPDF.Create;
    PDF.EnumHostHonts(cbFonts, @EnumFontProc);
end;
procedure TForm1.FormDestroy(Sender: TObject);
begin
    PDF.Free;
end;

```

## ***EnumHostFontsEx***

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfEnumHostFontsEx(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    const void* Data,           // User defined pointer
    TEnumFontProcEx* EnumProc) // Callback function see below

typedef SI32 PDF_CALL TEnumFontProcEx(
    const void* Data,           // User defined pointer
    const UI16* FamilyName,     // Family name
    const char* PostScriptName, // PostScript name
    SI32 Style,                 // Font Style
    TFontBaseType BaseType,     // Base font type
    LBOOL Embeddable,           // If true, embedding is allowed
    const char* FilePath)       // File path to font file

#define PDF_CALL __stdcall // Windows only, otherwise empty

```

The function enumerates all fonts found in the search directories in the same way as `EnumHostFonts()`. However, the callback function provides further information about the font such as the font type, file path, and whether the font is embeddable. Especially the embedding flag is very

important because [SetFont\(\)](#) can fail if font embedding is not possible due to licensing restrictions of the font. See [EnumHostFonts\(\)](#) for further details about the usage of the function.

**Remarks:**

The function does not display error messages or warnings. The internal exception handling of DynaPDF is not used by this function.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of available font files or zero if no font files were found. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code. At time of publication negative error codes are not returned.

## ***ExchangeBookmarks***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfExchangeBookmarks(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 Bmk1,         // Handle of first bookmark  
    SI32 Bmk2)         // Handle of second bookmark
```

This function exchanges two bookmarks.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ExchangePages***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfExchangePages(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 First,        // First page number  
    UI32 Second)       // Second page number
```

The function exchanges two pages. Page links, bookmarks, go-to actions, and named destinations are changed so that the destination page still refers to the correct page. Note that page numbering starts at 1. It is also possible to move a page to another position in the file (see [MovePage\(\)](#) for further information).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***FileAttachAnnot***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFileAttachAnnot(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    double PosX,               // X-Coordinate for the annotation icon
    double PosY,               // Y-Coordinate for the annotation icon
    TFileAttachIcon Icon,      // Annotation icon
    const char* Author,        // Optional author
    const char* Desc,          // Optional description
    const char* AFile,         // File to be embedded (required)
    LBOOL Compress)            // If true, the embedded file is compressed

typedef enum
{
    faiGraph,
    faiPaperClip,
    faiPushPin,
    faiTag
}TFileAttachIcon;
```

The function inserts a file attachment annotation on the current open page. If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left point of the annotation icon. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left point. The width and height of the icon is not changeable.

The embedded file is compressed if the parameter *Compress* is set to true. Otherwise it is left uncompressed. It is not always useful to compress embedded files especially if the file is already compressed, e.g. Zip files or already compressed image formats require no further compression. In the worst case the compressed files becomes larger. However, text files and most document formats should be compressed to reduce the file size.

File attachment annotations are supported since PDF 1.3 (Acrobat 4). File attachments are supported since PDF 1.4 (Acrobat 5). The difference between both attachment types is that a file attachment annotation is used as a comment that has usually a visible icon on a page, e.g. to provide additional information about a specific object.

File attachments are used to add arbitrary files to the PDF file, e.g. job options, the original document from which the file was created, or any other file (see also [AttachFile\(\)](#)).

Note that Acrobat 7 or higher restricts access to executable files and compressed file formats such as zip, or rar. If such files must be embedded then change the file extension, e.g. to .dat or .bin. The user must then change the extension again when extracting the file.

### **Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Note that Unicode file paths are not supported under Linux and UNIX. The file path is converted back to ANSI on these



operating systems before trying to open the file. This conversion can cause problems if the file name contains special characters which are not convertible to ANSI.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***FileLink***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFileLink(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,               // X-Coordinate of bounding rectangle  
    double PosY,               // Y-Coordinate of bounding rectangle  
    double Width,              // Width of bounding rectangle  
    double Height,             // Height of bounding rectangle  
    const char* AFilePath) // File path
```

The function creates a file link annotation. A file link annotation opens a file by using the application that is connected with the file extension (MIME type). Viewer applications may display a warning before the file is opened or if the file is an executable.

The file path can be defined as relative or absolute path; however, relative paths are preferred.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the bounding rectangle. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

The border of the link annotation is drawn by using the current line width, stroke color and line dash pattern. If the link should appear without a border set the line width to zero beforehand.

When clicking on a link annotation the rectangle is highlighted, that is a simple visual effect. Several highlight modes are supported, see [SetLinkHighlightMode\(\)](#) for further information.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Because Adobe's Acrobat does not support Unicode paths, the file path is converted back to ANSI by the function.

[FileLink\(\)](#) does not check whether the file path is valid.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is a annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***FindBookmark***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFindBookmark(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    SI32 DestPage,        // Destination page used by the bookmark or -1  
    const char* Title)    // The title of the bookmark or a part of it
```

This function searches for a bookmark in the document outline tree. If the parameter *DestPage* is greater zero the function returns the handle of the first bookmark that uses this page number as destination page.

If *DestPage* is smaller 1 the function returns the handle of the first bookmark that contains the substring *Title* in the bookmark title. The substring *Title* is compared non-case-sensitive.

The parameter *Title* can be NULL, the function searches for bookmarks with no title in this case. To search for the next bookmark with the same search parameters call [FindNextBookmark\(\)](#).

It is safe to delete a found bookmark with [DeleteBookmark\(\)](#) and continue the search run with [FindNextBookmark\(\)](#).

### **Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible variant. Bookmarks can be stored in Unicode or ANSI string format. The function searches always by using both encodings, so that a bookmark can also be found if the ANSI variant of [FindBookmark\(\)](#) was used, but the bookmark was stored in Unicode or vice versa.

### **Return values:**

If a bookmark can be found the return value is the bookmark handle, a value greater or equal zero. If no bookmark can be found the return value is **-1**. If an error occurred, the return value is a negative error code.

## ***FindField***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFindField(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* Name) // Fully qualified field name
```

This function searches for an interactive form field by using the fully qualified field name. The fully qualified field name is constructed from the partial field name of the field and all of its ancestors. For a field with no parent group field, the partial and fully qualified names are the same. For a field that is the child of another field, the fully qualified name is formed by appending the child field's partial name to the parent's fully qualified name, separated by a period, e.g. "Company.Employee.Name".

### **Remarks:**

Field names are case-sensitive; the name must be specified exactly. This function is available in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Both versions do not depend on the string format in which the field name is defined, e.g. Unicode or ANSI string.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the field handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code, a value smaller -1, or -1 if the field cannot be found.

## ***FindLinkAnnot***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFindLinkAnnot(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* URL)  // URL or file path
```

This function searches for a file link or web link annotation. The parameter *URL* must be the URL of a web link annotation or the file path of a file link annotation, exactly defined in a case sensitive manner.

### **Return values:**

If the annotation can be found the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***FindNextBookmark***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFindNextBookmark(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function searches for the next bookmark with the same search parameters which were used by a previous call of [FindBookmark\(\)](#). [FindBookmark\(\)](#) must be called beforehand.

It is safe to delete a found bookmark with [DeleteBookmark\(\)](#) and to continue the search run.

### **Return values:**

If a bookmark can be found the return value is the bookmark handle, a value greater or equal zero. If no bookmark can be found the return value is **-1**. This function cannot fail; other return values are impossible.

## ***FinishSignature***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfFinishSignature(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    const void* PKCS7Obj,     // PKCS#7 object buffer
    UI32 Length)              // Length of the PKCS#7 object in bytes
```

The function writes the PKCS#7 signature object to the PDF file and writes finally the finish PDF file to disk and frees all used resources if the file was not created in memory. If the file was created in memory [GetBuffer\(\)](#) can now be called to obtain the finish PDF buffer.

[CloseAndSignFileExt\(\)](#) must be called prior this function can be called.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***FlattenAnnots***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFlattenAnnots(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TAnnotFlattenFlags Flags) // See below

typedef UI32 TAnnotFlattenFlags;
#define affNone          0x00000000 // Printable annotations
#define affUseViewState  0x00000001 // Visible annotations
#define affMarkupAnnots  0x00000002 // Markup annotations only
```

The function draws all annotations according to the used flags on the corresponding pages and deletes the annotations when finish. The flatten flags can be combined. The flag `affMarkupAnnots` causes that non-markup annotations will be left intact (all kind of link, sound, and file attach annotations).

The function flattens only annotations which contain an appearance stream. The function does not create missing appearances on demand.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of annotations which are still in memory. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***FlattenForm***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFlattenForm(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function draws all form fields on the corresponding pages and deletes the form fields, incl. corresponding JavaScripts and JavaScript actions. The resulting PDF pages look after flattening as if the form were printed.

Note that this function does not support XFA forms. If the form is a hybrid form, the PDF form fields will be flattened. A maybe existing XFA form will be deleted but not flattened.

Fields, which are invisible for printing, due to an absent print flag, or if the hidden flag was set, are excluded from flattening. These fields are deleted without drawing them on the page.

This function is especially useful if a large amount of Interactive Forms (which are already filled out by the user) should be prepared for printing, or if the forms should be archived without allowing further changes. Flattened forms require less disk space and can be printed faster.

**Remarks:**

Interactive Forms which are created by Adobe's Designer are not fully supported by DynaPDF. Note also that DynaPDF does not support XFA Forms.

A few third party libraries do not properly restore the graphics state after transforming the coordinate system. This makes it impossible to draw the fields onto the correct position inside an imported page. Import the page(s) in this case without setting the import flag `ifImportAsPage` (see [SetImportFlags\(\)](#) for further information).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***FlushPageContent***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFlushPageContent(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    struct TPDFStack* Stack) // Operation stack
```

The function replaces the content stream of a page or template that was changed with the function [ReplacePageText\(\)](#) or [ReplacePageTextEx\(\)](#) beforehand.

The function must be called after all changes are made. See [GetPageText\(\)](#) for an example application.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***FreeImageBuffer***

Syntax:

```
void pdfFreeImageBuffer(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function frees the buffer of a memory image that was created with the function [CreateImage\(\)](#).

## ***FreePDF***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFreePDF(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function frees all used resources with exception of the font and external CMap cache. The font and external CMap caches will be only freed when unloading the DLL or deleting the current PDF instance to improve processing speed. However, the font cache can be also be freed manually with the function [ClearHostFonts\(\)](#).

There is normally no need to free the used resources by DynaPDF manually except for memory PDF files. When creating PDF files in memory the internal resources are not freed automatically after [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [CloseFileEx\(\)](#) was called. After the PDF buffer was retrieved by [GetBuffer\(\)](#) call [FreePDF\(\)](#) to free all internal used resources.

[FreePDF\(\)](#) can be safely called at any time so that a PDF file can be deleted if necessary.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0. This function can normally not fail; a return value of zero indicates that an unknown fatal error occurred.

## FreeTextAnnot

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFreeTextAnnot(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of the bounding rectangle
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of the bounding rectangle
    double Width,        // Width of the bounding rectangle
    double Height,       // Height of the bounding rectangle
    const char* Author,   // Author of the annotation (can be NULL)
    const char* AText,    // The visible text of the annotation
    TTextAlign Align)    // The text alignment see below

typedef enum
{
    taLeft,
    taCenter,
    taRight,
    taJustify
}TTextAlign;
```

This function creates a Free Text annotation. The text of a Free Text annotation appears directly on screen such as normal text of a page. However, Free Text annotations are used to add comments. Comments can be excluded from printing if necessary (see [SetAnnotFlags\(\)](#) for further information) and the contents of a Free Text annotation can be edited in Adobe's Acrobat.

The text of the annotation is printed into the bounding box by applying a formatting algorithm so that the text appears left aligned, right aligned, centered, or justified. Justified text is not directly supported by Adobe's Acrobat. However, the annotation appears correctly on screen but the alignment is set to left aligned text if the text will be changed in Acrobat.

The border of the annotation is drawn by using the current line width, stroke color and line dash pattern. If the annotation should appear without a border set the line width to zero beforehand.

The border appears completely inside the bounding box of the annotation. This must be considered because normal vector graphics such as rectangles, ellipses and so on are measured without the line width. For instance, the real width of a rectangle is the width plus the line width.

A Free Text annotation requires a font. If no font is set beforehand Helvetica is used. The largest font size that can be used in Free Text annotations is 12 units. If the active font uses a larger font size then it will be changed to 12 units.

### Text positioning issues:

Acrobat 7 or higher use a very unusual way to place text into a Free Text annotation. While the baseline of text is very well defined in practically all typographics systems, Acrobat uses a dynamic position depending on the height of the largest character in the first line. The baseline is placed at the annotation's height - border width - cap height as long as the first line contains no character with an accent (e.g. Ä, Ö, Ü, À, È, Ê, Ñ). Because the cap height is not large enough for accented characters

Acrobat adjusts the position of the first line if necessary. The text position depends on the contents of the first text line.

DynaPDF places the text at the annotation's height - border width - font size. This makes it possible to change the contents of a Free Text annotation without changing its position. However, if the annotation will be edited with Adobe's Acrobat the text position will slightly change.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible variant.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***FreeUniBuf***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfFreeUniBuf(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function frees the internal buffer used by Unicode conversion functions such as [ConvToUnicode\(\)](#), [ToUTF16\(\)](#) and so on. The conversion is automatically freed by all conversion functions before a new buffer is allocated. However, the buffer can be freed manually to reduce memory usage.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0. This function can normally not fail; a return value of 0 indicates that an unknown fatal error occurred.

## ***GetActionCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetActionCount(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of actions contained in a document. This value can be used to enumerate actions or to delete specific action types.

**Example:**

```
...  
SI32 actCount = pdfGetActionCount();  
for (i = 0; i < actCount; i++)  
{  
    if (pdfGetActionType(i) == (SI32)atJavaScript)  
        pdfDeleteAction(i);  
}  
...
```



## GetActionType

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetActionType(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 ActHandle)    // Action handle  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    atGoTo,           // Go-to action  
    atGoToR,          // Go-to remote action  
    atHide,           // Hide action  
    atImportData,     // Import data action  
    atJavaScript,     // JavaScript action  
    atLaunch,          // Launch action  
    atMovie,           // Movie action  
    atNamed,           // Named action  
    atRendition,       // Rendition action  
    atReset,           // Reset form action  
    atSetOCGState,     // Set OCG (optional content group) action  
    atSound,           // Sound action  
    atSubmit,          // Submit form action  
    atThread,          // Thread action  
    atTransition,      // Transition action  
    atURI              // URI action  
    atGoTo3DView,      // Go-to 3D view action  
    atGoToE            // Go-to embedded file action  
}TActionType;
```

The function returns the type of an annotation. The parameter *ActHandle* must be a valid action handle. To determine the used action types of a specific object use [GetActionTypeEx\(\)](#) instead.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the type of the annotation (make a type cast to *TActionType* to determine the action type). If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetActionTypeEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetActionTypeEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TObjType ObjType, // Object type  
    UI32 ObjHandle,    // Object handle  
    UI32 ActIndex)     // Action index  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    otAction,  
    otAnnotation,  
    otBookmark,  
    otCatalog,  
    otField,  
    otPage,  
    otPageLink  
}TObjType;
```

The function returns the action type of an action used by a specific PDF object. The parameter *ObjType* specifies the type of object that identifies the parameter *ObjHandle*. If the object type is a page use the page number as handle.

The parameter *ActIndex* is an index into the objects action array. Use the function [GetObjActionCount\(\)](#) to get the number of actions used by the object. This number can be used in a *for* statement to loop over the object actions. See [DeleteActionFormObj\(\)](#) for an example application.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the type of the annotation (make a type cast to TActionType to determine the action type). If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetActiveFont

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetActiveFont(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the handle of the active font or **-1** if no font is set.

## GetAllocBy

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetAllocBy(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the pre-allocated buffer size of page content streams in bytes. Memory allocation is slow, especially re-allocation of memory by using `realloc()`. Because of this all content streams are buffered by DynaPDF to avoid too much memory allocation calls. The property `AllocBy` defines the size of memory that is allocated each time when more memory must be allocated.

The processing speed depends heavily on memory allocation. The default size of pre-allocated memory for content streams is 16 KB. It can be set to a larger or smaller value if necessary to improve processing speed.

However, if too much memory is allocated at runtime, processing speed will be slower and an out of memory exception can occur. If the size is too small, processing speed is slower too because of the many memory allocation calls. In most cases, it is not required to change the property `AllocBy`.

## GetAnnot (obsolete)

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetAnnot (
    const void* IPDF)           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,                 // Annotation handle
    struct TPDFAnnotation ADDR Annot) // see below

struct TPDFAnnotation
{
    TAnnotType      Type;           // Annotation type
    LBOOL           Deleted;        // Is this annotation marked as deleted?
    struct TPDFRect BBox;           // Bounding box in bottom-up coordinates
    double          BorderWidth;    // Border width -> see comment below
    UI32            BorderColor;    // Border color -> see comment below
    TBorderStyle    BorderStyle;    // Border style
    UI32            BackColor;      // Background color -> see comment below
    UI32            Handle;         // Annotation handle
    char*           AuthorA;        // Annotation's author, ANSI format
    UI16*           AuthorW;        // Annotation's author, Unicode format
    char*           ContentA;       // Annotation's contents, ANSI format
    UI16*           ContentW;       // Annotation's contents, Unicode format
    char*           NameA;          // Annotation's name, ANSI format
    UI16*           NameW;          // Annotation's name, Unicode format
    char*           SubjectA;       // Annotation's subject, ANSI format
    UI16*           SubjectW;       // Annotation's subject, Unicode format
    UI32            PageNum;        // Page on which the annotation appears
    THighlightMode  HighlightMode;  // Visual effect
};
```

This function retrieves the most important properties of an annotation. This function is marked as obsolete and should no longer be used. Please use [GetAnnotEx\(\)](#) if possible.

All strings are pointers to the original string buffers or NULL if not set. The application must not change or free these values. Only one string can be set at time, either the ANSI string or Unicode string but not both. String values are always null-terminated.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameter *Annot* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0 and the parameter *Annot* is left unchanged.

### GetAnnotBBox

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetAnnotBBox(
    const void* IPDF)           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,                 // Annotation handle
    struct TPDFRect ADDR BBox) // see below

struct TPDFRect
{
    double Left;    // Lower x-coordinate
    double Bottom;  // Lower y-coordinate
    double Right;   // Upper x-coordinate
    double Top;     // Upper y-coordinate
};
```

This function retrieves the bounding box of an annotation measured in bottom-up coordinates. A bounding box is defined as rectangle giving the coordinates of a pair of diagonally opposite corners.

#### Remarks:

It is possible to change the bounding box of an annotation with the function [ChangeAnnotPos\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameter *BBox* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0 and the parameter *BBox* is left unchanged.

### GetAnnotCount

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetAnnotCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of annotations currently used in the document. Note: This value includes also annotations which were deleted by [DeleteAnnotation\(\)](#) because annotations are not physically deleted at runtime. This value can be used to loop over all annotations. Annotation handles are simple array indexes.

## GetAnnotEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetAnnotEx(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,                // Annotation handle
    struct TPDFAnnotEx ADDR Annot) // Structure to be filled

struct TPDFAnnotEx
{
    TAnnotType      Type;
    LBOOL           Deleted;
    struct TPDFRect BBox;
    float           BorderWidth;
    UI32            BorderColor;
    TBorderStyle    BorderStyle;
    UI32            BackColor;
    UI32            Handle;
    char*           AuthorA;
    UI16*           AuthorW;
    char*           ContentA;
    UI16*           ContentW;
    char*           NameA;
    UI16*           NameW;
    char*           SubjectA;
    UI16*           SubjectW;
    UI32            PageNum;
    THighlightMode  HighlightMode;
    // Page link annotations only
    SI32            DestPage;
    struct TPDFRect DestPos;
    TDestType       DestType;
    // File link or web link annotations
    char*           DestFile;
    // The Icon type depends on the annotation type. If the annotation type
    // is atText the Icon is of type TAnnotIcon. If the annotation type is
    // atFileAttach then it is of type TFileAttachIcon. If the annotation
    // type is atStamp the Icon is the stamp type (TRubberStamp).
    // For any other annotation type this value is not set (-1).
    SI32            Icon;
    char*           StampName;    // Set only, if Icon == rsUserDefined
    UI32            AnnotFlags;   // See TAnnotFlags for available flags
    char*           CreateDate;   // Optional Creation Date
    char*           ModDate;      // Optional Modification Date
    // Grouped is meaningful only if Parent != -1 and Type != atPopUp. If
    // true, the annotation is part of an annotation group. Properties like
    // Content, CreateDate, ModDate, BackColor, Subject, and Open must be
    // taken from the parent annotation.
    LBOOL           Grouped;
    LBOOL           Open;        // If the annotation has a PopUp annotation.
```

```

// The Parent annotation handle is set if the annotation is a PopUp
// Annotation or if this annotation represents a state of a base
// annotation. In this case, the annotation type is always atText and
// only the following members should be considered:
//     State          // The current state
//     StateModel      // Marked, Review, and so on
//     CreateDate      // Creation Date
//     ModDate         // Modification Date
//     Author          // The user who has set the state
//     Content         // Not displayed in Adobe's Acrobat...
//     Subject         // Not displayed in Adobe's Acrobat...
// The PopUp annotation of a text annotation which represent an
// Annotation State must be ignored.
SI32          Parent;
SI32          PopUp;          // Handle of the PopUp annotation if any
char*         State;         // The state of the annotation
char*         StateModel;    // State model (Marked, Review, ...)
// FileAttach annotations only. This is a handle of an embedded file.
// The embedded file can be accessed with GetEmbeddedFile().
SI32          EmbeddedFile;
char*         Subtype; // Set only, if Type == atUnknown
/* 27 reserved fields for future extensions follow*/
};

```

The function retrieves the most important properties of an annotation. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid annotation handle. All string values are pointers to the original string buffer. You must not modify or free such a string. Reserved fields must be initialized with NULL.

The function returns also deleted annotations because [DeleteAnnotation\(\)](#) does not physically delete an annotation.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameter *Annot* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0 and the parameter *Annot* is left unchanged.

## GetAnnotFlags

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfGetAnnotFlags(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef UI32 TAnnotFlags;
#define afNone          0x00000000 // No flags are set
#define afInvisible     0x00000001 // see below
#define afHidden        0x00000002 // see below
#define afPrint          0x00000004 // Annotation is printable
#define afNoZoom         0x00000008 // Do not zoom the annotation
#define afNoRotate       0x00000010 // Do not rotate the annotation
#define afNoView         0x00000020 // see below

```

```
#define afReadOnly 0x00000040 // Changes are not allowed
```

The function returns the default flags used for newly created annotations. The return value is a bit mask; the flags must be mask out with the bitwise and operator.

The flags are described in detail on the next page.

Flag	Description
afNone	No flags are set.
afInvisible	If set, do not display the annotation if it does not belong to one of the standard annotation types and no annotation handler is available.
afHidden	(PDF 1.2) If set, do not display or print the annotation or allow it to interact with the user, regardless of its annotation type or whether an annotation handler is available.
afPrint	(PDF 1.2) If set, print the annotation when the page is printed. If clear, never print the annotation, regardless of whether it is displayed on the screen. This can be useful, for example, for annotations representing interactive pushbuttons, which would serve no meaningful purpose on the printed page.
afNoZoom	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not scale the annotation's appearance to match the magnification of the page. The location of the annotation on the page (defined by the upper-left corner of its annotation rectangle) remains fixed, regardless of the page magnification.
afNoRotate	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not rotate the annotation's appearance to match the rotation of the page. The upper-left corner of the annotation rectangle remains in a fixed location on the page, regardless of the page rotation.
Flag	Description
afNoView	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not display the annotation on the screen or allow it to interact with the user. The annotation may be printed (depending on the setting of the afPrint flag), but should be considered hidden for purposes of on-screen display and user interaction.
afReadOnly	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not allow the annotation to interact with the user. The annotation may be displayed or printed (depending on the settings of the afNoView and afPrint flags), but should not respond to mouse clicks or change its appearance in response to mouse motions.

## ***GetAnnotLink***

Syntax:

```
char* pdfGetAnnotLink(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle)      // Annotation handle
```

This function returns the URL or file path of a file link annotation. The parameter *AHandle* must be a valid handle of a file link, page link, or web link annotation. The return value is a pointer to the original string value. The string must not be changed or freed within your application.

### **Remarks:**

Imported file link or web link annotations are mostly defined as page link annotation because it is impossible to distinguish between these types during import. Use the function [FindLinkAnnot\(\)](#) if you need to change an imported file link or web link annotation.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is a pointer to the original string value. If the function fails the return value is NULL.



## GetAnnotType

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetAnnotType(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle)      // Annotation handle

typedef enum
{
    atCaret,          // Caret annotation
    atCircle,          // Circle annotation
    atFileLink,        // File link annotation
    atFreeText,        // Free text annotation
    atHighlight,       // Highlight annotation
    atInk,             // Ink annotation
    atLine,            // Line annotation
    atPageLink,        // Page link annotation
    atPolygon,         // Polygon annotation
    atPolyLine,        // Polyline annotation
    atPopUp,           // Pop-up annotation (internal type)
    atSquare,          // Square annotation
    atSquiggly,        // Squiggly annotation
    atStamp,           // Rubber stamp annotation
    atStrikeOut,       // Strikeout annotation
    atText,            // Text annotation
    atUnderline,       // Underline annotation
    atWebLink,         // Web link annotation
    atWidget,          // This is an interactive form field (handled separately)
    at3D               // 3D annotation
    atSoundAnnot,      // Sound annotation
    atFileAttach,      // File Attach annotation
    atRedact,          // Redaction annotation
    atWatermark,       // Watermark annotation
    atUnknown          // No pre-defined annotation type
} TAnnotType;
```

The function returns the type of a specific annotation. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid annotation handle. If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation type (make a type cast to TAnnotType to determine the annotation type). If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetAscent

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetAscent(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the ascender of the active font. The ascender is a typographic value that specifies the maximum extent to which characters rise above the baseline.

If no font is set the return value is a negative error code.

## GetBBox

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetBBox(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    TPageBoundary Boundary,     // see below  
    struct TPDFRect ADDR BBox) // Bounding box  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    pbArtBox,    // Art box  
    pbBleedBox,  // Bleed box  
    pbCropBox,   // Crop box  
    pbTrimBox,   // Trim box  
    pbMediaBox   // Media box  
}TPageBoundary;  
  
struct TPDFRect  
{  
    double Left;  
    double Bottom;  
    double Right;  
    double Top;  
};
```

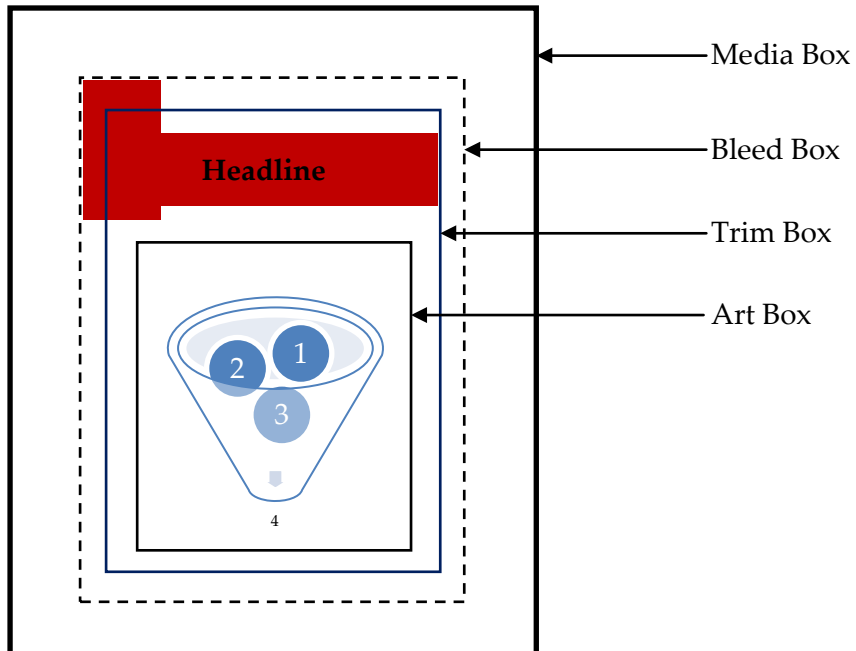
The function returns a bounding box of a PDF page. A PDF page may be prepared either for a finished medium, such as a sheet of paper, or as part of a prepress process in which the content of the page is placed on an intermediate medium, such as film or an imposed reproduction plate.

In the latter case, it is important to distinguish between the intermediate page and the finished page. The intermediate page may often include additional production-related content, such as bleeds or printer marks that falls outside the boundaries of the finished page. To handle such cases, a PDF page can define as many as five separate boundaries to control various aspects of the imaging process.

The function requires an open page because each page can use its own boundaries.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the structure *BBox* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***Bounding boxes:***

## GetBidiMode

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetBidiMode(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef enum
{
    bmLeftToRight = 0, // Apply the bidi algorithm in Left to Right layout
    bmRightToLeft = 1, // Apply the bidi algorithm in Right to Left layout
    bmNone        = 2  // Default -> do not apply the bidi algorithm
}TPDFBidiMode;
```

The function returns the current bidirectional mode. The possible return values are defined in the enum TPDFBidiMode. See also [SetBidiMode\(\)](#).

## GetBookmark

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetBookmark(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    SI32 AHandle,               // Bookmark handle
    struct TBookmark ADDR Bmk) // see below

struct TBookmark
{
    UI32 Color;                // Bookmark color (PDF 1.4)
    SI32 DestPage;             // Destination page
    struct TPDFRect DestPos;    // Destination position
    TDestType DestType;        // Destination type (see SetBookmarkDest())
    LBOOL Open;                // True if the bookmark appears open
    SI32 Parent;               // Parent bookmark if any or -1
    TFStyle Style;             // Text style (PDF 1.4)
    const void* Title;         // Pointer to text string
    UI32 TitleLen;             // Title length in characters
    LBOOL Unicode;             // If true, Title is a pointer to UI16*
};
```

This function returns the properties of a bookmark. The parameter *Bmk* is required it must not be NULL. The parameter *Title* is either a pointer to a [char\\*](#) or [UI16\\*](#) depending on whether *Unicode* is true or false. The parameter *TitleLen* is the length of the string excluding the null-terminator. The destination type are described under [SetBookmarkDest\(\)](#).

### Remarks:

The parameter *Title* is a pointer to the original string. This value must not be changed or freed.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the structure *Bmk* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***GetBookmarkCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetBookmarkCount(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of bookmarks defined in the document.

***GetBorderStyle***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetBorderStyle(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer  
typedef enum  
{  
    bsSolid      = 0, // Solid border  
    bsBevelled   = 1, // Bevelled border  
    bsInset      = 2, // Inset border  
    bsUnderline  = 3, // Underline only  
    bsDashed     = 4  // Dashed border  
}TBorderStyle;
```

The function returns the global border style which is used for newly created Interactive Form fields. To determine the style of a specific field use the function [GetFieldBorderStyle\(\)](#).

***GetBuffer***

Syntax:

```
char* pdfGetBuffer(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 ADDR BufSize) // Buffer length in bytes
```

The function returns a pointer to the buffer of a memory based PDF file. A memory based PDF file will be created if the parameter *OutFile* of the function [CreateNewPDF\(\)](#) is an empty string.

The parameter *BufSize* will be set to the size of the buffer in bytes. The returned pointer is a pointer to the original buffer; it must not be freed or changed. When the buffer is no longer needed call [FreePDF\(\)](#) to release the PDF file.

## ***GetCapHeight***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetCapHeight(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the cap height of the active font. The cap height is a typographic value that specifies the maximum height of a character in the active font without serifs.

## ***GetCharacterSpacing***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetCharacterSpacing(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the current character spacing.

Default value = 0

Value = 0	Character
Value = 10.0	C h a r a c t e r

## ***GetCheckBoxChar***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetChecBoxChar(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer  
typedef enum  
{  
    ccCheck,  
    ccCircle,  
    ccCross1,  
    ccCross2,  
    ccCross3,  
    ccCross4,  
    ccDiamond,  
    ccSquare,  
    ccStar  
}TCheckBoxChar;
```

The function returns the character used for newly created check boxes.

### ***Check box characters***

**ccCheck**

**ccCircle**

**ccCross1**

**ccCross2**

**ccCross3**

**ccCross4**

**ccDiamond**

**ccSquare**

**ccStar**

## GetCheckBoxCharEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetCheckBoxCharEx(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField)       // Handle of a check box
```

The function returns character index of the font ZapfDingbats that is used to display the on state of the check box. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetCheckBoxDefState

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetCheckBoxDefState(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField)       // Handle of a check box
```

This function returns the default state of a check box, that is 1 == checked or 0 == unchecked. The parameter *AField* must be a valid handle of a check box. The default state can differ from the current visible state of a check box. The default state is used when a form is reset with a [Reset Form Action](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is either 0 or 1 depending on the default state. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetCMap

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetCMap(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 Index,       // CMap's array index
    struct TPDFCMap* CMap) // Structure to be filled with properties
```

```
struct TPDFCMap
{
    UI32 StructSize; // Must be set to sizeof(TPDFCMap)!
    char* BaseCMap; // Required base CMap if any
    UI32 CIDCount; // 0 if not set
    char* CMapName; // The CMap name
    UI32 CMapType; // Should be one!
    float CMapVersion; // The CMap version
    char* DSCBaseCMap; // DSC comment
    float DSCCMapVersion; // DSC comment
    char* DSCResName; // DSC comment
    char* DSCTitle; // DSC comment
    char* FileNameA; // Either the ANSI or Unicode file name is set
    UI16* FileNameW; // Either the ANSI or Unicode file name is set
    char* FilePathA; // Either the ANSI or Unicode path is set
    UI16* FilePathW; // Either the ANSI or Unicode path is set
```



```

char* Ordering;           // Supported Character Collection
char* Registry;          // The registrant (this is usually Adobe)
UI32  Supplement;        // The Supplement number of this CMap
UI32  WritingMode;       // 0 == Horizontal, 1 == Vertical
};

```

The function returns the most important properties of an external CMap file. The search path of external CMaps can be set with [SetCMapDir\(\)](#). The function returns the number of available CMap files which can be accessed with [GetCMap\(\)](#). It is also possible to use the function [GetCMapCount\(\)](#) to determine the number of available CMap files.

The member *StructSize* of the structure *TPDFCMap* must be initialized with `sizeof(TPDFCMap)` before calling the function (C/C++, Delphi only). The structure size is used to identify different versions of the structure if extensions will be made in later releases.

The parameter *Index* represents an array index into the CMap cache. It can be in the range 0..NumCMaps -1.

The member *CMapName* of the structure *TPDFCMap* should be used to load a CMap into memory with [LoadCMap\(\)](#). Note that the function [LoadCMap\(\)](#) returns a CMap handle that cannot be used with this function.

Values which are taken from the DSC comment section contain the prefix DSC. DSC comments are optional and maybe not available when using CMap files from other vendors than Adobe.

Adobe provides for all character collections identity mappings; the member *DSCResName* is set to Identity in this case so that such CMaps can be easily identified.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## GetCMapCount

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfGetCMapCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

```

The function returns the number of available CMap files. This value can be used to access the header information of CMap files with [GetCMap\(\)](#).

## GetColorSpace

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetColorSpace(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef enum
{
    csDeviceRGB    = 0,
    csDeviceCMYK   = 1,
    csDeviceGray   = 2
}TPDFColorSpace;
```

The function returns the active color space.

## GetColorSpaceCount

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetColorSpaceCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of color space objects which are used in the current document. Color spaces can be accessed with [GetColorSpaceObj\(\)](#).

## GetColorSpaceObj

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetColorSpaceObj(
    const void* IPDF)           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,                // Color space handle
    struct TPDFColorSpaceObj* CS) // Structure to be filled

struct TPDFColorSpaceObj
{
    TExtColorSpace Type;
    TExtColorSpace Alternate; // Alternate or base space of Indexed or Pattern color spaces.
    void* IAlternate; // Optional alternate color space.
    BYTE* Buffer; // ICC profile or color table of an Indexed color space.
    UI32 BufSize; // Buffer length in bytes.
    float* BlackPoint; // CIE black point. If set, the array contains exactly 3 values.
    float* WhitePoint; // CIE white point. If set, the array contains exactly 3 values.
    float* Gamma; // If set, one value per component.
    float* Range; // min/max per component or .a .b components of a Lab color space.
    float* Matrix; // XYZ matrix. If set, the array contains exactly 9 values.
    UI32 NumInComponents; // Number of input components.
    UI32 NumOutComponents; // Number of output components.
    UI32 NumColors; // HiVal + 1. Indexed color space only.
    BYTE* Colorants[32]; // Colorant names (Separation, DeviceN, and NChannel only).
    UI32 ColorantsCount; // The number of colorants in the array.
    BYTE* Metadata; // Optional XMP metadata stream -> ICCBased only.
    UI32 MetadataSize; // Metadata length in bytes.
    void* IFunction; // Pointer to function object -> Special color spaces only
    void* IAttributes; // Optional attributes of DeviceN or NChannel color spaces
    void* IColorSpaceObj; // Pointer of the corresponding color space object
    void* Reserved01;
```

```

void*   Reserved02;
void*   Reserved03;
void*   Reserved04;
void*   Reserved05;
void*   Reserved06;
void*   Reserved07;
void*   Reserved08;
void*   Reserved09;
};

```

The function retrieves the most important properties of a color space. The parameter handle must be a valid handle of a color space. A color space handle is a simple array index. The number of color spaces is returned by the function [GetColorSpaceCount\(\)](#). Reserved fields of the structure `TPDFColorSpaceObj` must be initialized with `NULL`.

The alternate color space of special color spaces can be accessed with [GetColorSpaceObjEx\(\)](#). The attributes of a DeviceN or NChannel color space can be accessed with [GetDeviceNAttributes\(\)](#).

Note that the range of a Lab color space consists only of four values because the L component has a fixed range from 0 through 100.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***GetColorSpaceObjEx***

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfGetColorSpaceObjEx(
    const void* IColorSpace,      // Pointer of a color space object
    struct TPDFColorSpaceObj* CS) // Structure to be filled

```

The function retrieves the most important properties of a color space like [GetColorSpaceObj\(\)](#) but accepts a pointer of a color space object instead. See also [GetColorSpaceObj\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***GetCompressionFilter***

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfGetCompressionFilter(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef enum
{
    cfFlate = 0,
    cfJPEG  = 1,
    cfJP2K  = 7
} TCompressionFilter;

```

The function returns the standard compression filter for images. Note that 1 bit images are always compressed with Flate.

## ***GetCompressionLevel***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetCompressionLevel(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    clNone      = 0,  
    clDefault   = 1,  
    clFastest   = 2,  
    clMax       = 3  
}TCompressionLevel;
```

The function returns the active compression level. JPEG images are compressed with optimized Huffman tables if the compression level is clMax. This results in 5% to 10% better compression ratio without losing quality. The compression level can also be used to switch the compression mode to real or integer when using the JPEG2000 compression filter (see also [InsertImage\(\)](#)).

## ***GetContent***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetContent(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    char* ADDR BufSize) // Buffer
```

This function returns a pointer to the content stream of the currently open page or template. The parameter *BufSize* gets the buffer size in bytes; this parameter must not be set to NULL.

The page or template must be open with [EditPage\(\)](#) or [EditTemplate\(\)](#) beforehand.

When no further objects must be added it is possible to edit the buffer directly to improve processing speed. However, when changing the buffer size it is highly recommended to update the content stream with the function [SetContent\(\)](#).

When new contents must be added, copy the buffer into a new one and replace the content stream with [SetContent\(\)](#) when finished. Do not change a content stream when you don't know exactly what you are doing. If the content stream contains invalid operators after editing the PDF file will be damaged.

### **Remarks:**

The function returns a pointer to the original content buffer of the currently open page or template. DynaPDF is the owner of this buffer, it must not be freed in you application.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the buffer size in bytes. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

***GetDefBitsPerPixel***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetDefBitsPerPixel(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns default color depth in bits per pixel, which determines whether images should be down sampled. If the return value is 8 images are converted to 256 indexed color images.

At time of publication only two values are supported:

- **24 bit:** No conversion
- **8 bit:** Conversion to 256 indexed color image

Default value = 24

***GetDescent***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetDescent(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the descender of the active font. The descender is a typographic value that specifies the maximum extent to which characters in the active font descend below the baseline.

The descender is normally a negative value. However, it is always returned as a positive value to make the usage easier.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the typographic descender of the active font as positive double. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

***GetDeviceNAttributes***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetDeviceNAttributes(
    void* IAttributes, // Pointer to attribute object
    struct TDeviceNAttributes* Attributes) // Structure to be filled

struct TDeviceNAttributes
{
    void* IProcessColorSpace; // Pointer to process color space
    BYTE* ProcessColorants[8]; // Process colorant names
    UI32 ProcessColorantsCount; // Number of process colorants
    void* Separations[32]; // Pointers to separation color spaces
    UI32 SeparationsCount; // Number of separation color spaces
```

```

void* IMixingHints;           // Pointer to optional mixing hints.
void* Reserved01;
void* Reserved02;
void* Reserved03;
void* Reserved04;
};

```

The function retrieves attributes of a DeviceN or NChannel color space. The parameter *IAttributes* must be a valid pointer of an attribute object. This pointer is available in the structure TPDFColorSpaceObj. See GetColorSpaceObj() for further information.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## GetDocInfo

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfGetDocInfo(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TDocumentInfo DInfo,       // Document info entry
    UI16* ADDR Value)          // Value as Unicode string (null-terminated)

typedef enum
{
    diAuthor    = 0,
    diCreator   = 1,
    diKeywords  = 2,
    diProducer  = 3,
    diSubject   = 4,
    diTitle     = 5,
    diCompany   = 6
}TDocumentInfo;

```

The function retrieves a document info entry as Unicode string. The parameter *Value* holds a pointer to the original Unicode value, it must not be NULL. Do not change or free the value. GetDocInfo() returns only the values of predefined document info entries. All document info entries, incl. user defined keys can be accessed with GetDocInfoEx().

#### Return value:

The return value is the string length in characters. If the info entry is not set it returns 0 and *Value* is initialized to NULL.

## GetDocInfoCount

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetDocInfoCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of document info entries defined in the document. This function can be used in combination with [GetDocInfoEx\(\)](#) to enumerate the document info entries of the PDF file.

## GetDocInfoEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetDocInfoEx(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Index,                 // Entry index
    TDocumentInfo ADDR DInfo,   // Document info entry type
    char* ADDR Key,             // Only set for user defined keys
    char* ADDR Value,           // The value of the info entry
    LBOOL ADDR Unicode)         // Is value in Unicode format?
```

The function returns a document info entry. The parameter *Index* must be a valid index into the array of document info entries. The number of available entries is returned by [GetDocInfoCount\(\)](#). The parameter *Value* holds a pointer to the original value, it must not be NULL. Do not change or free the value. If the parameter *Unicode* is true, the value is a Unicode string. Make a type cast to UI16\* in this case. The parameter *Key* contains always an Ansi string if set (user defined keys only).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the string length in characters of the parameter *Value*. Depending on the string format make a type cast to UI16\*.

## GetDrawDirection

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetDrawDirection(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef enum
{
    ddCounterClockwise = 0,
    ddClockwise         = 1
} TDrawDirection;
```

The function returns the actual draw direction for closed vector graphics such as rectangles, circles, ellipses and so on.

## GetDynaPDFVersion

Syntax:

```
char* pdfGetDynaPDFVersion(void)
```

The function returns the version string of DynaPDF. The return value is a pointer to a null-terminated static string. The caller must not change or free the string.

## GetEmbeddedFile

Syntax:

```
BOOL pdfGetEmbeddedFile(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,                // Handle of an embedded file
    struct TPDFFileSpec* FileSpec, // See below
    LBOOL Decompress)           // If true, the file is decompressed

struct TPDFFileSpec
{
    char* Buffer;                // Buffer of an embedded file.
    UI32 BufSize;                // Buffer size in bytes.
    LBOOL Compressed;            // Should be false if Decompress was true.
    void* ColItem;               // Pointer to user defined collection item.
    char* Name;                  // Name of the file specification in the name tree.
    LBOOL NameUnicode;           // Is Name in Unicode format?
    char* FileName;              // File name as 7 bit ASCII string.
    LBOOL IsURL;                 // If true, FileName contains a URL.
    char* UF;                    // PDF 1.7. Same as FileName but Unicode is allowed.
    LBOOL UFUnicode;             // Is UF in Unicode format?
    char* Desc;                  // Description.
    LBOOL DescUnicode;           // Is Desc in Unicode format?
    UI32 FileSize;               // Decompressed stream size or zero if not known.
    char* MIMETYPE;              // MIME media type name (RFC 2046).
    char* CreateDate;            // Creation date as string.
    char* ModDate;               // Modification date as string.
    char* CheckSum;              // 16 byte MD5 digest if set.
};
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of an embedded file as well as a pointer to the file buffer. If the parameter *Decompress* is set to true the embedded file stream is decompressed. Set this parameter to true if you want to extract the embedded file. Otherwise the parameter should be set to false. DynaPDF decompresses Flate compressed embedded file streams only. However, other filters can occur but this is unusual. If the file buffer was successfully decompressed the member *Decompressed* of the structure *TPDFFileSpec* is set to true.

### Remarks:

The structure *TPDFFileSpec* contains pointers to the original values of the embedded file. These values must not be changed or freed in your application.



**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the structure TPDFFileSpec is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***GetEmbeddedFileCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetEmbeddedFileCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of embedded files available in the PDF file. Note that the number of embedded files from an external PDF file is available after the PDF file has been imported. Depending of the used import flags embedded files can be excluded from import. See [SetImportFlags\(\)](#), or [ImportPDFFile\(\)](#) for further information.

***GetEMFPatternDistance***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetEMFPatternDistance(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the distance between lines of standard patterns during EMF conversion.

Default value = 4.0

***GetErrorMessage***

Syntax:

```
char* pdfGetErrorMessage(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the last error message as pointer to a null-terminated static string, or NULL if no error occurred. Use this function if an error callback function can not be used (see also [SetOnErrorProc\(\)](#)).

***GetErrorMode***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetErrorMode(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef SI32 TErrMode;
#define emIgnoreAll      0x00000000 // default
#define emSyntaxError    0x00000001
#define emValueError     0x00000002
#define emWarning        0x00000004
#define emFileError      0x00000008
#define emFontError      0x00000010
#define emAllErrors      0x0000FFFF
```

```
#define emNoFuncNames 0x10000000 // Do not output function names
```

The function returns the current error mode. The return value is a bit mask, to check whether a specific flag is set use a bitwise *and* operator.

The special flag `emNoFuncNames` can be used to avoid the output of the function name in error messages. Error messages start normally always with the function name in which the error occurred. While this information is useful during development, it is often not useful in an end user application.

The meaning of the error mode flags is described in detail under [Customized Exception handling](#).

## ***GetField (obsolete)***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetField(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    UI32 AHandle,              // Field handle
    struct TPDFField* Field) // see below

struct TPDFField
{
    SI32    FieldType;        // Field type (see TFieldType)
    LBOOL   Deleted;          // If true, the field was deleted
    struct TPDFRect BBox;     // Bounding box
    SI32    Handle;           // Field handle
    char*   FieldName;        // Field name
    UI32    FieldNameLen;     // Field name length in characters
    UI32    BackCS;           // Color space of background / border color
    UI32    TextCS;           // Color space of text color
    UI32    BackColor;        // Background color
    UI32    BorderColor;      // Border color
    UI32    TextColor;        // Text color
    LBOOL   Checked;          // Only set if the field is a check box
    SI32    Parent;           // Parent field handle if any
    UI32    KidCount;         // Greater zero if the field has childs
    char*   Font;             // Used font by the field (PostScript name)
    double  FontSize;         // Font size
    void*   Value;            // Field value (char* or UI16*)
    LBOOL   UniVal;           // If True, Value is a Unicode string
    UI32    ValLen;           // String length in characters
    void*   ToolTip;          // Tool tip if any
    LBOOL   UniToolTip;       // If True, ToolTip is a Unicode string
    UI32    ToolTipLen;       // String length in characters
};
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of a field. This function is marked as obsolete, please use `GetFieldEx()` instead. The parameter *AHandle* must be a valid field handle. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid field handle. Field handles are simple array indexes into the field array of the

global AcroForm object. To enumerate all fields of a document execute the function in a loop from 0 though [GetFieldCount\(\)](#) -1.

Field colors are returned in the native color space of the field.

Since Acrobat 6 field names can be defined as ANSI or Unicode strings. To determine whether the string is in ANSI or Unicode format compare the string length with the member `FieldNameLen` as follows (C/C++):

```
TPDFField f;
if (!pdfGetField(pdf, aField, &f)) return 1;
if (f.FieldName && strlen(f.FieldName) != f.FieldNameLen)
{
    // We have an Unicode name!
    UI16* nameW = (UI16*)f.FieldName;
}
```

### Delphi:

The Delphi interface contains a special function to convert the returned ANSI string back to Unicode:

```
if not pdf.GetField(aField, f) then Exit;
if f.FielNameLen > 0 and StrLen(f.FieldName) <> f.FieldNameLen then begin
    // Use the function ToUnicode of the class TPDF to convert the string
    // back to Unicode
    nameW := pdf.ToUnicode(f.FieldName, f.FieldNameLen * 2);
end;
```

There is no need to check the string format in Visual Basic, VB .Net or C# because a maybe required conversion is automatically applied.

### Remarks:

It is also possible to enumerate the fields on a per page basis with [GetPageField\(\)](#). The export values of combo and list boxes can be accessed with [GetFieldExpValueEx\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value 1 and the structure *Field* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***GetFieldBackColor***

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfGetFieldBackColor(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the default background color used for newly created interactive form fields. Note that color values must be defined in the current color space. See [SetColorSpace\(\)](#) for further information.

If the return value is equal NO\_COLOR the background is transparent.

```
#define NO_COLOR 0xFFFFFFFF
Default value = NO_COLOR // Transparent
```

## ***GetFieldBorderColor***

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfGetFieldBorderColor(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the default border color used for newly created interactive form fields. Note that color values must be defined in the current color space. See [SetColorSpace\(\)](#) for further information.

If the return value is equal NO\_COLOR the border is transparent.

```
#define NO_COLOR 0xFFFFFFFF
Default value = 0 // Black
```

## ***GetFieldBorderStyle***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetBorderStyle(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField)      // Field handle
```

```
typedef enum
{
    bsSolid      = 0, // Solid border
    bsBevelled   = 1, // Bevelled border
    bsInset      = 2, // Inset border
    bsUnderline  = 3, // Underline only
    bsDashed     = 4  // Dashed border
}TBorderStyle;
```

The function returns the border style of a specific form field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle. It is also possible to change the style of a specific field, see [SetFieldBorderStyle\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the border style, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

***GetFieldBorderWidth***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetFieldBorderWidth(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField)       // Field handle
```

The function returns the line width of the border of a field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle. All field types are supported by this function.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the line width of the field's border (a value greater or equal zero). If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

***GetFieldChoiceValue***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetFieldChoiceValue(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,                // Field handle
    UI32 ValIndex,              // Value index
    struct TPDFChoiceValue* Value) // See below

struct TPDFChoiceValue
{
    UI32 StructSize; // Must be initialized with sizeof(TPDFChoiceValue)
    char* ExpValueA; // Export value (optional)
    UI16* ExpValueW; // Export value (optional)
    UI32 ExpValueLen; // Export value length in characters
    char* ValueA; // Value (can be an empty string or NULL)
    UI16* ValueW; // Value (can be an empty string or NULL)
    UI32 ValueLen; // Value length in characters
    LBOOL Selected; // If true, the value is selected
};
```

The function retrieves a choice value of a combo or list box. The parameter *AField* must be a valid handle of a combo or list box. *ValIndex* is the array index of the choice value to be retrieved. Call [GetFieldExpValCount\(\)](#) to determine how many choice values are available in the combo or list box.

Choice values can be inherited from a parent group field. This is the case if the field is part of a field group. See "[Interactive Forms/What is a Field Group?](#)" for further information.

The member *StructSize* of the structure *TPDFChoiceValue* must be initialized with `sizeof(TPDFChoiceValue)` before calling the function because this member is used to identify different versions of the structure. All other members can be left uninitialized.

The returned string values can be in Unicode or Ansi format but only one string format is set at time.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameter *Value* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***GetFieldColor***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldColor(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,               // Field handle
    TFieldColor ColorType,     // Which color should be returned?
    SI32 ADDR ColorSpace,     // Color space see TPDFColorSpace
    UI32 ADDR Color)          // Color value

typedef enum
{
    fcBackColor    = 0,
    fcBorderColor  = 1,
    fcTextColor    = 2
}TFieldColor;

typedef enum
{
    csDeviceRGB    = 0,
    csDeviceCMYK   = 1,
    csDeviceGray   = 2
}TPDFColorSpace;
```

The function retrieves a specific color of an interactive form field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle. The parameter *ColorSpace* defines the color space in which the color was defined.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameters *ColorSpace* and *Color* are filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***GetFieldCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of fields contained in the document.

## GetFieldEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetFieldEx(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,                // Field handle
    struct TPDFFieldEx* Field) // Structure to be filled

struct TPDFFieldEx
{
    UI32          StructSize;    // Must be set to sizeof(TPDFFieldEx)
    LBOOL         Deleted;      // Marked as deleted?
    struct TPDFRect BBox;        // Bounding box in bottom-up coordinates
    TFieldType     FieldType;    // Field type
    TFieldType     GroupType;    // See description
    UI32           Handle;       // Field handle
    UI32           BackColor;    // Background color
    TExtColorSpace BackColorSP;  // Color space of the background color
    UI32           BorderColor;  // Border color
    TExtColorSpace BorderColorSP; // Color space of the border color
    TBorderStyle   BorderStyle; // Border style
    float           BorderWidth; // Border width
    float           CharSpacing; // Text fields only
    LBOOL           Checked;     // Check boxes only
    UI32            CheckBoxChar; // ZapfDingbats character index
    TCheckBoxState  DefState;    // Check boxes only
    const char*     DefValueA;   // Optional default value
    const UI16*     DefValueW;   // Optional default value
    const void*     IEditFont;   // Pointer to default editing font
    const char*     EditFont;    // Postscript name of the editing font
    UI32            ExpValCount;  // Combo and list boxes only.
    const char*     ExpValueA;   // Check boxes only
    const UI16*     ExpValueW;   // Check boxes only
    TFieldFlags     FieldFlags;  // Field flags
    const void*     IFieldFont;  // Pointer to the field font.
    const char*     FieldFont;   // Postscript name of the font
    UI32            Reserved;    // Reserved field
    double          FontSize;    // Font size. 0.0 = auto font size
    const char*     FieldNameA;  // Field name (can be NULL)
    const UI16*     FieldNameW;  // Field name (can be NULL)
    THighlightMode  HighlightMode; // Highlight mode
    LBOOL           IsCalcField;  // If true, the OnCalc event is
                                // connected with a JavaScript action

    const char*     MapNameA;    // Optional unique mapping name
    const UI16*     MapNameW;    // Optional unique mapping name
    UI32            MaxLen;       // Text fields -> zero = not restricted
    const void**    Kids;         // Array of children -> GetFieldEx2()
    UI32            KidCount;     // Number of fields in the array
    void*           Parent;       // Pointer to parent field or NULL
    SI32            PageNum;      // Page on which the field is used or -1
}
```

```

SI32          Rotate;          // Rotation angle in degrees
TTextAlign    TextAlign;       // Text fields only
UI32          TextColor;       // Text color
TExtColorSpace TextColorSP;     // Color space of the field's text
float         TextScaling;      // Text fields only
const char*   ToolTipA;        // Optional tool tip
const UI16*   ToolTipW;        // Optional tool tip
const char*   UniqueNameA;     // Optional unique name (NM key)
const UI16*   UniqueNameW;     // Optional unique name (NM key)
const char*   ValueA;          // Field value
const UI16*   ValueW;          // Field value
float         WordSpacing;      // Text fields only

```

The function returns the most important properties of a field. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid field handle. Field handles are simple array indexes into the field array of the global AcroForm object. To enumerate all fields of a document execute the function in a loop from 0 though [GetFieldCount\(\)](#) -1.

The member *StructSize* must be initialized to `sizeof(TPDFFieldEx)` before calling the function. The structure size is used to identify the version of the structure. All other members can be left uninitialized.

The member *GroupType* specifies the subtype of a field group. A field group is a set of fields which have the same name and type. Such fields contain always the same value with exception of check boxes. If a field group consists of check boxes the export value is also taken into account.

However, a set of fields with identical names are internally stored in a group field. The group type specifies the field type of the group, e.g. `ftText` if text fields are stored in the group. A field group cannot contain different field types. An indication whether a field is a child of a field group is an empty field name because the field name is taken from the parent group field in this case. Radio buttons are identically organized, but the field type is `ftRadioBtn` in this case.

The page number is not set for group fields and radio button fields because these field types are not directly used on a page. The children of such fields appear in a page, but not the corresponding group fields. This behaviour must be taken into account when enumerating fields with [GetPageFieldEx\(\)](#). Because pages contain no references to group or radio button fields, these field types do never occur when enumerating fields on a per page basis. However, the parent handle is always set if a field is a child of a group field or radio button.

The background and border color can be set to the special value `NO_COLOR` which means the background or border is transparent. The color space is set to `DeviceRGB` in this case.

String values can be either in Unicode or Ansi format but only one format is set at time.

The parent field and the children of a field (member *Kids*) can be accessed with [GetFieldEx2\(\)](#).

#### Return vlues:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the structure *Field* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.



## GetFieldEx2

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetFieldEx2(  
    const void* IField,          // Pointer of a field object  
    struct TPDFFieldEx* Field) // Structure to be filled
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of a field. The parameter *IField* must be a valid pointer of a field object that was returned by [GetFieldEx\(\)](#). See also [GetFieldEx\(\)](#). This function can be used to access the parent field or children of a field (member *Kids*).

### Remarks:

The function assumes that the parameters *IField* and *Field* are valid. Passing a null pointer to the function causes an access violation!

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the structure *Field* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0. The only reason why this function can fail is if the member *StructSize* was initialized to an invalid value.

## GetFieldExpValCount

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldExpValCount(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField)      // Field handle
```

The function returns the number of values/export values which are defined for a field. Supported field types are combo boxes, list boxes, radio buttons, and check boxes. If the field is a radio button, the function returns the number of check boxes which are connected with the radio button. This number can be used to access the check boxes of the radio button either with [GetFieldExpValueEx\(\)](#) or [SetFieldExpValue\(\)](#). If the field is a check box, the return value is always 1 because check boxes do not support multiple export values. However, this function is normally used to determine the number of available choice values within a combo box or list box because only these field types support multiple choice values. See also [GetFieldExpValueEx\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of values/export values which are defined for a field. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetFieldExpValue

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldExpValue(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle
```

```
char* ADDR Value) // Field's export value
```

This function retrieves the export value(s) of a check box, list box, or combo box. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle of a check box, list box or combo box. The parameter *Value* holds a pointer to the original export value. The retrieved string value must not be changed or freed in your application.

The export value of a check box can be either "Off" if the check box is not selected or an arbitrary string when the check box is selected.

The export value of a combo box or list box can be NULL when no value is selected.

Since Acrobat 5, list boxes support multiple selected values. In this case the export values are delimited by a null-character (0); the last value is terminated with two null-characters. Note that the returned string length is the length without the last two null-terminators.

The export values of a list box that has three selected values are returned as follows:

```
"Value1\0Value2\0Value3\0\0"
```

The returned string length would be 20 characters in this example.

To extract the values proceed as follows:

```
...
SI32 valLen;
char* src, *value = NULL;
// aField must be a handle of list box in this example
valLen = pdfGetFieldExpValue(pdf, aField, value);
SI32 len = strlen(value); // Get the string length
if (valLen > 0 && len < valLen)
{
    src = value;
    do
    {
        fwrite(src, 1, len, f);
        fwrite("\r\n", 1, 2, f);
        src += (len + 1); // Skip over the null-terminator
        // This can not cause a buffer overrun because of the two
        // null-terminators at the end of the string.
        len = strlen(src);
    }while(len);
}
...
```

If the string length that was returned by the standard C function `strlen()` is shorter than the length that was returned by `GetFieldExpValue()`, multiple values are selected in the list box.

The code above writes the values to a file and adds an EOL after each value. This is just an example to see how the string can be parsed.

**Notice:**

The export values of check boxes and combo boxes are **not** terminated with two null-terminators. Try to parse the export value only if the field is a list box. The field type can be determined with the functions [GetFieldType\(\)](#), [GetFieldEx\(\)](#) or [GetPageFieldEx\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the string length excluding the last null-terminator(s). If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

### ***GetFieldExpValueEx***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldExpValueEx(  
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,           // Field handle  
    UI32 ValIndex,         // Value index  
    char* ADDR Value,      // Index value  
    char* ADDR ExpValue,   // Index export value  
    LBOOL ADDR Selected) // Is the value selected?
```

This function can be used to enumerate the choice values of a combo box, list box, or radio button. If the field is a check box, the parameter *ValIndex* will be ignored and the export value and selected state are returned. The parameters *Value* and *ExpValue* hold pointers to the original null-terminated string values. These values must not be changed or freed in your application. Note that either the parameter *Value* or *ExpValue* can be set to NULL depending on the field type.

To enumerate the choice values of a combo box or list box call [GetFieldExpValCount\(\)](#) to determine the number of available values. The parameter *ValIndex* can then be used to access each value / export value pair within the array.

Beginning with PDF 1.5 choice values of combo and list boxes can be in Unicode format. Because Unicode strings are not supported by this function the function [GetFieldChoiceValue\(\)](#) should be used to enumerate choice values of these field types.

**Example (C++):**

```
...
// aField is a handle of a combo box in this example; we want to
// deselect the currently selected value, that's all.
char* value, *expValue;
LBOOL selected;
SI32 valCount = pdfGetFieldExpValCount(pdf, aField);
for (SI32 i = 0; i < valCount; i++)
{
    if (pdfGetFieldExpValueEx(pdf, aField, i, value, expValue, selected))
    {
        if (selected)
        {
            pdfSetFieldExpValue(pdf, aField, i, value, expValue, false);
            break;
        }
    }
}
...
```

**Remarks:**

The parameters *Value*, *ExpValue*, and *Selected* require variables so that the values can be set by the function. To change a choice value of a combo box or list box call the function [SetFieldExpValue\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## GetFieldFlags

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldFlags(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField)       // Field handle

typedef UI32 TFieldFlags;
// Basic flags supported by all field types except group fields and
// radio button fields.
#define ffReadOnly      0x00000001
#define ffRequired      0x00000002
#define ffNoExport      0x00000004
#define ffInvisible     0x00000008
#define ffHidden        0x00000010
#define ffPrint         0x00000020
#define ffNoZoom        0x00000040
#define ffNoRotate      0x00000080
#define ffNoView        0x00000100
// Special flags supported by specific fields only
#define ffMultiline     0x00001000
#define ffPassword      0x00002000
#define ffNoToggleToOff 0x00004000
#define ffRadioIsUnion  0x00008000
#define ffCommitOnSelCh 0x00010000
#define ffEdit          0x00020000
#define ffSorted        0x00040000
#define ffFileSelect    0x00080000
#define ffMultiSelect   0x00100000
#define ffDoNotSpellCheck 0x00200000
#define ffDoNotScroll   0x00400000
#define ffComb          0x00800000
```

The function returns the flags of a specific interactive form field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid handle of an interactive form field.

Interactive form fields and annotations support the same basic set of field flags because both object types are in fact annotations. When we talk about form fields then we talk about an extended version of annotations because form fields are annotations. However, to make the handling easier, form fields and annotations are handled separately by DynaPDF.

The flags are described in detail on the next page.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is a number greater or equal zero representing the flags used by the field (this is a bit mask, to check whether a specific flag is set, use the bitwise and operator). If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

Flag	Description
<code>ffInvisible</code>	If set, do not display the field if it does not belong to one of the standard field types and no field handler is available.
<code>ffHidden</code>	(PDF 1.2) If set, do not display or print the field or allow it to interact with the user, regardless of its field type or whether an field handler is available.
<code>ffPrint</code>	(PDF 1.2) If set, print the field when the page is printed. If clear, never print the field, regardless of whether it is displayed on the screen. This can be useful, for example, for fields representing interactive pushbuttons, which would serve no meaningful purpose on the printed page.
<code>ffNoZoom</code>	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not scale the field's appearance to match the magnification of the page. The location of the field on the page (defined by the upper-left corner of its field rectangle) remains fixed, regardless of the page magnification.
<code>ffNoRotate</code>	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not rotate the field's appearance to match the rotation of the page. The upper-left corner of the field rectangle remains in a fixed location on the page, regardless of the page rotation.
<code>ffNoView</code>	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not display the field on the screen or allow it to interact with the user. The field may be printed (depending on the setting of the <code>ffPrint</code> flag), but should be considered hidden for purposes of on-screen display and user interaction.
<code>ffReadOnly</code>	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not allow the field to interact with the user. The field may be displayed or printed (depending on the settings of the <code>ffNoView</code> and <code>ffPrint</code> flags), but should not respond to mouse clicks or change its appearance in response to mouse motions.
<code>ffRequired</code>	If set, the field must have a value at the time it is exported by a submit-form action (see <a href="#">CreateSubmitAction()</a> for further information). Supported by all fields except group fields.

Flag	Description
<code>ffNoExport</code>	If set, the field must not be exported by a submit-form action (see <a href="#">CtreateSubmitAction()</a> for further information). Supported by all fields except group fields.
<code>ffMultiline</code>	If set, the field may contain multiple lines of text; if clear, the field's text is restricted to a single line. Supported by button fields, text fields.
<code>ffPassword</code>	If set, the field is intended for entering a secure password that should not be echoed visibly to the screen. Characters typed from the keyboard should instead be echoed in some unreadable form, such as asterisks or bullet characters. To protect password confidentiality, the value of the text field is not stored in the PDF file if this flag is set. Supported by text fields only.
<code>ffNoToggleToOff</code>	If set, exactly one radio button must be selected at all times; clicking the currently selected button has no effect. If clear, clicking the selected button deselects it, leaving no button selected. Supported by radio button fields only.
<code>ffEdit</code>	If set, the combo box includes an editable text box as well as a drop list; if clear, it includes only a drop list. Supported by combo boxes only.
<code>ffSorted</code>	If set, the field values are sorted in ascending order. Supported by combo boxes and list boxes only.
<code>ffFileSelect</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, the text entered in the field represents the pathname of a file whose contents are to be submitted as the value of the field. Supported by text fields only.
<code>ffMultiSelect</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, more than one of the field's option items may be selected simultaneously; if clear, no more than one item at a time may be selected. This flag is supported by list boxes only.
<code>ffDoNotSpellCheck</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, the text entered to the field will not be spell-checked. Supported by text fields, combo boxes. If the field type is combo box, this flag is meaningful only if the flag <code>ffEdit</code> is also set.

Flag	Description
<code>ffDoNotScroll</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, the field will not scroll (horizontally for single-line fields, vertically for multiple-line fields) to accommodate more text than will fit within its field rectangle. Once the field is full, no further text will be accepted. Supported by text fields only.
<code>ffComb</code>	(PDF 1.5) Meaningful only if <i>MaxLen</i> is set (see <a href="#">CreateTextField()</a> ) and if the <code>ffMultiline</code> , <code>ffPassword</code> , and <code>ffFileSelect</code> flags are clear. If set, the field is automatically divided up into as many equally spaced positions, or combs, as the value of <i>MaxLen</i> , and the text is laid out into those combs. Supported by text fields only.
<code>ffCommitOnSelCh</code>	(PDF 1.5) If set, the new value is committed as soon as a selection is made with the pointing device. This allows applications to perform an action once a selection is made, without requiring the user to exit the field. If clear, the new value is not committed until the user exits the field. Supported by combo boxes and list boxes only.
<code>ffRadioIsUnion</code>	(PDF 1.5) If set, a group of radio buttons within a radio button field that use the same export value for the on state will turn on and off in unison; that is if one is checked, they are all checked. This flag requires Acrobat 6 or higher. Supported by check boxes only.



## ***GetFieldGroupType***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldGroupType(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField)      // Field handle  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    ftButton      = 0,  
    ftCheckBox    = 1,  
    ftRadioBtn    = 2,  
    ftComboBox    = 3,  
    ftListBox     = 4,  
    ftText        = 5,  
    ftSignature   = 6,  
    ftGroup       = 7  
}TFieldType;
```

The function returns the base type of a field group. A field group is a set of fields which have all the same name. Such fields contain always the same value with exception of checkboxes. If a field group consists of checkboxes the export value is also taken into account.

However, a set of fields with identical names are internally stored in a group field. The group type specifies the field type of the group, e.g. ftText if text fields are stored in the group. A field group cannot contain different field types. An indication whether a field is a child of a field group is an empty field name because the field name is taken from the parent group field in this case. Radio buttons are identically organized, but the field type is ftRadioBtn in this case.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the field group type that is a value greater or equal zero. Make a type cast to TFieldType in this case. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetFieldHighlightMode

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldHighlightMode(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField)       // Field handle  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    hmNone      = 0,  
    hmInvert    = 1,  
    hmOutline   = 2,  
    hmPush      = 3,  
    hmPushUpd   = 4 // Update appearance stream on changes  
}THighlightMode;
```

The function returns the highlight mode of buttons, checkboxes, and signature fields. All other field types have no property highlight mode, the function returns hmNone in this case.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the highlight mode, a value greater or equal zero. Make a type cast to THighlightMode in this case. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetFieldIndex

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldIndex(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField)       // Field handle
```

The function returns the page index or tab order of the field. The index of newly created fields starts at 1000. This makes it easier to set a field to another position inside the tab order. The field index can be changed with the function [SetFieldIndex\(\)](#). Note that fields must be sorted by index with the function [SortFieldsByIndex\(\)](#). Fields must be sorted for each page separately.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the field index, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetFieldMapName

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldMapName(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,         // Field handle
    void* ADDR Value,    // Pointer to mapping name (null-terminated)
    LBOOL ADDR Unicode) // If true, Value is an Unicode string
```

The function retrieves the mapping name of a specific form field if set. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle. The parameter *Value* gets a pointer to the original string value, it must not be NULL. Do not change the or free the value. Depending on whether *Unicode* is true, *Value* is pointer to a null-terminated Unicode string.

The mapping name is used when interactive form field data is exported from the document.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the string length in characters and the parameters *Value* and *Unicode* are filled with values. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetFieldName

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldName(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,       // Field handle
    char* ADDR Name)  // Pointer to field name (null-terminated)
```

The function retrieves the name of a specific interactive form field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle. Note that the check boxes of a radio button field do not have a name.

The parameter *Name* gets a pointer to the original field name, it must not be NULL. The field name must not be changed or freed by the application.

Since Acrobat 6 field names can be defined as ANSI or Unicode strings. To determine whether the string is in ANSI or Unicode format compare the string length with the return value as follows (C/C++):

```
char* fieldName = NULL;
SI32 fieldNameLen = pdfGetFieldName(pdf, field, fieldName);
if (fieldNameLen > 0 strlen(fieldName) != fieldNameLen)
{
    // We have an Unicode name!
    UI16* nameW = (UI16*)fieldName;
}
```

**Delphi:**

```
nameLen := pdf.GetFieldName(myField, name);  
if nameLen > 0 then begin  
    if Length(name) <> nameLen then begin  
        // Use the function ToUnicode to convert the string back to Unicode  
        nameW := pdf.ToUnicode(name);  
        ...  
    end else begin  
        ...  
    end;  
end;
```

There is no need to check the string format in Visual Basic, VB .Net or C# because a maybe required conversion is automatically applied.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the string length of the name in characters excluding the null-terminator. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

***GetFieldOrientation*****Syntax:**

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldOrientation(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField)       // Field handle
```

The function returns the orientation of a field. The orientation is measured in degrees; it is always a multiple of 90 or 0.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the field orientation in degrees. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code, a value smaller -270.

## ***GetFieldTextAlign***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldTextAlign(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField)       // Text field or button field handle  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    taLeft,  
    taCenter,  
    taRight,  
    taJustify  
}TTextAlign;
```

The function returns the text alignment of a text field or button field.

### **Return values:**

If the function the function succeeds the return value is the text alignment used by the field. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetFieldTextColor***

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfGetFieldTextColor(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the default text color used for newly created fields.

## ***GetFieldToolTip***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldToolTip(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle  
    void* ADDR Value, // Pointer to value (null-terminated string)  
    LBOOL ADDR Unicode) // If true, Value is an Unicode string
```

The function retrieves a pointer to the tool tip string of a specific interactive form field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle. The parameter *Value* gets a pointer to the original string value, it must not be NULL. Do not change the or free the value. Depending on whether *Unicode* is true, Value is pointer to a null-terminated *Unicode* string.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameters *Value* and *Unicode* are filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***GetFieldType***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFieldType(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField)       // Field handle  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    ftButton      = 0,  
    ftCheckBox    = 1,  
    ftRadioBtn    = 2,  
    ftComboBox    = 3,  
    ftListBox     = 4,  
    ftText        = 5,  
    ftSignature   = 6,  
    ftGroup       = 7  
}TFieldType;
```

The function returns the field type. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the field type (make a typecast to TFieldType to determine the field type). If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetFillColor***

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfGetFillColor(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the current color used for fillings. The returned color value is not converted to the active color space. For example, if the color space will be changed with [SetColorSpace\(\)](#), the color value is still the same. Colors must be correctly defined in the current color space.

Default value = 0 (black)

## GetFont

Syntax:

```

LBOOL fntGetFont(
    const void* IFont,      // Pointer to font object
    struct TPDFFontObj* F) // Structure to be filled

struct TPDFFontObj
{
    float      Ascent;      // Ascent
    char*      BaseFont;    // PostScript Name or Family Name
    float      CapHeight;   // Cap height
    float      Descent;     // Descent
    UI16*      Encoding;    // Unicode mapping 0..255 if set
    UI32       FirstChar;   // First char
    UI32       Flags;       // Font flags -> font descriptor
    char*      FontFamily;  // Optional Font Family (Family Name)
    LBOOL      FontFamilyUni; // Is FontFamily in Unicode format?
    char*      FontName;    // Font name -> font descriptor
    TFontType  FontType;    // If ftType0 the font is a CID font.
    float      ItalicAngle; // Italic angle
    UI32       LastChar;    // Last char
    float      SpaceWidth;  // Space width in font units or default value.
    float*     Widths;      // Glyph widths 0..WidthsCount -1
    UI32       WidthsCount; // Number of widths in the array
    float      XHeight;     // x-height
    float      DefWidth;    // Default character widths
    char*      FontFile;    // File buffer (if imported & embedded) or file path.
    UI32       Length1;     // Clear text portion of a Type1 font, or full length.
    UI32       Length2;     // Encrypted portion of a Type1 font program.
    UI32       Length3;     // Length of the fixed-content portion or zero.
    TFontFileSubtype FontFileType; // See below;

typedef enum
{
    ftMMType1 = 0, // Multiple Master
    ftTrueType = 1, // TrueType font
    ftType0 = 2, // CID font
    ftType1 = 3, // Type1 font
    ftType3 = 4 // Type3 font
}TFontType;

typedef enum
{
    ffsType1C = 0, // CFF based Type1 font
    ffsCIDFontType0C = 1, // CFF based Type1 CID font
    ffsOpenType = 2, // TrueType based OpenType font
    ffsOpenTypeC = 3, // CFF based OpenType font
    ffsCIDFontType2 = 4, // TrueType based CID Font
    ffsNoSubtype = 9 // The font file is in the format of FontType
}TFontFileSubtype

```

The function returns the most important properties of a font. The parameter *IFont* must be a valid pointer to a font object. Such a pointer is returned by [GetPageText\(\)](#), [EnumDocFonts\(\)](#), or by the content parser (see [ParseContent\(\)](#)). The parameter *F* must be a valid pointer to a `TPDFFontObj` structure.

The font metrics such as Ascent, Descent, Widths, and so on are returned in font units. The values must be scaled to the given font size as follows:

```
double scale    = FontSize / 1000.0;
double ascent   = font.Ascent  * scale;
double descent  = font.Descent * scale;
```

The font's encoding consists of exactly 256 Unicode values if set. The encoding is not set if a CID font is selected.

The font flags describe certain properties of the font. The most important flags are the following:

- 0x1       // Fixed pitch font
- 0x2       // Serif style
- 0x4       // Symbol font
- 0x8       // Script style
- 0x20      // Non-symbolic font
- 0x40      // Italic style
- 0x40000   // Force Bold (Type1 fonts only)

The full set of available flags can be found in the PDF Reference.

The member `FontFile` provides a pointer to the font file buffer if the font is embedded and if it was imported from an external PDF file. In this case and if the font type is **not** `ftType1` the member `Length1` specifies the length of the font buffer.

Type1 fonts consist of three portions. `Length1` specifies the length of the clear text portion, `Length2` specifies the length of the eexec encrypted binary portion, and `Length3` specifies the length of the fixed content portion (512 zeros plus cleartomark). The latter portion is optional and mostly not set in PDF fonts. The buffer length is the sum of the three lengths.

If the font was loaded from the system the parameter `FontFile` contains the file path to the font file. The member `Length1` is set to zero in this case.

#### Remarks:

The function does not use the exception handling of DynaPDF. No error message is set if the function fails. However, the only possible error is out of memory if the parameters are valid.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.



## GetFontCount

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFontCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of fonts which are used in the document. The properties of a font can be accessed with [GetFontEx\(\)](#).

## GetFontEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetFontEx(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,              // Font handle
    struct TPDFFontObj* F) // Structure to be filled
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of a font like [GetFont\(\)](#) but accepts a font handle instead. A font handle is a simple array index. To enumerate all fonts of a document execute the function in a loop from zero to [GetFontCount\(\)](#) - 1. See also [GetFont\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## GetFontOrigin

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFontOrigin(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef enum
{
    orDownLeft = 0, // Baseline
    orTopLeft   = 1  // Upper left corner of the font's bounding box
}TOrigin;
```

The function returns the current font origin. The font origin is automatically set to orTopLeft or orDownLeft if the coordinate system will be changed. The origin can be changed at runtime with the function [SetFontOrigin\(\)](#).

Default value = orDownLeft

**Font origin:**

0|0

---

# The origin is top left

## GetFontSearchOrder

Syntax:

```
void pdfGetFontSearchOrder(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    TFontBaseType Order[4]) // Array to which the order can be copied
```

The function copies the current font search order to the parameter *Order*. Note that the function does not perform any validity check.

## GetFontSelMode

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFontSelMode(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    smFamilyName      = 0,  
    smPostScriptName = 1  
}TFontSelMode;
```

The function returns the current font selection mode. The font selection mode describes what kind of font name must be passed to [SetFont\(\)](#). Note that a font cannot be found if the wrong mode is set.

Default value = smFamilyName

## GetFontWeight

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetFontWeight(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the weight that will be used to emulate a bold font style. See [SetFontWeight\(\)](#) for further information.

### Font weights:

- 100 - 300 // Ultra light, Light
- 400 - 500 // Standard
- 600 - 1000 // Bold, Extra bold

## GetFTextHeight

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetFTextHeight(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TTextAlign Align, // Base text alignment  
    const char* AText) // Formatted text
```

```
typedef enum
{
    taLeft,
    taCenter,
    taRight,
    taJustify
}TTextAlign;
```

The function measures the height of a formatted text block. Before calling this function a font (see [SetFont\(\)](#)) and the output rectangle must be set with the function [SetTextRect\(\)](#). The parameter *Height* of [SetTextRect\(\)](#) should be set to **-1** to avoid page breaks. Otherwise the height of the first text block is returned that fits into the given height of the rectangle.

The parameter *AText* must contain the same text (incl. format tags if any) as which should be printed later with [WriteFText\(\)](#).

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the height of the formatted text block. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetFTextHeightEx***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetFTextHeightEx(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    double Width,        // Width of output rectangle
    TTextAlign Align,    // Base text alignment
    const char* AText)   // Formatted text
```

The function measures the height of a formatted text block. The function works in the same way as [GetFTextHeight\(\)](#) but the output rectangle must not be set manually beforehand.

The height of the output rectangle is set to **-1** to avoid a page break during measuring.

The parameter *AText* must contain the same text (incl. format tags if any) as which should be printed later with [WriteFText\(\)](#).

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the height of the formatted text block. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetGStateFlags

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfGetGStateFlags(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef UI32 TGStateFlags;
#define gfCompatible      0 // Default
#define gfRestorePageCoords 1 // see below
#define gfRealTopDownCoords 2 // see below
```

The function returns the current graphics state flags:

Flag	Description
gfCompatible	The graphics state is fully compatible to earlier versions of DynaPDF.
gfRestorePageCoords	If set, the current base coordinate system like bottom or top down is saved and restored with the graphics state.
gfRealTopDownCoords	This flag is reserved for future extensions. It is not implemented yet.

## GetIconColor

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfGetIconColor(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the icon color used for newly created text annotations. The color value must always be defined in DeviceRGB because normal annotations do not support the color spaces DeviceGray or DeviceCMYK. See also [SetIconColor\(\)](#).

## GetImageBuffer

Syntax:

```
char* pdfGetImageBuffer(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 ADDR BufSize) // Variable to get the buffer size in bytes
```

The function returns the buffer of an image that was created in memory by [CreateImage\(\)](#). The buffer size is set to the parameter *BufSize*. The returned pointer is a pointer to the original buffer; it must not be freed or changed. When the image buffer is no longer needed it must be released with the function [FreeImageBuffer\(\)](#).

## ***GetImageCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetImageCount(  
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer  
    const char* FileName) // Image file
```

The function returns the number of images contained in a multi-page image. At time of publication TIFF images are supported only.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of images inside the image file. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetImageCountEx***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetImageCountEx(  
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer  
    const void* Buffer,     // Pointer to file buffer  
    UI32 BufSize)          // Buffer size
```

The function determines the number of images in a multi-page image in the same way as [GetImageCount\(\)](#), but accepts a file buffer as input. At time of publication TIFF images are supported only.

## ***GetImageHeight***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetImageHeight(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AHandle)      // Image handle
```

The function returns the height of an image in pixel. This value is may be smaller than the height of the original image, if it was downscaled by DynaPDF.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the height of the image in pixel. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetImageWidth

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetImageWidth(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AHandle)      // Image handle
```

The function returns the width of an image in pixel. This value is may be smaller than the width of the original image, if it was downscaled by DynaPDF.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the width of the image in pixel. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetImportFlags

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfGetImportFlags(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef UI32 TImportFlags;
#define ifImportAll          0x0FFFFFFE // Default
#define ifContentOnly       0x00000000 // No interactive objects
#define ifNoContent         0x00000001 // Interactive objects only
#define ifImportAsPage      0x80000000 // No conversion to templates
#define ifCatalogAction     0x00000002 // Open action, Catalog actions
#define ifPageActions       0x00000004 // Page actions
#define ifBookmarks         0x00000008 // Bookmarks
#define ifArticles         0x00000010 // Articles
#define ifPageLabels        0x00000020 // Page labels
#define ifThumbs            0x00000040 // Thumbnails
#define ifTranspGroups      0x00000080 // Transparency groups
#define ifSeparationInfo    0x00000100 // Separation info
#define ifBoxColorInfo      0x00000200 // Box color info
#define ifStructureTree     0x00000400 // Structure tree (can be large)
#define ifTransition        0x00000800 // Presentation settings
#define ifSearchIndex       0x00001000 // External search index
#define ifJavaScript        0x00002000 // Global JavaScripts
#define ifJSActions         0x00004000 // JavaScript actions
#define ifDocInfo           0x00008000 // Document info entries
#define ifEmbeddedFiles     0x00200000 // File attachments
#define ifFileCollections   0x00400000 // File collections (PDF 1.7)
#define ifAllAnnots         0x00FF0000 // All annotations
    #define ifFreeText       0x00010000 // FreeText annotations
    #define ifTextAnnot      0x00020000 // Text annotations
    #define ifLink           0x00040000 // Link annotations
    #define ifStamp          0x00080000 // Stamp annotations
    #define if3DAnnot        0x00100000 // 3D annotations
    #define ifOtherAnnots    0x00800000 // Other annotations
#define ifFormFields        0x01000000 // Interactive form fields
```

```

/* ----- Special flags ----- */
#define ifPrepareForPDFA    0x10000000 // See description
#define ifEnumFonts        0x20000000 // Import fonts for EnumDocFonts()
#define ifAllPageObjects    0x40000000 // Import links with ImportPageEx()

```

The function returns the current import flags used to import PDF files. The flags are described in detail under [SetImportFlags\(\)](#).

## GetInBBox

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfGetInBBox(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    UI32 PageNum,              // Page number of external PDF file
    TPageBoundary Boundary,    // Type of bounding box to be returned
    struct TPDFRect ADDR BBox) // Bounding box

typedef enum
{
    pbArtBox,    // Art box
    pbBleedBox,  // Bleed box
    pbCropBox,   // Crop box
    pbTrimBox,   // Trim box
    pbMediaBox   // Media box
}TPageBoundary;

struct TPDFRect
{
    double Left;
    double Bottom;
    double Right;
    double Top;
};

```

The function retrieves a bounding box of an external PDF page. The external PDF file must be opened with the function [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImporBuffer\(\)](#) beforehand.

The bounding boxes are described in detail under [SetBBox\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameter *BBox* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## GetInDocInfo

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfGetInDocInfo(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TDocumentInfo DInfo,      // Document info entry
    UI16* ADDR Value)          // Value as Unicode string (null-terminated)

```

```
typedef enum
{
    diAuthor    = 0,
    diCreator   = 1,
    diKeywords  = 2,
    diProducer  = 3,
    diSubject   = 4,
    diTitle     = 5,
    diCompany   = 6
}TDocumentInfo;
```

The function retrieves a document info entry from an external PDF file as Unicode string. The external PDF file must be opened with the function [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImporBuffer\(\)](#) beforehand. The parameter *Value* holds a pointer to the original Unicode value, it must not be NULL. Do not change or free the value. This function support predefined document info entries only. User defined entries, as well as predefined entries can be enumerated with [GetDocInfoEx\(\)](#).

#### Return value:

The return value is the string length in characters. If the info entry is not set it returns 0 and *Value* is initialized to NULL. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

### ***GetInDocInfoCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetDocInfoCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of available document info entries of the currently opened import file or a negative error code on failure. The document info entries can be enumerated with [GetInDocInfoEx\(\)](#).

### ***GetInDocInfoEx***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetDocInfoEx(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Index,                 // Entry index
    TDocumentInfo ADDR DInfo,   // Document info entry type
    char* ADDR Key,             // Only set for user defined keys
    char* ADDR Value,           // The value of the info entry
    LBOOL ADDR Unicode)         // Is value in Unicode format?
```

The function returns a document info entry from the currently opened import file. The parameter *Index* must be a valid index into the array of document info entries. The number of available entries is returned by [GetInDocInfoCount\(\)](#). The parameter *Value* holds a pointer to the original value, it must not be NULL. Do not change or free the value. If the parameter *Unicode* is true, the value is a Unicode string. Make a type cast to UI16\* in this case. The parameter *Key* contains always an Ansi string if set (user defined keys only).



**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the string length in characters of the parameter *Value*. Depending on the string format make a type cast to UI16\*.

***GetInEncryptionFlags***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetInEncryptionFlags(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the encryption flags of the currently opened import file. If no flag is set the return value is zero. To determine whether a PDF file is encrypted call the function [GetInIsEncrypted\(\)](#).

***GetInIsCollection***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetInIsCollection(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function checks whether the currently opened import file is a portable collection. See [CreateCollection\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is either 0 or 1 depending on whether the opened PDF file is a portable collection. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

***GetInIsEncrypted***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetInIsEncrypted(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function checks whether the currently opened import file is encrypted.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is either 0 or 1 depending on whether the opened PDF file is encrypted. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetInNamedDest

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetInNamedDest(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Index,                 // Array index
    struct TPDFNamedDest* Dest) // Structure to be filled

struct TPDFNamedDest
{
    char*      NameA;
    UI16*      NameW;
    UI32       NameLen;
    SI32       DestPage;
    struct TPDFRect DestPos;
    TDestType  DestType;
};

struct TPDFRect
{
    double Left;  // a
    double Bottom; // b
    double Right; // c
    double Top;   // d
};
```

The function retrieves a named destination from an external PDF file. The parameter *Index* ranges from zero through [GetInNamedDestCount\(\)](#) - 1.

The member *DestPos* must be interpreted as described at [CreateGoToAction\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## GetInNamedDestCount

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetInNamedDestCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of named destinations which are defined in the current open import file. The PDF file must be opened with [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImportBuffer\(\)](#) before the function can be used.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of named destinations defined in the open import file. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetInIsSigned***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetInIsSigned(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function can be used to determine whether a PDF file contains a digital signature. The PDF file must be opened with [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImportBuffer\(\)](#) beforehand.

### **Return values:**

If the PDF file contains a digital signature the return value is 1. If the file was not digitally signed the function returns 0. A negative error code is returned on failure.

## ***GetInIsTrapped***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetInIsTrapped(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function returns the value of the Trapped key in the current open import file. The PDF file must be opened with [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImportBuffer\(\)](#) beforehand. If the key is not set the return value is false.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds it returns 0 or 1 depending on the value of the Trapped key. A negative error code is returned on failure.

## ***GetInIsXFAForm***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetInIsXFAForm(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns true if the current open import file contains an XFA form. DynaPDF does not allow editing of XFA forms. If the form is a hybrid form the XFA part can be deleted and the remaining PDF form fields can be edited as usual.

The PDF file must be opened with [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImportBuffer\(\)](#) before this function can be called.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds it returns 0 or 1 depending on whether the file contains an XFA form. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetInOrientation***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetInOrientation(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 PageNum)      // Page number
```

The function returns the orientation of a specific page within the currently open import file (see also [OpenImportFile\(\)](#)).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the orientation of the page in degrees. Possible values are 0, 90, 180, 270, or the same values as negative numbers. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code, a value smaller than -360.

## ***GetInPageCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetInPageCount(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of pages contained in an external PDF file. The external PDF file must be opened with the function [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImporBuffer\(\)](#) beforehand.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of pages. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetInPDFVersion***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetInPDFVersion(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the minor PDF version number of an external PDF file. A value of 3 stands for PDF 1.3, 4 for PDF 1.4 and so on. The PDF file must be opened with [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImporBuffer\(\)](#) beforehand.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the minor version number. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetInPrintSettings

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetInPrintSettings(
    const void* IPDF,
    struct TPDFPrintSettings* Settings)

struct TPDFPrintSettings
{
    TDuplexMode DuplexMode; // See below
    SI32 NumCopies;          // -1 means not set. The maximum value is 5
    SI32 PickTrayByPDFSize; // -1 means not set. 0 == false, 1 == true
    // If set, the array contains PrintRangesCount * 2 values. Each pair
    // consists of the first and last page of the sub-range. The first page
    // in the PDF file is denoted by 0.
    UI32* PrintRanges;
    UI32 PrintRangesCount; // Number of ranges
    TPrintScaling PrintScaling; // dpmNone means not set
    /* 9 reserved fields follow*/
};

typedef enum
{
    dpmNone,          // Use the default value of the viewer
    dpmSimplex,
    dpmFlipShortEdge,
    dpmFlipLongEdge
}TDuplexMode;
```

The function retrieves the print settings of the current open import file. The PDF file must be opened with [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImporBuffer\(\)](#) before the function can be used. The print settings are used to initialize the print dialog in a viewer application. See also [SetPrintSettings\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## GetIsFixedPitch

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetIsFixedPitch(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns 1 if the active font is a fixed pitch font or 0 if the font is a variable pitch font. You must set a font before this function can be used (see [SetFont\(\)](#) for further information).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value 0 or 1 depending on whether the font is a fixed pitch font. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetItalicAngle

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetItalicAngle(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the italic angle in degrees that will be used to emulate italic style fonts. This value is only used if an italic version of the wished font could not be found. See [SetItalicAngle\(\)](#) for further information.

Default value = 14.0

## GetJavaScript

Syntax:

```
char* pdfGetJavaScript(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    UI32 AHandle,          // Handle of global JavaScript
    UI32 ADDR Len,         // String length in characters
    LBOOL ADDR Unicode)    // If true, the return value is a Unicode string
```

The function returns a global JavaScript as string. The parameter *AHandle* must be a valid handle of a global JavaScript. The parameter *Len* holds the string length in characters without null-terminator. If *Unicode* is true, the return value is a Unicode string. Make a typecast to *UI16\** in the latter case. The parameters *Len* and *Unicode* must both not be NULL.

The returned string is a pointer to the original value. Do not change or free the string.

To enumerate all JavaScripts of a document use the function [GetJavaScriptCount\(\)](#) and use this value in a simple for statement:

```
...
LBOOL unicode;
UI32 len;
char* scriptA;
UI16* scriptW;
SI32 count = pdfGetJavaScriptCount();
for (i = 0; i < count; i++)
{
    scriptA = pdfGetJavaScript(i, len, unicode);
    if (scriptA)
    {
        if (unicode)
        {
            scriptW = (UI16*)scriptA; // String is in Unicode format
            ...
        }else
        {
            ...
        }
    }
}
```

```
}
```

**Remarks:**

To get a global JavaScript by using the script's name use the function [GetJavaScriptEx\(\)](#).

**Return value:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the JavaScript as ANSI or Unicode string. If the function fails the return value is NULL.

***GetJavaScriptAction***

Syntax:

```
char* pdfGetJavaScriptAction(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    UI32 AHandle,        // Handle of a JavaScript action
    UI32 ADDR Len,       // String length in characters
    LBOOL ADDR Unicode)  // If true, the return value is a Unicode string
```

The function returns the script of a JavaScript Action as string. The parameter *AHandle* must be a valid handle of a JavaScript Action. The parameter *Len* holds the string length in characters without null-terminator. If *Unicode* is true, the return value is a Unicode string. Make a typecast to UI16\* in the latter case. The parameters *Len* and *Unicode* must both not be NULL.

The returned string is a pointer to the original value. Do not change or free the string.

To enumerate all JavaScript Actions of a document use the function [GetActionCount\(\)](#) to determine the number of available JavaScript Actions:

**Example (C++):**

```
...
LBOOL unicode;
UI32 len;
char* scriptA;
UI16* scriptW;
SI32 count = pdfGetActionCount();
for (i = 0; i < count; i++)
{
    if (pdfGetActionType(i) == (SI32)atJavaScript)
    {
        scriptA = pdfGetJavaScriptAction(i, len, unicode);
        if (scriptA)
        {
            if (unicode)
            {
                scriptW = (UI16*)scriptA; // String is in Unicode format
                ...
            }else
            {
                ...
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

    }
  }
}
...

```

**Return value:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the JavaScript as ANSI or Unicode string. If the function fails the return value is NULL.

***GetJavaScriptAction2***

Syntax:

```

char* pdfGetJavaScriptAction2(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TObjType ObjType,          // Object to which the object handle corresponds
    UI32 ObjHandle,            // Handle of the object that contain the action
    UI32 ActIndex,             // Action index that should be accessed
    UI32 ADDR Len,             // Variable to which the length can be set
    LBOOL ADDR Unicode,        // If true, the script is defined in Unicode
    TObjEvent ADDR Event)      // The event in which the action is executed

```

```

typedef enum
{
    oeNoEvent,                // Internal -> cannot occur
    oeOnOpen,                 // Catalog, Pages
    oeOnClose,                // Pages only
    oeOnMouseUp,              // All fields, page link annotations, bookmarks
    oeOnMouseEnter,           // Form fields only
    oeOnMouseExit,            // Form fields only
    oeOnMouseDown,           // Form fields only
    oeOnFocus,                // Form fields only
    oeOnBlur,                 // Form fields only
    oeOnKeyStroke,            // Text fields only
    oeOnFormat,               // Text fields only
    oeOnCalc,                 // Text fields, combo boxes, list boxes
    oeOnValidate,             // All form fields, except buttons
    oeOnPageVisible,          // PDF 1.5 -> Form fields only
    oeOnPageInVisible,        // PDF 1.5 -> Form fields only
    oeOnPageOpen,             // PDF 1.5 -> Form fields only
    oeOnPageClose,            // PDF 1.5 -> Form fields only
    oeOnBeforeClosing,        // PDF 1.4 -> Catalog only
    oeOnBeforeSaving,         // PDF 1.4 -> Catalog only
    oeOnAfterSaving,          // PDF 1.4 -> Catalog only
    oeOnBeforePrinting,       // PDF 1.4 -> Catalog only
    oeOnAfterPrinting         // PDF 1.4 -> Catalog only
}TObjEvent;

```

```

typedef enum
{
    otAction,

```



```

    otAnnotation,
    otBookmark,
    otCatalog,      // PDF 1.4
    otField,
    otPage,
    otPageLink
}TObjType;

```

The function returns the script of a JavaScript Action. The return value is a pointer to the original string buffer. This value must not be changed or freed.

The value of the parameter *ObjHandle* depends on the object type. If the object type is a page, the page number must be used as object handle. The number of actions which are assigned to a specific object is returned by the function [GetObjActionCount\(\)](#). The parameter *ActIndex* represents is array index of the action that should be accessed. The first action in the array has the index 0.

The parameter *Event* is set to the event that causes the execution of the script. If the script is defined in Unicode the parameter *Len* is set to the length in characters. Make a typecast to UI16\* in this case because Unicode scripts use 16 bit per character.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is a pointer to the original script buffer. If the function fails or if the action contains an empty script the return value is NULL. However, the function produces an error on failure. If no error callback function is set, call [GetErrorMessage\(\)](#) to determine whether an error occurred.

### ***GetJavaScriptCount***

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfGetJavaScriptCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

```

The function returns the number of global JavaScripts contained in a document.

### ***GetJavaScriptEx***

Syntax:

```

char* pdfGetJavaScriptEx(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const char* Name,      // Name of the global JavaScript
    UI32 ADDR Len,         // String length in characters
    LBOOL ADDR Unicode)    // If true, return value is a Unicode string

```

The function returns a global JavaScript as string by using the script's name instead of a handle to identify the script. Each global JavaScript has a unique name that identifies the script; this name must be passed to the parameter *Name*. See also [AddJavaScript\(\)](#).

The parameter *Len* holds the string length in characters without null-terminator. If *Unicode* is true, the return value is a Unicode string. Make a typecast to UI16\* in the latter case. The parameters *Len* and *Unicode* must both not be NULL.

The returned string is a pointer to the original value. Do not change or free the string.

To enumerate all JavaScripts of a document use the function [GetJavaScriptCount\(\)](#) and use this value in a simple for statement (see [GetJavaScript\(\)](#) for further information).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the JavaScript as ANSI or Unicode string. If the function fails the return value is NULL.

### GetJavaScriptName

Syntax:

```
char* pdfGetJavaScriptName(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle,         // Handle of global JavaScript  
    UI32 ADDR Len,       // Name length in characters  
    LBOOL ADDR Unicode) // If true, the name is in Unicode format
```

The function returns the name of a global JavaScript. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid handle of a global JavaScript. If the parameter *Unicode* is true the returned string is in Unicode format. Make a typecast to UI16\* in this case. The parameter *Len* holds the string length in characters.

Use the function [GetJavaScriptCount\(\)](#) to determine the number of available scripts. The handles of global JavaScripts are simple array indexes.

#### Return value:

If the function succeeds the return value is the JavaScript as ANSI or Unicode string. If the function fails the return value is NULL.

### GetJPEGQuality

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetJPEGQuality(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the current JPEG compression quality which is used when compressing images with the JPEG or JPEG2000 compression filter. The return value can be negative indicating that the pass-through mode is disabled. The absolute value represents the wished image quality in percent if the JPEG compression filter is used.

If the JPEG2000 compression filter is used the value represents a divisor of the uncompressed image size to the wished compressed image size. The absolute value ranges from 0 to 1000. If the value is 0 or 1000 then the loss-less variant of JPEG2000 compression is used (see also [SetJPEGQuality\(\)](#)).

## GetLanguage

Syntax:

```
char* pdfGetLanguage(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the language identifier of the document as an ISO 3166 language tag or IANA tag, or NULL if not set. Language tags are defined as normal ANSI string values. The function returns a pointer to the original string, do not change, or free the value.

The Language identifiers are described in detail under [SetLanguage\(\)](#).

## GetLastTextPosX, GetLastTextPosY

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetLastTextPosX/Y(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The functions [GetLastTextPosX\(\)](#) and [GetLastTextPosY\(\)](#) return the end position of the last drawn text. The returned coordinate depends on the text function that was called:

Function	Returned y-coordinate
<a href="#">WriteAngleText()</a>	The function calculates the absolute end point of the text measured in bottom-up coordinates. All coordinate transformations are taken into account. The y-coordinate is set to the coordinate origin that was used to output the text. The conversion to top down coordinates can be easily done by subtracting the value from the page height.
<a href="#">WriteFText()</a> , <a href="#">WriteFTextEx()</a>	The function calculates the end point of the text's baseline measured in bottom-up coordinates. Additional coordinate transformations are not taken into account.
<a href="#">WriteText()</a> , <a href="#">WriteTextEx()</a> , <a href="#">AddContinueText()</a>	The function sets the y-coordinate to the coordinate origin that was used to output the text. The value is measured in the coordinate system that was active as the function was used.

Note that the property [UseVisibleCoords](#) is not considered. For instance, if the property [UseVisibleCoords](#) is true, all coordinates are converted to visible coordinates inside the crop box if any. If you use the returned coordinates to place an object behind the string, the property [UseVisibleCoords](#) must be turned off or subtract the *Left* member of the crop box to get the final coordinate.

### Example 1 (Top Down Coordinates):

```
...
pdfSetPageCoords(PDF, pcTopDown);
```

```
pdfAppend(PDF);
double fontSize = 20.0;
pdfSetFont(PDF, "Times", fsItalic, fontSize, true, cp1252);
/*
    Because we use top down coordinates in this example we must transform
    the returned y-coordinate to the top down coordinates. To archive
    this we must subtract the value from the page height.
    The coordinate origin of the text in top down coordinates is normally
    the upper left corner. So, we must also subtract the font size because
    the provided y-coordinate lies on the text's baseline.
*/
pdfWriteFTextEx(PDF, 50, 50.0, 200.0, -1.0, taLeft, "Some text that "
"ends on an unknown position...");
pdfSetFillColor(PDF, PDF_RED);
pdfWriteText(PDF,
    pdfGetLastTextPosX(PDF),
    pdfGetPageHeight(PDF)-pdfGetLastTextPosY(PDF)-fontSize,
    "We are behind the last text line");

pdfEndPage(PDF);
...
```

#### Example 2 (Rotated text):

```
...
pdfSetPageCoords(PDF, pcTopDown);

pdfAppend(PDF);
pdfSetFont(PDF, "Times", fsItalic, 20.0, true, cp1252);
/*
    The coordinate origin that is passed to RotateCoords() is measured in
    top down coordinates in this example. However, after the function was
    called bottom-up coordinates are active. Because the calculated end
    point is measured in bottom-up coordinates too we can directly use the
    coordinates to place some text behind the previous string. This works
    of course only if the rotated coordinate system is still active.
*/
pdfSaveGraphicState(PDF);
pdfRotateCoords(PDF, 30.0, 150.0, 350.0);
// Note that bottom-up coordinates are now active
pdfWriteFTextEx(PDF, 50, 50.0, 200.0, -1.0, taLeft, "Some rotated text "
"that ends on an unknown position...");

pdfSetFillColor(PDF, PDF_RED);
pdfWriteText(PDF,
    pdfGetLastTextPosX(PDF),
    pdfGetLastTextPosY(PDF),
    "We are behind the last text line");

pdfRestoreGraphicState(PDF);
```

```
pdfEndPage(PDF);
...
```

### Example 3 (WriteAngleText()):

```
...
pdfSetPageCoords(PDF, pcTopDown);

pdfAppend(PDF);
pdfSetFont(PDF, "Times", fsItalic, 20.0, true, cp1252);
/*
    WriteAngleText() calculates the absolute end point measured in bottom-
    up coordinates. Note that the font origin is taken into account. As
    long as no further coordinate transformations are applied the
    coordinates are directly usable with exception that we must transform
    the y-coordinate to top down coordinates in this example.
*/
pdfWriteAngleText(PDF, "Some text...", 10.0, 150.0, 150.0, 0.0, 0.0);

pdfSetFillColor(PDF, PDF_RED);
pdfWriteText(PDF,
    pdfGetLastTextPosX(PDF),
    pdfGetPageHeight(PDF)-pdfGetLastTextPosY(PDF),
    "We are behind the last text line");

pdfEndPage(PDF);
...
```

## GetLeading

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetLeading(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the current leading. The leading is the distance between two text lines. The default leading in PDF is the font size. The property is used by the function [AddContinueText\(\)](#) and [WriteFText\(\)](#). A value of 0 determines that the font size should be used as leading, this is the default behaviour.

Default value = 0

## GetLineCapStyle

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetLineCapStyle(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef enum
{
    csButtCap    = 0,
    csRoundCap   = 1,
```

```
    csSquareCap = 2
}TLineCapStyle;
```

The function returns the current line cap style used for vector graphics. The meaning of the values are described in detail under [SetLineCapStyle\(\)](#).

Default value = csButtCap

## ***GetLineJoinStyle***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetLineJoinStyle(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
typedef enum
{
    jsMiterJoin = 0,
    jsRoundJoin = 1,
    jsBevelJoin = 2
}TLineJoinStyle;
```

The function returns the current line join style used for vector graphics. The meaning of the values are described in detail under [SetLineJoinStyle\(\)](#).

Default value = jsMiterJoin

## ***GetLineWidth***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetLineWidth(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the current line width used for stroked vector graphics and the border of interactive objects.

## ***GetLinkHighlightMode***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetLinkHighlightMode(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
typedef enum
{
    hmNone,        // Default
    hmInvert,      // Invert the contents of the annotation's bounding box
    hmOutline,     // Invert the annotations border
    hmPush,        // Simulate a push button effect
    hmPushUpd      // Update appearance stream on changes
}THighlightMode;
```

The function returns the current highlight mode used for newly created annotations.

## GetLogMetafileSize

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetLogMetafileSize(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const char* FileName,  // File path to EMF file
    struct TRectL* R)      // Bounding rectangle

struct TRectL
{
    SI32 Left;
    SI32 Top;
    SI32 Right;
    SI32 Bottom;
};
```

The function retrieves the logical bounding box of an enhanced or Windows metafile. The parameter *FileName* must be the file path to the EMF or WMF file. The parameter *R* gets the unscaled logical bounding box of the metafile. This bounding box is required to calculate a user defined cutting area or viewport (see the example below the description of the function).

### Remarks:

Two WMF formats are available, the old non-portable WMF format and the newer portable WMF format. Both formats must be converted to EMF with the GDI function `SetWinMetaFileBits()` before the logical bounding box can be calculated (the conversion is done automatically). However, non-portable WMF files are device-dependent, they contain no size information. To get correct results, the default size must be set with the function `SetWMFDefExtent()` beforehand. The parameters *Width* and *Height* are passed to the member *xExt*, *yExt* of the structure `METAFILEPICT` which is required to convert WMF files to EMF. The default size is 0, 0, that means the GDI calculates the size automatically but mostly incorrect.

Because the GDI function `SetWinMetaFileBits()` is used to convert WMF files to EMF, WMF files are not supported under Linux or UNIX.

### Return Values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Example (Borland Delphi):

```
// In this example, we have a paintbox (TPaintBox) on the form
// into which we paint an EMF file. The user can draw a rectangle when
// pressing the left mouse button, this rectangle is our cutting area.
// FView is a private variable of the type TRectL. Note that this
// rectangle must also be drawn in the OnPaint event of the paintbox.
procedure TForm1.PaintBoxMouseDown(Sender: TObject; Button: TMouseButton;
Shift: TShiftState; X, Y: Integer);
var dc: HDC;
begin
    dc := PaintBox.Canvas.Handle;
```

```
SetROP2(dc, R2_NOT);
SelectObject(dc, GetStockObject(NULL_BRUSH));
Rectangle(dc, FView.Left, FView.Top, FView.Right, FView.Bottom);
FView.Left := X;
FView.Top := Y;
FView.Right := X;
FView.Bottom := Y;
end;

procedure TForm1.PaintBoxMouseMove(Sender: TObject; Shift: TShiftState; X,
Y: Integer);
var dc: HDC;
begin
    // The rectangle must be drawn twice, one time to delete the
    // previous one, and the next time to draw the rectangle with the
    // new size. There is no need to redraw the paintbox.
    if (ssLeft in Shift) then begin
        dc := PaintBox.Canvas.Handle;
        SetROP2(dc, R2_NOT);
        SelectObject(dc, GetStockObject(NULL_BRUSH));
        Rectangle(dc, FView.Left, FView.Top, FView.Right, FView.Bottom);
        FView.Right := X;
        FView.Bottom := Y;
        Rectangle(dc, FView.Left, FView.Top, FView.Right, FView.Bottom);
    end;
end;
// ViewRect holds the current size of the graphic on screen.
procedure TForm1.CreatePDF(const EMF: String; const ViewRect: TRectL)
var pdf: TPDF; r: TRectL; sx, sy: Double; tmp: Integer;
begin
    pdf := nil;
    try
        pdf := pdf.Create;
        pdf.CreateNewPDFA('c:\dout.pdf');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diAuthor, 'Jens Boschulte');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diSubject, 'EMF-Files');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diTitle, 'Metafiles');
        pdf.SetDocInfoA(diCreator, 'Delphi Test Application');
        pdf.Append;
        pdf.SetPageCoords(pcTopDown);
        pdf.GetLogMetafileSize(EMF, r);
        // Make sure that the rectangle contains correct values
        if (FView.Left > FView.Right) then begin
            tmp := FView.Left;
            FView.Left := FView.Right;
            FView.Right := tmp;
        end;
        if (FView.Top > FView.Bottom) then begin
            tmp := FView.Top;
            FView.Top := FView.Bottom;
```



```

        FView.Bottom := tmp;
    end;
    // ViewRect is the current size of the EMF graphic in pixel.
    sx := (r.Right - r.Left) / (ViewRect.Right - ViewRect.Left);
    sy := (r.Bottom - r.Top) / (ViewRect.Bottom - ViewRect.Top);
    // See how the rectangle must be calculated:
    tmp      := r.Left;
    r.Left   := Round(r.Left + FView.Left * sx);
    r.Right  := Round(tmp + FView.Right * sx);
    tmp      := r.Top;
    r.Top    := Round(r.Top + FView.Top * sy);
    r.Bottom := Round(tmp + FView.Bottom * sy);
    // Now we have the unscaled cutting area. We want to output the
    // EMF file onto the entire page with a border of 20 units so
    // that we must only check whether the width or the height can be
    // calculated by DynaPDF to preserve the aspect ratio.
    sx := (r.Right - r.Left) / pdf.GetPageWidth;
    sy := (r.Bottom - r.Top) / pdf.GetPageHeight;
    pdf.SetMetaConvFlags(mfClipView); // we clip the viewport
    if (sx > sy) then
        pdf.InsertMetafileExt(EMF,
            r, 20, 20, pdf.GetPageWidth - 40, 0)
    else
        pdf.InsertMetafileExt(EMF,
            r, 20, 20, 0, pdf.GetPageHeight - 40);
    pdf.EndPage;
    pdf.CloseFile;
except
    on E: Exception do MessageDlg(E.Message, mtError, [mbOK], 0);
end;
if pdf <> nil then pdf.Free;
end;

```

## GetLogMetafileSizeEx

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfGetLogMetafileSizeEx(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const void* Buffer,  // EMF buffer
    UI32 BufSize,        // Buffer size in bytes
    struct TRectL* R)    // Bounding rectangle

```

The function retrieves the logical bounding box of an enhanced or Windows metafile. The parameter *Buffer* must be a file buffer of an EMF or WMF file. The function checks whether the function has read access for the entire buffer length (Windows only). If not all bytes in the specified buffer can be accessed, the function returns immediately with a warning.

Because the GDI function SetWinMeatFileBits() is used to convert WMF files to EMF, WMF files are not supported under Linux or UNIX.

The original size of a metafile must be known to compute a user defined cutting area or viewport. See [GetLogMetafileSize\(\)](#) for an example application.

**Return Values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***GetMatrix***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetMatrix(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    struct TCTM* M)    // Structure which holds the transformation matrix  
  
struct TCTM  
{  
    double a;  
    double b;  
    double c;  
    double d;  
    double x;  
    double y;  
};
```

The function retrieves the current transformation matrix. Affine transformations are used to scale, translate, shear, or reflect the coordinate system. Functions which change the coordinate system change always the current transformation matrix, e.g. [RotateCoords\(\)](#), [TranslateCoords\(\)](#), and so on. The transformation matrix can also be changed directly with [SetMatrix\(\)](#).

## ***GetMaxFieldLen***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetMaxFieldLen(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 TxtField)    // Text field handle
```

The function returns the allowed maximum string length of a text field, or zero if the length is not restricted. The parameter *TxtField* must be a valid handle of a text field.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the allowed maximum string length of the text field. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetMetaConvFlags

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfGetMetaConvFlags(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef UI32 TMetaFlags;
#define mfDefault      0x00000 // No flags
#define mfDebug        0x00001 // Insert debug comments
#define mfShowBounds   0x00002 // Show the bounding boxes of text
#define mfNoTextScaling 0x00004 // Do not scale text records
#define mfClipView     0x00008 // Clip the output rectangle
#define mfUseRclBounds  0x00010 // Use the raw bounding box rclBounds
#define mfNoClippingRgn 0x00040 // Ignore clipping regions
#define mfNoFontEmbedding 0x00080 // Don't embed fonts used by the EMF
#define mfNoImages      0x00100 // Ignore image records
#define mfNoStdPatterns 0x00200 // Ignore standard hatch patterns
#define mfNoBmpPatterns 0x00400 // Ignore bitmap patterns
#define mfNoText        0x00800 // Ignore text records
#define mfUseUnicode     0x01000 // Use always Unicode to print text
#define mfUseTextScaling 0x04000 // Scale text (see description)
#define mfNoUnicode     0x08000 // Avoid the usage of Unicode fonts
#define mfFullScale     0x10000 // Scale coordinates to Windows size
#define mfUseRclFrame    0x20000 // See description
#define mfDefBkModeTransp 0x40000 // Initial backg. mode is transparent
#define mfApplyBidiAlgo  0x80000 // Apply the bidirectional algorithm
// Obsolete flags -> These flags are ignored, do not longer use them!
#define mfUseSpacingArray 0x0020 // Enabled by default
#define mfIntersectClipRect 0x2000 // Enabled by default
```

The function returns the conversion flags used to convert enhanced metafiles to PDF. The return value is a bit-mask. Use a bitwise and operator to determine whether a specific flag is set. The conversion flags are described in detail under [SetMetaConvFlags\(\)](#).

## GetMissingGlyphs

```
UI32* pdfGetMissingGlyphs(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 ADDR Count) // Variable that holds the number of missing glyphs
```

The function returns the character codes which could not be found in the active font. If all characters were found the return value is NULL.

Each character code is encoded as a 32 bit unsigned integer. The character codes which are stored in this array correspond to the source string that was used in the function that output the text. For example, if the active font was loaded with a 8 bit code page and if the Ansi version of [WriteText\(\)](#) was used, the array contains the 8 bit codes which could not be found. If the wide string version was used the missing 16 bit codes will be returned.

If the active font is a CID font that uses an external CMap, a missing character code was maybe constructed from a sequence of bytes or from two 16 bit codes (if a wide string function was used).

However, the 32 bit code can be easily converted back to the original code sequence. If the Ansi version of a string function was used the algorithm looks as follows (C++):

```
...
UI32 i, p, value, count;
UI32* missingGlyphs = pdfGetMissingGlyphs(pdf, count);
// More than 4 bytes cannot be encoded in a 32 bit integer
BYTE sequence[4];
for (i = 0; i < count; i++)
{
    value = missingGlyphs[i];
    p      = 0;
    while (value)
    {
        sequence[p] = (BYTE)value;
        value >>= 8;
        ++p; // This is the string length when the loop returns
    }
    // You can now process the sequence...
}
```

Because the wide string versions use 16 bits per character, the conversion looks as follows:

```
UI32 i, p, value;
// More than two 16 bit values cannot be encoded in a 32 bit integer
UI16 sequence[2];
for (i = 0; i < count; i++)
{
    value = missingGlyphs[i];
    p      = 0;
    shift  = 0;
    while (value)
    {
        sequence[p] = (UI16)value;
        value >>= 16;
        ++p; // This is the string length when the loop returns
    }
}
```

All string functions report the warning for a missing glyph only once. For example, if you call `GetTextWidth()` with a text like "This is an Euro" and if the Euro character is not available in the font then a warning is produced. However, if you output the same or another text again that contains the missing Euro character too then no further warning is produced.

## ***GetMiterLimit***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetMiterLimit(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the current miter limit used to draw stroked vector graphics. The graphics state parameter miter limit is described in detail under [SetMiterLimit\(\)](#). The initial miter limit to convert EMF files is 2.0.

Default value: 1.414

## ***GetNeedAppearance***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetNeedAppearance(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns true if the global NeedAppearance flag of the AcroForm is set. See [SetNeedAppearance\(\)](#) for further information.

## ***GetObjActionCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetObjActionCount(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TObjType ObjType, // Object type
    UI32 ObjHandle)   // Object handle
```

```
typedef enum
{
    otAction,
    otAnnotation,
    otBookmark,
    otCatalog,
    otField,
    otPage,
    otPageLink
}TObjType;
```

The function returns the number of actions used by an object. If the object type is page, then use the page number as handle.

The number of actions used by an object can be used to remove a specific action from an object. See also [DeleteActionFromObj\(\)](#), [GetActionTypeEx\(\)](#).

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of actions used by an object. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetOpacity***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetOpacity(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the opacity value used to draw the visible appearance of an annotation (requires Acrobat 5 or higher). A value of **1** determines that the annotation is completely opaque. If the value is zero, newly created annotations will be invisible. The opacity flag is not supported by all annotation types.

At time of publication the opacity property is used for annotations only. Later versions of DynaPDF use this property may be for other PDF objects too.

## ***GetOrientation***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetOrientation(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the orientation of the current open page if an open page was detected or the default orientation for newly created pages if no open page was detected.

The orientation is measured in degrees; it is also always a multiple of 90 or 0.

Default value = 0 (Portrait)

## ***GetPageAnnot (obsolete)***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetPageAnnot(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Index,       // Array index in the page  
    struct TPDFAnnotation ADDR Annot) // Structure to be filled
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of an annotation like [GetAnnot\(\)](#). This function is marked as obsolete and should no longer be used. If possible use [GetPageAnnotEx\(\)](#) instead. The parameter *Index* must be the array index of the page in which the annotation is used. To enumerate the annotations of a page execute the function in a loop from 0 to [GetPageAnnotCount\(\)](#) - 1.

### **Return Values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## GetPageAnnotEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetPageAnnotEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Index,        // Array index in the page  
    struct TPDFAnnotationEx ADDR Annot) // Structure to be filled
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of an annotation like [GetAnnotEx\(\)](#). The parameter *Index* must be the array index of the page in which the annotation is used. To enumerate the annotations of a page execute the function in a loop from 0 to [GetPageAnnotCount\(\)](#) - 1. See [GetAnnotEx\(\)](#) for further information.

### Return Values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## GetPageAnnotCount

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetPageAnnotCount(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of annotations which are used by a page. The page must be opened with [EditPage\(\)](#) before the function can be used. The annotations of the page can be accessed with [GetAnnotEx\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of annotations which are used by a page. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetPageCoords

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetPageCoords(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    pcBottomUp = 0,  
    pcTopDown  = 1  
}TPageCoord;
```

The native coordinate system of the Portable Document Format is bottom-up. However, DynaPDF supports also top-down coordinates to make the usage of the library easier. See also [SetPageCoords\(\)](#).

Default value = pcBottomUp

## ***GetPageCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetPageCount(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of pages of the current PDF file if any.

## ***GetPageField (obsolete)***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetPageField(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Index,                // Field index  
    struct TPDFField* Field) // Structure to be filled
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of a field. This function is marked as obsolete, please use [GetPageFieldEx\(\)](#) instead. The parameter *Index* must be a valid index to the page's field array. To enumerate the fields of a page execute the function in a loop from 0 to [GetPageFieldCount\(\)](#) - 1.

See also [GetField\(\)](#).

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the structure *Field* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***GetPageFieldCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetPageFieldCount(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of fields used by a page. The page must be opened beforehand with the function [EditPage\(\)](#).

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is number of fields used by the page. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.



## GetPageFieldEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetPageFieldEx(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    UI32 Index,                // Field index
    struct TPDFFieldEx* Field) // Structure to be filled
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of a field. The parameter *Index* must be a valid index to the page's field array. To enumerate the fields of a page execute the function in a loop from 0 to `GetPageFieldCount()` - 1.

See also `GetFieldEx()` and `GetFieldEx2()`.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value 1 and the structure *Field* is filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## GetPageHeight

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetPageHeight(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the height of the currently open page. If no open page can be detected the return value is the default height which will be used for newly created pages.

## GetPageLabel

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetPageLabel(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    UI32 Index,                // Page label handle or array index
    struct TPDFPageLabel* Label) // Page label structure

struct TPDFPageLabel
{
    UI32                StartRange;    // Number of the first page in the
                                        // range. If no further label follows,
                                        // the last page in the range is
                                        // pdfGetPageCount(). The first page is
                                        // denoted by 1.

    TPageLabelFormat Format;           // Number format to be used.
    SI32              FirstPageNum;    // First page number to be displayed in
                                        // the page label. Subsequent pages are
                                        // numbered sequentially from this
                                        // value.

    char*              Prefix;         // Optional prefix
    UI32               PrefixLen;      // Length of the prefix in characters
    LBOOL              PrefixUni;      // Prefix is a Unicode string?
```

```
};
typedef enum
{
    plfDecimalArabic,    // 1,2,3,4...
    plfUppercaseRoman,   // I,II,III,IV...
    plfLowercaseRoman,   // i,ii,iii,iv...
    plfUppercaseLetters, // A,B,C,D...
    plfLowercaseLetters, // a,b,c,d...
    plfNone
}TPageLabelFormat;
```

The function retrieves the properties of a page label. The parameter *Index* must be the array index of the page label. The number of available page labels can be determined with the function [GetPageLabelCount\(\)](#).

A page label is used to construct a format string. The start range identifies the first page to which this label applies. If no further page labels follow, the label is applied to all subsequent pages through [GetPageCount\(\)](#). The member *FirstPageNum* represents the numeric portion of the first page label in the range. Subsequent pages are numbered sequentially from this value.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***GetPageLabelCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetPageLabelCount(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of page labels defined in the document.

### ***GetPageLayout***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetPageLayout(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
typedef enum
{
    plSinglePage      = 0, // Show one page at time
    plOneColumn       = 1, // Show the pages continuous
    plTwoColumnLeft   = 2, // Two columns, start with left column
    plTwoColumnRight  = 3  // Two columns, start with right column
}TPageLayout;
```

The function returns the page layout that is used when opening the document with Adobe's Acrobat.

Default value = plOneColumn

## GetPageMode

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetPageMode(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef enum
{
    pmUseNone      = 0, // No page mode is applied
    pmUseOutlines  = 1, // Show outline tree
    pmUseThumbs    = 2, // Show thumbnails
    pmFullScreen   = 3  // Open the document in full screen mode
}TPageMode;
```

The function returns the page mode that is used when opening the document with Adobe's Acrobat.

## GetPageNum

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetPageNum(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the page number of the currently open page. If no open page can be detected the return value is a negative error code.

## GetPageText

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetPageText(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    struct TPDFStack* Stack) // Operation stack, see below

struct TTextRecordA
{
    float Advance; // Negative values move the cursor to the right
    BYTE* Text;    // Raw text
    UI32 Length;   // Raw text length in bytes
};

struct TTextRecordW
{
    float Advance; // Negative values move the cursor to the right
    UI16* Text;    // Translated Unicode string (not null-terminated!)
    UI32 Length;   // Length in characters
    float Width;   // String width measured in text space
};

struct TPDFStack
{
    struct TCTM          ctm;           // Pre-multiplied global transf. matrix
    struct TCTM          tm;           // Pre-multiplied text transf. matrix
```

```

double      x;           // Unused -> always 0.0
double      y;           // Unused -> always 0.0
double      FontSize;    // Current font size
double      CharSP;      // Current character spacing
double      WordSP;      // Current word spacing
double      HScale;      // Current horizontal scaling
double      TextRise;     // Always 0.0 -> already included in tm
double      Leading;     // Current leading
double      LineWidth;    // Current line width
TDrawMode   DrawMode;    // Text draw mode (see SetDrawMode())
TPDFColorSpace FillCS;   // Color space of fill color
TPDFColorSpace StrokeCS; // Color space of stroke color
UI32        FillColor;   // Current fill color (text color)
UI32        StrokeColor; // Current stroke color
void*       BaseObject;  // Internal
LBOOL       CIDFont;     // See description
char*       Text;        // Pointer to raw binary text buffer
UI32        TextLen;     // Text length in bytes
struct TTextRecordA* RawKern; // Raw kerning array
struct TTextRecordW* Kerning; // Translated Unicode kerning array
UI32        KerningCount; // Number of kerning records
float       TextWidth;    // Text width incl. kerning space
void*       IFont;       // Font object used to print the string
LBOOL       Embedded;    // If true, the font is embedded
float       SpaceWidth;   // Measured in text space
LBOOL       ConvColors;   // See description
TPDFColorSpace DestSpace; // See description
UI32        DeleteKerningAt; // See description
UI32        FontFlags;    // PDF font flags
// ----- 12 Reserved fields -----
SI32        Reserved1..12;
...
};

```

This function can be used to extract the text of a page or template, or to find a specific text that should be replaced or deleted with the function [ReplacePageText\(\)](#) or [ReplacePageTextEx\(\)](#).

The structure `TPDFStack` must be initialized with [InitStack\(\)](#) before calling the function the first time. All members of this structure are read only with the exception of the variables in red color. These values can be changed after the structure has been initialized with [InitStack\(\)](#). Do not change the value of another member; otherwise the function causes maybe an access violation!

## Structure TPDFStack:

Member	Description
ctm	The matrix represents the current coordinate system (user space). The matrix is already pre-multiplied because the function returns only when a text showing operator was found.
tm	This matrix represents the text coordinate system in which all text properties are calculated. We call this coordinate system text space. To enable the calculation of the text position the matrix must be multiplied with the matrix ctm.
x, y	These members are no longer used. All positioning operators are already included in the text transformation matrix tm.
FontSize	The font size used to display the text.
FillCS	<p>This is the current color space in which the color value of FillColor is defined. If ConvColor is set to true (default) the value is always equal to DestSpace. If ConvColor is set to false the fill color is still returned in a device color space but the color space can be changed arbitrary often.</p> <p>Colors of complex color spaces, such as Separation or DeviceN, are always converted into the alternate color space. If the original or alternate color space is an ICC based color space the color value is returned as is and the color space is set depending on the number of components. The ICC profile is not invoked to calculate the color value in the device color space. Future versions of DynaPDF maybe use the ICC profile to convert the color into device color space.</p>
StrokeCS	This is the current color space in which the color value of StrokeColor is defined. The color space is set in an identical manner like FillCS.
FillColor	The fill color represents the text color if the text draw mode is dmNormal. Depending on the draw mode the fill and stroke color can be invoked to render the text.
StrokeColor	The stroke color can be ignored if the text draw mode is not dmStroke, dmFillStroke, dmStrokeClip or dmFillStrokeClip since it is then not used to render the text.
CIDFont	If true, a CID font is used to render the text. It is not possible to replace a text with <a href="#">ReplacePageText()</a> in this case. However, it is still possible to delete the text. If the text should be replaced use either <a href="#">ReplacePageTextEx()</a> or

[WriteTextMatrixEx\(\)](#).

DrawMode	The draw mode used to render the text. See <a href="#">SetTextDrawMode()</a> for further information.
Leading	The leading is already included in the text transformation matrix tm. The value of leading must <b>not</b> be considered to calculate the text position.
TextRise	The text rise is already included in the text transformation matrix tm. The value is always 0.0.
WordSP	Current word spacing, info only.
CharSP	Current character spacing, info only.
HScale	Current horizontal scaling, info only.
LineWidth	The current line width; it can be ignored if the text is not stroked.
Text	The raw text line that was found in the content stream. This is a non-null-terminated binary string; it can contain single or multi-byte characters. This member should no longer be used to extract or replace text. Use the member Kerning instead.
TextLen	The string length in bytes, not characters! If TextLen is zero no text was found or an error occurred.
RawKern	The raw kerning array. The text in this array points directly into the source text buffer. The strings are not null-terminated.
Kerning	<p>Already translated UTF-16 Unicode kerning array. A kerning record consists of the members Advance, Text (UTF-16), Length, and Width. The member Advance represents the amount in which the text is moved on the x-axis. Negative values move the cursor to the right, positive to the left. Normal kerning between characters is usually always less than the half space width which can be taken from the structure TPDFStack. This makes it easy to determine whether a space character is emulated with kerning space. Note that negative values move the cursor to right! A positive value of Advance cannot emulate a space character because the cursor is moved to the wrong direction. The parameter Text contains the Unicode text that is <b>not</b> null-terminated. Length is the text length in characters. The text width and advance are calculated in text space.</p> <p>Note that it is not always possible to translate a text to Unicode. The translation will fail if a CID font depends on an external CMap file that is</p>

	<p>not available. External CMaps should always be loaded with <a href="#">SetCMapDir()</a> before <a href="#">GetPageText()</a> is executed the first time.</p> <p>It is also possible that a PDF file contains an invalid encoding or ToUnicode CMap. Because the encoding or ToUnicode CMap is only used for Copy &amp; Paste operations you cannot assume that the conversion to Unicode is always possible.</p>
KerningCount	The number of kerning records. RawKern and Kerning contain always the same number of records.
TextWidth	The text width measured in text space. This is the width of the entire kerning array incl. kerning space.
IFont	A pointer to the font object used to print the text. The most important properties of the font can be returned with <a href="#">GetFont()</a> .
Embedded	If true, the font is embedded. This information is very important if the text should be replaced. The function <a href="#">ReplacePageText()</a> can be used if the font is not embedded and if the member CIDFont is false. Otherwise, the function <a href="#">ReplacePageTextEx()</a> or <a href="#">WriteTextMatrixEx()</a> must be used to replace the text, see the examples on the following pages for further information.
SpaceWidth	The space width can be used to determine whether a space character is emulated at a given position. A default space width is set if the font does not contain a space character. Note that many documents emulate spaces with kerning space. Such documents contain usually no space character. It is usually best to use the half space width to determine whether a space character is emulated. This is especially important if a document uses condensed fonts which contain no space character.
ConvColor	If true (default), all colors are converted to the destination color space DestSpace. The default color space is DeviceRGB. This variable can be changed after the structure has been initialized with <a href="#">InitStack()</a> . If set to false, colors of complex color spaces are still converted into the alternate color space but the color space can then be changed arbitrary often. See also the description of FillCS.
DestSpace	The destination color space in which all colors should be converted. If ConvColor is set to false, the value of this member is ignored. If the destination color space should be DeviceCMYK initialize the members FillColor and StrokeColor with PDF_CMYK(0,0,0,255); which represents

	black.
<b>DeleteKerningAt</b>	This member can be used in combination with <a href="#">ReplacePageText()</a> . <a href="#">ReplacePageText()</a> deletes or replaces normally always a complete text record but this is often not required especially if a text must be deleted or replaced in the middle or end of a kerning array. To make text replacement easier it is possible to preserve an arbitrary number of kerning records from deletion. The value of DeleteKerningAt represents the first array index which should be deleted. All kerning records above this index will be deleted too. Take a look into the demo examples/edit_text which is delivered with DynaPDF to determine how this member can be used.
<b>FontFlags</b>	<p>The font flags describe important characteristics of the current font:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x00001 // Fixed pitch font</li> <li>• 0x00002 // Serif style</li> <li>• 0x00004 // Symbol font</li> <li>• 0x00008 // Script style</li> <li>• 0x00020 // Non-symbolic font</li> <li>• 0x00040 // Italic style</li> <li>• 0x40000 // Force Bold (Type1 fonts only)</li> </ul>

### **External CMaps**

A widely used technique to reduce the amount of data that must be stored in a PDF file is the usage of non-embedded CID fonts. CID fonts, whether embedded or not, can depend on external CMaps which must be available at runtime.

To process strings of such fonts correctly DynaPDF must be able to load required CMap files if necessary. Therefore, DynaPDF is delivered with the most important CMap files which are provided by Adobe Systems. These CMaps can be found in the DynaPDF installation directory at /Resource/CMap/. Applications which extract text from PDF files should include these CMaps so that they can be loaded at runtime.

The search path to external CMaps must be set with [SetCMapDir\(\)](#) before executing [GetPageText\(\)](#) the first time. The function creates a CMap cache that is hold in memory until the PDF instance will be deleted. The search path(s) to external CMap files should be set only one time per PDF instance and one PDF instance should be used to process so many PDF files as possible. This can significantly improve processing speed.

### **Order of Text records**

[GetPageText\(\)](#) returns always when a text showing operator was found. That means the returned text represents not a text line. It can be a single character up to a complete text line depending on how the text is stored in the PDF file.

The order in which text is returned is essentially arbitrary. It depends on the file creator whether text is stored in the logical reading order. For example, most PDF drivers convert headers and footers



first. Such strings appear then at the beginning of the content stream. All other strings are in turn not necessarily ordered and one text line can be stored in several different text objects.

A text search or text replacement algorithm must correctly handle cases in which a word or sentence is separated into different text objects. In the worst case `GetPageText()` returns always only a single character. As long as the text is not rotated it is relatively easy to determine whether a text record lies on the same y-axis, but finding an arbitrary rotated text that is also stored in several different text objects requires further math.

The position of a text object is calculated from the two transformation matrices *ctm* and *tm*. The global transformation matrix *ctm* represents the current coordinate system when a text showing operator was found. The matrix *ctm* is already pre-multiplied because `GetPageText()` does not return when a new transformation matrix is applied.

The text transformation matrix *tm* represents the text coordinate system in which text properties such as text width, font size, character spacing, word spacing, or the space width are calculated. All text positioning operators are already included in this matrix.

The combination of both matrices represents the final user space in which the text is rendered. Both matrices must be combined to enable the calculation of the text position and orientation (see the examples on the following pages to determine how the matrices must be combined).

### **Organization of content streams and pages**

A PDF page consists of a content stream and a resource array which contains the resources such as fonts, images, and so on which can be used by the page. The content stream contains the PDF operators which paint the contents of a PDF page.

The PDF format supports two object types which support vector graphics and images: ordinary pages and the so called "Form XObjects" which act as a template (we call this object type template here). A template consists in turn of a content stream and a resource array like a page object and it is possible to convert a page to a template. A page object can display an arbitrary number of templates and a template can in turn display arbitrary other templates. It is important to understand that the content of a template is physically stored in another content stream because the function `InitStack()` prepares only the currently open content stream of the page or template for editing.

Only this content stream can be parsed and edited. Templates which occur in a page or other template must be parsed separately. Because templates can contain other templates it is usually best to parse templates recursively.

However, if texts must be deleted or replaced you must make sure that a template is not edited twice if it occurs in another page or template. Such a duplicate check is strongly required and it must be applied every time a template should be processed.

Whether a page or template contains templates can be determined with `GetTemplCount()`. Such subsequent templates can then be opened for editing with `EditTemplate()`. When finish, the template must be closed with `EndTemplate()`.

### **Organization of text objects**

A text object consists of a transformation matrix and the text. Several other properties are taken from the current graphics state such as the font, font size, character spacing, word spacing and so on.

Text objects use a separate coordinate system which is represented by the text transformation matrix *tm*. We call this coordinate system text space. All text properties such as font size, text width and so on are calculated in text space. The PDF format supports also several text positioning operators to decrease the size of a text object. To make the usage of the function easier DynaPDF includes all text positioning operators already in the text transformation *tm*.

The text coordinate system must be transformed to user space by multiplying the text matrix with the current transformation matrix *cm* to enable the calculation of the text position. The combined matrix must be recalculated each time `GetPageText()` returns a new text object.

As mentioned earlier a content stream is **not** organized into text lines and the order in which text objects occur is essentially arbitrary. A text record can occur in two different formats: as an array or as one coherent text string. The array form enables the definition of kerning between characters in a compact format since PDF viewers ignore any available kerning information in a font resource. The strings in a kerning array lie always on the same text line.

The kerning array is also often used to emulate space characters because word spacing does not work with CID fonts. Most PDF drivers use the same algorithm to format text of single and multi-byte fonts; that is the reason why space characters are very often emulated with kerning space. However, it is quite easy to determine whether a space character is emulated at given position: if the displacement is larger than the half space width we can assume that a space character was emulated at this position. The half space width should be used because the fonts of documents which emulate space characters with kerning space contain often no space character. DynaPDF sets a default space width in this case which can be too large if a condensed font is used.

However, the array form is just one possible format to enable kerning between characters. Due to several reasons the array form is sometimes not used. Many PDF drivers update the text position with text positioning operators instead. This technique produces not only much greater content streams it splits text records also into separate ones. This complicates the identification of word boundaries a lot because each record is returned in a separate `GetPageText()` call. We need now the coordinates to determine whether the text must be assigned to the same line. If the text is not rotated this is not a big deal but if the coordinate system is rotated or if it contains other transformations some further math is required to determine whether a text record must be assigned to the current line.

We want now take a look into a PDF content stream to determine how an arbitrary text can be stored in a PDF file. The following text can be stored in many different ways and it is important to understand that many variants are possible and exist in real PDF files.

The rendered result of the string "The fox eats the lazy mouse." looks quite normal:

**The fox eats the lazy mouse.**

However, a PDF driver does not necessarily store this text in one record, there are many possible variants:

```
%This is the easiest variant, one record contains the entire text line.  
%It would be returned in one GetPageText() call as one coherent kerning  
%record.  
(The fox eats the lazy mouse.)Tj
```

```
%This version emulates the spaces with kerning space.  
%It would be returned in one GetPageText() call with 6 kerning records.  
[ (The)-280(fox)-280(eats)-280(the)-280(lazy)-280(mouse.) ]TJ
```

```
%This version uses PDF positioning operators to emulate spaces.  
%It produces 6 separate GetPageText() calls.  
(The)Tj  
2.8 0 Td  
(fox)Tj  
2.8 0 Td  
(eats)Tj  
2.8 0 Td  
(the)Tj  
2.8 0 Td  
(lazy)Tj  
2.8 0 Td  
(mouse.)Tj
```

In the worst case each text record consists of only one character and it is also possible that the entire text occurs unsorted or combined with other texts which lie on completely different positions than this one. There is not necessarily a logical connection between what you see on screen and what is stored in the PDF file. Especially if a PDF file contains tables the order of text records is sometimes very difficult to understand.

### ***Possible encoding issues***

If text must be extracted, deleted, or replaced then it is very important that the text in the PDF file can be converted to Unicode. This conversion is possible if the font uses a standard encoding like WinAnsi or MacRoman, if it contains a ToUnicode CMap, or if it contains PostScript Character names which are listed in the Adobe Glyph List, or if it uses a predefined external CMap and if this CMap is available in one of the CMap search paths ([SetSetCMapDir\(\)](#) for further information).

More complicated is the processing of certain European scripts such as Russian, Greek, Czech, and so on. A common technique to process such scripts is to convert the original font to a symbol font to avoid the usage of a CID font (multi-byte font) because the PDF format supports only four predefined 8 bit encodings (WinAnsi, MacRoman, MacExpert, and Symbol). The advantage is that 8 bit strings can be stored in the PDF file which results in a smaller file size and the PDF file is still compatible to older Acrobat versions prior 4.0 because CID fonts are supported since PDF 1.3.

The problem is that if the font resource contains no ToUnicode CMap or PostScript character names it is no longer possible to convert the text to Unicode. Depending on how a PDF file was created the encoding is also often not known by the PDF driver, e.g. when converting PCL or AFP files to PDF. Such PDF files can be viewed and printed correctly but it is not possible to extract human readable strings from them.

### ***How to calculate the absolute string position?***

The absolute string position can be calculated from the matrices *ctm* and *tm*. Before the string position can be computed the matrix *tm* must be transformed into user space. This can be done by multiplying the matrices *ctm* and *tm* into another one:

```
TCTM MulMatrix(TCTM &M1, TCTM &M2)
{
    TCTM retval;
    retval.a = M2.a * M1.a + M2.b * M1.c;
    retval.b = M2.a * M1.b + M2.b * M1.d;
    retval.c = M2.c * M1.a + M2.d * M1.c;
    retval.d = M2.c * M1.b + M2.d * M1.d;
    retval.x = M2.x * M1.a + M2.y * M1.c + M1.x;
    retval.y = M2.x * M1.b + M2.y * M1.d + M1.y;
    return retval;
}
```

The usage is as follows:

```
TCTM m = MulMatrix(stack.ctm, stack.tm);
```

Note that the order in which the matrices are multiplied is important; the reversed order produces an incorrect result.

Now we need a function that transforms a point with the matrix:

```
void Transform(TCTM &M, double &x, double &y)
{
    double ox = x;
    x = ox * M.a + y * M.c + M.x;
    y = ox * M.b + y * M.d + M.y;
}
```

The text position can now easily be calculated as follows:

```
// Get first the text matrix in user space
TCTM m = MulMatrix(stack.ctm, stack.tm);
double x = 0.0;
double y = 0.0;
Transform(m, x, y);
```

It is sometimes also useful to know how the scaling factor can be calculated; especially if you want to know how large the text appears on screen (the member `FontSize` of `TPDFStack` contains the font size measured in text space). Multiply the matrices *ctm* and *tm* with `MulMatrix()` as shown above and pass the resulting matrix to `TransScale()`, the return value is the scaling factor.

**double** TransScale(TCTM &M)

```
{  
    double x = 0.707106781 * M.a + 0.707106781 * M.c;  
    double y = 0.707106781 * M.b + 0.707106781 * M.d;  
    return sqrt(x*x + y*y);  
}
```

If you want to know whether the string is rotated use the function TransRotation() to compute the rotation angle in radians. Note that this function requires again the pre-multiplied matrix in user space.

**double** TransRotation(TCTM &M)

```
{  
    double x1 = 0.0;  
    double y1 = 0.0;  
    double x2 = 1.0;  
    double y2 = 0.0;  
    Transform(M, x1, y1);  
    Transform(M, x2, y2);  
    return atan2(y2-y1, x2-x1);  
}
```

***Possible coordinate issues***

The returned transformation matrices of [GetPageText\(\)](#) enables the output of text exactly on the same position and dimension where the original string was found. However, the condition is that all coordinate transformations are restored at the end of the content stream. This can be done either by applying an inversed transformation matrix or with save / restore graphics state operators (q, Q) inside the content stream.

A few PDF libraries do not properly save or restore the graphics state if coordinate transformations were applied. This is a big problem because the coordinate system that is active at the end of the stream is then unknown. The content streams of such documents must be repaired before editing will be possible. The entire stream must be parsed so that the missing save / restore graphics state operators (q, Q) can be added to the content stream. Each save graphics state operator (q) must have its belonging restore graphics state operator (Q).

In such cases you can try to output the string with the text transformation matrix. If the output is still incorrect, the content stream must be repaired manually. DynaPDF itself does not support a function to repair such problematic content streams. Try to get a proper version of the PDF file that was created with Adobe's Distiller or any other application that produces valid content streams.

***How to find and replace texts in a page?***

As mentioned in the previous sections text replacement or text search algorithms are not easy to develop because many things must be considered to get suitable results. To make the development easier for you DynaPDF is delivered with several example classes which are available in C++, Delphi, VB .Net, and C#.

You should take a look into the examples `text_extraction`, `text_extraction2`, `edit_text`, and `text_search` to determine how the function `GetPageText()` can be used. If you need only a text search algorithm it is better to use the content parser of DynaPDF directly because it is faster than `GetPageText()` (see the example `text_search` for further information).

The class `CPDFEditText()` (used in the example `edit_text`) contains already a rather complex and complete text replacement algorithm. You should try to understand how this algorithm works so that you can extend it. This class demonstrates especially how space characters can be identified and how they must be handled when replacing texts.

**Remarks:**

`GetPageText()` parses the content stream of the currently open page or template as it is at time of executing the function. The content stream contains all operators and values which were added beforehand with DynaPDF functions incl. the contents of imported PDF files. If texts should be replaced or deleted it is usually best to process imported page(s) before adding new contents.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds and if further records are available the return value is 1. If the function fails or if no further records are available the return value is 0.

If a content stream contains no text the return value is 0 and the members *TextLen* and *KerningCount* are set to 0. If a content stream contains only one text record the return value is 0 that means that no further records are available but the members *TextLen* and *KerningCount* are set to values greater 0.

## GetPageWidth

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetPageWidth(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the width of the currently open page. If no open page can be detected the return value is the default width which will be used for newly created pages.

## GetPDFVersion

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetPDFVersion(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the minor version of the output PDF file as integer value. Zero stand for PDF 1.0, one for PDF 1.1 and so on.

## GetPrintSettings

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetPrintSettings(
    const void* IPDF,
    struct TPDFPrintSettings* Settings)

struct TPDFPrintSettings
{
    TDuplexMode DuplexMode; // See below
    SI32 NumCopies;          // -1 means not set. The maximum value is 5
    SI32 PickTrayByPDFSize; // -1 means not set. 0 == false, 1 == true
    // If set, the array contains PrintRangesCount * 2 values. Each pair
    // consists of the first and last page of the sub-range. The first page
    // in the PDF file is denoted by 0.
    UI32* PrintRanges;
    UI32 PrintRangesCount; // Number of ranges
    TPrintScaling PrintScaling; // dpmNone means not set
    /* 9 reserved fields follow*/
};

typedef enum
{
    dpmNone, // Use the default value of the viewer
    dpmSimplex,
    dpmFlipShortEdge,
    dpmFlipLongEdge
}TDuplexMode;
```

The function retrieves the currently defined print settings of the document. The print settings are used to initialize the print dialog in a viewer application. See also SetPrintSettings().

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***GetResolution***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetResolution(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the resolution in DPI (Dots per Inch), in which images are stored by DynaPDF. The value will be ignored if the property *SaveNewImageFormat* was set to false.

Default value = 150 (DPI)

***GetSaveNewImageFormat***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetSaveNewImageFormat(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

If false (0), images are not downscaled if necessary.

Default value = 1 (*true*)

***GetSeparationInfo***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetSeparationInfo(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    char* ADDR Colorant,       // Colorant name  
    TExtColorSpace ADDR CS) // Separation, DeviceN, or NChannel
```

The function returns the separation info stored in the current open page.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails or if the page contains no separation info the return value is 0.

***GetSpaceWidth***

Syntax:

```
double fntGetSpaceWidth(  
    const void* IFont, // Pointer to internal font object  
    double FontSize)   // Font size to compute the space width
```

The function returns the width of the space character of the font depending on the font size. If the font contains no space character a default size is used to compute the space width.

The parameter *IFont* must be a valid pointer to a PDF font. Such a pointer is returned by *GetPageText()*, *EnumDocFonts()*, or by the content parser (see *ParseContent()*).



**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the space width. If the function fails the return value is zero. This function does not use the exception handling of DynaPDF. No error message is set on failure.

***GetStrokeColor***

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfGetStrokeColor(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the current stroke color. The returned color value is not converted to the active color space. For example, if the color space will be changed with [SetColorSpace\(\)](#), the color value is still the same. Colors must be correctly defined in the current color space.

Default value = 0 (Black)

***GetTabLen***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetTabLen(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the tabulator length in spaces that is used to emulate tabulators during text formatting (see [WriteFText\(\)](#) for further information).

Because tabulators are emulated with spaces they have no fixed width. The width of a tabulator depends on the width of the space character of the active font.

Default value = 3

***GetTemplCount***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetTemplCount(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the number of templates used by a page. The page must be opened with [EditPage\(\)](#) beforehand.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of templates. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetTemplHandle***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetTemplHandle(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the handle of the current open template or a negative error code on failure.

## ***GetTemplHeight***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetTemplHeight(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 Handle)      // Template handle
```

The function returns the height of a template. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid template handle.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the height of the template. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetTemplWidth***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetTemplWidth(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 Handle)      // Template handle
```

The function returns the width of a template. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid template handle.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the width of the template. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***GetTextDrawMode***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetTextDrawMode(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    dmNormal          = 0,  
    dmStroke          = 1,  
    dmFillStroke      = 2,  
    dmInvisible       = 3,  
    dmFillClip        = 4,  
    dmStrokeClip      = 5,  
    dmFillStrokeClip  = 6,
```

```
    dmClipping          = 7
}TDrawMode;
```

The function returns the text draw mode. See draw modes are described in detail under [SetTextDrawMode\(\)](#).

## ***GetTextRect***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetTextRect(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    double ADDR PosX,    // X-Coordinate of the rectangle
    double ADDR PosY,    // Y-Coordinate of the rectangle
    double ADDR Width,   // Width of the rectangle
    double ADDR Height) // Height of the rectangle
```

The function retrieves the bounding rectangle to output formatted text. No parameter of the function must be NULL. See also [SetTextRect\(\)](#), [WriteFText\(\)](#).

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***GetTextRise***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetTextRise(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the current text rise used to output text. Text rise specifies the distance, in unscaled text space units, to move the baseline up or down from its default location. Positive values of text rise move the baseline up. Adjustments to the baseline are useful for drawing superscripts or subscripts. The default location of the baseline can be restored by setting the text rise to 0. The figure below illustrates the effect of the text rise. Text rise always applies to the vertical coordinate in text space. See also [SetTextRise\(\)](#).

The text <sup>moves</sup> around <sup>the</sup> baseline.

Default value = 0

## GetTextScaling

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetTextScaling(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the current value of horizontal text scaling. The scaling value adjusts the width of glyphs by stretching or compressing them in the horizontal direction. Its value is specified as a percentage of the normal width of the glyphs, with 100 being the normal width. See also [SetTextScaling\(\)](#).

Default value = 100

Value = 100	Word
Value = 50	WordWord

## GetTextWidth

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetTextWidth(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    const char* AText) // Null-terminated text string
```

The function computes the width of a text string in horizontal writing mode and the height in vertical writing mode. The graphics state parameters character spacing, word spacing, text scaling, and the current font size are all considered. A font must be set before this function can be used.

The function computes the visible width of the string. This is the width **excluding** the last character spacing. The bounding box of the string is the text width **plus** the current character spacing. This behaviour must be taken into account when writing right aligned text with [WriteFText\(\)](#). Due to certain formatting rules [WriteFText\(\)](#) must use the real bounding box of the text.

**Visible Text Width (character spacing = 5.0)**

C h a r a c t e r   S p a c i n g

**Real Bounding Box (character spacing = 5.0)**

C h a r a c t e r   S p a c i n g

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and wide string version.

CJK to Unicode code pages are supported by the ANSI version only because CJK strings must be converted to Unicode beforehand. These conversion algorithms are available in the ANSI version only. However, native CJK character sets are also supported with the wide string version in combination with a CJK font. See [SetFont\(\)](#) for further information.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the string width in un-scaled units. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

### ***GetTextWidth (Font API)***

Syntax:

```
double fntGetTextWidth(
    const void* IFont, // Pointer of the font object
    const BYTE* Text,  // PDF Text string
    UI32 Len,          // Length of the string
    float CharSpacing, // Current character spacing
    float WordSpacing, // Current word spacing
    float TextScale)   // Current text scaling
```

The function can be used to calculate the width of a sub string that was returned by the content parser (see [ParseContent\(\)](#) for further information). The parameter IFont must be a valid pointer of a font object that was provided in the TSetFont callback function. Note that this function is optimized for speed and does not use the normal error handling of DynaPDF. The parameters CharSpacing, WordSpacing, and TextScale must be taken from the current graphics state.

The function returns the real text width of a string:

#### **Visible Text Width (character spacing = 5.0)**

C h a r a c t e r   S p a c i n g
-----------------------------------

#### **Real Text Width (character spacing = 5.0)**

C h a r a c t e r   S p a c i n g
-----------------------------------

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the string width measured in text space. If the parameter IFont is set NULL the return value is 0.0.

## GetTextWidthEx

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetTextWidthEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* AText, // Text string  
    UI32 Len)          // Length of the string in characters
```

The function computes the width of a text string. The graphics state parameters character spacing, word spacing, text scaling, and the current font size are all considered. A font must be set before this function can be used.

The function computes the visible width of the string. This is the width **excluding** the last character spacing. The bounding box of the string is the text width **plus** the current character spacing. This behaviour must be taken into account when writing right aligned text with [WriteFText\(\)](#). Due to certain formatting rules [WriteFText\(\)](#) uses the bounding box of a text string to output text.

### Visible Text Width (character spacing = 5.0)

C h a r a c t e r   S p a c i n g
-----------------------------------

### Real Bounding Box (character spacing = 5.0)

C h a r a c t e r   S p a c i n g
-----------------------------------

### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

CJK to Unicode code pages are supported by the ANSI version only because CJK strings must be converted to Unicode beforehand. These conversion algorithms are available in the ANSI version only. However, native CJK character sets are supported by the Unicode version in combination with a CJK font. See [SetFont\(\)](#) for further information.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the string width in un-scaled units. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## GetTransparentColor

Syntax:

```
UI32 pdfGetTransparentColor(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the transparent color value that is used for newly inserted images.

Default value = 0xFFFFFFFF (RGB White)

## ***GetTrapped***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfGetTrapped(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the trapped key of the document. The default value is false. However, the real default value is unknown that means the key is not written to the file. The trapped key must be set with [SetTrapped\(\)](#) if it should be written to the file.

## ***GetUseExactPwd***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetUseExactPwd(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

If the property *UseExactPwd* is false, an encrypted PDF file can always be decrypted, if either the open or owner password in the file is an empty string. If true, the open or owner password must be known to open the PDF file (see also [SetUseExactPwd\(\)](#)).

Default value = 1 ([true](#))

### **Remarks:**

If your application should allow the modification of encrypted PDF files, you may check the access permissions to grant user rights, if the file was opened with the open password instead of the owner password (see also [GetUserRights\(\)](#)).

Due to the license agreement of Adobe, all manufacturers of applications which make the treatment of encrypted PDF files possible, must respect the access permissions of a PDF file, if the file was opened with the open password.

Only if the file was opened with the owner password, all rights should be granted. See [PDF Reference 1.5](#) for further information.

The property *UseExactPwd* should be true, if the application is a commercial software product.

## ***GetUseGlobalImpFiles***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetUseGlobalImpFiles(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The property specifies whether import files should be loaded permanent into memory, e.g. to enable splitting of large PDF files. An open import file will not be closed when [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [FreePDF\(\)](#) is called when the property is true. See also [SetUseGlobalImpFiles\(\)](#).

Default value = 0 ([false](#))

## GetUserRights

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetUserRights(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

typedef SI32 TRestrictions;
#define rsDenyNothing      0x00000000 // Editing is not restricted
#define rsDenyAll          0x00000F3C // Deny anything
#define rsPrint            0x00000004 // Deny printing
#define rsModify           0x00000008 // Deny modification of contents
#define rsCopyObj          0x00000010 // Deny copying of contents
#define rsAddObj           0x00000020 // No commenting
/* 128/256 bit only -> not meaningful with 40 bit encryption */
#define rsFillInFormFields 0x00000100 // requires rsModify + rsAddObj
#define rsExtractObj       0x00000200 // requires rsModify
#define rsAssemble         0x00000400 // requires rsModify
#define rsPrintHighRes     0x00000800 // Disable high res. printing
#define rsExlMetadata      0x00001000 // Metadata streams are unencrypted?
#define rsEmbFilesOnly     0x00002000 // If set, rsExlMetadata is set too
```

The function returns the encryption flags of the last imported PDF file or **-1** if the file was not encrypted. These flags must be considered when opening an encrypted PDF with user privileges, that is, when the open password was used to decrypt the file. The print flags `rsPrint` and `rsPrintHighRes` can be ignored for editing, but the file must be encrypted again with the same encryption flags.

The encryption flags are described in detail under [CloseFileEx\(\)](#). If no file was imported beforehand the return value is **-1**.

## GetUseStdFonts

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetUseStdFonts(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns 1 (true) if the **14 standard fonts** are enabled. PDF viewer applications support 14 standard fonts, these fonts are not embedded by default, also if the parameter `Embed` of the function [SetFont\(\)](#) is true and if the font file is available.

If a standard font should be embedded it is recommended to disable the internal fonts supported by DynaPDF. See also [SetFont\(\)](#) or [SetUseStdFonts\(\)](#).

Default value = 1 (**true**)



## ***GetUseSystemFonts***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetUseSystemFonts(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The property specifies whether the default font directory of the operating system should be added to the list of font search paths. On Windows this is the %Windows%/Fonts directory plus additional fonts which can be named in the Registry.

On Mac OS X the following font directories will be added to the list of font search paths (in this order):

```
~/Library/Fonts/  
/Library/Fonts/  
/System/Library/Fonts/
```

System fonts are loaded on demand, e.g. when a function tries to load a font. To improve processing speed the internal font cache is hold in memory until the PDF instance will be deleted. Additional font search paths can be added with [AddFontSearchPath\(\)](#).

Because Linux and UNIX operating system support no default font directory the property is ignored.

### **Return values:**

The return value is 1 if systems fonts are enabled, or zero otherwise.

## ***GetUseTransparency***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetUseTransparency(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The property specifies whether images should get a transparent background. If true, the transparent color (see [SetTransparentColor\(\)](#)) is used to mask an image. The property has no effect for JPEG compressed images.

Default value = 1 ([true](#))

## ***GetUseVisibleCoords***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetUseVisibleCoords(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The property specifies whether DynaPDF should consider the crop box to calculate to position of an object. The crop box crops a page, but the paper format (media box) is left unchanged. To move the coordinates into the visible area, set the property to true. Coordinates can then be used as if no crop box were defined. The bounding boxes are described in detail under [SetBBox\(\)](#).

## GetViewerPreferences

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfGetViewerPreferences(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    SI32 ADDR Preference,  // Preference
    SI32 ADDR AddVal)      // Parameter of the preference if any

typedef SI32 TViewerPreference;
#define vpUseNone          0x00000000 // No preference is set
#define vpHideToolBar      0x00000001 // No parameter
#define vpHideMenuBar      0x00000002 // No parameter
#define vpHideWindowUI     0x00000004 // No parameter
#define vpFitWindow        0x00000008 // No parameter
#define vpCenterWindow     0x00000010 // No parameter
#define vpDisplayDocTitle  0x00000020 // (PDF 1.4) No parameter
#define vpNonFullScrPageMode 0x00000040 // Key, values see below
#define vpDirection        0x00000080 // (PDF 1.3)
#define vpViewArea         0x00000100 // (PDF 1.4)
#define vpViewClip         0x00000200 // (PDF 1.4)
#define vpPrintArea        0x00000400 // (PDF 1.4)
#define vpPrintClip        0x00000800 // (PDF 1.4)

typedef SI32 TViewPrefAddVal;
#define avNone              0x00000000
#define avNonFullScrUseNone 0x00000001
#define avNonFullScrUseOutlines 0x00000002
#define avNonFullScrUseThumbs 0x00000004
#define avNonFullScrUseOC    0x00000400 // PDF 1.6
#define avDirectionL2R      0x00000008
#define avDirectionR2L     0x00000010
#define avViewPrintArtBox   0x00000020
#define avViewPrintBleedBox 0x00000040
#define avViewPrintCropBox  0x00000080
#define avViewPrintMediaBox 0x00000100
#define avViewPrintTrimBox  0x00000200

#define AV_NON_FULL_SRC_MASK 0x00000005
#define AV_DIRECTION_MASK   0x00000018
#define AV_VIEW_PRINT_MASK  0x000003E0
```

The function retrieves the viewer preferences specified in the document. The parameters *Preference* and *AddVal* are bit masks; they must be masked out with a bitwise and operator. Preferences in red color are keys which have a corresponding value which must be taken from the parameter *AddVal*.

Note that more than one preference can be set at time.

The mask values can be used to easily mask out a specific parameter, see the example below.

**Example (C++):**

...

```

SI32 pref = 0, value = 0;
pdfGetViewerPreferences(pdf, pref, value);
if ((pref & vpDirection) && (value & avDirectionR2L))
    printf("Right to left reading order was defined!\n");
if (pref & AV_NON_FULL_SRC_MASK)
{
    printf("Non full screen mode is: \n");
    switch(value & AV_NON_FULL_SRC_MASK)
    {
        case avNonFullScrUseNone:      printf("Use none\n");
        case avNonFullScrUseOutlines:   printf("Use outlines\n");
        case avNonFullScrUseThumbs:     printf("Use thumbs\n");
    }
}
...

```

## ***GetWMFDefExtent***

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfGetWMFDefExtent(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 ADDR Width,  // Width in 0.01 millimetres units
    UI32 ADDR Height) // Height in 0.01 millimetres units

```

The function retrieves the default size which is used to convert non-portable WMF files to EMF. See [InsertMetafile\(\)](#) for further information.

Default value:

Width = 0;

Height = 0;

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***GetWMFPixelPerInch***

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfGetWMFPixelPerInch(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

```

The function returns the default pixels per inch of the y-axis which are used to convert portable WMF files to EMF. DynaPDF uses a corrected value to get exact proportions. See [InsertMetafile\(\)](#) for further information.

Default value = 2400

## ***GetWordSpacing***

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetWordSpacing(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function returns the current word spacing.

Default value = 0

Value = 0	Word Space
Value = 80	Word                      Space

## ***HaveOpenDoc***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfHaveOpenDoc(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

If an error occurred it is not always clear whether the PDF file was already deleted or if it is still in memory. Therefore, this function can be used to determine whether the PDF file was deleted or not.

### **Return values:**

If an open PDF file is in memory the return value is 1. If no open PDF file is in memory the return value is 0.

## HighlightAnnot

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfHighlightAnnot(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TAnnotType SubType,        // Allowed values are atHighlight, atSquiggly,
                                // atStrikeOut, or atUnderline
    double PosX,               // X-Coordinate
    double PosY,               // Y-Coordinate
    double Width,              // Annotation height
    double Height,             // Annotation width
    UI32 Color,                // Highlight color
    const char* Author,        // Optional author
    const char* Subject,       // Optional subject (PDF 1.5)
    const char* Comment)       // Optional comment
```

The function creates a Highlight annotation. Highlight annotations are used to mark text on a PDF page.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point PosX, PosY defines the lower left corner of the bounding rectangle. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

The parameter *Color* specifies the highlight color; it must be defined in RGB color space. The line width of a Strikout or Underline annotation is not adjustable. The line width depends on the size of the annotation and is automatically calculated.

The active color space must be set to DeviceRGB before creating the annotation. See [SetColorSpace\(\)](#) for further information.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ImportBookmarks

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfImportBookmarks(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

This function imports the outline tree of the currently opened import file (see [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImportBuffer\(\)](#)).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of imported bookmarks. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ImportCatalogObjects

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfImportCatalogObjects(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function imports global objects of the currently opened import file such as bookmarks, JavaScripts, embedded files, open actions, invisible page templates, rendering intents, the document info entries, and certain other global properties such as the page mode or page layout.

These objects are normally imported by [ImportPDFFile\(\)](#). However, in cases where this function cannot be used, it is possible to import the global objects manually if necessary.

**Remarks:**

The function considers the current import flags. If certain objects are not imported, check whether the right import flags are set. See also [SetImportFlags\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ImportDocInfo***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfImportDocInfo(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function imports the document info entries from the currently opened import file. Already existing entries are not overridden.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ImportPage***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfImportPage(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 PageNum)     // Page number
```

The function imports a page of an external PDF file and converts it to a template. The external PDF file must be opened with [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImportBuffer\(\)](#) beforehand. The parameter *PageNum* specifies the page number that should be imported; the first page has the number 1.

The conversion of pages to templates is required if an imported page should be scaled or placed on a specific position or if an imported page should be used on more than one destination page, e.g. as a custom page background.

However, in cases where the conversion of pages to templates is not necessary the usage of [ImportPageEx\(\)](#) within an open page is preferred. In this case it is also possible to import interactive objects with the page such as annotations or form fields. Such objects cannot be imported with [ImportPage\(\)](#) because templates do not support interactive objects.

The new template is **not** placed on the current open page if any. To make the template visible the template must be placed on a page or other template with [PlaceTemplate\(\)](#) or [PlaceTemplateEx\(\)](#). The template can be used on arbitrary pages and arbitrary positions. It is also possible to scale a template like an image. See [PlaceTemplateEx\(\)](#) for further information.

Imported pages are often called watermark. A watermark is usually a simple text or some kind of graphics that was imported from a PDF file. Such a graphics can be placed in background or in foreground of a page. To place a template in background, add the template as first object to the desired page. If the template should appear in foreground, add it as last object. The background of an imported page is transparent as long as it doesn't contain any opaque objects which blank out the entire background. Scanned images which are converted to PDF are often not transparent. Those pages must be placed in background to avoid overlaying objects.

It is possible to import an external page outside of an open page, and it is also possible to import a page outside of an open output PDF file. However, all templates will be deleted when [CloseFile\(\)](#) is called the next time. It is not possible to import an external page as template and hold it in memory for use with more than one PDF file.

### ***Bounding boxes***

As mentioned earlier, imported pages are converted to templates by this function. A template has only one bounding box, but a PDF page has 5 bounding boxes (see [SetBBox\(\)](#) for a full explanation). The most important bounding boxes are the media box and crop box of the original page.

A bounding box is defined as a rectangle giving the coordinates pair of diagonally opposite corners. The media box of a page is usually expressed in a normalized form where the coordinates of the lower-left point are set to 0.

However, the normalized form is used in 99% of all available documents but it is also possible that a document uses a non-normalized form. For instance, the media box can look like this:

```
mediabox.Left    = -100.0; // lower-left  x
mediabox.Bottom  = -100.0; // lower-left  y
mediabox.Right   = 200.0; // upper-right x
mediabox.Top     = 200.0; // upper-right y
```

The size of the page that uses such a bounding box is 300 x 300 units. The problem is that the coordinate origin lies at -100, -100. The page can also contain a crop box and the original page can be rotated. This makes the handling more complicated.

When placing such a template with [PlaceTemplate\(\)](#) on a page without further considerations the result can be wrong because [PlaceTemplate\(\)](#) does not consider the coordinate origin or the original page orientation.

To simplify the work with imported templates [PlaceTemplateEx\(\)](#) should be used instead. This function considers the coordinate origin, crop box, and it preserves the original orientation when the template is placed on a page. See [PlaceTemplateEx\(\)](#) for further information.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is a template handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***ImportPageEx***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfImportPageEx(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 PageNum,      // Page number
    double ScaleX,     // Horizontal scaling factor (1.0 = no scaling)
    double ScaleY)     // Vertical scaling factor (1.0 = no scaling)
```

The function imports a PDF page of an external PDF file incl. interactive objects such as annotations, form fields and so on, if any. The external PDF must be opened with the function [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImportBuffer\(\)](#) beforehand.

Link annotations and article beads are not imported by default because the destinations of such annotations become invalid if the remaining pages are not imported in the same order as they appeared in the original PDF file. Web links are affected too because it is not possible to distinguish between a normal page link and web link annotations during import.

However, if you can make sure that all pages of a PDF file will be imported in the same order as in the original file you can set the import flag [ifAllPageObjects](#) (see [SetImportFlags\(\)](#)) to disable the normal import behaviour. If this flag is set all annotation types will be imported. However, article beads are always discarded by this function because these objects depend on other global objects which cannot be resolved when importing pages manually. Article beads can only be preserved if the entire PDF file is imported with [ImportPDFFile\(\)](#).



The function can be used in two ways, inside an open page or outside.

### ***Calling the function inside of an open page***

If the function is called inside an open page, the external page will be imported and scaled by using the scaling factors *ScaleX* and *ScaleY*, if the import flag `ifImportAsPage` is **not** set (see [SetImportFlags\(\)](#) for further information). All bounding boxes of the page will be scaled too and the orientation will be set to the value of the source page.

An external page can only be scaled to an arbitrary format if it is converted to a template. This conversion is done if the import flag `ifImportAsPage` is not set (default).

However, if a page must not be scaled or used as a template on multiple pages the flag `ifImportAsPage` should be set to avoid the conversion of pages to templates. In this case, the scaling factors will be ignored and the page is imported as is.

If an imported page contains a crop box (see [GetBBox\(\)](#)) the property [UseVisibleCoords](#) can be used to move all coordinates into the visible area of the crop box. If the property is true, all functions consider the coordinate origin of the crop box to calculate the position of an object.

### ***Calling the function outside of an open page***

If the function is called outside of an open page, no interactive objects are imported and the scaling factors *ScaleX* and *ScaleY* are ignored. The page becomes converted to a template. The function works then exactly like [ImportPage\(\)](#). The resulting template can be placed on one or more pages with [PlaceTemplate\(\)](#) or better [PlaceTemplateEx\(\)](#). The latter version is preferred because it considers the coordinate origin of the template as well as a maybe existing crop box and it preserves the original page orientation.

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds and if the imported page was converted to a template, the return value is a template handle, a value greater or equal zero.

If the imported page was not converted to a template and if the function succeeds, the return value is zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ImportPDFFile

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfImportPDFFile(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 DestPage,    // Add the new pages at this position
    double ScaleX,    // Horizontal scaling factor (1.0 = no scaling)
    double ScaleY)    // Vertical scaling factor (1.0 = no scaling)
```

The function imports an external PDF file including interactive objects such as annotations, bookmarks, form fields, and so on. DynaPDF supports a large set of flags to enable import of required objects only. Unwanted objects can be removed by the function if necessary. The import flags are described in detail at [SetImportFlags\(\)](#) and [SetImportFlags2\(\)](#).

The parameter *DestPage* specifies the destination page on which the new pages will be inserted or added if the pages already exist. It is possible to import multiple PDF files on the same or overlapping destination page.

### Example 1:

```
...
pdfOpenImportFile(pdf, "c:/test1.pdf");
pdfImportPDFFile(pdf, 1, 1.0, 1.0); // Start import at page one
// The previous PDF file will be closed automatically.
pdfOpenImportFile(pdf, "c:/test2.pdf");
// No we have overlapping pages. For instance, if both PDF files
// contain 3 pages, then we get 3 pages in which the pages of the second
// PDF file are placed on top of the already existing ones.
pdfImportPDFFile(pdf, 1, 1.0, 1.0);
pdfCloseImportFile(pdf);
...
```

### Example 2:

PDF files can be merged as follows:

```
...
pdfOpenImportFile(pdf, "c:/test1.pdf");
SI32 nextPage;
// We avoid the conversion of pages to templates in this case.
pdfSetImportFlags(ifImportAll | ifImportAsPage);
nextPage = pdfImportPDFFile(pdf, 1, 1.0, 1.0); // Start import at page one
// The previous PDF file will be automatically closed.
pdfOpenImportFile(pdf, "c:/test2.pdf");
// Add the new file behind the previous one.
pdfImportPDFFile(pdf, nextPage + 1, 1, 1);
pdfCloseImportFile(pdf);
...
```

Imported pages are converted to templates by default. This conversion is done by default mainly to archive the same runtime behaviour in comparison to older versions of DynaPDF and to enable

scaling of PDF pages (scaling is only possible with templates). So, if you want to scale the pages to another page format then the conversion of pages to templates is required.

However, in most cases scaling is not required. The conversion of pages to templates should be avoided in this case by setting the flag `ifImportAsPage`:

```
pdfSetImportFlags(pdf, ifImportAll | ifImportAsPage);
```

The advantage is that non-converted pages are a little bit smaller and a PDF file can be imported and written to disk arbitrary often without increasing the file size or the nesting depth of templates.

Especially the nesting depth of templates can be an important aspect if a PDF file must be edited multiple times. Note that each time a PDF file is imported, while pages are converted to templates, the nesting depth of templates becomes incremented. So, if you would import and save a PDF file in a loop, while each time pages are converted to templates, the resulting PDF file becomes larger and larger, and the nesting depth of templates becomes higher and higher. A nesting depth of more than 8 can already cause printing problems. Viewer applications support usually much higher nesting depths but the memory usage becomes then very large and the rendering speed is decreased.

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the last page number that was touched. For example, if the document in memory contains already 20 pages, and if we import a PDF file with 23 pages, and if the destination page is 21 the return value should be 43 because this is the last page that was invoked during import.

If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

### ***InitExtGState***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfInitExtGState(  
    struct TPDFExtGState* GS) // Structure to be initialized
```

The function initializes the structure `GS` with default values. The initialization is strongly recommended before creating an extended graphics state object. See also [CreateExtGState\(\)](#).

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***InitStack***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfInitStack(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    struct TPDFStack* Stack) // Stack variable to be initialized
```

The function initializes the variable *Stack* with default values and prepares the editing of a content stream. This function must always be called before a content stream can be parsed with the function [GetPageText\(\)](#). See also [GetPageText\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***InsertBMPFromBuffer (obsolete)***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfInsertBMPFromBuffer(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,               // X-Coordinate of destination rectangle  
    double PosY,               // Y-Coordinate of destination rectangle  
    double ScaleWidth,         // Scaled width of destination rectangle  
    double ScaleHeight,        // Scaled height of destination rectangle  
    const void* Buffer) // Source buffer of the DIB
```

The function inserts a Device Independent Bitmap from a file buffer. The parameter *Buffer* requires a normal file buffer as bitmap image.

This function is marked as obsolete, please use [InsertImageFromBuffer\(\)](#) if possible. This function will be removed in DynaPDF 3.0.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the image handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***InsertBMPFromHandle***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfInsertBMPFromHandle(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,               // X-Coordinate of destination rectangle  
    double PosY,               // Y-Coordinate of destination rectangle  
    double ScaleWidth,         // Scaled width of destination rectangle  
    double ScaleHeight,        // Scaled height of destination rectangle  
    void* hBitmap);           // Windows HBITMAP handle
```

This function inserts a bitmap in the same way as [InsertImage\(\)](#) but accepts a HBITMAP handle as input. The bitmap must not be selected into a device context when calling this function.

See also [InsertImage\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the image handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

### ***InsertImage (obsolete)***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfInsertImage(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of destination rectangle
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of destination rectangle
    double ScaleWidth,   // Scaled width of destination rectangle
    double ScaleHeight,  // Scaled height of destination rectangle
    const char* AFile)   // File path
```

This function is marked as obsolete, please use the function [InsertImageEx\(\)](#) if possible. The function [InsertImageEx\(\)](#) will be renamed to [InsertImage\(\)](#) in DynaPDF 3.0.

### ***InsertImageEx***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfInsertImageEx(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of destination rectangle
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of destination rectangle
    double ScaleWidth,   // Scaled width of destination rectangle
    double ScaleHeight,  // Scaled height of destination rectangle
    const char* AFile,   // File path
    UI32 Index)          // Image index
```

The function inserts an image from a file. The parameter *Index* specifies the image index of a multi-page image. The first image index is denoted by 1. If the image file is not a multi-page image, the parameter *Index* will be ignored. To determine the number of images stored in an image file call the function [GetImageCount\(\)](#).

### ***Supported image formats***

The function does not depend on a correct file extension. It parses the image header to determine the image format.

- BMP -> Device independent bitmaps with and without a valid file header. Embedded PNG or JPEG images are supported.
- GIF -> The best alternate compression filter for GIF images is Flate encode. GIF images are treated as single page image. It is not possible to access a specific frame of a GIF animation.
- JPG -> JPEG images should be inserted in pass-through mode if possible. See the description of the compression filter below.

- JP2, JPC, JPX -> These formats are JPEG 2000 compressed images.
- PBM, PGM, PNM, PPM -> ASCII and Binary encoded images.
- PNG -> Flate compressed images. Flate is a lossless compression filter.
- PSD -> Only the preview image is processed.
- TIFF

### ***How to get the image format?***

The most important image parameters such as width, height, bits per pixel and the default compression filter can be retrieved with the function [ReadImageFormat\(\)](#) or [ReadImageFormatEx\(\)](#).

### ***Color spaces***

The handling of image color space is described in detail at [Color Spaces and Images](#).

### ***How to change the color depth?***

DynaPDF can reduce the color depth of true color images to 256 color images. The color depth will be changed if the default color depth was set to 8 bit per pixel and if the used compression filter is Flate. The default color depth can be changed with the function [SetDefBitsPerPixel\(\)](#).

### ***Compression Filters***

At time of publication DynaPDF supports Flate, CCITT Fax G3, CCITT Fax G4, JPEG, and JPEG2000 compression. The compression filter can be individually set with [SetCompressionFilter\(\)](#).

#### ***Flate Encode***

Flate encode (also called zip compression) is a loss-less compression filter. It can be used with all supported color spaces. It produces good compression ratios for images with large uniform surfaces. It is also the best compression filter for images with color depths less than 8 bits. The compression level can be adjusted with the function [SetCompressionLevel\(\)](#).

#### ***CCITT Fax G3/4***

CCITT Fax G3 and G4 compression are lossless compression filters for 1 bit b/w images. The filter produces very good compression rates on typical fax images which contain much text. It is very fast but less flexible in comparison to flate. For example, dithered images produce often a drastical expansion instead of a compression. CCITT Fax G3 and G4 compression can be used on known image types, typically fax input, but it should not be used as a default filter for b/w images.

#### ***JPEG Encode***

JPEG is a lossy compression method which produces very good compression rates for color and grey scale images. It can be used in combination with all supported color spaces. The compression ratio and resulting quality can be adjusted with [SetJPEGQuality\(\)](#); the default quality is 70%.

JPEG images are inserted in pass-through mode if possible. This is always the case if the image resolution is lower or equal to the specified resolution (see [SetResolution\(\)](#)). Images of a higher resolution are downsampled by default, and therefore, the image must be decompressed.

The image scaler can be disabled with [SetSaveNewImageFormat\(\)](#). It is also possible to explicitly disable the pass-through mode by setting the JPEG quality to a negative value. The image will be re-compressed in this case. This can be useful if a higher compression ratio should be archived.

Images are compressed with optimized Huffman tables if the current compression level is set to `clMax` (see [SetCompressionLevel\(\)](#)). This level produces better compression ratios without losing quality. However, the optimized compression method is minimal slower than the normal one.

JPEG images are inserted in path-through mode if either the property [SetSaveNewImageFormat\(\)](#) is set to false (default = true) or if no further conversion or downscaling is required. CMYK images must always be recompressed because PDF viewer applications require another byte order.

JPEG images can contain an embedded ICC profile that can be used to create an ICC based color space for the image (ICC based color spaces are device independent). To enable the usage of embedded ICC profiles set the flag `gfUseImageColorSpace` with [SetGStateFlags\(\)](#). See also [Color Spaces and Images](#).

### ***JPEG2000 Encode (Experimental)***

JPEG2000 is a compression method that supports loss-less and lossy compression. It produces very good compression rates for color and grey scale images, and it can be used with all color depths and supported color spaces.

The loss-less variant is used if the current JPEG quality is set to 0 or 1000 (see below). However, the compression ratio of loss-less JPEG2000 compression is not very high and Flate compression produces mostly much better compression ratios and it is up to 30 times faster.

The lossy variant of JPEG2000 compression supports two different compression methods: Real-Mode and Integer-Mode, which produces slightly different output at high compression rates. The resulting image looks slightly smoother if Real-Mode is used. The compression method can be adjusted with [SetCompressionLevel\(\)](#). The Real-Mode is used if the compression level is set to `clMax`, otherwise the Integer-Mode is used. However, the compression level does not change the compression ratio in this case.

The compression ratio can be adjusted with [SetJPEGQuality\(\)](#). The name "JPEG Quality" refers normally to the JPEG compression filter, however, the value has a completely different meaning when using JPEG 2000 compression.

The property JPEG quality can be in the range from 0 to 1000, but it does not adjust the loss of quality; it is used as a divisor of the raw uncompressed image data size to the wished compressed image data size. This makes the usage very complicated and it is practically impossible to find a suitable mathematically value that produces good results in most cases.

The value 1000 means that loss-less compression should be used. Lower values are used as follows:



```
compressed_image_size = uncompressed_raw_size * JPEGQuality / 1000
```

Lower values produces higher compression rates, however, worse image quality.

Another disadvantage of the filter is the bad compression speed. This is maybe a result of the bad design of the used Jasper library, but it seems that JPEG 2000 compression is generally slow. Other commercial JPEG 2000 libraries are about 2 times faster, but this is still incredible slow in comparison to JPEG compression. In addition, the resulting image quality is practically identically with JPEG compression if the same compression ratio was archived.

JPEG 2000 images can contain an embedded ICC profile that can be used to create an ICC based color space for the image (ICC based color spaces are device independent). To enable the usage of embedded ICC profiles set the flag `gfUseImageColorSpace` with [SetGStateFlags\(\)](#). See also [Color Spaces and Images](#).

### ***TIFF images***

The TIFF image format is the most complex format of all available image formats. DynaPDF supports a full featured implementation of the TIFF format incl. most currently available compression methods and color spaces. TIFF images can be organized in scanlines, tiles or stripes, all three formats are fully supported by DynaPDF.

If the image is a multi-page image, a specific image can be selected with the parameter *Index*. The first image has the index 1. The number of available images inside a multi-page image can be determined with the function [GetImageCount\(\)](#).

TIFF images can be defined in device dependent and device independent color spaces, such as Lab, CalGray, CalRGB, or ICC based color spaces. If the original color should be preserved if possible, set the flag `gfUseImageColorSpace` with [SetGStateFlags\(\)](#). See also [Color Spaces and Images](#).

### ***Why does DynaPDF not support LZW compression?***

LZW is a very fast lossless compression filter that can be used for sampled images and arbitrary binary data. Flate encoded output is usually more compact than LZW encoded output for the same input, but Flate encoding is considerably slower than LZW. However, LZW encoding is marked as obsolete by Adobe. Because it is not clear whether this filter will be supported in future versions of Adobe's Acrobat, it will not be added to DynaPDF.

### ***What about JBIG2 compression?***

JBIG2 is a compression method that was designed to compress 1 bit images such as sampled faxes. It supports loss-less and lossy compression. Because JBIG2 supports a global symbol table that can be shared among pages (or images) very high compression ratios can be archived with multi-page documents. The JBIG2 compression filter is not yet implemented in DynaPDF but it is already planned to add it as soon as possible.



### ***How to calculate the image size?***

The calculation of the image size should be easy as possible. In most cases, images must be inserted with exact proportions. Therefore, all image functions support two special values to make the calculation easier. The width and height can be calculated as follows:

- If *ScaleWidth* or *ScaleHeight* is **-1** the function uses the original width or height from the image. If both parameters are **-1** the image will be inserted with a resolution of 72 DPI.
- If *ScaleWidth* **or** *ScaleHeight* is 0, the missing value is calculated in relation to the given value of *ScaleHeight* or *ScaleWidth* to preserve the image's aspect ratio. The resulting output is an image with exact proportions relative to its original size.
- If *ScaleWidth* **and** *ScaleHeight* is 0, the original size is used (same effect as -1).
- A negative value of *Width* or *Height* mirrors the image on the x- and or y-axis.

### ***Image Resolution***

Images will be scaled to the defined resolution (see [SetResolution\(\)](#)) if the original size is larger than required, and if the property [SaveNewImageFormat](#) is set to true (default).

Images are downscaled with a high quality scaling algorithm to avoid loss of image quality. However, 1 bit images are never downscaled because the loss of quality can be very large.

If the image resolution is only a little bit larger than required, the new image can require more disk space than the original unscaled image. This is an effect of the color interpolation because scaled images contain usually more colors than the original image.

However, to avoid the above effect the original image must be at least 5% larger than required before the image will be scaled.

### ***Transparent images***

The background of images appears transparent by default. Color images are masked by using a technique named color key masking. The default transparent color is white but it can be changed to an arbitrary color with the function [SetTransparentColor\(\)](#). Transparency can be disabled with the function [SetUseTransparency\(\)](#).

When processing GIF images the transparent color can be set to the special value `NO_COLOR` which means: use the transparent color that is stored in the image file. If the image contains no transparent color the image is inserted opaque.

Notice: If the image is downscaled to the wished resolution it is possible that the transparent color does no longer produce the wished transparency effect. This can occur due to color interpolation during downscaling. To avoid such issues set the resolution to a higher value or disable downscaling with the function [SetSaveNewImageFormat\(\)](#).

**Remarks:**

To insert an image from a file buffer use the function [InsertImageFromBuffer\(\)](#). It is possible to use one image on several pages or positions. To insert an image multiple times use the function [PlaceImage\(\)](#). However, once an image was inserted, the physical dimension cannot be changed; it can only be scaled to different sizes. If an image should be used with different dimensions, insert the largest version first or insert it again with using this function.

DynaPDF checks whether an image was already inserted before inserting an image again. Duplicate checking is done by using a MD5 hash of the file name and the requested scaled image format. If all parameters are the same, the already available image is used instead.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the image handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

### ***InsertImageFromBuffer***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfInsertImageFromBuffer(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of destination rectangle  
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of destination rectangle  
    double ScaleWidth,   // Scaled width of destination rectangle  
    double ScaleHeight,  // Scaled height of destination rectangle  
    const void* Buffer,   // Pointer to image buffer  
    UI32 BufSize,        // Buffer size  
    UI32 Index)          // Image index of a multi page image
```

The function inserts an image in exactly the same way as [InsertImageEx\(\)](#), but it accepts a file buffer as input. A specific image of a multi-page image can be selected with the parameter *Index*; the first image is denoted by the index 1. If the image file is not a multi-page image, the parameter *Index* is ignored. To determine the number of images stored in an image file use the function [GetImageCount\(\)](#) or [GetImageCountEx\(\)](#). The usage of the function is described in detail at [InsertImageEx\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the image handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***InsertMetafile***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfInsertMetafile(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    const char* FileName,       // File path to EMF or WMF file
    double PosX,                // X-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double PosY,                // Y-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double Width,               // Width of output rectangle
    double Height)              // Height of output rectangle
```

The function converts an Enhanced Meta File (EMF) or Windows Meta File (WMF) to native PDF vector graphics. The function requires an open page or template into which the metafile can be drawn (see [Append\(\)](#) or [EditPage\(\)](#)). If a metafile should be used as fixed background on multiple pages, insert it into a template and place this template on the pages where it should be used (see [BeginTemplate\(\)](#) for further information). It is of course also possible to insert such a metafile on each page separately, but this would waste processing time and disk space.

The point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the output rectangle if the coordinate system is bottom-up and the upper left corner otherwise.

### ***How to calculate the image size?***

The calculation of the image size should be easy as possible. In most cases, metafiles must be inserted with exact proportions. Therefore, all metafile functions support two special values to make the calculation easier. The width and height can be calculated as follows:

- If *Width* or *Height* is **-1** the function uses the original width or height from the image. If both parameters are **-1** the metafile will be inserted with a resolution 72 DPI. However, this is not meaningful for metafiles because the logical size of a metafile is usually too large as if it could be used. You should not produce EMF files in a resolution of 72 DPI.
- If *Width* or *Height* is 0, the missing value is calculated in relation to the given value of *Height* or *Width* to preserve the metafile's aspect ratio. The resulting output is a vector graphic with exact proportions relative to its original size.
- If *Width* and *Height* is 0, the original size is used (same effect as -1, should not be used).
- Negative values of *Width* or *Height* are ignored; the function uses always the absolute values.

### ***Font selection in EMF files***

When selecting a font with the GDI function [CreateFont\(\)](#), the GDI selects a font that is a good match in comparison to the used function parameters. The highest search priority has *fdwCharSet* and *fdwPitchAndFamily*. If the charset or pitch and family are not supported by the requested font, the GDI selects an arbitrary other font that represents a better match.

Microsoft recommended comparing the font names after a font was selected to determine whether a substituted font or the requested font was selected. Do you really compare the font names?

Such font selection issues can be avoided by setting the flag `mfGDIFontSelection` (see [SetMetaConvFlags\(\)](#) for further information). DynaPDF uses in this case a device context to select fonts.

However, on Asian locales the processing of complex scripts is enabled by default and in this case texts are processed with Microsoft's Uniscribe. Uniscribe analyses a string and checks whether required characters are available in the active font. If this is not the case, the GDI selects an arbitrary other font that supports the required characters. Which font will be selected is not documented and there is no way that we know to determine which font is really used to output the text.

To avoid unnecessary problems use fonts which support the required characters.

In general, the function does not fail if a required font cannot be found. DynaPDF tries to find a font by using the family name and if not found, it tries to find the font by using the postscript name. This differs from normal font selection with [SetFont\(\)](#) because the function will not fail when a font cannot be found; a reasonable fallback is used instead.

When selecting a Stockfont, one of the TrueType fonts Arial, Courier New, or Time New Roman is selected with the code page 1252. If these fonts are not available one of the standard fonts Helvetica, Courier or Times is selected, independent of the current font search order or whether [SetUseStdFonts\(\)](#) was set to false.

### ***Character sets***

As mentioned earlier, the `charset` parameter of a `CreateFont()` function call must be set correctly so that DynaPDF can select the correct code page. The following charsets are important:

- `ANSI_CHARSET`: This charset causes the conversion of any string to ANSI before it is printed to the PDF file. This saves disk space because ANSI strings require only one byte per character and not two. However, ANSI conversion can be disabled with the flag `mfUseUnicode` if necessary, see [SetMetaConvFlags\(\)](#) for further information.
- `DEFAULT_CHARSET`: Treat all strings unchanged as Unicode strings. This charset must be used for any non-Latin charset.
- `SYMBOL_CHARSET`: This charset must be used for symbol fonts. Symbol codes start at `0xF000`. However, there is often a wrong mapping stored in an EMF file, DynaPDF corrects this automatically.
- All other character sets are treated in Unicode mode. EMF files do not contain strings in other encodings.
- If you cannot make sure that the charset is correctly set, it is possible to set the flag `mfUseUnicode` which causes that all strings are processed in Unicode format. Charset issues as described above are then no longer possible.

### ***Non-portable WMF files***

Two WMF file formats are available, the old non-portable WMF format and the newer portable WMF format. Both formats are converted to EMF before they can be converted to PDF. DynaPDF uses the Windows API function `SetWinMetaFileBits()` to convert WMF files. Because of this, WMF files are not supported under Linux or UNIX.

However, the old non-portable WMF format is device depended; it contains no size information in the file's header so that this file type must be handled separately. The conversion function `SetWinMetaFileBits()` requires a parameter of the type `METAFILEPICT`, this structure is only initialized to default values by DynaPDF for non-portable WMF files:

```
METAFILEPICT pict;
pict.hMF = NULL;
pict.mm = MM_ANISOTROPIC;
pict.xExt = 0;
pict.yExt = 0;
```

The picture size is set to zero so that the GDI must calculate the size. WMF files converted in this way are often stretched. To get correct output results you must set the width and height of the WMF file manually with the function `SetWMFDefExtent()`. The size must be calculated in 0.01 millimetre units. A widely used size is 210000 x 280000 units for high resolution metafiles.

Notice: Missing lines or other objects indicates that the output size is too small. The GDI function `SetWinMetaFileBits()` removes records which would be invisible or too small to appear in the requested size. Set the output size to a larger value in the latter case.

### ***Portable WMF files***

The usage of portable WMF files is the same as of normal EMF files. However, many people want or must to personalize WMF files with additional contents and many of them have problems to calculate the correct WMF picture size which is required to get a correct EMF file. Let's see how DynaPDF calculates the size of a WMF file:

First, we need the header of the WMF file because the structure contains the size of the WMF file. The WMF header is defined as follows:

```
struct TRectS
{
    SI16 Left;
    SI16 Top;
    SI16 Right;
    SI16 Bottom;
};
#include <pshpack2.h> // packed structure
struct TPORT_METAHEADER // 16 bit portable WMF file
{
    UI32 Key; // WMF identifier (must be 0x9AC6CDD7)
    SI16 Handle; // Number of handles in file
    TRectS BBox; // Bounding rectangle
```

```

    UI16    Inch;        // Pixels per inch
    UI32    Reserved;
    UI16    CheckSum; // Aldus checksum
};
#include <poppack.h>

```

The header files pshpack2.h and poppack.h are available in Visual Studio and Borland's C++ Builder; they are used to declare a packed structure. Fill the structure TPORT\_METAHEADER now with values:

```

TPORT_METAHEADER wmf;
fread(&wmf, 1, sizeof(wmf), f);
if (wmf.Key != 0x9AC6CDD7) // Is this a portable WMF file?
{
    fclose(f);
    return -2;
}

```

Now we can calculate the size of the metafile picture:

```

METAFILEPICT pict;
if (!wmf.Inch) wmf.Inch = 96;
pict.hMF = NULL;
pict.mm = MM_ANISOTROPIC;
pict.xExt = (wmf.BBox.Right - wmf.BBox.Left) * 2540 / wmf.Inch;
pict.yExt = (wmf.BBox.Bottom - wmf.BBox.Top) * 2400 / wmf.Inch;

```

As you can see above, the y-axis is not calculated with 2540 pixels per inch, we use 2400 pixels instead. I don't know why it must be 2400 pixels, but the y-axis is stretched otherwise. However, this value can be adjusted in the range 2000 to 3000 with the property [WMFPixelPerInch](#). This property changes the value of the y-axis only; the value of the x-axis is always 2540.

The class TMetafile which is included in Borland's C++ Builder and Delphi does not correct the y-axis in this way, that is why the resulting EMF files are stretched.

### ***ROP Codes (Raster Operation Codes)***

When playing back a metafile, the GDI draws the metafile usually on a raster device. Because of this, metafiles use often ROP codes which combine fore- and background colors to archive transparency or other color effects. Such ROP codes are meaningful on a raster devices but not on a vector device like PDF. Because no raster image is created during conversion, it is not possible to use ROP codes which combine fore- and background colors.

By default, the function rasters an EMF file to an image if the metafile uses unsupported ROP codes. However, in most cases it is better to disable the rasterizer and to enable it only if the output is wrong. See [SetMetaConvFlags\(\)](#) for further information.

### ***How to convert spool EMF files?***

A spool EMF file is a special, not fully documented, EMF format that is used by the print spooler when printing on a GDI printer (note that Windows 9x uses another format than NT based systems).

The spool file is a simple container that contains EMF files for each page. The EMF files can be easily extracted and converted like normal EMF files. However, spool EMF files depend often on fonts which were dynamically created for the print job. Such fonts are stored in the user's temp directory and exist until the print job will be deleted.

DynaPDF loads such fonts automatically during execution. If it is not possible to load a required spool font, the function produces a warning but processing continues.

Required spool fonts must be available until the PDF file was fully created and closed. This is required because DynaPDF loads only required parts of a font to reduce the memory usage. When the file is closed it is maybe required to load additional parts of a font. If this is not possible the PDF creation will fail and no valid PDF file can be produced.

Spool files can theoretically contain font resources too. We have never seen such a file and it is not known whether the print spooler creates embedded font resources, but for safety, applications should scan for font resources and load them with [LoadFont\(\)](#) if necessary.

#### **Compatibility Note:**

DynaPDF versions prior 2.5.0.516 were not able to load spool fonts automatically. It was required to load the fonts in the user's temp directory manually with [AddFontSearchPath\(\)](#) and the font cache had to be cleared before the next spool file could be converted. This technique was rather inefficient and is no longer supported. Existing applications should be changed to avoid the unnecessary calls of [AddFontSearchPath\(\)](#) and [ClearHostFonts\(\)](#). [AddFontSearchPath\(\)](#) does no longer load fonts with the extension tmp.

#### **Remarks:**

DynaPDF supports several flags to convert metafiles files to PDF, see [SetMetaConvFlags\(\)](#) for further information. Because the GDI function [SetWinMeatFileBits\(\)](#) is used to convert WMF files to EMF, WMF files are not supported under Mac OS X, Linux or UNIX.

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***InsertMetafileEx***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfInsertMetafileEx(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const void* Buffer,  // Metafile buffer  
    UI32 BufSize,        // Buffer length  
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of output rectangle  
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of output rectangle  
    double Width,        // Width of output rectangle  
    double Height)       // Height of output rectangle
```

The function converts an Enhanced Meta File (EMF) or Windows Meta File (WMF) to a native PDF vector graphic in the same way as [InsertMetafile\(\)](#). However, this function requires a file buffer that



was returned by the API function `GetEnhMetaFileBits()`, `GetWinMetaFileBits()` or `GetMetaFileBitsEx()`. *Buffer* can also be a file buffer of an EMF or WMF file.

This function is mostly used to convert EMF files which were already loaded into memory or displayed on screen. Those memory based EMF or WMF files can directly be converted to PDF as follows:

In this example we have already a handle of an enhanced metafile. This handle can be used to get the file buffer of the EMF file:

#### Example 1 (C++):

```
// First, we need the size of the file buffer
SI32 bufSize = GetEnhMetaFileBits(emf, 0, NULL);
BYTE* buffer = (BYTE*)malloc(bufSize); // Allocate memory
if (!buffer) return -1; // Out of memory?
// Now we can get the file buffer
bufSize = GetEnhMetaFileBits(emf, bufSize, buffer);
// We convert the buffer directly to PDF
pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);
pdfInsertMetafileEx(pdf, buffer, bufSize, 0, 0, pdfGetPageWidth(pdf), 0);
// Free the buffer
free(buffer);
```

#### Example 2 (Delphi):

```
// emf is a TMetafile; we save store the buffer in a TMemoryStream
emf.SaveToStream(stream);
pdf.InsertMetafileEx(stream.Memory, stream.Size, 0, 0, pdf.GetPageWidth, 0);
```

#### Remarks:

DynaPDF supports several flags to convert metafiles files to PDF, see [SetMetaConvFlags\(\)](#) for further information.

Because the GDI function `SetWinMeatFileBits()` is used to convert WMF files to EMF, WMF files are not supported under Linux or UNIX. See also [InsertMetafile\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***InsertMetafileExt***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfInsertMetafileExt(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    const char* FileName,      // File path to EMF or WMF file
    struct TRectL* View,       // Optional view rectangle (can be NULL)
    double PosX,               // X-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double PosY,               // Y-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double Width,              // Width of output rectangle
    double Height)             // Height of output rectangle
```



```

struct TRectL
{
    SI32 Left;
    SI32 Top;
    SI32 Right;
    SI32 Bottom;
};

```

The function converts an Enhanced Meta File (EMF) or Windows Meta File (WMF) to a native PDF vector graphic in the same way as [InsertMetafile\(\)](#). However, the function supports an additional parameter *View* which can be used to zoom into an EMF or WMF file.

How the *View* rectangle must be calculated is described in detail under the function [GetLogMetafileSize\(\)](#), this function is always required for the calculation.

#### Remarks:

WMF files are supported under Windows only. See also [InsertMetafile\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***InsertMetafileExtEx***

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfInsertMetafileExtEx(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const void* Buffer,    // Metafile buffer
    UI32 BufSize,          // Buffer length
    struct TRectL* View,   // Optional view rectangle (can be NULL)
    double PosX,           // X-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double PosY,           // Y-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double Width,          // Width of output rectangle
    double Height)         // Height of output rectangle

struct TRectL
{
    SI32 Left;
    SI32 Top;
    SI32 Right;
    SI32 Bottom;
};

```

The function converts an Enhanced Meta File (EMF) or Windows Meta File (WMF) to a native PDF vector graphic in the same way as [InsertMetafileExt\(\)](#). However, this function requires a file buffer that was returned by the API function [GetEnhMetaFileBis\(\)](#), [GetWinMetaFileBits\(\)](#) or [GetMetaFileBitsEx\(\)](#). *Buffer* can also be a file buffer of an EMF or WMF file.

The usage of the function is described under [InsertMetafile\(\)](#). How the *View* rectangle must be calculated is described in detail under the function [GetLogMetafileSize\(\)](#), this function is always

required for the calculation (use [GetLogMetafileSizeEx\(\)](#) instead, it supports a file buffer such as this function).

#### Remarks:

DynaPDF supports several flags to convert metafiles files to PDF, see [SetMetaConvFlags\(\)](#) for further information.

Because the GDI function [SetWinMeatFileBits\(\)](#) is used to convert WMF files to EMF, WMF files are not supported under Linux or UNIX. See also [InsertMetafile\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***InsertMetafileFromHandle***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfInsertMetafileFromHandle(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    const void* hEnhMetafile,   // Enhanced Metafile Handle
    double PosX,                // X-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double PosY,                // Y-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double Width,               // Width of output rectangle
    double Height)              // Height of output rectangle
```

This function inserts an Enhanced Metafile exactly in the same way as [InsertMetafile\(\)](#) but accepts a HENHMETAFILE handle as input. See also [InsertMetafile\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***InsertMetafileFromHandleEx***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfInsertMetafileFromHandleEx(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    const void* hEnhMetafile,   // Enhanced Metafile Handle
    struct TRectL* View,        // Optional view rectangle (can be NULL)
    double PosX,                // X-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double PosY,                // Y-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double Width,               // Width of output rectangle
    double Height)              // Height of output rectangle
```

This function inserts an Enhanced Metafile exactly in the same way as [InsertMetafileExt\(\)](#) but accepts a HENHMETAFILE handle as input. See also [InsertMetafileExt\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## InsertRawImage

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfInsertRawImage(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const void* Buffer,   // Image buffer
    UI32 BitsPerPixel,   // Color depth in bits per pixel
    UI32 ColorCount,     // Number of colors in color table if any
    SI32 ImgWidth,       // Image width
    SI32 ImgHeight,      // Image height (negative values mirror the image)
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of destination rectangle
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of destination rectangle
    double ScaleWidth,   // Scaled width of destination rectangle
    double ScaleHeight)  // Scaled height of destination rectangle

typedef enum
{
    rifByteAligned    = 0x1000, // Scanlines are byte aligned
    rifRGBData        = 0x2000, // RGB data format, instead of BGR
    rifCMYKData       = 0x4000  // CMYK image data or color table
}TRawImageFlags;
```

The function inserts an image from a raw image buffer that contains no image header. The parameter *Buffer* must be a valid pointer to the image data.

The scanlines of the image must be double word aligned by default. This is the default format for Device Independent Bitmaps (DIBs).

The scanline length can be calculated as follows:

```
scanLineLen = ((Width * BitsPerPixel + 31) / 32) * 4;
```

Or more efficient in C notation:

```
scanLineLen = ((Width * BitsPerPixel + 31) & ~31) >> 3;
```

If the image has a color depth of 24 or 32 bits per pixel the pixel data must be defined in BGR or BGRA (BGR Alpha) format. The alpha component of 32 bit images will be ignored.

A color table in BGRA format must precede the image data if *BitsPerPixel* is 4 or 8. The parameter *ColorCount* specifies the number of colors in the color table. It is also possible to insert a gray scale image, *BitsPerPixel* must be 8 in this case, and *ColorCount* must be zero. No color table must precede the image data in the latter case.

If the color depth is 1, 16, 24, or 32 bits per pixel no color table must be present. The parameter *ColorCount* will be ignored for these images, it can be 0.

If the image height is a positive value the image is treated from bottom to top. Top-down images can be mirrored by setting the image height to a negative value.

## Extensions

DynaPDF 2.5 introduced several extensions which affect the data alignment, supported pixel formats, and color spaces.

The parameter *ColorCount* supports the following flags:

Flag	Description
<code>rifByteAligned</code>	Scanlines are byte aligned. If this flag is set, the scanline length is calculated as follows: $\text{scanLineLen} = (\text{Width} * \text{BitsPerPixel} + 7) / 8;$
<code>rifRGBData</code>	The image data is defined in RGB format instead of BGR. If <i>BitsPerPixel</i> is less than 24 a color table in RGB format must precede the image data.
<code>rifCMYKData</code>	The image data is defined in CMYK. <i>BitsPerPixel</i> must be 1, 2, 4, 8, or 32 in this case. If <i>BitsPerPixel</i> is less than 32 a color table in CMYK format must precede the image data.

## Color spaces

If the active color space is a device color space the image will be converted into that color space if necessary (with exception of 1 bit images).

For all other color spaces the image data must be defined in that color space and scanlines must be byte aligned. 1 bit images can also be used Separation color spaces. See also [Color Space and Images](#). However, all other color spaces require 8 bits per color component.

A color table cannot be prepended if the image is defined in a non device color space. However, it is possible create an indexed color space for the image (see [CreateIndexedColorSpace\(\)](#)). The image data must contain 8 bit indexes into the color table in this case.

If the active color space is DeviceN the image can contain up to 32 color components (256 bits per pixel). Images with more than 4 color components are always Flate compressed.

## How to calculate the image size?

The calculation of the image size should be easy as possible. In most cases, images must be inserted with exact proportions. Therefore, all image functions support two special values to make the calculation easier. The width and height can be calculated as follows:

- If *ScaleWidth* or *ScaleHeight* is **-1** the function uses the original width or height from the image. If both parameters are **-1** the image will be inserted with a resolution 72 DPI.
- If *ScaleWidth* **or** *ScaleHeight* is **0**, the missing value is calculated in relation to the given value of *ScaleHeight* or *ScaleWidth* to preserve the image's aspect ratio. The resulting output is an image with exact proportions relative to its original size.
- If *ScaleWidth* **and** *ScaleHeight* are **0**, the original size is used (same effect as -1).

- A negative value of *Width* or *Height* mirrors the image on the x- and or y-axis.

The function contains no parameter to define the buffer length. However, the required length is calculated from the parameters of the function.

The pixel data must be uncompressed. Raw images are handled in the same way as other image formats; they are downscaled if necessary, converted to the current color space and compressed with the defined compression filter. Note that 1 bit images are treated as image mask if transparency is enabled (see [SetUseTransparency\(\)](#)), see [InsertImage\(\)](#) for further information.

**Remarks:**

It is possible to use one image on several pages or positions. To insert an image multiple times use the function [PlaceImage\(\)](#). However, once an image was inserted, the physical dimension cannot be changed; it can only be scaled to different sizes. If an image should be used with different dimensions, insert the largest version first.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the image handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

***IsBidiText***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfIsBidiText(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const UI16* AText) // Unicode string
```

The function returns the position of the first bidirectional character that can be found in the string or **-1** if no such character can be found.

## ***IsColorPage***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfIsColorPage(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    LBOOL GrayIsColor) // Treat grey as color
```

This function checks whether a page is a color page or if all graphic elements of the page use black & white only. If the parameter *GrayIsColor* is true, grey shades are treated as color. The page which should be checked must be opened with the function [EditPage\(\)](#) beforehand.

Complex color spaces such as Lab, Separation, DeviceN, Colored Tiling Patterns, and Shadings are always treated as color. The function does not return when a color is set, the color must be used by an object.

### **Return values:**

If an object of the page uses a color, the return value is 1. If no object uses a color the return value is 0. A negative return value indicates that an error occurred.

## ***IsEmptyPage***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfIsEmptyPage(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function checks whether a page is empty. The page which should be checked must be opened with the function [EditPage\(\)](#) beforehand. The function does not check whether the buffer size of a page is zero to determine whether a page is empty. Instead, the content stream will be parsed until a visible object can be found.

### **Return values:**

If no visible object can be found the return value is 1. If a visible object can be found the return value is 0. A negative return value indicates that an error occurred.

## ***IsWrongPwd***

Syntax:

```
#define IsWrongPwd(ErrCode) // C/C++
Function IsWrongPwd(ByVal ErrCode As Integer) As Boolean // Visual Basic
function IsWrongPwd(ErrCode: Integer): Boolean; // Delphi
```

The function returns true if the supplied error code indicates that a password is required to decrypt the PDF file. The error code must be a return value of the function [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImportBuffer\(\)](#).

This function is implemented as macro in C/C++. In prior DynaPDF versions the macro name was `PDF_WRONG_PWD()` which is still defined. However, for consistency among different programming languages the new macro name `IsWrongPwd()` should be used.

## ***LineTo***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfLineTo(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of ending point  
    double PosY)      // Y-Coordinate of ending point
```

The function draws a path from the current position up to the specified point. The start point must be set with another vector graphic function beforehand, such as [MoveTo\(\)](#) or other functions which draw an open path segment.

In PDF all vector graphics are defined as paths, a path is invisible as long it was not stroked, filled or both. See also [Path construction and Painting](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***LoadCMap***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfLoadCMap(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* CMapName, // CMap name  
    LBOOL Embed) // See description below
```

The function loads an external CMap file into memory so that it can be used with OpenType or TrueType fonts. The returned CMap handle is a required parameter of the function [SetCIDFont\(\)](#).

### ***Embedding CMap Files***

The CMap should be embedded if it is not predefined or if the supplement number is higher than supported in the viewer version to which compatibility is required.

However, dependencies to external CMaps are always removed if the font, that uses the external CMap, is embedded. The parameter *Embed* is ignored in this case. This handling reduces the amount of data that must be stored in a PDF file and the file can be viewed with Adobe's Acrobat or Reader without installed Asian language pack that would otherwise be required.

### ***Predefines CMaps***

The following table lists all predefined CMaps and the corresponding character collections which are supported in a specific PDF version. The corresponding Acrobat versions are Acrobat 3 for PDF 1.2, Acrobat 4 for PDF 1.3 and so on.

CMap	PDF 1.2	PDF 1.3	PDF 1.4	PDF 1.5
<b>Chinese (Simplified)</b>				
GB-EUC-H/V	Adobe-GB1-0	Adobe-GB1-0	Adobe-GB1-0	Adobe-GB1-0
GBpc-EUC-H	Adobe-GB1-0	Adobe-GB1-0	Adobe-GB1-0	Adobe-GB1-0
GBpc-EUC-V	-	Adobe-GB1-0	Adobe-GB1-0	Adobe-GB1-0
GBK-EUC-H/V	-	Adobe-GB1-2	Adobe-GB1-2	Adobe-GB1-2
GBKp-EUC-H/V	-	-	Adobe-GB1-2	Adobe-GB1-2
GBK2K-H/V	-	-	Adobe-GB1-4	Adobe-GB1-4
UniGB-UCS2-H/V	-	Adobe-GB1-2	Adobe-GB1-4	Adobe-GB1-4
UniGB-UTF16-H/V	-	-	-	Adobe-GB1-4
<b>Chinese (Traditional)</b>				
B5pc-H/V	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0
HKscs-B5-H/V	-	-	Adobe-CNS1-3	Adobe-CNS1-3
ETen-B5-H/V	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0
ETenms-B5-H/V	-	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0
CNS-EUC-H/V	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-0
UniCNS-UCS2-H/V	-	Adobe-CNS1-0	Adobe-CNS1-3	Adobe-CNS1-3
UniCNS-UTF16-H/V	-	-	-	Adobe-CNS1-4
<b>Japanese</b>				
83pv-RKSJ-H	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1
90ms-RKSJ-H/V	Adobe-Japan1-2	Adobe-Japan1-2	Adobe-Japan1-2	Adobe-Japan1-2
90msp-RKSJ-H/V	-	Adobe-Japan1-2	Adobe-Japan1-2	Adobe-Japan1-2
90pv-RKSJ-H	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1
Add-RKSJ-H/V	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1
EUC-H/V	-	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1
Ext-RKSJ-H/V	Adobe-Japan1-2	Adobe-Japan1-2	Adobe-Japan1-2	Adobe-Japan1-2
H/V	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1	Adobe-Japan1-1
UniJIS-UCS2-H/V	-	Adobe-Japan1-2	Adobe-Japan1-4	Adobe-Japan1-4
UniJIS-UCS2-HW-H/V	-	Adobe-Japan1-2	Adobe-Japan1-4	Adobe-Japan1-4
UniJIS-UTF16-H/V	-	-	-	Adobe-Japan1-5
<b>Korean</b>				
KSC-EUC-H/V	Adobe-Korea1-0	Adobe-Korea1-0	Adobe-Korea1-0	Adobe-Korea1-0
KSCms-UHC-H/V	Adobe-Korea1-1	Adobe-Korea1-1	Adobe-Korea1-1	Adobe-Korea1-1
KSCms-UHC-HW-H/V	-	Adobe-Korea1-1	Adobe-Korea1-1	Adobe-Korea1-1
KSCpc-EUC-H	Adobe-Korea1-0	Adobe-Korea1-0	Adobe-Korea1-0	Adobe-Korea1-0
UniKS-UCS2-H/V	-	Adobe-Korea1-1	Adobe-Korea1-1	Adobe-Korea1-1
UniKS-UTF16-H/V	-	-	-	Adobe-Korea1-2

Adobe's Acrobat 9 and Reader 9 support also the character collections Adobe-GB1-5, Adobe-CNS1-5, and Adobe-Japan1-6. Adobe offers also many more CMaps which support other encodings like UTF-8 or UTF-32. However, CMaps which are not predefined must either be embedded or the font that uses the CMap must be embedded.

CMaps and the CID-Keyed Font Architecture are described in detail in the Adobe Technical Notes #5092 and #5099. Detailed information about Adobe Character Collections can be found in the Adobe Technical Notes #5094, #5093, #5078, #5079, #5080, and #5097. These documents can be downloaded from the Adobe website at [www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com).

External CMaps cannot be used with Type1 fonts and DynaPDF does not support glyph names to access CIDs because this format is reserved for use with Type1 fonts.



### ***Working with External CMaps***

External CMaps can be used to specify a rich mixture of encodings with fixed and variable code lengths of up to four bytes per character. Many CJK encodings use a mixture of one- and two-byte encodings while Unicode encodings use one through four-byte representations.

When working with external CMaps it is important to understand how the mapping works in conjunction with the string functions in DynaPDF. Practically all string functions in DynaPDF are available in an ANSI and Wide string version.

The wide string version uses 16 bits or two-bytes per character. So, these functions can be used with CMaps which support a code length of two, four, or a mixture of two/four byte codes but it is not possible to access CIDs which are encoded with code lengths of one or three bytes because less than two bytes cannot be consumed from the source string.

No such restriction is given if the ANSI version is used instead because all code lengths from one through four bytes can be created from the source string.

The mapping of codes to CIDs works essentially as follows:

The CMap parser initializes a 32 bit variable with the first char code of the string. Depending on the string format the consumed code length is incremented by one or two bytes. Then it checks whether a CID is defined for this code. If this is not the case, the next char code is consumed and combined with the existing code to form a 16, 24, or 32 bit code. The search run continues until the maximum code length or string end was reached. If no CID is defined for that code the notdef character is returned.

DynaPDF does not know how a string is encoded when using a CID font with an external CMap. So, functions which output formatted text like [WriteFText\(\)](#) can only be used if the CID font was loaded with a CMap that maps UTF-16 (Unicode) to CIDs (the wide string version must be used in this case).

Because TrueType fonts have no native notation of CIDs, the usage with CID-keyed OpenType fonts is preferred. CID-keyed OpenType fonts contain an embedded Type1 font in Compact Font Format (CFF). This font contains also information about the supported character collection. The supported character collection of the font must match the one of the CMap file. It is not possible to load an OpenType font with a CMap that contains a mapping into another character collection.

#### **Remarks:**

One CMap file can be used with an arbitrary number of CID fonts. The function checks whether a CMap was already loaded before it loads the same CMap again. A CMap specifies also the writing mode. The style flag `fsVerticalMode` will be ignored when loading a font with an external CMap.

#### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is a CMap handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code. The CMap handle is required to load a CID font with this CMap.

## LoadFont

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfLoadFont(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const void* Buffer,   // Font file buffer
    UI32 BufSize,        // Buffer size in bytes
    TFStyle Style,       // Font style
    double Size,         // Font size
    LBOOL Embed,         // If true, the font will be embedded
    TCodepage CP)       // Code page
```

The function loads a font from a file buffer and activates it in the graphics state if the function was called within an open page or template. Supported font formats are TrueType, OpenType, and Type1 fonts in PFB or PFA format.

The function returns the font handle on success. The font handle is required whenever the font should be set again with [ChangeFont\(\)](#), e.g. when opening a new page or if the font was changed to another one.

The function does not check whether the font was already loaded in a previous call. The caller must make sure that no unnecessary duplicates will be loaded. However, if the font should be used with different code pages, a separate copy of the font is required for each code page.

The parameter *Style* sets the style flags fsUnderlined, fsStriked, or fsVerticalLayout only. It is also possible to emulate font styles with manually loaded fonts. Use the function [ChangeFontStyleEx\(\)](#) if a font style should be emulated.

If the font name is known by the caller then it is also possible to set this font later with [SetFont\(\)](#). However, for proper behaviour manually loaded fonts should always be set with [ChangeFont\(\)](#). If [SetFont\(\)](#) should be used, make sure that another version of the same font was not already loaded and use the postscript name and the same code page to select the font. Using the family name can cause errors if the used font style does not exactly match the real style of the font because the function tries to find a better match in this case.

## TrueType Collections

To enable access on a specific font of a TrueType Collection the 4 high bits of the parameter *BufSize* are reserved for the font index. Index 0 through 15 can be encoded in this way (larger collections do probably not exist). The wished font index must be combined with the buffer size as follows:

```
bufSize |= (index << 28);           // C/C++, C#
bufSize = bufSize or (index << 28) // VB .Net
bufSize := bufSize or (index shl 28); // Delphi
If index < 8 Then                   // Visual Basic
    bufSize = bufSize Or (idx * &H10000000)
Else
    bufSize = bufSize Or ((idx And 7) * &H10000000) Or &H80000000
End If
```

**Remarks:**

Like all other fonts, manually loaded fonts are unloaded when the PDF file is closed or discarded with [FreePDF\(\)](#).

Fonts which are loaded with this function cannot be used with form fields.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the font handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

***LoadFDFData***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfLoadFDFData(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const char* FileName,      // File path of the FDF file  
    const char* Password,      // Defined for future use, should be NULL  
    UI32 Flags)                // Defined for future use, should be 0
```

The function loads form data from a FDF file (Forms Data Format). The corresponding form must be imported before the function can be used. See [ImportPDFFile\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***LoadFDFDataEx***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfLoadFDFDataEx(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const void* Buffer,         // FDF file buffer  
    UI32 BufSize,              // Buffer size in bytes  
    const char* Password,      // Defined for future use, should be NULL  
    UI32 Flags)                // Defined for future use, should be 0
```

The function loads form data from a FDF file (Forms Data Format) like [LoadFDFData](#) but it accepts a file buffer instead. The corresponding form must be imported before the function can be used. See [ImportPDFFile\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## MovePage

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfMovePage(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Source,       // Source page number  
    UI32 Dest)         // Target page number
```

The function moves a page to another position in the document. Moving a page requires some processing time if the document contains many bookmarks or page links because the destinations of all links and bookmarks must be modified so that they refer still to the correct page. For example, if the first page of a document should be moved to the last page, all pages of the document must be reordered. If the document is large and if it contains a few thousands page links as well as bookmarks, this action can take a while.

The parameter *Source* must be a valid page number in the document. Page numbering starts at one. If the destination page is larger than the source page, the page number can be greater than the number of pages currently available in the document. The document is then filled with empty pages until the destination page becomes valid.

If the destination page is smaller than the source page number, both page numbers must already exist in the document.

It is also possible to exchange two pages with [ExchangePage\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## MoveTo

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfMoveTo(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,       // X-Coordinate of new position  
    double PosY)       // Y-Coordinate of new position
```

The function moves the current position to the point specified by *PosX*, *PosY*. This function must be called before a line or curved path segment can be drawn. See also [LineTo\(\)](#), [Bezier\\_1\\_2\\_3\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## MultiplyMatrix

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfMultiplyMatrix(  
    struct TCTM* M1, // First transformation matrix  
    struct TCTM* M2, // Second transformation matrix
```

```
struct TCTM* NewMatrix) // Resulting transformation matrix
```

The function multiplies two transformation matrices and stores the result in the parameter *NewMatrix*. This function is required to calculate the resulting matrix in user coordinate space when using the functions [GetPageText\(\)](#) in combination with [WriteTextMatrix\(\)](#).

The two matrices *M1* and *M2* are multiplied as follows:

```
NewMatrix->a = M2->a * M1->a + M2->b * M1->c;  
NewMatrix->b = M2->a * M1->b + M2->b * M1->d;  
NewMatrix->c = M2->c * M1->a + M2->d * M1->c;  
NewMatrix->d = M2->c * M1->b + M2->d * M1->d;  
NewMatrix->x = M2->x * M1->a + M2->y * M1->c + M1->x;  
NewMatrix->y = M2->x * M1->b + M2->y * M1->d + M1->y;
```

Matrix multiplication is not commutative - the order in which matrices are multiplied is significant.

This function is implemented as native procedure in the interfaces for Visual Basic, Visual Basic .Net and Delphi.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***NewPDF***

Syntax:

```
void* pdfNewPDF(void)
```

The function creates a new PDF instance and returns the pointer of it. If there is no sufficient memory to create the PDF instance the return value is NULL.

To improve processing speed one PDF instance should be used as long as possible. A PDF instance holds a few important data structures like the font cache and CMap cache. Rebuilding these caches is a relatively expensive operation and should be avoided if not necessary. Using the same PDF instance to create as many PDF files as possible can significantly improve processing speed.

Multiple instances can be used at the same time. However, DynaPDF supports callback functions for many purposes such as the error handling, content parsing, or to increment a progress bar and so on.

Each PDF instance must use its own copy of a callback function because callback functions cannot be shared among multiple instances. This is especially required if the application should be thread-safe.

If a PDF instance is no longer needed it must be deleted with [DeletePDF\(\)](#).

### **Remarks:**

This function is automatically called in the wrapper classes for Visual Basic, Visual Basic .Net, C#, and Delphi. There is no need to create PDF instances manually when using these programming languages.

C or C++ developers must create a PDF instance before a DynaPDF function can be executed.

## ***OpenImportBuffer***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfOpenImportBuffer(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const void* Buffer,     // Pointer to PDF file
    UI32 BufSize,          // Buffer length in bytes
    TPwdType PwdType,      // Kind of password see below
    const char* Password)  // Password to decrypt the file

typedef enum
{
    ptOpen    = 0,
    ptOwner   = 1
}TPwdType;
```

The function opens an external PDF file like [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) but accepts a file buffer as input. The function creates a copy of the buffer so that it can be released immediately after the function returns. The internal copy of the file buffer will be released when [CloseImportFile\(\)](#) is called or when another PDF file will be loaded.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code. See also [OpenImportFile\(\)](#).

## OpenImportFile

```
SI32 pdfOpenImportFile(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    const char* FileName,      // File path to PDF file
    TPwdType PwdType,          // Kind of password see below
    const char* Password)      // Password to decrypt the file

typedef enum
{
    ptOpen    = 0,
    ptOwner   = 1
}TPwdType;
```

The function opens an external PDF file so that it can be imported entirely or parts of it. After a PDF file was opened, properties of it can be derived by several functions such as [GetInDocInfo\(\)](#), [GetInPageCount\(\)](#) and so on. To import specific pages from the file use the functions [ImportPage\(\)](#) or [ImportPageEx\(\)](#). The entire PDF file can be imported with the function [ImportPDFFile\(\)](#) (see example below).

To improve processing speed a PDF file can be loaded permanent into memory, e.g. to enable splitting of large PDF files. In this case the PDF file is not automatically closed when [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [FreePDF\(\)](#) is called. This improves significantly the processing speed, especially when splitting large PDF files. See [SetUseGlobalImpFiles\(\)](#) for further information

The parameter *PwdType* specifies the kind of password that is supplied to the function to decrypt a PDF file if necessary. If the file is not encrypted the parameter *Password* is ignored.

It is not required to close a PDF file explicitly before another one can be opened. However, if the file is not longer needed it should be closed with the function [CloseImportFile\(\)](#).

## Editing encrypted PDF files

If your application should allow the modification of encrypted PDF files, you may check the access permissions to grant user rights, if the file was opened with the *open password* instead of the *owner password* (see also [GetUserRights\(\)](#)).

Due to the license agreement of Adobe, all manufacturers of applications which make the treatment of encrypted PDF files possible, must respect the access permissions of a PDF file, if the file was opened with the *open password*.

Only if the file was opened with the *owner password*, all rights should be granted. See *PDF Reference 1.7* for further information. This document is available at <http://www.adobe.com>.

If the property *UseExactPwd* is set to false (see [SetUseExactPwd\(\)](#)), the function checks whether the open or owner password in the file is an empty string. If one password is not set, the file is automatically decrypted no matter whether the supplied password was wrong.

However, the property *UseExactPwd* should be **true**, if the application is a commercial product (default).

Use the function *IsWrongPwd()* to determine whether the supplied password was wrong. The function requires the return value of this function to determine whether the password was wrong.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Unicode paths are converted to UTF-8 on non-Windows operating systems.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code, this code can be used to determine whether the supplied password was wrong as described above.



**Example (C):**

```

// First, we declare an error callback function so that we can see all
// errors or warnings.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMessage, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMessage);
    return 0;
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    char outFile[] = "cout.pdf";
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF(); // Create a new PDF instance
    if (!pdf) return -2; // Out of memory?
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
    // The output file is opened later...
    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, NULL);
    // No need to convert pages to templates. See SetImportFlags() for
    // further information.
    pdfSetImportFlags(pdf, ifImportAll | ifImportAsPage);
    pdfOpenImportFile(pdf, "test.pdf", ptOwner, NULL);
    pdfImportPDFFile(pdf, 1, 1.0, 1.0);
    pdfCloseImportFile(pdf);
    // No fatal error occurred?
    if (pdfHaveOpenDoc(pdf))
    {
        // OK, now we can open the output file. The function can be called
        // in a while statement, e.g. to display a file open dialog if the
        // output file cannot be opened.
        if (!pdfOpenOutputFile(pdf, outFile))
        {
            pdfDeletePDF(pdf);
            _getch();
            return -1;
        }
        if (pdfCloseFile(pdf))
        {
            printf("PDF file \"%s\" successfully created!\n", outFile);
            ShellExecute(0, "open", outFile, NULL, NULL, SW_SHOWMAXIMIZED);
        }
    }
    // We encrypt the file, low-resolution printing should be allowed
    pdfCloseFileEx(pdf, NULL, "%3Fc&*~~#$$$%", kl128bit, rsDenyAll & ~rsPrint);
    pdfDeletePDF(pdf); // Do not forget to delete the PDF instance
    return 0;
}

```

## OpenOutputFile

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfOpenOutputFile(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const char* OutPDF) // Output file name
```

The function opens the output file into which the PDF file should be written. The PDF file must be created in memory if this function should be used. This is the case if no output file name is passed to [CreateNewPDF\(\)](#).

After the output file was opened the PDF file is no longer created in memory. So, there is no need to call [FreePDF\(\)](#) after the file was finished with [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [CloseFileEx\(\)](#).

[OpenOutputFile\(\)](#) can be called in a while statement, e.g. to display a open file dialog if the file could not be opened. Once the function succeeds the PDF file can be finished with [CloseFile\(\)](#).

It is recommended to check with [HaveOpenDoc\(\)](#) whether a PDF file is still in memory before calling this function.

### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Unicode paths are converted to UTF-8 on non-Windows operating systems.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## OpenTag

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfOpenTag(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TPDFBaseTag Tag,          // The tag that should be created
    const char* Lang,          // Optional RFC 3066 language identifier
    const char* AltText,       // Optional alternate text
    const char* Expansion) // Optional expansion of Abbreviations or Acronyms

typedef enum
{
    btArt,
    btArtifact,          // Artifact (contents that should be ignored)
    btAnnot,             // An annotation follows
    btBibEntry,          // Bibliography entry
    btBlockQuote,
    btCaption,
    btCode,
    btDiv,
    btDocument,
    btFigure,
    btForm,
```

```

    btFormula,
    btH,
    btH1,
    btH2,
    btH3,
    btH4,
    btH5,
    btH6,
    btIndex,
    btLink,
    btList,           // L
    btListElem,       // LI
    btListText,       // LBody
    btNote,
    btP,
    btPart,
    btQuote,
    btReference,
    btSection,        // Sect
    btSpan,
    btTable,
    btTableDataCell, // TD
    btTableHeader,   // TH
    btTableRow,      // TR
    btTOC,
    btTOCEntry       // TOCI
}TPDFBaseTag;

```

The function opens the specified tag so that contents can be written into it. When the corresponding contents was drawn or output the tag must be closed with [CloseTag\(\)](#). The supported tags have the same meaning as corresponding HTML tags.

The parameters *Lang*, *AltText*, and *Expansion* are all optional. The *Lang* parameter, if set, must be a valid language identifier as defined in RFC 3066, *Tags for the Identification of Languages*. It overrides the global language identifier which can be set with [SetLanguage\(\)](#). The main language of the document should always be set with [SetLanguage\(\)](#) when creating Tagged PDF files.

Tagged PDF files require a global structure tree that must be created with [CreateStructureTree\(\)](#) before tags can be created. If the structure tree was not created the function returns with an error and no tag will be created.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is zero.

## PageLink

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfPageLink(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of bounding rectangle  
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of bounding rectangle  
    double Width,     // Width of bounding rectangle  
    double Height,    // Height of bounding rectangle  
    UI32 DestPage)    // Destination page
```

The function adds a page link to the current open page. The parameter *DestPage* specifies the destination page which should be opened (the page number). The function does not check whether the destination page exists; it can be created later. If the destination page does not exist when the document is closed it will be set to the first page.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the bounding rectangle. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

The border of the link annotation is drawn by using the current line width, stroke color and line dash pattern. If the link should appear without a border set the line width to zero beforehand.

When clicking on a link annotation the rectangle is highlighted, that is a simple visual effect. Several highlight modes are supported, see [SetLinkHighlightMode\(\)](#) for further information.

### Remarks:

The destination page is always opened at the top corner. More precise destinations can be created with the function [PageLinkEx\(\)](#). Page links can also be used to execute an action. The destination page is ignored in the latter case, the annotation works then like a button.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## PageLink2

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfPageLink2(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of bounding rectangle  
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of bounding rectangle  
    double Width,     // Width of bounding rectangle  
    double Height,    // Height of bounding rectangle  
    UI32 NamedDest)   // Handle of a named destination
```

The function adds a page link to the current open page by using a named destination as target. Named destinations can be used if a destination should be accessible from another PDF file. The

parameter *NamedDest* must be a valid handle of named destination. See [CreateNamedDest\(\)](#) for further information.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the bounding rectangle. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

The border of the link annotation is drawn by using the current line width, stroke color and line dash pattern. If the link should appear without a border set the line width to zero beforehand.

When clicking on a link annotation the rectangle is highlighted, that is a simple visual effect. Several highlight modes are supported, see [SetLinkHighlightMode\(\)](#) for further information.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## PageLinkEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfPageLinkEx(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    double PosX,           // X-Coordinate of bounding rectangle
    double PosY,           // Y-Coordinate of bounding rectangle
    double Width,          // Width of bounding rectangle
    double Height,         // Height of bounding rectangle
    TDestType DestType,    // see below
    UI32 DestPage,         // Destination page
    double a,              // Various, depends on destination type
    double b,              // Various, depends on destination type
    double c,              // Various, depends on destination type
    double d)              // Various, depends on destination type

typedef enum
{
    dtXY_Zoom,             // Three parameters (a, b, c) -> (X, Y, Zoom)
    dtFit,                 // No parameters
    dtFitH_Top,            // One parameter      (a)
    dtFitV_Left,          // One parameter      (a)
    dtFit_Rect,           // Four parameters    (left, bottom, right, top)
    dtFitB,               // No parameters
    dtFitBH_Top,          // One parameter      (a)
    dtFitBV_Left          // One parameter      (a)
}TDestType;
```

The function adds a page link to the current open page. The parameter *DestPage* specifies the destination page which should be opened (the page number). The function does not check whether the destination page exists; it can be created later. If the destination page is not created before the document is closed, it will be set to the first page of the document.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the bounding rectangle. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

The border of the link annotation is drawn by using the current line width, stroke color and line dash pattern. If the link should appear without a border set the line width to zero beforehand.

When clicking on a link annotation the rectangle is highlighted, that is a simple visual effect. Several highlight modes are supported, see [SetLinkHighlightMode\(\)](#) for further information.

The destination created by this annotation allows jumping to a specific position in a document instead of simply opening the page such as [PageLink\(\)](#) does.

Destination type	Description
dtXY_Zoom	<p>Display the page designated by page with the coordinates (left top) positioned at the top-left corner of the window and the contents of the page magnified by the factor zoom. A zero value for any of the parameters left top or zoom specifies that the current value of that parameter is to be retained unchanged.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>// The zoom factor is left unchanged pdfPageLinkEx(pdf,150,50,150,20,2,dtXY_Zoom,50,750,0,0);</pre>
dtFit	<p>Display the page designated by page with its contents magnified just enough to fit the entire page within the window both horizontally and vertically. If the required horizontal and vertical magnification factors are different, use the smaller of the two, centering the page within the window in the other dimension. This destination type has no parameters.</p>
dtFitH_Top	<p>Display the page designated by page with the vertical coordinate top positioned at the top edge of the window and the contents of the page magnified just enough to fit the entire width of the page within the window.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>// The parameter a specifies the top coordinate pdfPageLinkEx(pdf,150,50,150,20,2,dtFitH_Top,750,0,0,0);</pre>
dtFitV_Left	<p>Display the page designated by page with the horizontal coordinate left positioned at the left edge of the window and the contents of the page magnified just enough to fit the entire height of the page within the window.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>// The parameter a specifies the left edge pdfPageLinkEx(pdf,150,50,150,20,2,dtFitV_Left,50,0,0,0);</pre>

Destination type	Description
<code>dtFitRect</code>	<p>Display the page designated by page with its contents magnified just enough to fit the rectangle specified by the coordinates left bottom right and top entirely within the window both horizontally and vertically. If the required horizontal and vertical magnification factors are different, use the smaller of the two, centering the rectangle within the window in the other dimension.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>pdfPageLinkEx(pdf,150,50,150,20,2,dtFit_Rect,150,550,450,700);</pre>

The destination types *dtFitB*, *dtFitBH\_Top* and *dtFitBV\_Left* use the media box of the page to fit the page into the window. All other destination types use the crop box if any.

The destination types are the same as for a [go-to actions](#) and the function creates in fact a go-to action which is executed by the link annotation. However, the action is stored in a more compact format and cannot be shared with other objects.

If a destination should be used with multiple objects such as bookmarks, create a [go-to action](#) instead and add it to a normal page link (see [PageLink\(\)](#)). The same action can then be added to other objects.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ParseContent

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfParseContent(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    const void* Data,           // User defined pointer
    struct TPDFParseInterface* Stack, // Parser interface
    TParseFlags Flags)          // See below

struct TPDFParseInterface
{
    TApplyPattern*      ApplyPattern;
    TBeginPattern*      BeginPattern;
    TBeginTemplate*      BeginTemplate;
    TBezierTo1*          BezierTo1;
    TBezierTo2*          BezierTo2;
    TBezierTo3*          BezierTo3;
    TClipPath*           ClipPath;
    TClosePath*          ClosePath;
    TDrawShading*         DrawShading;
    TEndPattern*          EndPattern;
    TEndTemplate*         EndTemplate;
    TLineTo*             LineTo;
    TMoveTo*             MoveTo;
    TMulMatrix*          MulMatrix;
    TRectangle*           Rectangle;
    TRestoreGraphicState* RestoreGraphicState;
    TSaveGraphicState*    SaveGraphicState;
    TSetCharSpacing*      SetCharSpacing;
    TSetExtGState*         SetExtGState;
    TSetFillColor*        SetFillColor;
    TSetFont*             SetFont;
    TSetLeading*           SetLeading;
    TSetLineCapStyle*      SetLineCapStyle;
    TSetLineDashPattern*   SetLineDashPattern;
    TSetLineJoinStyle*     SetLineJoinStyle;
    TSetLineWidth*         SetLineWidth;
    TSetMiterLimit*        SetMiterLimit;
    TSetStrokeColor*       SetStrokeColor;
    TSetTextDrawMode*      SetTextDrawMode;
    TSetTextScale*         SetTextScale;
    TSetWordSpacing*       SetWordSpacing;
    void*                 Reserved001;    // See comment below
    void*                 Reserved002;    // See comment below
    TShowTextArrayW*       ShowTextArrayW; // Preferred for text extraction
    TInsertImage*          InsertImage;
    TShowTextArrayA*       ShowTextArrayA; // Preferred for text searching
    // Additional reserved members follow. All reserved fields must be
    // initialized with NULL.
};
```



```
typedef UI32 TParseFlags;
#define pfNone 0x00000000 // Default
#define pfDecomprAllImages 0x00000002 // See description
#define pfNoJPXDecode 0x00000004 // See description
#define pfDitherImagesToBW 0x00000008 // Floyd-Steinberg dithering.
#define pfConvImagesToGray 0x00000010 // See description
#define pfConvImagesToRGB 0x00000020 // See description
#define pfConvImagesToCMYK 0x00000040 // See description
#define pfImageInfoOnly 0x00000080 // See description
```

The function parses the content stream of the current open page. The content parser can be used to extract text, images, and vector graphics from a PDF file. The parameter *Stack* holds a set of callback functions which are executed if corresponding operators were found in the content stream. The parameter *Data* is a user defined pointer that is passed unchanged to the callback functions.

All callback functions are optional. Which callback functions must be set depends on the kind of information that should be extracted. For example, an application that extracts images must at least provide the callback function `TInsertImage`.

All callback functions which return an integer value can break processing if necessary. A return value of zero indicates success and processing continues. A return value of 1 of the `TBeginTemplate` or `TBeginPattern` callback functions indicates that the object should be skipped. The corresponding content streams are not executed in this case. This can be useful when extracting images. Any other return value breaks processing.

#### Notice:

It is allowed to write arbitrary objects into the page while the content parser is executed but it is strongly required to check whether a fatal error occurred when writing something to the page. The callback function must return a negative value in such a case to break processing. This is required because the parser doesn't notice when a fatal error occurs. New objects will be ignored when parsing a page.

`ParseContent()` is already part of DynaPDF since version 2.0.30 but it was never documented. Because the function was undocumented, a few important changes were made in DynaPDF 2.5 which do not break backward compatibility. However, an application that uses the following features must be slightly changed when it is recompiled:

- The flag `pfTranslateStrings` is no longer defined because the used callback function specifies already whether strings should be converted to Unicode. The old constant 1 is ignored.
- Two additional callback functions `TShowTextA` and `TShowTextW` were defined at the reserved fields `Reserved0001` and `Reserved0002`. These callback functions are no longer defined and no longer executed. These functions could be used in combination with `TShowTextArrayA` or `TShowTextArrayW` only. DynaPDF processes now the entire text with the array versions. So, existing applications will still work as expected.

The function supports several flags which are useful when extracting images from a PDF file. These flags are meaningful only, if the `TInsertImage` callback function is set.

Flag	Description
<code>pfDecomprAllImages</code>	<p>If set, all images are decompressed with exception of JBIG2 compressed images. Decompressing all images can be useful if all images should be stored in a specific file format like TIFF, PNG, or BMP.</p> <p>If the flag is absent, images which are already stored in a valid file format are returned as is. This can be useful if no conversion to a specific destination image format is required. Images which can be stored unchanged are Gray and RGB JPEG images, as well as JPEG 2000 compressed images.</p>
<code>pfNoJPXDecode</code>	Meaningful only if the flag <code>pfDecomprAllImages</code> is set. If set, JPEG 2000 images are not decompressed.
<code>pfDitherImagesToBW</code>	This flag is considered only if an image is decompressed. If set, decompressed images are converted to 1 bit black and white by using the Floyd-Steinberg dithering algorithm. 1 bit images are returned unchanged.
<code>pfConvImagesToGray</code>	This flag is considered only if an image is decompressed. If set, decompressed images are converted to gray.
<code>pfConvImagesToRGB</code>	This flag is considered only if an image is decompressed. If set, decompressed images are converted RGB.
<code>pfConvImagesToCMYK</code>	This flag is considered only if an image is decompressed. If set, decompressed images are converted CMYK.
<code>pfImageInfoOnly</code>	If set, images are not decompressed. This flag can be useful if no further processing is required, e.g. if images should be enumerated.

Although the `TDrawShading` callback function is defined there is no way to process shadings at this time. Shadings can only be rastered to an image to get a meaningful result. However, such a feature is not available yet.

The content parser is not part of the Visual Basic interface due to the bad support for callback functions. Preferred programming languages are C/C++ and Borland Delphi because these programming languages offer optimal execution speed and the usage is relatively simple. The usage with .Net languages is of course possible too but due to the missing support for pointers it is somewhat more complicated. However, the execution speed in C# is very good.

## The Graphics State

An application that uses the content parser must maintain an internal graphics state stack that stores the current graphics state in a LIFO (last in first out) data structure. Depending on what kind of information should be extracted only a few members of the graphics state maybe required. For example, an application that extracts text from a PDF file can ignore path painting parameters like the current line cap style, line width and so on.

A complete graphics state contains the following variables:

Parameter	Type	Initial Value
CharSpacing	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f
Clipping Path	Vector array	Crop box or Media box
DashPattern	<a href="#">double</a> *	NULL (Solid line)
DashPhase	UI32	0
FillColor	<a href="#">double</a> [32]	Black
FillColorSpace	TTextColorSpace, IColorSpace*	esDeviceGray, NULL
FillPattern	IPattern*	NULL
Font	IFont*	NULL
FontSize	<a href="#">double</a>	0.0
FontType	TFontType	-
Leading	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f (Info only, see below)
LineCapStyle	TLineCapStyle	csButtCap
LineJoinStyle	TLineJoinStyle	jsMiterJoin
LineWidth	<a href="#">float</a>	1.0f
Matrix	TCTM	{1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0}
MiterLimit	<a href="#">float</a>	10.0f
StrokeColor	<a href="#">double</a> [32]	Black
StrokeColorSpace	TTextColorSpace, IColorSpace*	esDeviceGray, NULL
StrokePattern	IPattern*	NULL
TextDrawMode	TDrawMode	dmNormal
TextScale	<a href="#">float</a>	100.0f
WordSpacing	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f

The current graphics state must be initialized with the above default values before parsing a new page. Templates (Form XObjects in PDF terms) inherit the graphics state of the parent object that paints the template.

The parameter Leading is provided for information only because it is already considered in the text matrix of all text callback functions (see [Coordinate Spaces](#) for further information).

The variables which make up the graphics state are normally stored in a structure or class so that the graphics state can be saved and restored if corresponding operators are executed.

If the TSaveGraphicState callback function is executed, the application must create a copy of the current graphics state and push it onto the graphics state stack. In the corresponding TRestoreGraphicState callback function the last element of the graphics state stack must be popped and copied to the current graphics state.

A correct handling of the graphics state is always required if the application needs to compute coordinates of graphic objects.

Note also that the graphics state can be saved and restored very often. The maximum allowed nesting level of save/restore graphics state operators in PDF is 28. The application should not depend on this limit but it can be used for optimizations, e.g. to create a graphics state cache.

### **Coordinate Spaces**

Coordinates in PDF are defined in a device independent coordinate space which is called user space. The positive x-axis extends horizontally to the right and the positive y-axis vertically upward, as in standard mathematical practice (subject to alteration by the orientation of the page (see [GetOrientation\(\)](#)).

The length of a unit in default user space is **1/72** inch. The visible area of a page is defined by the crop box of the page, or if absent, by the media box (see [GetBBox\(\)](#) for further information).

In addition to user space, PDF uses a variety of other coordinate spaces for specialized purposes:

- Text coordinates are defined in text space. The transformation from text space to user space is defined by a text matrix which is provided in the text callback functions. PDF defines also several text related positioning parameters in the graphics state. However, to make the usage easier DynaPDF pre-computes the text transformation matrix so that no further calculations are required to transform the text space to user space. Note that the current leading, which specifies the distance between two text lines, is already considered in the text matrix. The text matrix is always provided. To transform the text space to user space the text matrix must be multiplied with the one of the current graphics state.
- Images are defined in image space. An image in PDF is always one unit wide and one unit high in user space, regardless of the number of samples in the image. The mapping to the visible region in user space is archived by temporarily altering the current transformation matrix. The image position, as well as the width and height must be computed from the current transformation matrix (take a look at the description of the `TInsertImage` callback function for further information).
- Templates (Form XObjects in PDF terms) are defined in form space. The transformation from form space to user space is defined by a form matrix that is provided in the `TBeginTemplate` callback function. However, the matrix parameter of the callback function is optional and can be set to `NULL`. Null means the matrix is set to the identity matrix. To transform form space to user space the form matrix must be multiplied with the one of the current graphics state.
- Patterns are defined in pattern space. The transformation from pattern space to the **initial** default user space of the object in which it is used is provided in the `TBeginPattern` callback function. However, the matrix parameter of the callback function is optional and can be set to `NULL`. Null means the matrix is set to the identity matrix. Note that patterns are treated like a color. The `TBeginPattern` callback function starts the definition of the pattern and activates it in the graphics state when the corresponding `TEndPattern` callback function is executed. However, a pattern is applied when the next fill or stroke path operation occurs and if the pattern was defined as fill or stroke color.

- If a pattern is used on a page, the pattern matrix maps pattern space to the default (initial) coordinate space of the page. Changes to the page's transformation matrix that occur within the page's content stream, such as rotation and scaling, have no effect on the pattern; it maintains its original relationship to the page no matter where on the page it is used. Similarly, if a pattern is used within a template, the pattern matrix maps pattern space to the template's default user space (that is, the template coordinate space at the time the template is painted). A pattern may be used within another pattern; the inner pattern's matrix defines its relationship to the pattern space of the outer pattern.

### ***Working with Transformation Matrices***

Coordinate transformations in PDF are archived with so called Affine Transformations. Affine transformations can represent any linear mapping from one coordinate system to another.

Affine transformations work with transformation matrices which consist of 6 real numbers. A transformation matrix describes the coordinate origin, scaling factors of the x- and y-axis, as well as the rotation angle of the coordinate system. A transformation matrix represents essentially a coordinate space in which graphical objects can be drawn. Two coordinate spaces can easily be concatenated by multiplying the corresponding transformation matrices.

Coordinates of objects which use their own coordinate space, such a text, templates, or patterns, must be transformed to user space before the coordinates can be used. How this must be done is described later.

Transformation matrices in DynaPDF are stored in the structure TCTM which is defined as follows:

```
struct TCTM
{
    double a;
    double b;
    double c;
    double d;
    double x;
    double y;
};
```

The identity matrix is [1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0] (a, b, c, d, x, y).

The following overview lists the most important matrix manipulations:

- **Translations** are specified as [1, 0, 0, 1, tx, ty] where tx and ty represent the distances to translate the origin of the coordinate system in horizontal and vertical dimensions, respectively.
- **Scaling** is archived by [sx, 0, 0, sy, 0, 0]. This scales the coordinates so that 1 unit in the horizontal and vertical dimensions of the new coordinate system is the same size as sx and sy units, respectively, in the previous coordinate system.

- **Rotations** are archived by  $[\cos \alpha, \sin \alpha, -\sin \alpha, \cos \alpha, 0, 0]$ , which has the effect of rotating the coordinate system axes by an angle  $\alpha$  (measured in radians) counter clockwise.
- **Skew** is specified by  $[1, \tan \alpha, \tan \beta, 1, 0, 0]$ , which skews the x-axis by an angle  $\alpha$ , and the y-axis by an angle  $\beta$  (measured in radians).

All transformations above can occur in any combination in one transformation matrix.

### ***Helper Functions***

The following functions are helpful and some of them are required when working with transformation matrices. To archive maximum execution speed the source codes of the most important functions are provided:

```
// Distance between two points
double CalcDistance(double x1, double y1, double x2, double y2)
{
    double dx = x2-x1;
    double dy = y2-y1;
    return sqrt(dx*dx + dy*dy);
}

// Rotation angle in radians
double GetRotationAngle(TCTM &M)
{
    double x1 = 0.0;
    double y1 = 0.0;
    double x2 = 1.0;
    double y2 = 0.0;
    Transform(M, x1, y1);
    Transform(M, x2, y2);
    return atan2(y2-y1, x2-x1);
}

// Overall scaling factor
double GetScaleFactor(TCTM &M)
{
    #define sin45 0.70710678118654752440084436210485
    double x = sin45 * M.a + sin45 * M.c;
    double y = sin45 * M.b + sin45 * M.d;
    return sqrt(x*x + y*y);
}

// Scaling factor of the x-axis
double GetScaleX(TCTM &M)
{
    double x1 = 0.0;
    double y1 = 0.0;
    double x2 = 1.0;
    double y2 = 0.0;
    Transform(M, x1, y1);
    Transform(M, x2, y2);
    if (x1 > x2)
        return -CalcDistance(x1, y1, x2, y2);
}
```

```

    else
        return CalcDistance(x1, y1, x2, y2);
}
// Scaling factor of the y-axis
double GetScaleY(TCTM &M)
{
    double x1 = 0.0;
    double y1 = 0.0;
    double x2 = 0.0;
    double y2 = 1.0;
    Transform(M, x1, y1);
    Transform(M, x2, y2);
    if (y1 > y2)
        return -CalcDistance(x1, y1, x2, y2);
    else
        return CalcDistance(x1, y1, x2, y2);
}
// Multiply two matrices. Note that matrix multiplications are not
// commutative. It is a difference whether the matrix M1 is multiplied
// with M2 or vice versa!
TCTM MulMatrix(TCTM &M1, TCTM &M2)
{
    TCTM retval;
    retval.a = M2.a * M1.a + M2.b * M1.c;
    retval.b = M2.a * M1.b + M2.b * M1.d;
    retval.c = M2.c * M1.a + M2.d * M1.c;
    retval.d = M2.c * M1.b + M2.d * M1.d;
    retval.x = M2.x * M1.a + M2.y * M1.c + M1.x;
    retval.y = M2.x * M1.b + M2.y * M1.d + M1.y;
    return retval;
}
// Transform a point with a matrix
void Transform(TCTM &M, double &x, double &y)
{
    double tx = x;
    x = tx * M.a + y * M.c + M.x;
    y = tx * M.b + y * M.d + M.y;
}

```

### ***Text Coordinates and Metrics***

As mentioned earlier text coordinates are defined in text space. The transformation from text space to user space is archived by multiplying the text matrix with the one of the current graphics state. However, the graphics state contains several text related parameters which require some further explanation. The following sub-clauses describe in detail in which coordinate space these parameters are defined, how they can be transformed to user space, and how text metrics like the text width must be interpreted.

### Font Size

The current font size, which is a parameter of the graphics state, is defined in text space. The visible font size is measured in user space, so, the value of the graphics state is not directly usable.

The transformation to user space can only be done in the used text callback function because the mapping from text space to user space depends on the text matrix which is only available in a text record.

The font size can be transformed to user space as follows:

```
// We must first transform the text matrix to user space. The text
// matrix is a parameter of the used text callback function. m_GState
// represents the current graphics state. The function GetScaleY() is
// described at Helper Functions.
TCTM m = MulMatrix(m_GState.Matrix, *Matrix);
double realFontSize = fabs(m_GS.FontSize * GetScaleY(m));
```

The above code is very simple but can be fairly optimized because the function `GetScaleY()` causes some unnecessary overhead. When extracting text from a PDF file, the start point of the text must always be calculated and the font size is always a positive value. The optimized code looks as follows:

```
double x1 = 0.0;
double y1 = 0.0;
double x2 = 0.0;
double y2 = m_GState.FontSize;
// Transform the text matrix to user space
TCTM m = MulMatrix(m_GState.Matrix, *Matrix);
Transform(m, x1, y1); // Start point of the text record
Transform(m, x2, y2); // Second point to compute the font size
double realFontSize = CalcDistance(x1, y1, x2, y2);
```

The main difference to the first code is that the start point of the text record can be used for further calculations and the real font size is already a positive value. Such optimizations are very important especially when using more complex algorithms to construct text lines or logically sorted text output.

### Text Width

The text width, which is provided in all text callback functions, is calculated in text space. The provided text width includes already the graphics state parameters Character Spacing, Word Spacing, and Text Scaling. However, these parameters are still required if the width of a sub string must be computed. The parameters must be available in the graphics state including the corresponding callback functions which set the parameters.

The real text width measured in user space can be calculated as follows:

```
double x1 = 0.0;
double y1 = 0.0;
double x2 = Width; // Width is a parameter of the callback function
double y2 = 0.0;
// Transform the text matrix to user space
```



```
TCTM m = MulMatrix(m_GState.Matrix, *Matrix);
Transform(m, x1, y1); // Start point of the text record
Transform(m, x2, y2); // End point of the text record
double realTextWidth = CalcDistance(x1, y1, x2, y2);
```

The end point of a text record is usually required to determine whether the next record lies on the same line. An algorithm that is able to construct text lines in arbitrary rotated coordinate systems is provided in the example Text Extraction which is delivered with all DynaPDF versions.

### ***Character Spacing***

As described above the current character spacing is already considered in the text width that is provided in all text callback functions. However, the value must be stored in the graphics state if the width of a sub string must be computed. Character spacing is measured in unscaled font units. The required transformation to text space is done in functions like [GetTextWidth\(\)](#).

### ***Word Spacing***

Like character spacing, the current word spacing is already considered in the text width that is provided in all text callback functions. However, word spacing applies to the space character of simple fonts only.

An application that extracts text from PDF files maybe wants to preserve the original formatting of the text. In this case, the distance between two words in the same text record must be known, e.g. to insert a number of spaces to emulate the word spacing.

However, note that the current word spacing must be ignored if the font type is `ftType0` (the font type is a parameter of the graphics state and is set with the `TSetFont` callback function).

Another thing that must be considered is that word and character spacing are measured in unscaled font units. The width of a space character including word spacing can be calculated with the function [GetTextWidth\(\)](#) that is part of the font API (the name is `fntGetTextWidth()` in C/C++).

An algorithm that considers word spacing must check whether the source string contains space characters. If a space was found, the width of the sub string that occurs before must be calculated so that the start and end point of the word can be calculated. Additional spaces can be skipped and the cursor position is updated to the position behind the spaces. Processing continues until the entire text of the record was processed.

An algorithm that processes text in this way calculates essentially the start and end coordinates of every text part that is either separated by spaces or kerning space.

The required source code looks as follows (C++):

```
// The following code fragment uses the TShowTextArrayW callback function.
SI32 parseShowTextArrayW(const void* Data, const struct TTextRecordA*
Source, struct TCTM* Matrix, const struct TTextRecordW* Kerning, UI32
Count, double Width, LBOOL Decoded)
{
    if (!Decoded) return 0;
```

```

double x1 = 0.0;
double y1 = 0.0;
// Transform the text matrix to user space
TCTM m = MulMatrix(m_GState.Matrix, *Matrix);
Transform(m, x1, y1); // Start point of the text record
// Word spacing applies to simple fonts only.
if (m_GState.FontType != ftType0)
{
    UI32 i, j, last;
    double x2 = 0.0;
    double y2 = 0.0;
    double textWidth = 0.0;
    for (i = 0; i < Count; i++)
    {
        j = 0;
        last = 0;
        // Consider kerning space
        if (Source[i].Advance != 0.0f)
        {
            textWidth -= Source[i].Advance;
            x1 = textWidth;
            y1 = 0.0;
            // Update the cursor position
            Transform(m, x1, y1);
        }
        // Scan for spaces
        while (j < Source[i].Length)
        {
            if (Source[i].Text[j] != 32)
                ++j;
            else
            {
                // A space was found
                if (j > last)
                {
                    // The text must be taken from the Source array!
                    textWidth += fntGetTextWidth( m_GState.ActiveFont,
                                                    Source[i].Text + last,
                                                    j - last,
                                                    m_GState.CharSpacing,
                                                    m_GState.WordSpacing,
                                                    m_GState.TextScale);

                    x2 = textWidth;
                    y2 = 0.0;
                    // Calculate the end point.
                    Transform(m, x2, y2);
                    // We have now the exact start and end coordinate of the
                    // text's baseline. The text could now be written to a
                    // file or added to a list of text records depending on
                    // how the algorithm processes text. Note that the

```

```

        // string length in the source and Unicode (Kerning)
        // record can differ, e.g. if a source character is
        // decomposed to two or more Unicode characters. In this
        // case, the function fntTranslateString2() can be used
        // to translate the sub string to Unicode because we
        // don't know where we are in the already existing
        // Unicode string.
        /*AddText(x1, y1,      // Start point
                x2, y2,      // End point
                Source[i],    // Source record
                Kerning[i],   // Translated Unicode record
                last,         // String offset
                j - last);    // String length

        */
    }
    last = j++;
    // Skip additional spaces
    while (j < Source[i].Length && Source[i].Text[j] == 32)
    {
        ++j;
    }
    textWidth += fntGetTextWidth( m_GState.ActiveFont,
                                Source[i].Text + last,
                                j - last,
                                m_GState.CharSpacing,
                                m_GState.WordSpacing,
                                m_GState.TextScale);

    last = j;
    x1 = textWidth;
    y1 = 0.0;
    // Update the cursor position.
    // We are now behind the space(s).
    Transform(m_Matrix1, x1, y1);
}

// All spaces in the string were processed. Do we have some
// remaining text?
if (j > last)
{
    textWidth += fntGetTextWidth( m_GState.ActiveFont,
                                Source[i].Text + last,
                                j - last,
                                m_GState.CharSpacing,
                                m_GState.WordSpacing,
                                m_GState.TextScale);

    x2 = textWidth;
    y2 = 0.0;
    Transform(m, x2, y2);
    /*AddText(x1, y1,
            x2, y2,

```

```

        Source[i],
        Kerning[i],
        last,
        j - last);*/

    // Update the cursor position. More text can follow.
    x1 = x2;
    y1 = y2;
}
}
}
}
}

```

DynaPDF is delivered with several example projects which demonstrate how text coordinates must be computed and how text can be extracted. The above code is a fragment of the example project Text Coordinates which is delivered with all DynaPDF versions.

### ***Text Scaling***

Like character and word spacing the current text scaling is already considered in the text width that is provided in all text callback functions. However, the value must be stored in the graphics state if the width of a sub string must be computed. Text scaling is measured in percent of the original unscaled text width.

### ***Sub string coordinates***

Sub string processing is somewhat more complicated because the width of a sub string cannot be calculated from the Unicode string and one source character does not necessarily correspond to one Unicode character.

Simple fonts use one byte encodings where one source byte can be decoded to one or more Unicode characters. CID fonts support also multi-byte encodings with fixed and variable code lengths. A sequence of  $n$  source bytes can be decoded to  $m$  Unicode characters. So, there is no logical relationship between the source and converted Unicode string.

If a text search algorithm should provide the coordinates of a found string, then it must be able to find the position of the search text in the source string because it is not possible to calculate the string width from the Unicode string. DynaPDF provides several helper functions to calculate the width of a sub string or to convert an arbitrary source string manually to Unicode. It is always possible to calculate the exact position of a string but the recommended strategy depends on the used text callback function and on the kind of algorithm that should be developed:

- Text extraction algorithms require usually not the exact position of every character or word in a string. Coordinates of sub strings are only required if word spacing must be considered but word spacing refers to simple fonts only. Because the code length of a simple font is always one byte the string width can be easily computed with `fntGetTextWidth()` and in cases where the source string is shorter than the Unicode string the source string can be manually converted to Unicode with `TranslateRawString2()` (the name is `fntTranslateRawString2()` in

C/C++). For this kind of algorithm the TShowTextArrayW callback function should be used because it provides anything required to develop fast text extraction algorithms. The example projects text\_extraction and text\_coordinates demonstrate how text extraction algorithms can be developed.

- Text search algorithms could use the TShowTextArrayW callback function too but the usage is much more complicated if strings of CID fonts must be processed. CID fonts support encodings with arbitrary code lengths from one through four bytes. Because the string width cannot be computed from the translated Unicode string the function must be able to find the position in the source string. This is not easy especially if the search text was stored in multiple text records.

To simplify the development of text search algorithms the content parser provides the TShowTextArrayA callback function which returns the raw source strings. The conversion to Unicode can be done with [TranslateRawCode\(\)](#) (the name is fnTranslateRawCode() in C/C++). The function converts a sequence of source bytes to Unicode and calculates the width of that character. The advantage is that the exact position of every character in a string can be easily calculated independent of the current font type. The overhead due to the call on a per character basis is not large because the function is strongly optimized to improve processing speed. The example text\_search demonstrates how a text search algorithm can be developed.

### ***Using the Content Parser***

The content parser can be used to extract text, vector graphics, and images from a PDF file. The following sections describe which callback functions must set, what must be stored in the graphics state, as well as other important aspects.

Note that DynaPDF is delivered with several example projects which demonstrate how the content parser can be used. Before developing your own code take a look into the examples text\_extraction, text\_search, or image\_extraction.

### ***Text Extraction or Text Search Algorithms***

The following callback functions should be set to process PDF text:

```
TBeginTemplate
TEndTemplate           // Optional
TMulMatrix
TSetCharSpacing
TSetFont
TSetLeading             // Optional
TRestoreGraphicState
TSaveGraphicState
TSetFillColor          // Optional
TSetStrokeColor        // Optional
TSetTextDrawMode
TSetTextScale
TSetWordSpacing
```

```
TShowTextArrayA or // Preferred for text search algorithms
TShowTextArrayW // Preferred for text extraction algorithms
```

Which text callback function should be used depends on the requirements of the algorithm. If the coordinates of arbitrary sub strings must be computed the usage of the TShowTextArrayA callback function in combination with [TranslateRawCode\(\)](#) is recommended. If sub string processing not required the TShowTextArrayW should be used.

Patterns, shadings, images, and vector graphics can be ignored when extracting text. So, it is not required to set related callback functions.

The graphics state should contain these variables:

Parameter	Type	Initial Value
CharSpacing	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f
<a href="#">FillColor</a>	<a href="#">UI32</a> (see comment below)	<a href="#">Black</a> (optional)
Font	IFont*	NULL
FontSize	<a href="#">double</a>	0.0
FontType	TFontType	-
Leading	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f (optional)
Matrix	TCTM	{1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0}
SpaceWidth	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f
<a href="#">StrokeColor</a>	<a href="#">UI32</a> (see comment below)	<a href="#">Black</a> (optional)
TextDrawMode	TDrawMode	dmNormal
TextScale	<a href="#">float</a>	100.0f
WordSpacing	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f

The text color is normally not required when extracting text. If it should be considered the current fill and stroke color must be available in the graphics state and the corresponding callback functions must be set. Whether the current fill or stroke color must be used as text color depends on the text draw mode (see also [SetTextDrawMode\(\)](#)).

Note that colors in PDF are represented by an array of double where each component ranges from 0.0 through 1.0 of the corresponding color space. However, colors are normally processed in a unique device color space such as DeviceGray, DeviceRGB, or DeviceCMYK because applications which use the content parser have normally no build-in support for PDF color spaces. Colors which are set by the TSetFillColor and TSetStrokeColor callback functions should be converted to a device color space with [ConvColor\(\)](#). The resulting device color must then be stored in the graphics state.

The TEndTemplate callback function is optional because no specific operation is required to be executed when a template is leaved.

### **Unicode conversion**

The extraction of human readable text requires a conversion to a well known encoding like Unicode because PDF strings are not necessarily human readable.

Whether it is possible to convert a PDF string to Unicode depends on whether the required encoding information is available. This is always the case if a font uses a predefined encoding like WinAnsi or

MacRoman or if the glyph names of Type1 fonts are available in the Adobe Glyph List or ZapfDingbats encoding.

Fonts which use a symbol encoding can provide a ToUnicode CMap which offers the required mapping to Unicode. However, this CMap is optional and is not necessarily available. If a symbol font does not contain a ToUnicode CMap the strings are converted to the code page 1252.

### ***External CMaps***

A widely used technique to reduce the amount of data that must be stored in a PDF file is the usage of non embedded CID fonts. CID fonts, whether embedded or not, can depend on external CMap files which offer the required mapping to Unicode.

To process strings of such fonts correctly, DynaPDF must be able to load required CMap files if necessary. Therefore, DynaPDF is delivered with the most important CMap files which are provided by Adobe Systems. These CMaps can be found in the DynaPDF installation directory at `/Resource/CMap/`. Applications which extract text from PDF files should include these CMaps so that they can be loaded at runtime.

The search path to external CMaps must be set with `SetCMapDir()` before executing `ParseContent()` the first time. The function creates a CMap cache that is held in memory until the PDF instance will be deleted. The search path(s) to external CMap files should be set only one time per PDF instance and one PDF instance should be used to process so many PDF files as possible. This can significantly improve processing speed.

If a required CMap is absent the *Decoded* parameter of the `TShowTextArrayW` callback function is set to false and the string should be ignored in this case because no meaningful values can be returned.

### ***Inside the Callback Functions***

The following sub-clauses describe important operations which must be executed in the callback functions to archive correct results.

#### ***TBeginTemplate***

This callback function is executed when a Form XObject in PDF terms is painted (we call this object type template in DynaPDF). The parameter *BBox* specifies the template's bounding box or visible area measured in form space. The required mapping from form space to user space is specified by the *Matrix* parameter (see also [Coordinate Spaces](#)). The *Matrix* parameter is optional and can be set to NULL. In the latter case, the form matrix is set to the identity matrix.

If the form matrix is present then it must be multiplied with the current transformation matrix of the graphics state as follows:

```
// m_GState represents the current graphics state
if (Matrix)
{
    m_GState.Matrix = MulMatrix(m_GState.Matrix, *Matrix);
}
```

The corresponding TEndTemplate callback function is executed if the contents of a template were fully processed. The definition of this callback function is optional because no specific code is required to be executed.

**Return values:**

- 0 indicates success and processing continues.
- 1 means that the template should be skipped.
- Any other return value breaks processing.

***TMulMatrix***

The TMulMatrix callback function is executed if the current transformation matrix must be multiplied with a new one. When using the function MulMatrix() the matrix must be multiplied with the one of the graphics state as follows:

```
// m_GState represents the current graphics state
m_GState.Matrix = MulMatrix(m_GState.Matrix, *Matrix);
```

The parameter *Matrix* is always set; it is not required to check whether the parameter is set to NULL.

***TSetFont***

The TSetFont callback function activates a font in the graphics state. The following variables of the graphics state must be set when the callback function is executed:

```
m_GState.ActiveFont = Font;
m_GState.FontSize   = FontSize;
m_GState.FontType    = Type;
m_GState.SpaceWidth = (float)(fntGetSpaceWidth(Font, FontSize) * 0.5);
```

The space width is required to construct text lines. It is usually best to use the half space width to determine whether a space must be inserted at a specific position because many PDF fonts do not contain a space character and the function `fntGetSpaceWidth()` returns just a default width in this case (the function name is `GetSpaceWidth()` in C#, Delphi, and VB .Net).

The space width is measured in text space like the member *Advance* of a kerning record. However, the distance between two text records is measured in user space! So, the space width must be transformed to user space before it can be compared with the distance between two text records. See the description of the TShowTextArrayW callback function for further information.

***TRestoreGraphicState***

As the name of the function suggests the graphics state must be restored when the callback function is executed. The graphics state stack is a LIFO (last in first out) data structure that stores copies of the graphics state. The last element from the graphics state stack must be popped and the values must be copied to the current graphics state.



It is guaranteed that this function is not executed without a preceeding `TSaveGraphicState` call. Invalid restore graphics state operators are treated as an error. The parser breaks processing when it encounters such an error.

The return value of the function must be zero. Any other return value breaks processing.

### ***TSaveGraphicState***

As the name suggests the current graphics state must be saved when the callback function is executed. As already described at `TRestoreGraphicState` the graphics state stack is a LIFO (last in first out) data structure that stores copies of the graphics state. The application must create a copy of the current graphics state and push it onto the graphics state stack.

It is **not** guaranteed that all saved graphics states will be restored until the page was fully parsed. The application must make sure that remaining copies of the graphics state will be released before parsing the next page or terminating the application.

The return value of the function must be zero. Any other return value breaks processing.

### ***TShowTextArrayA***

This is the preferred callback function to develop text search algorithms. See also [Sub string coordinates](#) for further information. The function returns the source strings which can be converted to Unicode with `TranslateRawCode()`. `TranslateRawCode()` converts the source string on a per character basis and calculates the width of that character in one pass.

The parameter *Width* represents the width of the entire text record. The source array provides also the displacement vector *Advance*. *Advance* is a vector also if only coordinate is given; the y-coordinate is always zero. Positive values of *Advance* move the cursor to the **left**; negative values move it to the **right** in a non-rotated coordinate system. The string widths and the displacement vector are measured in text space.

The displacement vector is often used to apply kerning between two characters but it can also be used to emulate spaces or to move the cursor to an arbitrary position on the x-axis of the text line. Because CID fonts do not support word spacing, spaces are very often emulated with the displacement vector.

The source strings are **not** null-terminated. The array can also contain strings with zero length. In this case only the displacement vector *Advance* must be considered.

DynaPDF is delivered with the example `text_search` which demonstrates how a text search algorithm can be developed. This project should be used as basis to develop your own code.

### ***TShowTextArrayW***

This is the preferred callback function to develop text extraction algorithms. See also [Sub string coordinates](#) for further information.

The arrays *Source* and *Kerning* contain the source and translated Unicode strings of a text record. Both arrays contain always the same number of elements (parameter *Count*).

The parameter *Width* represents the width of the entire text record. The kerning array provides also the width of each sub record and the displacement vector *Advance*. Advance is a vector also if only coordinate is given; the y-coordinate is always zero. Positive values of *Advance* move the cursor to the left; negative values move it to the right in a non-rotated coordinate system. The string widths and the displacement vector are measured in text space.

The displacement vector is often used to apply kerning between two characters but it can also be used to emulate spaces or to move the cursor to an arbitrary position on the x-axis of the text line. Because CID fonts do not support word spacing, spaces are very often emulated with the displacement vector.

The source strings are required if the width of a sub string must be calculated. Note that it is not possible to calculate the width of a sub string from the Unicode string.

It is possible that one or more sub records contain strings with a zero length. In this case, only the displacement vector Advance must be considered.

DynaPDF is delivered with the examples `text_extraction` and `text_coordinates` which demonstrate how text extraction algorithms can be developed and how text coordinates must be calculated. One of these projects should be used as basis to develop your own code.

### ***Image Extraction***

The following callback functions should be set to extract images:

```
TBeginTemplate
TEndTemplate           // Optional
TInsertImage
TMulMatrix             // Optional
TRestoreGraphicState  // Optional
TSaveGraphicState     // Optional
TSetFillColor         // Optional
```

It is possible to extract images without maintaining a graphics state. However, the coordinates and visible size in user space cannot be computed in this case. In addition, 1 bit images require a special processing if the image is drawn as an image mask. This is the case if no color table is present and if the member *Transparent* of the `TPDFImage` structure is set to true. Black pixels are rendered in the current fill color in this case. If the application wants to preserve the color in which the image would be rendered in a PDF viewer then it must convert the image to the color space of the current fill color (or to a device color space). The current fill color can be converted to a device color space with [ConvColor\(\)](#). If a conversion to a device color space is preferred then it is usually best to convert the fill color directly to a device color space when the color is set in the `TSetFillColor` callback function. In this case the resulting device color can be stored in the graphics state as an unsigned integer (UI32).

The graphics state should contain these variables:

Parameter	Type	Initial Value
FillColor	double[32]	Black (optional)
FillColorSpace	TExtColorSpace, IColorSpace*	esDeviceGray, NULL (optional)
Matrix	TCTM	{1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0}

The visible size of an image, measured in user space, can be calculated from the current transformation matrix as follows:

```
double x1 = 0.0;
double y1 = 0.0;
double x2 = 1.0;
double y2 = 0.0;
double x3 = 0.0;
double y3 = 1.0;
// m_GState represents the current graphics state
Transform(m_GState.Matrix, x1, y1); // lower left corner
Transform(m_GState.Matrix, x2, y2); // lower right corner
Transform(m_GState.Matrix, x3, y3); // upper left corner
// CalcDistance() is described at Helper Functions.
double w = CalcDistance(x1, y1, x2, y2); // Width in user space
double h = CalcDistance(x1, y1, x3, y3); // Height in user space
```

An image can be used several times in a document, e.g. if it represents a logo or other repeating contents. To avoid the extraction of unnecessary duplicates a duplicate check should be performed before extracting an image. If the image is **not** an inline image, the member *ObjectPtr* of the structure *TPDFImage* represents a unique pointer to the image object.

Inline images are fully defined in the content stream and cannot be used repeatedly. A duplicate check is normally not required. The only way to compare two inline images is to compare the image data.

A duplicate check should also be performed for templates. Templates are normally used for repeating contents such as fixed page backgrounds, logos and so on. To skip a template the *TBeginTemplate* callback function must return 1.

### ***Physical organization of images***

The visible appearance and the physical structure how an image is stored in a PDF file is sometimes somewhat confusing. Images can be split into bands or tiles. There are various reasons why this can be done but if an image was split into smaller pieces then it is very difficult to restore the original image. DynaPDF does not provide algorithms which try to identify pieces of a larger image.

It is usually best to ignore images which are less than two units high. For example, applications like Microsoft Word split images often into separate scan lines or smaller pieces if the image contained transparent areas. The result is a PDF file that contains hundreds or thousands of very small images. Because such small pieces are not really meaningful when viewed alone the application can either try to reconstruct the original image, or if this is not possible, such images should be skipped.

### ***Image coordinate space***

An image occupies a rectangle in image space  $w$  units wide and  $h$  units high, where  $w$  and  $h$  are the width and height of the image in samples or pixels. Each sample occupies one square unit. The coordinate origin  $(0, 0)$  is at the upper-left corner of the image, with coordinates ranging from 0 to  $w$  horizontally and 0 to  $h$  vertically.

The image's sample data is ordered by row, with the horizontal coordinate varying most rapidly. The upper-left corner of the first sample is at coordinates  $(0, 0)$ , the second at  $(1, 0)$ , and so on through the last sample of the first row, whose upper-left corner is at  $(0, 0)$  and whose upper-right corner is at  $(w - 1, 0)$ . The next samples after that are at coordinates  $(0, 1)$ ,  $(1, 1)$ , and so on to the final sample of the image, whose upper-left corner is at  $(0, 0)$  and whose lower-right corner is at  $(w-1, h-1)$ .

The correspondence between image space and user space is constant: the unit square of user space, bounded by user coordinates  $(0, 0)$  and  $(1, 1)$ , corresponds to the boundary of the image in image space. Following the normal convention for user space, the coordinate  $(0, 0)$  is at the lower-left corner of this square, corresponding to coordinates  $(0, h)$  in image space. The implicit transformation from image space to user space, if specified explicitly, would be described by the matrix  $[1/w, 0, 0, -1/h, 0, 1]$ .

An image can be placed on the output page in any position, orientation, and size by modifying the current transformation matrix to map the unit square of user space to the rectangle or parallelogram in which the image shall be painted. Typically, this is done within a pair of save/restore graphics state operators to isolate the effect of the transformation, which can include translation, rotation, reflection, and skew.

Please note that the content parser returns images as is. It is maybe required to mirror an image on the x- or y-axis or to rotate it according to the current transformation matrix. DynaPDF does not provide functions to manipulate images.

### ***Helper functions***

When extracting images it is usually required to create some kind of image file from the raw image data that is returned by the content parser. The following helper functions can be used to create image files:

- `CreateImage()`
- `AddImage()`
- `CloseImage()`

`CreateImage()` supports the creation of single and multi-page images (TIFF only). To create a multi-page image the function must be called before `ParseContent()` or before parsing the first page. If all images should be stored in the image file the flag `pfDecomprAllImages` must be set.

JPEG and JPEG 2000 images are already stored in valid formats in PDF. If the creation of one multi-page TIFF image per PDF file is not required then it is usually best to extract these image formats as is. In this case the flag `pfDecomprAllImages` must be absent.

DynaPDF is delivered with the demo project `image_extraction` which demonstrates how images can be extracted.

### Vector Graphics

To extract vector graphics the following callback functions should be set:

```

TBeginPattern
TEndPattern           // Optional
TBeginTemplate
TBezierTo1
TBezierTo2
TBezierTo3
TClipPath
TClosePath
TEndTemplate         // Optional
TLineTo
TMoveTo
TMulMatrix
TRectangle
TRestoreGraphicState
TSaveGraphicState
TSetExtGState        // Optional
TSetFillColor
TSetLineCapStyle
TSetLineDashPattern
TSetLineJoinStyle
TSetLineWidth
TSetMiterLimit
TSetStrokeColor

```

The graphics state should contain these variables:

Parameter	Type	Initial Value
Clipping Path	Vector array	Crop box or Media box
DashPattern	<a href="#">double</a> *	NULL (Solid line)
DashPhase	UI32	0
FillColor	<a href="#">double</a> [32]	Black
FillColorSpace	TExtColorSpace, IColorSpace*	esDeviceGray, NULL
FillPattern	IPattern*	NULL
LineCapStyle	TLineCapStyle	csButtCap
LineJoinStyle	TLineJoinStyle	jsMiterJoin
LineWidth	<a href="#">float</a>	0.0f
Matrix	TCTM	{1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0}
MiterLimit	<a href="#">float</a>	10.0f
StrokeColor	<a href="#">double</a> [32]	Black
StrokeColorSpace	TExtColorSpace, IColorSpace*	esDeviceGray, NULL
StrokePattern	IPattern*	NULL

If vector graphics should be processed in a unique device color space then it is usually best to convert PDF colors directly to the device color space with [ConvColor\(\)](#) and to store the device color

then in the graphics state. The data type of the members FillColor and StrokeColor must then be changed to unsigned int (UI32). There is no need to store the fill and stroke color space in the graphics state in this case.

Vector graphics are defined in page or form space depending on the object type in which the graphics are stored. The mapping to user space is archived by transforming the coordinate pairs with the current transformation matrix of the graphics state.

For example, if the TMoveTo callback function would be executed the application must transform the provided coordinates to user space as follows:

```
// x and y are the parameters of the TMoveTo callback function
Transform(m_GState.Matrix, x, y);
```

Vector graphics in PDF are always defined as paths. A path is invisible until it will be filled or stroked. PDF supports primitive path painting operators like bezier curves, lines, and rectangles only. Circles and ellipses are always drawn with bezier curves in PDF.

Once a path was fully defined it is normally consumed by a TClosePath() or TClipPath() callback function call. If this is not the case the path must be deleted when the page was fully processed.

When a path must be filled, stroked, or discarded the TClosePath callback function is executed. The parameter *Mode* of the callback function specifies what must be done with the path:

```
fmFillNoClose           // Fill the path (Winding)
fmFillEvOddNoClose      // Fill the path (Even Odd)
fmFillStroke            // Close, fill and stroke the path (Winding)
fmFillStrokeEvOdd       // Close, fill and stroke the path (Even Odd)
fmFillStrokeNoClose     // Fill and stroke the path (Winding)
fmFillStrokeEvOddNoClose // Fill and stroke the path (Even Odd)
fmStrokeNoClose         // Stroke the path
fmStroke                // Close and stroke the path
fmNoFill                // Discard the path
fmClose                 // Close the path with a straight line segment
```

A normal path is **not** part of the graphics state. Once a path was drawn it must be deleted.

The TClipPath callback function supports the same modes than TClosePath but the required actions that must be executed are different. A clipping path is part of the graphics state. If the graphics state contains already a clipping path, the existing path must be intersected with new one. The resulting clipping path must then be stored in the graphics state.

If the path must also be filled or stroked, it is important to hold an unmodified version of the path in memory so that the required path painting operation can be executed. The previously created clipping region must of course be considered.

The mode fmNoFill has the meaning create the clipping region, but do not fill or stroke the path. So, after the clipping region was created the path can be deleted from memory. This is the default behavior. The combination of a path painting operator with a clipping path occurs seldom.

## ***PlaceImage***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfPlaceImage(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    SI32 ImgHandle,      // Image handle  
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of destination rectangle  
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of destination rectangle  
    double ScaleWidth,   // Scaled width of destination rectangle  
    double ScaleHeight) // Scaled height of destination rectangle
```

Images can be used multiple times on different positions and with different sizes. This function places an image onto a page or template that was already inserted beforehand by an image function.

The image can be placed in the same way as by every other image function. However, if the size of the image will be changed, the image is not rescaled physically to the current resolution. Insert the largest version of an image first to avoid up-scaling.

The width and height can be calculated as follows:

- If *ScaleWidth* or *ScaleHeight* is **-1** the function uses the original width or height from the image. If both parameters are **-1** the image will be inserted with a resolution 72 DPI.
- If *ScaleWidth* **or** *ScaleHeight* is **0**, the missing value is calculated in relation to the given value of *ScaleHeight* or *ScaleWidth* to preserve the image's aspect ratio. The resulting output is an image with exact proportions relative to its original size.
- If *ScaleWidth* **and** *ScaleHeight* are **0**, the original size is used (same effect as -1).
- A negative value of *Width* or *Height* mirrors the image on the x- and or y-axis.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.



## ***PlaceSigFieldValidateIcon***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfPlaceSigFieldValidateIcon(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 SigField,     // Handle of a signature field  
    double PosX,       // X-Coordinate of the icon  
    double PosY,       // Y-Coordinate of the icon  
    double Width,      // Icon width  
    double Height)     // Icon height
```

The function places the validation icon within a signature field to the wished position. By default, the validation icon is scaled to the width or height of the signature field and horizontally and vertically centered. When creating a user defined appearance for a signature field is sometimes recommended to place the validation icon to another position within the signature field so that no important contents will be overdrawn.

The un-scaled size of the validation icon is 100 x 100 units. It can be scaled to every size you want but it is usually best to preserve the aspect ratio. However, the icon must be placed fully inside the signature field.

The demo package of DynaPDF contains the project signature\_ap that demonstrates the usage of the function as well as the creation of a user defined signature appearance. See also [CreateSigFieldAP\(\)](#).

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***PlaceTemplate***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfPlaceTemplate(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 TmplHandle,   // Template handle  
    double PosX,       // X-Coordinate  
    double PosY,       // Y-Coordinate  
    double ScaleWidth, // Scaled width  
    double ScaleHeight) // Scaled height
```

The function places a template on a page, another open template, or pattern. The parameter *TmplHandle* must be a valid template handle that was returned by [BeginTemplate\(\)](#), [ImportPage\(\)](#) or [ImportPageEx\(\)](#).

Templates can be used multiple times on different pages or positions and with different sizes. Unlike images, a template can be scaled without losing quality as far as the template contains vector graphics and text objects only.

The calculation of the width and height is the same as for images:



- If *Width* or *Height* is **-1** the function uses the mirrored original width or height from the template.
- If *Width* or *Height* is **0**, the missing value is calculated in relation to the given value of *Height* or *Width* to preserve the template's aspect ratio. The resulting output is a template with exact proportions relative to its original size.
- If *Width* and *Height* are **0**, the original size is used (same effect as -1 but the template is not mirrored).
- A negative value of *Width* or *Height* mirrors the template on the x- or y-axis.

**Notice:**

Imported pages can contain non-normalized bounding boxes and the page can be rotated. The coordinate origin, crop box, and rotation angle of a page must be considered when placing a template on a page because templates do not support features like a crop box or individual orientation angles. The required calculations to find the correct coordinate origin and to de-rotate a template are relatively complex. Therefore, DynaPDF provides the function [PlaceTemplateEx\(\)](#) which considers the, coordinate origin, orientation angle, and crop box automatically. [PlaceTemplateEx\(\)](#) greatly simplifies the handling of templates. If possible, this function should be used when working with imported pages.

**Remarks:**

A template is invisible as long it was not placed on a page, template, or pattern. Templates should not be used inside of patterns because this requires usually too much rendering time.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***PlaceTemplateEx***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfPlaceTemplateEx(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    SI32 TmplHandle,     // Template handle
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate
    double ScaleWidth,   // Scaled width
    double ScaleHeight) // Scaled height
```

The function places a template on a page, another open template, or pattern. The parameter *TmplHandle* must be a valid template handle that was returned by [BeginTemplate\(\)](#), [ImportPage\(\)](#) or [ImportPageEx\(\)](#).

The function was specifically designed to work with templates which were created from imported pages. A PDF page is converted to a template if it was imported with [ImportPage\(\)](#) or [ImportPageEx\(\)](#) outside of an open page.

The calculation of the width and height is the same as for images:

- If *Width* or *Height* is **-1** the function uses the mirrored original width or height from the template.
- If *Width* or *Height* is **0**, the missing value is calculated in relation to the given value of *Height* or *Width* to preserve the template's aspect ratio. The resulting output is a template with exact proportions relative to its original size.
- If *Width* and *Height* are **0**, the original size is used (same effect as -1 but the template is not mirrored).
- A negative value of *Width* or *Height* mirrors the template on the x- or y-axis.

A template does not support a crop box or orientation angle. When placing a template on a page that was created from a PDF page, the coordinate origin must be adjusted according to the original media or crop box. In addition, the template must maybe be drawn into a clipping path (if the original page contained a crop box), and the template must maybe also be rotated so that the original orientation can be preserved.

All these considerations complicate the handling of imported templates. To make the usage of imported templates easier the function considers the coordinate origin, it draws the template automatically into a clipping rectangle if required, and it rotates the template according to the original page orientation.

The only thing that must be considered is that the original size of the template must be calculated from the crop box if present. In addition, the so computed width and height must be exchanged if the original page orientation was 90, -90, 270, or -270 degrees. See example below.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

#### Example (C++)

The following code collects 6 imported pages on one destination page. The imported pages are placed horizontally and vertically centered into a fixed destination rectangle.

```
// This is our error callback function
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode,
const char* ErrMessage, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMessage);
    return 0;
}

// This function places a template horizontally and vertically centered
// into a destination rectangle
SI32 PlaceCenteredEx(const void* PDF, // Instance pointer
                    SI32 Tmpl,      // Template handle
                    double SrcWidth, // Logical page width
```

```

        double SrcHeight,    // Logical page height
        double DestX,        // Destination x-coordinate
        double DestY,        // Destination y-coordinate
        double DestWidth,    // Destination width
        double DestHeight) // Destination height
{
    double x, y, w, h, sx;
    sx = DestWidth / SrcWidth; // Compute the scaling factor

    // Which side must be centered?
    if (SrcHeight * sx <= DestHeight)
    {
        w = SrcWidth * sx;
        h = SrcHeight * sx;
        x = DestX + (DestWidth - w) * 0.5;
        y = DestY + (DestHeight - h) * 0.5;
        pdfPlaceTemplateEx(PDF, Tmpl, x, y, DestWidth, 0.0);
    } else
    {
        sx = DestHeight / SrcHeight;
        w = SrcWidth * sx;
        h = SrcHeight * sx;
        x = DestX + (DestWidth - w) * 0.5;
        y = DestY + (DestHeight - h) * 0.5;
        pdfPlaceTemplateEx(PDF, Tmpl, x, y, 0.0, DestHeight);
    }
    // We draw the destination rectangle on the page so that we can check
    // whether the position was correctly calculated.
    pdfSetLineWidth(PDF, 0.5);
    pdfRectangle(PDF, DestX, DestY, DestWidth, DestHeight, fmStroke);
}

// The PDF instance must be created outside the function
LBOOL TestTemplates(const void* PDF)
{
    bool newPage = true;
    SI32 i, tmpl, orientation = 0;
    TPDFRect mediaBox, cropBox;
    double w, h;
    // Create a new PDF file
    pdfCreateNewPDF(PDF, "cppout.pdf");
    pdfSetPageCoords(PDF, pcTopDown);
    // Open an existing PDF file
    pdfOpenImportFile(PDF, "c:/PDFs/test.pdf", ptOpen, NULL);

    double x = 50.0;
    double y = 50.0;

    SI32 count = pdfGetInPageCount(PDF);
    for (i = 1; i <= count; i++)

```

```
{
    // Get the page format and orientation angle of the source page.
    // We need the original page format to center the template into the
    // destination rectangle.
    pdfGetInBBox(PDF, i, pbMediaBox, mediaBox);
    pdfGetInBBox(PDF, i, pbCropBox, cropBox);
    orientation = pdfGetInOrientation(PDF, i);
    // Import the page as a template
    tmp1 = pdfImportPage(PDF, i);
    // Calculate the logical width and height of the page.
    w = cropBox.Right - cropBox.Left;
    h = cropBox.Top - cropBox.Bottom;
    if (w < 1.0)
    {
        w = mediaBox.Right - mediaBox.Left;
        h = mediaBox.Top - mediaBox.Bottom;
    }
    // Exchange the width and height if necessary
    switch(orientation)
    {
        case 90:
        case -90:
        case 270:
        case -270:
        {
            double t = w;
            w = h;
            h = t;
        }
    }
    if (newPage)
    {
        x = 50.0;
        y = 50.0;
        pdfAppend(PDF);
        PlaceCenteredEx(PDF, tmp1, w, h, 50.0, 50.0, 227.5, 227.3);
        x += 247.5;
        newPage = false;
    }else
    {
        PlaceCenteredEx(PDF, tmp1, w, h, x, y, 227.5, 227.3);
        x += 247.5;
        if (x > 500.0)
        {
            x = 50.0;
            y += 247.3;
        }
        if (y > 700.0)
        {
            pdfEndPage(PDF);
        }
    }
}
```

```
        newPage = true;
    }
}
// Close the last open page
if (!newPage) pdfEndPage(PDF);
return pdfCloseFile(PDF);
}
```

## ***PlaceTemplByMatrix***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfPlaceTemplByMatrix(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 TmplHandle)   // Template handle
```

This is an internal debug function which is used to test the content parser of DynaPDF. The function uses the current transformation matrix to place a template on the page.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ReadImageFormat (obsolete)***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfReadImageFormat(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const char* FileName,      // File path to image  
    UI32 ADDR Width,           // Width of the image in pixel  
    UI32 ADDR Height,          // Height of the image in pixel  
    SI32 ADDR BitsPerPixel,    // Color depth  
    SI32 ADDR UseZip)          // If true, Flate compression should be used
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of an image file. All parameters of the function must not be NULL. The function reads the image header only to improve processing speed. The parameter *UseZip* determines whether Flate compression produces better compression ratios for this image format. If the parameter *BitsPerPixel* is 32 the image is a CMYK image. Note that TIFF images support color depths up to 64 bits per pixel.

**Remarks:**

This function is marked as obsolete, please use [ReadImageFormat2\(\)](#) whenever possible. [ReadImageFormat2\(\)](#) will be renamed to [ReadImageFormatFromFile\(\)](#) in DynaPDF 3.0.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameters are filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ReadImageFormat2 (subject to change)***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfReadImageFormat2(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const char* FileName,      // File path to image  
    UI32 Index,                // Image index of multi-page image  
    UI32 ADDR Width,           // Width of the image in pixel  
    UI32 ADDR Height,          // Height of the image in pixel  
    SI32 ADDR BitsPerPixel,    // Color depth  
    SI32 ADDR UseZip)          // If true, Flate compression should be used
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of an image file. All parameters of the function must not be NULL. The function reads only the image header to improve processing speed. The parameter *UseZip* determines whether Flate compression produces probably better compression results for this image format. If the parameter *BitsPerPixel* is 32 the image is a CMYK image. Note that TIFF images support color depths up to 64 bits per pixel. The parameter *Index* specifies the array index of a multi-page image that should be read in; numbering starts at 1. The parameter is ignored for non-multi-page image formats.

### **Remarks:**

This function will be renamed to `ReadImageFormatFromFile()` in DynaPDF 3.0.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameters are filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ReadImageFormatEx***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfReadImageFormatEx(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    void* hBitmap,             // HBITMAP handle  
    UI32 ADDR Width,           // Width of the image in pixel  
    UI32 ADDR Height,          // Height of the image in pixel  
    SI32 ADDR BitsPerPixel,    // Color depth  
    SI32 ADDR UseZip)          // If true, Flate compression should be used
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of a memory bitmap. All parameters of the function must not be NULL. The function uses the GDI function `GetObject()` to retrieve the bitmap parameters. This function is not available under Linux / UNIX.

### **Remarks:**

This function is not thread-safe; it must be synchronized in multi-threaded applications.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameters are filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ReadImageFormatFromBuffer***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfReadImageFormatFromBuffer(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const void* Buffer,         // Pointer to image buffer  
    UI32 BufSize,              // Buffer size  
    UI32 Index,                // Image index of multi-page image  
    UI32 ADDR Width,           // Width of the image in pixel  
    UI32 ADDR Height,          // Height of the image in pixel  
    SI32 ADDR BitsPerPixel,    // Color depth  
    SI32 ADDR UseZip)          // If true, Flate compression should be used
```

The function retrieves the most important properties of an image in the same way as [ReadImageFormat2\(\)](#), but accepts an image buffer as input. See [ReadImageFormat2\(\)](#) for further information.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1 and the parameters are filled with values. If the function fails the return value is 0.



## ReadImageResolution

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfReadImageResolution(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const char* FileName,  // File path to image
    UI32 Index,            // Image index of multi-page image
    UI32 ADDR ResX,        // Horizontal resolution
    UI32 ADDR ResY);       // Vertical resolution
```

The function retrieves the horizontal and vertical resolution of an image file. The image resolution is a user defined value that can be stored in certain image formats such as Bitmap or TIFF.

The function sets the variables *ResX* and *ResY* to zero if the image format does not support a resolution record or if no values are stored in the image file, the image resolution is then 72 DPI.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ReadImageResolutionEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfReadImageResolutionEx(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const void* Buffer,    // Pointer to image buffer
    UI32 BufSize,          // Buffer size
    UI32 Index,            // Image index of multi-page image
    UI32 ADDR ResX,        // Horizontal resolution
    UI32 ADDR ResY);       // Vertical resolution
```

The function retrieves the horizontal and vertical resolution of an image file in the same way as [ReadImageResolution\(\)](#) but accepts an image buffer as input. The image resolution is a user defined value that can be stored in certain image formats such as Bitmap or TIFF.

The function sets the variables *ResX* and *ResY* to zero if the image format does not support a resolution record or if no values are stored in the image file, the image resolution is then 72 DPI.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## Rectangle

```
LBOOL pdfRectangle(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    double PosX,           // X-Coordinate of rectangle
    double PosY,           // Y-Coordinate of rectangle
    double Width,          // Width of the rectangle
    double Height,         // Height of the rectangle
    TPathFillMode FillMode) // Fill mode
```

This function draws a rectangle.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the rectangle. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

The draw direction can be changed with the function [SetDrawDirection\(\)](#).

A rectangle is a closed path that can be filled, stroked or both. It is also possible to draw a rectangle invisible to apply the filling rules nonzero winding number or even-odd. The filling rules are described under [ClipPath\(\)](#). The parameter *FillMode* is ignored if the rectangle is drawn inside a clipping path. The fill modes are described under [ClosePath\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ReEncryptPDF

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfReEncryptPDF(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    const char* FileName,       // File to encrypt
    TPwdType PwdType,           // Kind of password see below
    const char* InPwd,          // Password to open the PDF file
    const char* NewOpenPwd,     // New open password (can be NULL)
    const char* NewOwnerPwd,    // New owner password (can be NULL)
    TKeyLen NewKeyLen,          // Key length for RC4 encryption
    TRestrictions Restrict)     // Restrictions
```

This function encrypts an already encrypted or unencrypted PDF file. The file is recompressed during import; this reduces the file size in most cases.

By using specific import flags (see [SetImportFlags\(\)](#)), it is also possible to remove unwanted objects from the PDF file, such as annotations, form fields, bookmarks and so on.

If the input file contains a compressed object structure, it will be converted back to a normal PDF file.

The input PDF file will be replaced with the new one if no error occurred during import. If an error occurred the file is left unchanged.

It is not possible to change the file except removing specific objects by using specific import flags. However, the document info entries are changed to new values if they were set beforehand. See [SetDocInfo\(\)](#) for further information.

The encryption flags are described in detail under [CloseFileEx\(\)](#).

#### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The Unicode version is supported by Windows NT systems only. The file path is converted back to ANSI if the Unicode version is used under Linux or UNIX.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 0. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code. The returned error code can be used to determine whether a password is required to open the file. Pass the return value to the macro `PDF_WRONG_PWD()`, if the macro returns true a password is required to open the file.

## ***RenameSpotColor***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfRenameSpotColor(  
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer  
    const char* Colorant,   // UTF-8 colorant name to change  
    const char* NewName)    // New name or NULL (see description)
```

The function renames the spot color *Colorant* to *NewName* in all Separation, DeviceN, and NChannel color spaces in which the colorant can be found. If the parameter *NewName* is set to NULL, the function renames the colorant to the special value *None* which produces no visible output.

The representation of the colorant in the alternate color space is left unchanged, also if the colorant is set to the special value *None* or *All*.

**Return values:**

The function returns the number of color spaces in which the colorant has been changed. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***ReplaceICCProfile***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfReplaceICCProfile(  
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer  
    UI32 ColorSpace,       // Color space handle  
    const char* ICCFile)    // File path to an ICC profile
```

This function is used to dynamically create ICC based color spaces within the callback function `OnReplaceICCProfile` of `CheckConformance()`.

The parameter *Type* of the callback function contains the profile type that must be inserted. At time of publication only Gray, RGB and CMYK profiles are requested. Because ICC profiles for grayscale color spaces are rarely available a RGB profile can be used instead.

**Notice:**

The callback function `OnReplaceICCProfile` should return the value this function!

**Remarks:**

This function is available in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Because UTF-16 Unicode file paths are not supported under Linux or UNIX the file path is converted to UTF-8 before trying to

open the file on such operating systems. However, the usage of the ANSI version with an UTF-8 string is recommended on non-Windows operating systems.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***ReplacePageText***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfReplacePageText(  
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer  
    const char* NewText,        // The text or NULL to delete the string  
    struct TPDFStack* Stack) // Operation stack
```

The function deletes or replaces a text string of a content stream that was found by the function [GetPageText\(\)](#) beforehand. If *NewText* is NULL the string will be deleted. The deletion of strings is possible independent of the used font format.

However, if you want to replace a string with a new one you must check the members *Embedded* and *CIDFont* of the structure *TPDFStack* to determine whether the font is **not** embedded and that no CID font is in use. Because the function does not more than replacing the original string value with the new one, it is recommended that the used font is not embedded. Embedded fonts are usually stored as subset; only the used characters are embedded. If the new string contains characters which are not included in the font, the string looks misplaced and unsupported characters will be replaced with the .notdef character when viewing the file.

Strings of CID fonts cannot be replaced with this function because such strings are binary strings which cannot be created outside of the library.

However, it is usually best to use this function only to delete the original string if necessary. The new text can be written with the function [WriteTextMatrixEx\(\)](#) or use [ReplacePageTextEx\(\)](#) instead.

If a text record consists of more than one kerning record it is possible to preserve an arbitrary number of kerning records from deletion. This can be done by setting the member *DeleteKerningAt* of the structure *TPDFStack* to the wished kerning record number before calling this function. All kerning records above this number will be deleted. Note that the parameter *NewText* is ignored in this case.

DynaPDF is delivered with the example `edit_text` which demonstrates how texts can be replaced in a document. If you want to develop a text replacement algorithm please take a look into this example.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ReplacePageTextEx***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfReplacePageTextEx(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    const char* NewText,       // New text or NULL to delete the string  
    struct TPDFStack* Stack) // Operation stack
```

The function deletes or replaces a text string of a content stream that was found by the function [GetPageText\(\)](#) beforehand. The function requires a font that must be set with [SetFont\(\)](#) or [SetFontEx\(\)](#) before calling this function. The new text is internally written with the function [WriteTextMatrixEx\(\)](#).

This function changes certain members of the graphics state such as the fill and stroke color, the color space and the text draw mode. If further contents must be written to the file make sure that the color space, text draw mode, and the wished fill and stroke color is initialized with the wished values before writing new contents to the file.

DynaPDF is delivered with the example `edit_text` which demonstrates how texts can be replaced in a document. If you want to develop a text replacement algorithm please take a look into this example.

### **Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***ResetLineDashPattern***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfResetLineDashPattern(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function resets a previously defined line dash pattern to its default value (straight line). A line dash pattern can also be removed or reset with the following function call:

```
SetLineDashPattern(pdf, NULL, 0);
```

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## RestoreGraphicState

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfRestoreGraphicState(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function restores a previously saved graphics state. A PDF viewer application maintains an internal data structure called the *graphics state* that holds current graphics control parameters. These parameters define the global framework within which the graphics operators execute.

A well-structured PDF document typically contains many graphical elements that are essentially independent of each other and sometimes nested to multiple levels. The graphics state stack allows these elements to make local changes to the graphics state without disturbing the graphics state of the surrounding environment. The stack is a LIFO (last in, first out) data structure in which the contents of the graphics state can be saved and later restored using the following functions:

- [SaveGraphicState\(\)](#) pushes a copy of the entire graphics state onto the stack.
- [RestoreGraphicState\(\)](#) restores the entire graphics state to its former value by popping it from the stack.

These functions can be used to encapsulate a graphical element so that it can modify parameters of the graphics state and later restore them to their previous values.

However, the functions adds an operator the content stream only, all internal properties which represent the graphics state are left unchanged. After a graphics state was restored the properties line width, fill color, stroke color and so on represent may be not the current graphics state. This is just a recommendation to minimize the memory usage of DynaPDF.

This behaviour is maybe changed in a later release of DynaPDF.

## RotateCoords

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfRotateCoords(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double alpha,      // Angle alpha in degrees
    double OriginX,    // Origin of the x-axis
    double OriginY)    // Origin of the y-axis
```

The function rotates the coordinate system at the point *OriginX*, *OriginY* by applying a transformation matrix. It is highly recommended to save the graphics state beforehand, otherwise it is very difficult or impossible to restore the coordinate system later.

After the coordinate system was changed by the function, bottom-up coordinates are active. It is not possible to use top-down coordinates with a rotated coordinate system.

A rotation is internally calculated as follows:

```
TCTM M; // Transformation matrix, the data type is declared in dynapdf.h
double si, co;
```

```
si  = sin(alpha * PI / 180.0);
co  = cos(alpha * PI / 180.0);
M.a = co;
M.b = si;
M.c = -si;
M.d = co;
M.x = OriginX;
m.y = OriginY;
```

Note that the origin of the rotation must be set to that position where the coordinates should be rotated. You must also consider the new coordinate origin when printing objects into the rotated coordinate system.

**Example:**

```
pdfSaveGraphicState(pdf);
pdfRotateCoords(pdf, 30.0, 150.0, 450.0); // Set the correct origin
// We don't want to move the rectangle inside the rotated coordinate
// system; the rectangle must be printed at 0, 0 because the origin was
// already set
pdfRectangle(pdf, 0.0, 0.0, 200.0, 100.0, fmStroke);
pdfRestoreGraphicState(pdf);
```

**Remarks:**

If the graphics state was not saved beforehand the function sets a warning but the transformation is applied.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0. Use an error callback function or check whether an error occurred or use the function [GetErrorMessage\(\)](#). See [Exception handling](#) for further information.

## RoundRect

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfRoundRect(  
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,                 // X-Coordinate of rectangle  
    double PosY,                 // Y-Coordinate of rectangle  
    double Width,                // Width of the rectangle  
    double Height,               // Height of the rectangle  
    double Radius,               // Radius of rounded corners  
    TPathFillMode FillMode) // Fill mode
```

The function draws a rectangle with rounded corners. The radius must not be greater than the half with or height of the rectangle.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the rectangle. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

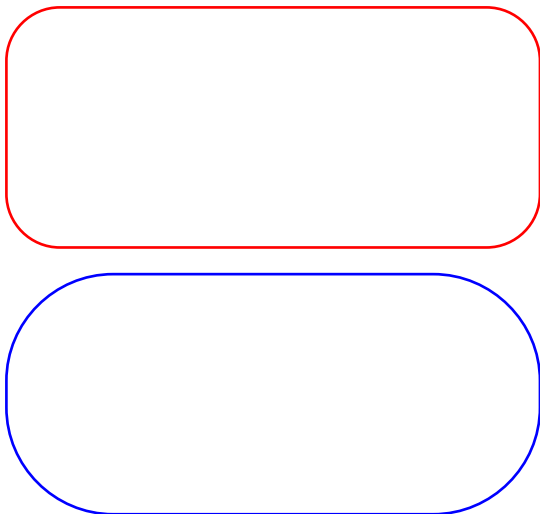
The draw direction can be changed with the function [SetDrawDirection\(\)](#).

A rectangle is a closed path that can be filled, stroked or both. It is also possible to draw a rectangle invisible to apply the filling rules nonzero winding number or even-odd. The filling rules are described under [ClipPath\(\)](#). The parameter *FillMode* is ignored if the rectangle is drawn inside a clipping path. The fill modes are described under [ClosePath\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Example:





## RoundRectEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfRoundRectEx(  
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,                 // X-Coordinate of rectangle  
    double PosY,                 // Y-Coordinate of rectangle  
    double Width,                // Width of the rectangle  
    double Height,               // Height of the rectangle  
    double rWidth,               // Width of an elliptical corner  
    double rHeight,              // Height of an elliptical corner  
    TPathFillMode FillMode)     // Fill mode
```

The function draws a rectangle with elliptical corners. The parameter *rWidth* must not be greater than the half width of the rectangle and the parameter *rHeight* must not be greater than the half height of the rectangle.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the rectangle. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

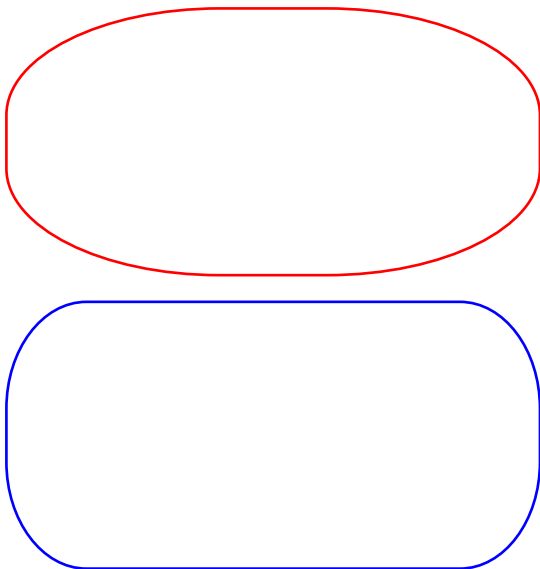
The draw direction can be changed with the function [SetDrawDirection\(\)](#).

A rectangle is a closed path that can be filled, stroked or both. It is also possible to draw a rectangle invisible to apply the filling rules nonzero winding number or even-odd. The filling rules are described under [ClipPath\(\)](#). The parameter *FillMode* is ignored if the rectangle is drawn inside a clipping path. The fill modes are described under [ClosePath\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Example:



## SaveGraphicState

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSaveGraphicState(  
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function saves the current graphics state. A saved graphics state must be restored before the page, template or pattern will be closed.

DynaPDF maintains an internal data structure called the *graphics state* that holds current graphics control parameters. These parameters define the global framework within which the graphics operators execute.

A well-structured PDF document typically contains many graphical elements that are essentially independent of each other and sometimes nested to multiple levels. The graphics state stack allows these elements to make local changes to the graphics state without disturbing the graphics state of the surrounding environment. The stack is a LIFO (last in, first out) data structure in which the contents of the graphics state can be saved and later restored using the following functions:

- [SaveGraphicState\(\)](#) pushes a copy of the graphics state onto the stack.
- [RestoreGraphicState\(\)](#) restores the graphics state to its former value by popping it from the stack.

These functions can be used to encapsulate a graphical element so that it can modify parameters of the graphics state and later restore them to their previous values.

The maximum allowed nesting level is 28 in PDF 1.7. This is not a limit as such, but arises from the fact that the corresponding q and Q operators are implemented by the PostScript gsave and grestore operators when generating PostScript output.

The graphics state consists of the following variables:

Parameter	Data type	Initial Value
CharSpacing	float	0.0f
Clipping Path	Vector array	Crop box or Media box
DashPattern	double*	NULL (Solid line)
DashPhase	UI32	0
FillColor	BYTE[32]	Black
FillColorSpace	TExtColorSpace, IColorSpace*	esDeviceRGB, NULL
FillPattern	IPattern*	NULL
Font	IFont*	NULL
Leading	float	0.0f
LineCapStyle	TLineCapStyle	csButtCap
LineJoinStyle	TLineJoinStyle	jsMiterJoin
LineWidth	float	1.0f
Matrix	TCTM	{1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0}
MiterLimit	float	10.0f
StrokeColor	BYTE[32]	Black
StrokeColorSpace	TExtColorSpace, IColorSpace*	esDeviceRGB, NULL

Parameter	Data type	Initial Value
StrokePattern	IPattern*	NULL
TextDrawMode	TDrawMode	dmNormal
TextScale	float	100.0f
WordSpacing	float	0.0f

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

**ScaleCoords**

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfScaleCoords(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double sx,         // Scale factor of the x-axis
    double sy)         // Scale factor of the y-axis
```

The function scales the coordinate system by applying a transformation matrix. It is highly recommended to save the graphics state beforehand, otherwise it is very difficult or impossible to restore the coordinate system later.

After scaling the coordinate system, bottom-up coordinates are active. It is not possible to use top-down coordinates inside a scaled coordinate system.

The parameters *sx* and *sy* are set directly to *a* and *d* members of the transformation matrix:

```
TCTM M; // Transformation matrix, the data type is declared in dynapdf.h
M.a = sx;
M.b = 0.0;
M.c = 0.0;
M.d = sy;
M.x = 0.0;
M.y = 0.0;
```

The parameters *sx* and *sy* must not be zero.

**Remarks:**

If the graphics state was not saved beforehand the function produces a warning but the transformation is applied.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SelfTest

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSelfTest(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function checks the size of all required data types and checks whether the endian configuration of the library is correct. The test results are printed to stderr. The function prints also a MD 5 hash which must be the same as under Windows.

This function can be used under Linux and UNIX operation systems to check whether the library was correctly compiled. Precompiled libraries are available for the most important operating systems. The makefiles for a specific OS are always delivered by DynaForms with the source code license for this OS. Send a mail to [support@dynaforms.com](mailto:support@dynaforms.com) for further information.

## Set3DAnnotProps

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSet3DAnnotProps(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,                // Annotation handle
    T3DActivationType ActType,   // Activation type
    T3DDeActivateType DeActType, // Deactivation type
    T3DInstanceType InstType,    // Instantiation type
    T3DDeActInstance DeInstType, // De-instantiation type
    LBOOL DisplToolbar,          // Display the 3D toolbar?
    LBOOL DisplModelTree)       // Display the model tree?

// Activation type
typedef enum
{
    at3D_AppDefault, // Use the default of the viewer
    at3D_PageOpen,   // Activate it when the page is opened.
    at3D_PageVisible, // Activate it if the page becomes visible.
    at3D_Explicit    // Inactive until explicitly activated (default).
}T3DActivationType;

// Deactivation type
typedef enum
{
    dt3D_AppDefault, // Use the default of the viewer
    dt3D_PageClosed, // As soon as the page is closed.
    dt3D_PageInvisible, // When the page becomes invisible (default).
    dt3D_Explicit    // Until explicitly deactivated.
}T3DDeActivateType;
```

```

// What should be done with the instance when the annotation becomes
// deactivated?
typedef enum
{
    di3D_AppDefault,      // Use the default of the viewer
    di3D_UnInstantiated,  // The annotation will be uninstantiated (default)
    di3D_Instantiated,    // The annotation is left instantiated
    di3D_Live             // Animations stay live
}T3DDeActInstance;

// How instantiate the annotation?
typedef enum
{
    it3D_AppDefault,      // Use the default of the viewer
    it3D_Instantiated,    // Instantiated but animations are disabled.
    it3D_Live             // Instantiated, animations are enabled (default).
}T3DInstanceType;

```

The function sets or changes several important properties of a 3D annotation. The parameter Handle must be a valid handle of a 3D annotation.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***Set3DAnnotScript***

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfSet3DAnnotScript(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    UI32 Annot,          // Handle of a 3D annotation
    const char* Value,    // JavaScript that should be executed
    UI32 Len)            // Length of the script

```

The function assigns a JavaScript to a 3D annotation. JavaScripts which are assigned with a 3D annotation have direct access to the 3D context. Global JavaScripts have only limited access to the 3D context of a 3D annotation but it is possible to execute a script that is assigned with the annotation.

Note that such JavaScripts must be accessed over the annotation:

```

annot = getAnnots3D(0)[0].context3D; // Get the annotation context
// This function must be defined in the JavaScript of the 3D annotation.
annot.Test();

```

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetAllocBy

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetAllocBy(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    SI32 Value)        // Value in KB
```

The function sets the size of the memory blocks in kilo bytes, which will be allocated if memory must be allocated for page content streams. Memory allocation is slow, especially re-allocation of memory by using `realloc()`. Because of this all content streams are buffered by DynaPDF to avoid too much memory allocation calls. The property *AllocBy* defines the size of memory that is allocated each time when more memory must be allocated.

The processing speed depends heavily on memory allocation. The default size of pre-allocated memory for content streams is 16 KB. It can be set to a larger value if necessary to improve processing speed.

However, if too much memory is allocated at runtime, processing speed will be slower and an out of memory exception can occur. If the size is too small, processing speed is slower too because of the many memory allocation calls.

In most cases, it is not required to change the property *AllocBy*.

## SetAnnotBorderStyle

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetAnnotBorderStyle(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,      // Annotation handle
    TBorderStyle Style) // Border style

typedef enum
{
    bsSolid,
    bsBevelled,
    bsInset,
    bsUnderline,
    bsDashed
} TBorderStyle;
```

The function sets or changes the border style of an annotation. Note that the border style has no effect if the border width is set to zero or if the border color is set to `NO_COLOR` (see [SetAnnotColor\(\)](#), [SetAnnotBorderWidth\(\)](#)).

Note also that not all styles are meaningful for all annotation types. For example, while link annotations support all border styles, FreeText annotations support the styles `bsSolid` and `bsDashed` only. File Attach, Sound, Stamp, or Text annotations for example support no border style because these annotation types contain no appearance on which a border style could be applied.

Setting the border style to an unsupported value causes no error; the value will be ignored instead.

**Remarks:**

When changing the border style of a Free Text annotation DynaPDF must rebuild the appereance stream of the annotation. The text position can slightly change especially if the border width was changed too. See also [FreeTextAnnot\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***SetAnnotBorderWidth***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetAnnotBorderWidth(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,      // Annotation handle
    double LineWidth) // Line width of the border or zero
```

The function sets or changes the border width of an annotation. Although the line width can be set to any positive floating point number, it should be set to full integer values between 0 through 12.

If no border should be drawn set the line width to zero.

**Remarks:**

When changing the border width of a Free Text annotation DynaPDF must rebuild the appereance stream of the annotation. The text position depends on the line width of the border. Changing the border width changes also the position of the text. See also [FreeTextAnnot\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***SetAnnotColor***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetAnnotColor(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,      // Annotation handle
    TAnnotColor ColorType, // Color to be change
    TPDFColorSpace CS,    // Color space
    UI32 Color)          // Color to be set

typedef enum
{
    fcBackColor    = 0, // Link annotations support no background color!
    fcBorderColor  = 1,
    fcTextColor    = 2  // Free Text annotation's only
}TFieldColor, TAnnotColor;
```

The function sets or changes the color of an annotation. The color can be defined in any device color space. However, at time of publication the function converts the color back to DeviceRGB.

Note that not all annotation types support a background or border color. For example, link annotations support a border color but no background or text color.

**Remarks:**

When changing a color of a Free Text annotation DynaPDF must rebuild the appereance stream of the annotation. This can cause slightly changes in the text position. See also [FreeTextAnnot\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetAnnotFlags***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetAnnotFlags(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TAnnotFlags Flags) // Flags see below  
  
typedef UI32 TAnnotFlags;  
#define afNone      0x00000000 // No flags are set  
#define afInvisible 0x00000001 // see below  
#define afHidden    0x00000002 // see below  
#define afPrint      0x00000004 // Annotation is printable  
#define afNoZoom     0x00000008 // Do not zoom the annotation  
#define afNoRotate   0x00000010 // Do not rotate the annotation  
#define afNoView     0x00000020 // see below  
#define afReadOnly   0x00000040 // Changes are not allowed
```

The function sets the default flags used for new annotations. The parameter *Flags* is a bit mask; multiple flags can be set with a binary or operator (e.g. `afPrint | afReadOnly`). It is also possible to add each flag separately; the previous flags are only deleted if the flag `afNone` is used.

```
pdfSetAnnotFlags(pdf, afPrint | afReadOnly);  
// or set each flag separately, the result is the same  
pdfSetAnnotFlags(pdf, afPrint);  
pdfSetAnnotFlags(pdf, afReadOnly);
```



**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

Flag	Description
afNone	No flags are set.
afInvisible	If set, do not display the annotation if it does not belong to one of the standard annotation types and no annotation handler is available.
afHidden	(PDF 1.2) If set, do not display or print the annotation or allow it to interact with the user, regardless of its annotation type or whether an annotation handler is available.
afPrint	(PDF 1.2) If set, print the annotation when the page is printed. If clear, never print the annotation, regardless of whether it is displayed on the screen. This can be useful, for example, for annotations representing interactive pushbuttons, which would serve no meaningful purpose on the printed page.
afNoZoom	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not scale the annotation's appearance to match the magnification of the page. The location of the annotation on the page (defined by the upper-left corner of its annotation rectangle) remains fixed, regardless of the page magnification.
afNoRotate	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not rotate the annotation's appearance to match the rotation of the page. The upper-left corner of the annotation rectangle remains in a fixed location on the page, regardless of the page rotation.
afNoView	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not display the annotation on the screen or allow it to interact with the user. The annotation may be printed (depending on the setting of the afPrint flag), but should be considered hidden for purposes of on-screen display and user interaction.
afReadOnly	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not allow the annotation to interact with the user. The annotation may be displayed or printed (depending on the settings of the afNoView and afPrint flags), but should not respond to mouse clicks or change its appearance in response to mouse motions.

## SetAnnotFlagsEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetAnnotFlagsEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle,      // Annotation handle  
    SI32 Flags)       // New Flags
```

The function sets or changes the flags of an annotation. The available flags are described in detail at [SetAnnotFlags\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetAnnotHighlightMode

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetAnnotHighlightMode(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle,      // Link annotation handle  
    THighlightMode Mode) // New highlight mode
```

The function sets or changes the highlight mode of a link annotation. The highlight mode is applied when clicking with the mouse on the annotation. Only link annotations support a highlight mode. However, setting the mode to other annotation types causes no error; the value will be ignored instead.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetAnnotIcon

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetAnnotIcon(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle,      // Text annotation handle  
    TAnnotIcon Icon)  // New icon
```

```
typedef enum  
{  
    aiComment,  
    aiHelp,  
    aiInsert,  
    aiKey,  
    aiNewParagraph,  
    aiNote,  
    aiParagraph  
}TAnnotIcon;
```

The function sets or changes the icon of a text annotation. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid handle of a Text annotation. See also [TextAnnot\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetAnnotOpenState***

```
LBOOL pdfSetAnnotOpenState(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle,       // Markup or PopUp annotation handle  
    LBOOL Open)        // New state
```

The function sets the open state of a markup or PopUp annotation. Markup annotations can be connected with a PopUp annotation that displays additional comments in a window (like a Text annotation). The open state can only be changed if the base annotation is connected with a PopUp annotation. If the base annotation contains no PopUp annotation or if the handle refers to a non-markup annotation the function does nothing.

All annotation types with exception of 3D, Link, Movie, Screen, PrinterMark, TrapNet, and Watermark are markup annotations.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetAnnotSubject***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetAnnotSubject(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle,       // Annotation handle  
    const char* Value) // The subject to be set
```

The function sets or changes the optional subject string of an annotation. The subject is defined since PDF 1.5. The function adjusts the PDF version automatically if it is lower than PDF 1.5.

The annotation types atFileLink, atPageLink, atPopUp, and atWebLink do not support a subject string. The function returns with an error when trying to set the subject on these annotation types.

If the parameter Value is NULL or if it contains an empty string the subject string is deleted in the annotation.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetAnnotString

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetAnnotString(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 Handle,                // Annotation handle
    TAnnotString StringType,    // String type that should be changed
    const char* Value)          // The new value or NULL to delete it

typedef enum
{
    asAuthor,
    asContent,
    asName,
    asSubject
}TAnnotString;
```

The function sets, changes, or deletes a string of an annotation.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetBBox

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetBBox(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    TPageBoundary Boundary,     // Bounding box
    double LeftX,               // lower left x
    double LeftY,               // lower left y
    double RightX,              // upper-right x
    double RightY)              // upper-right y

typedef enum
{
    pbArtBox,    // Art box
    pbBleedBox,  // Bleed box
    pbCropBox,   // Crop box
    pbTrimBox,   // Trim box
    pbMediaBox   // Media box
}TPageBoundary;
```

The function sets a specific bounding box of the current open PDF page. A PDF page may be prepared either for a finished medium, such as a sheet of paper, or as part of a prepress process in which the content of the page is placed on an intermediate medium, such as film or an imposed reproduction plate.

In the latter case, it is important to distinguish between the intermediate page and the finished page. The intermediate page may often include additional production-related content, such as bleeds or printer marks that falls outside the boundaries of the finished page. To handle such cases, a PDF

page can define as many as five separate boundaries to control various aspects of the imaging process.

A bounding box is defined as rectangle giving the coordinates of a pair of diagonally opposite corners. The media box of a page is normally expressed in a normalized form where the coordinates of the lower-left point are set to zero.

A normalized bounding box can be easily defined as follows:

```
pdfSetBBox(pdf, pbMediaBox, 0, 0, 612, 792);
```

The parameters *RightX*, *RightY* represent the width and height of the media box (this is the paper format if no crop box is present). The media box should normally be defined in the normalized form because this bounding box defines the coordinate origin of the page. Predefined paper formats can be set with the function [SetPageFormat\(\)](#).

It is also possible to change the bounding box of a template or pattern with this function. These object types support the media box only; the other bounding boxes are ignored. Note that the coordinates of the objects inside a page, template or pattern depends on the coordinate origin of the media box.

The crop box crops the page as the name suggests. The crop box represents the paper format if present.

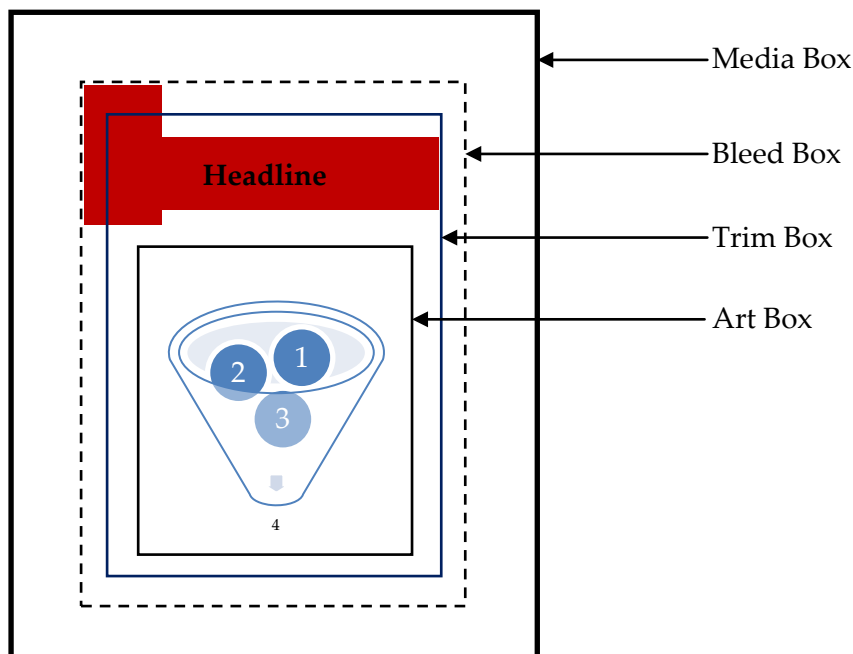
#### Remarks:

No bounding box of a page must be larger than the media box.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

#### ***Bounding boxes:***



## ***SetBidiMode***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetBidiMode(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TPDFBidiMode Mode) // Bidirectional mode  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    bmLeftToRight = 0, // Apply the bidi algorithm in Left to Right layout  
    bmRightToLeft = 1, // Apply the bidi algorithm in Right to Left layout  
    bmNone        = 2  // Default -> do not apply the bidi algorithm  
}TPDFBidiMode;
```

The function sets or changes the bidirectional mode. When using a bidirectional 8 bit code page the bidirectional algorithm is applied by default in Left to Right mode also if the bidi mode is set to `bmNone` (default). This mode produces identical results in comparison to applications like Edit or WordPad from Microsoft Windows.

If the current font was loaded with the code page `cpUnicode` the bidirectional algorithm is applied only if the bidi mode is not set to `bmNone`.

### **Remarks:**

DynaPDF uses internally the Reference Bidi Algorithm of the Unicode Consortium to process bidirectional strings. The algorithm supports the entire UCS-2 range and it is used by many applications. However, the Right to Left mode produces different results in comparison to Microsoft's Uniscribe. If you need the same result in Right to Left mode as Uniscribe would produce then you must pre-process the strings with this library and output the resulting Unicode strings with disabled bidirectional algorithm. The font must be loaded with the code page `cpUnicode` in this case.

### **Notice:**

The bidi mode is ignored during EMF conversion. To enable the bidirectional algorithm during EMF conversion you must set the flag `mfApplyBidiAlgo` with [SetMetaConvFlags\(\)](#).

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetBookmarkDest

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetBookmarkDest(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    SI32 ABmk,           // Bookmark handle
    TDestType DestType,  // see below
    double a,            // Various, depends on destination type
    double b,            // Various, depends on destination type
    double c,            // Various, depends on destination type
    double d)            // Various, depends on destination type

typedef enum
{
    dtXY_Zoom,    // Three parameters (a, b, c) -> (X, Y, Zoom)
    dtFit,        // No parameters
    dtFitH_Top,   // One parameter      (a)
    dtFitV_Left,  // One parameter      (a)
    dtFit_Rect,   // Four parameters    (left, bottom, right, top)
    dtFitB,       // No parameters
    dtFitBH_Top,  // One parameter      (a)
    dtFitBV_Left // One parameter      (a)
}TDestType;
```

The function sets or changes the destination of a bookmark. The parameter *ABmk* must be a valid bookmark handle. The destination page will not be changed by this function it must be set correctly with the function [AddBookmark\(\)](#). If it should be changed use the function [ChangeBookmark\(\)](#).

The destination created by this function allows jumping to a specific position in a document instead of simply opening a page such as a normal bookmark does.

Destination types	Description
dtXY_Zoom	<p>Display the page designated by page with the coordinates (left top) positioned at the top-left corner of the window and the contents of the page magnified by the factor zoom. A zero value for any of the parameters left top or zoom specifies that the current value of that parameter is to be retained unchanged.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>// The zoom factor is left unchanged SetBookmarkDest(pdf, bmk, dtXY_Zoom, 50, 750, 0, 0);</pre>

Destination types	Description
<code>dtFit</code>	Display the page designated by page with its contents magnified just enough to fit the entire page within the window both horizontally and vertically. If the required horizontal and vertical magnification factors are different, use the smaller of the two, centering the page within the window in the other dimension. This destination type has no parameters, the values of a, b, c, d are ignored.
<code>dtFitH_Top</code>	Display the page designated by page with the vertical coordinate top positioned at the top edge of the window and the contents of the page magnified just enough to fit the entire width of the page within the window.  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>// The parameter a specifies the top coordinate pdfSetBookmarkDest(pdf, bmk, dtFitH_Top, 750, 0, 0, 0);</pre>
<code>dtFitV_Left:</code>	Display the page designated by page with the horizontal coordinate left positioned at the left edge of the window and the contents of the page magnified just enough to fit the entire height of the page within the window.  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>// The parameter a specifies the left edge pdfSetBookmarkDest(pdf, bmk, dtFitV_Left, 50, 0, 0, 0);</pre>
<code>dtFit_Rect</code>	Display the page designated by page with its contents magnified just enough to fit the rectangle specified by the coordinates left bottom right and top entirely within the window both horizontally and vertically. If the required horizontal and vertical magnification factors are different, use the smaller of the two, centering the rectangle within the window in the other dimension. Note, the maximum zoom factor supported by Adobe's Acrobat is limited to 16 (Acrobat 4/5) or 64 if Acrobat 6 is used. It is not possible to zoom into the rectangle if it is too small.  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>pdfSetBookmarkDest(pdf, bmk, dtFit_Rect, 150, 550, 450, 700);</pre>

The destination types *dtFitB*, *dtFitBH\_Top* and *dtFitBV\_Left* use always the media box of the page to fit the page into the window. All other destination types use the crop box if any.

As you can see above that the usage of the destination types are the same as for a [go-to action](#). The function creates in real a [go-to action](#) which is executed by the bookmark. However, the action is stored in a more compact format and cannot be shared with other objects.



If a destination should be used with multiple objects such as page links, create a [go-to action](#) instead and add it to the bookmark with the function [AddActionToObj\(\)](#). The same action can then be added to other objects.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetBookmarkStyle***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetBookmarkStyle(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 ABmk,        // Bookmark handle  
    TFStyle Style,     // Style beeing used to display the text  
    UI32 RGBColor)     // Color of the bookmark  
  
typedef SI32 TFStyle;  
#define SI32 fsNone      = 0; // Default  
#define SI32 fsItalic    = 1; // Italic  
#define SI32 fsBold      = 2; // Bold  
#define SI32 fsUnderlined = 4; // Unsupported  
#define SI32 fsStriked   = 8; // Unsupported
```

Since Acrobat 5 bookmarks support a user defined color and the text style can be changed to italic, bold and so on. Older versions of Adobe's Acrobat ignore the style information. Bookmarks support RGB colors only. The parameter Style is a bit mask, the flags can be combined, e.g. to create a bolditalic bookmark.

**Example:**

```
pdfSetBookmarkStyle(pdf, bmk, fsBold | fsItalic, PDF_RGB(45, 144, 54));
```

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetBorderStyle

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetBorderStyle(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    TBorderStyle Style) // Border style  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    bsSolid      = 0, // Solid border  
    bsBevelled   = 1, // Bevelled border  
    bsInset      = 2, // Inset border  
    bsUnderline  = 3, // Underline only  
    bsDashed     = 4  // Dashed border  
}TBorderStyle;
```

The function set the global border style which is used for newly created form fields. It is also possible to change the style of a specific form field, see [SetFieldBorderStyle\(\)](#) for further information.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetCharacterSpacing

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetCharacterSpacing(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double Value)      // Character spacing
```

The function sets the current character spacing. The function requires an open page, template or pattern.

Default value = 0

Value = 0	Character
Value = 10.0	C h a r a c t e r

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetCheckBoxChar***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetCheckBoxChar(  
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer  
    TCheckboxChar CheckBoxChar) // see below  
typedef enum  
{  
    ccCheck,  
    ccCircle,  
    ccCross1,  
    ccCross2,  
    ccCross3,  
    ccCross4,  
    ccDiamond,  
    ccSquare,  
    ccStar  
}TCheckBoxChar;
```

The function sets the character which should be used for newly created check boxes.

Default value = ccCheck

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***Check box characters***

**ccCheck**

**ccCircle**

**ccCross1**

**ccCross2**

**ccCross3**

**ccCross4**

**ccDiamond**

**ccSquare**

**ccStar**

## SetCheckBoxDefState

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetCheckBoxDefState(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle  
    LBOOL Checked)    // Default state
```

This function changes the default state of a check box; it can differ from the current visible state of the check box. The default state is used when the form is reset with a [Reset Form Action](#).

The default state of a new check box is always identical with the visible state.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetCheckBoxState

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetCheckboxState(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle  
    LBOOL Checked)    // State
```

The function changes the state of a check box. The parameter *AField* must be a valid check box handle.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetCIDFont

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetCIDFont(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 CMapHandle,  // Handle of a CMap returned by LoadCMap()  
    const char* Name, // Font name  
    TFStyle Style,    // Font style  
    double Size,      // Font size  
    LBOOL Embed)      // If true, the font will be embedded
```

The function loads an OpenType or TrueType font with an external CMap. A font that is used with an external CMap is called a composite font or CID font. A CID-keyed font is an OpenType font (with Postscript outlines) that contains CID font operators.

CID-keyed fonts provide a convenient and efficient method for defining multiple-byte character encodings as wells as fonts with a large number of glyphs. These capabilities provide great flexibility for representing text in writing systems for languages with large character sets, such as Chinese, Japanese, and Korean (CJK).

The CID-keyed font architecture specifies the external representation of certain font programs, called CMap and CIDFont files, along with some conventions for combining and using those files. PDF does not support the entire CID-keyed font architecture, which is independent of PDF; CID-keyed fonts can also be used in other environments. For complete documentation on the architecture and the file formats, see Adobe Technical Notes #5092, CID-Keyed Font Technology Overview, and #5014, Adobe CMap and CIDFont Files Specification.

The term CID-keyed font reflects the fact that CID (character identifiers) numbers are used to index and access the glyph descriptions in the font. A CID refers always into a predefined character collection.

A character collection is an ordered set of all glyphs needed to support one or more popular character sets for a particular language. The order of the glyphs in the character collection determines the CID number for each glyph. Each CID-keyed font explicitly references the character collection on which its CID numbers are based.

A CMap (character map) file specifies the correspondence between character codes and the CID numbers used to identify glyphs. It is equivalent to the concept of an encoding in simple fonts. Whereas a simple font allows a maximum of 256 glyphs to be encoded and accessible at one time, a CMap can describe a mapping from multiple-byte codes to thousands of glyphs in a large CID-keyed font. For example, it can describe Shift-JIS, one of several widely used encodings for Japanese. See also [LoadCMap\(\)](#).

The supported character collection of a CID-keyed font must match the one of the CMap file. If the CMap file provides a mapping into another character collection as the font supports, then the function returns with an error and the font will not be loaded.

Although TrueType fonts have no native notation of CIDs it is also possible to use TrueType fonts with external CMaps as long as the font contains a CMap in the format 0, 4, 6, 10, or 12. TrueType fonts which contain only a CMap in format 2 cannot be used with external CMap files (format 2 is a mixed 8/16 bit encoding that is supported in certain pure CJK fonts). However, such fonts can be loaded with [SetFont\(\)](#).

A key feature of the CID-keyed font architecture is that it works also with non-embedded fonts.

Documents in western writing systems use about 80 through 100 glyphs of a font on average, while Asian documents use often more than 400 through several thousand glyphs in one document. The amount of font data that must be stored in Asian documents is not comparable with western documents.

Although font embedding is still recommended, the amount of data is sometimes too large to embed all fonts. If font embedding is not possible it is recommended to use fonts which are probably available on the user's operating system.

Please note that DynaPDF knows nothing about the encoding when using a font with an external CMap. Functions which output formatted text like [WriteFText\(\)](#) can only be used with CMaps which map Unicode (UTF-16) to CIDs. The wide string version of the function must be used in this case.

## ***Word Spacing***

Word spacing applies to the space character of a string. However, most CJK encodings support more than one space character, such as a proportional space, ideographic space, full width space, half width space and many more. DynaPDF treats always CID 1 as space character, independent of the used character collection. All other CIDs are treated as ordinary glyphs.

## ***Vertical Writing Mode***

When using a CMap for vertical writing mode the text extends always from top to bottom. The coordinate origin of the text depends on the font origin (see [SetFontOrigin\(\)](#)). If the font origin is set to `orDownLeft` the first character is placed on the font's baseline. This can be somewhat confusing because the remaining text is of course placed below the first character. It is usually best to set the font origin to `orTopLeft`, also if bottom up coordinates are used.

Because the text width is simply the font size, [GetTextWidth\(\)](#) returns the text height in vertical writing mode.

### **Known issues:**

- At time of publication CID fonts cannot be used with form fields.
- Vertical writing mode does not work with [WriteFText\(\)](#).

### **Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Because family names are defined in Unicode format in TrueType and OpenType fonts the usage of the Unicode compatible version is preferred when selecting fonts via family name.

All functions which output text report a warning if one or more characters cannot be found. Call [GetMissingGlyphs\(\)](#) to determine which characters could not be found.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the font handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails, the return value is a negative error code.

## SetCMapDir

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetCMapDir(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* Path,  // Directory wich contains CMap files  
    LBOOL Recursive)  // Include sub directories?
```

The function sets a search path from which external CMap files can be loaded. External CMap files are sometimes required, e.g. when extracting text from Asian PDF files. However, it is also possible to load external CMaps with OpenType or TrueType fonts. This is a key feature when creating Asian PDF files (see [SetCIDFont\(\)](#) for further information).

Although the function name suggests that only one directory can set at time it is possible to load an arbitrary number of directories. Each time the function is called a duplicate check is performed so that only unique CMap files reside in the CMap cache.

CMap files can be divided into three categories:

- CMaps which provide a mapping from an arbitrary character encoding to a predefined character collection.
- CMaps which provide an identity mapping to a predefined character collection. Such CMaps should contain the DSC comment "%BeginResource: CMap (Identity)".
- CMaps which provide a CID to Unicode mapping of a character collection.

If a CMap should be loaded for use with an OpenType or TrueType font, two CMap files are required: the one that provides the mapping into the character collection, and the one that provides the CID to Unicode mapping. If one of these CMap files base in turn on another CMap, the corresponding base CMap must be available too.

The following notes should be considered when working with external CMaps:

- To improve processing speed the directory in which CMap files are stored should not contain other file types.
- CMap files should be loaded once per PDF instance and one PDF instance should be used as long as possible to create an arbitrary number of PDF files.
- The CMap name and the file name should be identical.
- A valid CMap file must begin with the DSC comment "%!PS-Adobe-3.0 Resource-CMap" (excluding double quotes). Other DSC comments are optional.
- The keys /CMapType, /WMode, /CMapName and /CIDSystemInfo must be fully defined within the first 4096 bytes.
- DynaPDF uses the value of /CMapName and the CIDSystemInfo dictionary to identify a CMap file.

**Remarks:**

The function performs a duplicate check during execution. If two CMap files with the same name, registry, and ordering will be found, the one with the higher supplement number will be added to the cache. The function parses the CMap's header information only. A CMap file must be loaded into memory with [LoadCMap\(\)](#) before it can be used with [SetCIDFont\(\)](#). However, the CMap's header information can be accessed with [GetCMap\(\)](#) without loading the CMap file.

The function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Unicode paths are converted to UTF-8 on non-Windows operating systems.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of CMap files in the cache. This value can directly be used to access the CMap headers with [GetCMap\(\)](#). If the function fails the return value is a negative error code. The only reason why this function can fail is out of memory.

## ***SetColDefFile***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetColDefFile(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 EmbFile)      // Handle of an embedded file
```

The function sets the initial document of a portable collection that should be opened in the viewer application. See also [CreateCollection\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetColSortField***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetColSortField(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 ColField,     // Handle of a collection field  
    LBOOL AscendingOrder) // If true, sort the list in ascending order
```

The function sets the collection field that should be used to sort the list of embedded files.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.



## SetColors

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetColors(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Color)        // Color value defined in the current color space
```

The function sets the fill and stroke color. The parameter *Color* must be defined in the current color space. For example, if the current color space is DeviceGray the color value must be in the range 0 to 255. CMYK colors can be constructed with the macro PDF\_CMYK() or with the function CMYK() which is available in most programming languages. RGB colors can be constructed with the macro PDF\_RGB() or with the function RGB() which is available in most programming languages.

The function requires an open page, template, or pattern.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetColorSpace

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetColorSpace(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TPDFColorSpace ColorSpace) // see below  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    csDeviceRGB = 0,  
    csDeviceCMYK = 1,  
    csDeviceGray = 2  
}TPDFColorSpace;
```

The function activates a device color space in the graphics state. All color values must be defined in the current color space. Images or EMF graphics are automatically converted to the current color space. The default color conversion rules can be modified with the function [SetGStateFlags\(\)](#).

Extended color spaces can be set with [SetExtColorSpace\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetCompressionFilter***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetCompressionFilter(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    TCompressionFilter Filter) // see below  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    cfFlate = 0,  
    cfJPEG  = 1,  
    cfJP2K  = 7  
}TCompressionFilter;
```

The function sets the compression filter which is used to compress images. 1 bit and 4 bit images are always compressed with Flate independent of the current compression filter. The filters are described in detail under [InsertImage\(\)](#).

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetCompressionLevel***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetCompressionLevel(  
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer  
    TCompressionLevel CompressLevel) // see below  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    clNone      = 0, // No compression (ignored for images)  
    clDefault   = 1, // Normal compression ratio  
    clFastest   = 2, // Less compression ratio but faster  
    clMax       = 3  // Maximum compression ratio but slow  
}TCompressionLevel;
```

The function sets the current compression level. If the compression level is clNone, content streams will be left uncompressed. This value is useful if a content stream must be debugged, the value will be ignored for image streams. The compression level is also used by certain image compression filters, see [InsertImage\(\)](#) for further information.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetContent

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetContent(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const char* Buffer,   // New content stream
    UI32 BufSize)        // Buffer size in bytes
```

This function replaces the content stream of the currently open page or template with a new one. If the parameter *Buffer* is NULL the content stream of the page or template will be deleted. In the latter case page resources such as fonts, images and so on will be deleted from the page object as long as the objects were not imported from an external PDF file.

### Remarks:

Use this function in combination with [GetContent\(\)](#) if you need to change a content stream in a manner that DynaPDF does not supports. Do never change a content stream when you don't know exactly what you are doing.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetDateTimeFormat

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetDateTimeFormat(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 TxtField,    // Text field handle
    TPDFDateTime Fmt) // Date or time format
```

```
typedef enum
```

```
{
    dfMM_D           = 0,
    dfM_D_YY         = 1,
    dfMM_DD_YY       = 2,
    dfMM_YY          = 3,
    dfD_MMM          = 4,
    dfD_MMM_YY       = 5,
    dfDD_MMM_YY      = 6,
    dfYY_MM_DD       = 7,
    dfMMM_YY         = 8,
    dfMMMM_YY        = 9,
    dfMMM_D_YYYY     = 10,
    dfMMMM_D_YYYY    = 11,
    dfM_D_YY_H_MM_TT = 12,
    dfM_D_YY_HH_MM   = 13,
    /* time formats */
    df24HR_MM        = 14,
    df12HR_MM         = 15,
    df24HR_MM_SS      = 16,
```

```
df12HR_MM_SS      = 17
}TPDFDateTime;
```

The function restricts the allowed value of a text field to a date time format and applies this format if the value was valid. A date time format is represented as two separate JavaScript actions in PDF which are automatically created and added to the text field by this function.

The same formats can also be applied manually by creating two JavaScript actions, one for the OnKeyStroke event, and one for the OnFormat event of the text field. See [AddActionToObj\(\)](#) for a description of the events.

DynaPDF uses the JavaScript functions *AFDate\_Keystroke()* / *AFDate\_KeystrokeEx()* and *AFDate\_Format()* / *AFDate\_FormatEx()* to apply a date time format. The functions are described in the JavaScript scripting reference which is available at <http://www.adobe.com>.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetDefBitsPerPixel

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetDefBitsPerPixel(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    SI32 Value)        // Currently supported values are 8 and 24 bit
```

The function sets the default color depth in bits per pixel, which determines whether images should be downsampled. If the property is to 8 bits per pixel images are converted to 256 indexed color images. At time of publication only two values are supported:

- **24 bit**: No conversion
- **8 bit**: Conversion to 256 indexed color image

Default value = 24

Downsampling will only be applied if Flate compression is used. The color table is always created in the current color space.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetDocInfo

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetDocInfo(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TDocumentInfo DInfo, // see below
    const char* Value) // Info string

typedef enum
{
```

```

    diAuthor    = 0,
    diCreator   = 1,
    diKeywords  = 2,
    diProducer  = 3,
    diSubject   = 4,
    diTitle     = 5,
    diCompany   = 6,
    diPDFX_Ver  = 7, // GetInDocInfo() only
    diCustom    = 8  // User defined key -> see SetDocInfoEx()
}TDocumentInfo;

```

The function set or changes a document info entry. This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The ANSI Version supports ANSI strings of the code page 1252 only. To create a documents info entry in an arbitrary 8 bit or CJK encoding convert the string to Unicode with the function [ConvToIncode\(\)](#) and use the Unicode version to set the document info entry.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetDocInfoEx

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfSetDocInfoEx(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    TDocumentInfo DInfo,  // see SetDocInfo() above
    const char* Key,       // User defined key
    const char* Value)     // The value for a specific key

```

The function set or changes a document info entry. This function supports also user defined keys which can be created or changed if necessary. If the parameter *DInfo* is set to *diCustom* the parameter *Key* must contain a unique key that describes the key.

The following keywords are reserved and must not be used as user defined keys:

- Author
- CreationDate
- GTS\_PDFXVersion
- Keywords
- ModifyDate
- Producer
- Subject
- Title
- Trapped

Note that the function does not check whether a reserved key is used. Using such a key causes maybe errors which are not always reported in viewer applications.

User defined keys should be defined as 7 bit ASCII string and the use of special characters like /, \, #, or character codes higher than 127 should be avoided. The value of document info entry should not contain binary data.

#### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The ANSI Version supports ANSI strings of the code page 1252 only. To create a documents info entry in an arbitrary 8 bit or CJK encoding convert the string to Unicode with the function [ConvToIncode\(\)](#) and use the Unicode version to set the document info entry.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***SetDrawDirection***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetDrawDirection(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TDrawDirection Direction) // Draw direction

typedef enum
{
    ddCounterClockwise = 0,
    ddClockwise         = 1
}TDrawDirection;
```

The function sets the draw direction of closed vector graphics such as rectangles, ellipses, triangles and so on. The draw direction is important if a path should be filled with the nonzero winding number rule or even-odd rule. Both modes are described in detail under [ClipPath\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***SetEMFFrameDPI***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetEMFFrameDPI(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 DPIX,        // Horizontal DPI per inch
    UI32 DPIY)        // Vertical DPI per inch
```

This function can be used to adjust DPI value which is used to calculate the picture size of an EMF file. The values of *DPIX* and *DPIY* are only used if the flag *mfUseRclFrame* is set (see [SetMetaConvFlags\(\)](#)).

The flag *mfUseRclFrame* is primarily used to convert EMF files which were originally created from non-portable WMF files. Such files contain often a wrongly calculated picture size (*rclBounds*) so

that the picture size must be calculated from the rectangle `rciFrame` of the EMF file header. This is often the one and only way to convert those files successfully to PDF.

The default DPI value is 100. If the EMF picture appears too large then decrease the DPI value, e.g. to 72.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***SetEMFPatternDistance***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetEMFPatternDistance(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double Value)      // Distance between pattern lines in units
```

The function changes the default distance between lines of standard patterns during EMF conversion.

Default value = 4.0

Minimum value = 1.0

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***SetErrorMode***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetErrorMode(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TErrMode ErrMode) // see below

typedef SI32 TErrMode;
#define emIgnoreAll      0x00000000 // Default
#define emSyntaxError    0x00000001
#define emValueError     0x00000002
#define emWarning        0x00000004
#define emFileError      0x00000008
#define emFontError      0x00000010
#define emAllErrors      0x0000FFFF
#define emNoFuncNames    0x10000000 // Do not output function names
```

The error mode specifies which error types should be treated as fatal error. By default, DynaPDF ignores all errors except fatal ones. Once a fatal error occurred processing breaks immediately and no further error messages or warnings are returned.

The special flag *emNoFuncNames* names can be used to avoid the output of the function name in which the error occurred. Error messages start normally always with the function name in which the error occurred, e.g. "SetFont: Font not found!". While this information is useful during development, it is often not useful in an end user application.

The parameter *ErrMode* is a bit mask; multiple flags can be set with the bitwise or operator, e.g. (emSyntaxError | emWarning).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetExtColorSpace***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetExtColorSpace(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle)       // Handle of an extended color space
```

The function activates an extended color space in the graphics state. The current fill and stroke color is initialized to zero after the color space has been changed. Device color spaces can be set with [SetColorSpace\(\)](#). See also [Color Spaces](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetExtGState***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetExtGState(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle)       // Handle of an extended graphics state object
```

The function applies an extended graphics state. Extended graphics states can be used to adjust certain settings of the graphics state. See [CreateExtGState\(\)](#) for further information.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetFieldBackColor***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldBackColor(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AColor)       // Background color
```

The function sets the background color used for newly created interactive form fields and annotations. Normal annotations support RGB colors only. Form fields support the color spaces DeviceRGB, DeviceGray, and DeviceCMYK. The color value must be defined in the current color space.

If the background should appear transparent set the color to NO\_COLOR.

```
#define NO_COLOR 0xFFFFFFFF  
Default value = NO_COLOR
```



**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***SetFieldBBox***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldBBox(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,           // Field handle
    struct TPDFRect* BBox) // The new bounding box
```

The function changes the bounding box of a field. The bounding box must be defined in bottom up coordinates. The Top member of the structure *BBox* must be larger than Bottom as well as Right must be larger than the Left member.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***SetFieldBorderColor***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldBorderColor(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AColor)      // Border color
```

The function sets the border color used for newly created interactive form fields and annotations. Normal annotations support RGB colors only. Form fields support the color spaces DeviceRGB, DeviceGray and DeviceCMYK. The color value must be defined in the current color space.

If the border should appear transparent set the color to NO\_COLOR.

```
#define NO_COLOR 0xFFFFFFFF
Default value = 0 // Black
```

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***SetFieldBorderStyle***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldBorderStyle(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle
    TBorderStyle Style) // Border style

typedef enum
{
    bsSolid      = 0, // Solid border
    bsBevelled   = 1, // Bevelled border
```

```

    bsInset      = 2, // Inset border
    bsUnderline  = 3, // Underline only
    bsDashed     = 4  // Dashed border
}TBorderStyle;

```

The function changes the border style of a specific Interactive Form field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle.

#### Remarks:

It is not possible to change the border style of imported button fields. The global border style which is used for newly created fields can be set with the function [SetBorderStyle\(\)](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***SetFieldBorderWidth***

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfSetFieldBorderWidth(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle
    double LineWidth) // Line width of the border

```

This function can be used to change the border width of a field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle. The parameter *LineWidth* must not be negative and it should either be 0, 1, 2, or 3 units (no border, thin, medium, or thick). Note that Adobe's Acrobat supports only these values. It is possible to draw a field with any border width, but if the field is repainted due to a reset action or due to other changes, the field appearance will be changed in Adobe's Acrobat and the border width is adjusted to the nearest supported value.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***SetFieldColor***

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfSetFieldColor(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle
    TFieldColor ColorType, // Color type that should be changed
    TPDFColorSpace CS,    // Color space
    UI32 Color)           // Color value

typedef enum
{
    fcBackColor    = 0,
    fcBorderColor  = 1,
    fcTextColor    = 2
}TFieldColor;

```

```
typedef enum
{
    csDeviceRGB    = 0,
    csDeviceCMYK   = 1,
    csDeviceGray   = 2
}TPDFColorSpace;
```

The function sets a specific color of an interactive form field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle. The background and border color of a form field must be defined in the same color space. The color space for the text color can be defined in a separate color space (e.g. DeviceGray for the text and DeviceRGB for the background and border).

If the border or background should appear transparent set the value to NO\_COLOR. The text color cannot be transparent.

```
#define NO_COLOR 0xFFFFFFFF1
```

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### SetFieldExpValue

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldExpValue(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,           // Field handle
    UI32 ValIndex,         // Value index
    const char* Value,     // New value
    const char* ExpValue,  // New export value
    LBOOL Selected)       // Select the value?
```

This function can be used to change the choice values of a combo box, list box, or radio button. It is also possible to change the export value and selected state of a check box with this function, the parameter *ValIndex* is ignored in the latter case. The parameter *ValIndex* represents the index within the value array starting at zero. To determine how many values are defined in a field call the function [GetFieldExpValCount\(\)](#).

The parameter *Value* can be NULL if the field is a check box. However, the parameter *ExpValue* must not be NULL in the latter case.

If the field is either a combo box or check box, the parameter *ExpValue* can be NULL. The choice value is deleted if *Value* is set to NULL too in the latter case.

#### Example (C++):

```
...
// aField is a handle of a combo box in this example; we want to
// deselect the currently selected value, that's all.
char* value, *expValue;
LBOOL selected;
SI32 valCount = pdfGetFieldExpValCount(pdf, aField);
```

```

for (SI32 i = 0; i < valCount; i++)
{
    if (pdfGetFieldExpValueEx(pdf, aField, i, value, expValue, selected))
    {
        if (selected)
        {
            pdfSetFieldExpValue(pdf, aField, i, value, expValue, false);
            break;
        }
    }
}

```

**Remarks:**

To enumerate the choice values of a combo box or list box use the function [GetFieldExpValueEx\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFieldFlags

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfSetFieldFlags(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle
    TFieldFlags Flags, // Field flags, see below
    LBOOL Reset)      // Reset the flags or add them?

typedef UI32 TFieldFlags;
// Basic flags supported by all field types except group fields and
// radio button fields.
#define ffReadOnly      0x00000001
#define ffRequired      0x00000002
#define ffNoExport      0x00000004
#define ffInvisible     0x00000008
#define ffHidden        0x00000010
#define ffPrint         0x00000020
#define ffNoZoom        0x00000040
#define ffNoRotate      0x00000080
#define ffNoView        0x00000100
// Special flags supported by specific fields only
#define ffMultiline     0x00001000
#define ffPassword      0x00002000
#define ffNoToggleToOff 0x00004000
#define ffRadioIsUnion  0x04000000
#define ffCommitOnSelCh 0x08000000
#define ffEdit          0x00040000
#define ffSorted        0x00080000
#define ffFileSelect    0x00100000
#define ffMultiSelect   0x00200000
#define ffDoNotSpellCheck 0x00400000

```

```
#define ffDoNotScroll    0x00800000
#define ffComb          0x01000000
```

The function sets the flags of a specific interactive form field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle. The parameter *Flags* is a bit mask, multiple flags can be set by adding the values or use a bitwise and operator. If the parameter *Reset* is true the flags of the field are set to ones specified with the parameter *Flags*. If *Reset* is false, the flags are added by using a bitwise and operator.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

Flag	Description
ffInvisible	If set, do not display the annotation if it does not belong to one of the standard annotation types and no annotation handler is available.
ffHidden	(PDF 1.2) If set, do not display or print the annotation or allow it to interact with the user, regardless of its annotation type or whether an annotation handler is available.
ffPrint	(PDF 1.2) If set, print the annotation when the page is printed. If clear, never print the annotation, regardless of whether it is displayed on the screen. This can be useful, for example, for annotations representing interactive pushbuttons, which would serve no meaningful purpose on the printed page.
ffNoZoom	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not scale the annotation's appearance to match the magnification of the page. The location of the annotation on the page (defined by the upper-left corner of its annotation rectangle) remains fixed, regardless of the page magnification.
ffNoRotate	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not rotate the annotation's appearance to match the rotation of the page. The upper-left corner of the annotation rectangle remains in a fixed location on the page, regardless of the page rotation.
ffNoView	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not display the annotation on the screen or allow it to interact with the user. The annotation may be printed (depending on the setting of the ffPrint flag), but should be considered hidden for purposes of on-screen display and user interaction.
ffReadOnly	(PDF 1.3) If set, do not allow the annotation to interact with the user. The annotation may be displayed or printed (depending on the settings of the afNoView and ffPrint flags), but should not respond to mouse clicks or change its appearance in response to mouse motions.

Flag	Description
<code>ffRequired</code>	If set, the field must have a value at the time it is exported by a submit-form action (see <a href="#">CreateSubmitAction()</a> for further information). Supported by all fields except group fields.
<code>ffNoExport</code>	If set, the field must not be exported by a submit-form action (see <a href="#">CtreateSubmitAction()</a> for further information). Supported by all fields except group fields.
<code>ffMultiline</code>	If set, the field may contain multiple lines of text; if clear, the field's text is restricted to a single line. Supported by button fields, text fields.
<code>ffPassword</code>	If set, the field is intended for entering a secure password that should not be echoed visibly to the screen. Characters typed from the keyboard should instead be echoed in some unreadable form, such as asterisks or bullet characters. To protect password confidentiality, the value of the text field is not stored in the PDF file if this flag is set. Supported by text fields only.
<code>ffNoToggleToOff</code>	If set, exactly one radio button must be selected at all times; clicking the currently selected button has no effect. If clear, clicking the selected button deselects it, leaving no button selected. Supported by radio button fields only.
<code>ffEdit</code>	If set, the combo box includes an editable text box as well as a drop list; if clear, it includes only a drop list. Supported by combo boxes only.
<code>ffSorted</code>	If set, the field values are sorted in ascending order. Supported by combo boxes and list boxes only.
<code>ffFileSelect</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, the text entered in the field represents the pathname of a file whose contents are to be submitted as the value of the field. Supported by text fields only.
<code>ffMultiSelect</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, more than one of the field's option items may be selected simultaneously; if clear, no more than one item at a time may be selected. This flag is supported by list boxes only.
<code>ffDoNotSpellCheck</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, the text entered to the field will not be spell-checked. Supported by text fields, combo boxes. If the field type is combo box, this flag is meaningful only if the flag <code>ffEdit</code> is also set.

Flag	Description
<code>ffDoNotScroll</code>	(PDF 1.4) If set, the field will not scroll (horizontally for single-line fields, vertically for multiple-line fields) to accommodate more text than will fit within its annotation rectangle. Once the field is full, no further text will be accepted. Supported by text fields only.
<code>ffComb</code>	(PDF 1.5) Meaningful only if <code>MaxLen</code> is set (see <a href="#">CreateTextField()</a> ) and if the <code>ffMultiline</code> , <code>ffPassword</code> , and <code>ffFileSelect</code> flags are clear. If set, the field is automatically divided up into as many equally spaced positions, or combs, as the value of <code>MaxLen</code> , and the text is laid out into those combs. Supported by text fields only.
<code>ffCommitOnSelCh</code>	(PDF 1.5) If set, the new value is committed as soon as a selection is made with the pointing device. This allows applications to perform an action once a selection is made, without requiring the user to exit the field. If clear, the new value is not committed until the user exits the field. Supported by combo boxes and list boxes only.
<code>ffRadioIsUnion</code>	(PDF 1.5) If set, a group of radio buttons within a radio button field that use the same export value for the on state will turn on and off in unison; that is, if one is checked, they are all checked. This flag requires Acrobat 6 or higher and is supported by check boxes only.

## SetFieldFontSize

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldFontSize(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle
    double FontSize)  // New font size
```

The function changes the font size of a specific field. A value of 0.0 is used as auto size. The optimal font size is then calculated by DynaPDF.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFieldHighlightMode

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldHighlightMode(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,         // Field handle  
    THighlightMode Mode) // New highlight mode
```

The function changes the highlight mode of a specific field. Supported field types are buttons, checkboxes, radio buttons, and signature fields. Other field types do not support this property.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFieldIndex

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldIndex(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle  
    UI32 Index)       // New field index (this represents the tab order)
```

This function can be used to set the tab order of interactive form fields. All fields, independently whether they are created with DynaPDF or imported from external documents, holds in internal index which can be used to reorder or sort the fields with this index.

The start index of a new field is not zero, it is 1000 instead. This makes it easier to set a field in front of all other fields without changing all field indices. However, changing a field index changes not the tab order directly, the fields of a page must be sorted before the page will be closed with the function [SortFieldByIndex\(\)](#).

The tab order of interactive form fields must be set for each page separately.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

**Example (C++):**

In this example we create 50 text fields in two columns. The order in which the fields are created is line by line, not column by column. Execute the example and open the file with Acrobat or Reader. You can see now that the tab order is column by column, not line by line as the fields were created. Comment out the [SortFieldsByIndex\(\)](#) function call and create the file again; the tab order is now line by line.

Take a look onto the for-statement; we set the field index of the text fields of the first column only. The other fields can be left unchanged because their index lies between 1001 and 1049.

```
#include "dynapdf.h"  
using namespace DynaPDF;  
// First we declare our error callback function
```



```
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMsg, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMsg);
    return 0;
}
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    char tmp[30]; double y; SI32 field, index;
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF(); // Create a PDF instance
    if (!pdf) return 2;      // Out of memory?
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diAuthor, "Jens Boschulte");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diCreator, "C++ sample project");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diSubject, "Tab order");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diCreator, "Tab order");

    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:/cppout.pdf");
    pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);
    pdfAppend(pdf);
    y = 50.0; index = 0;
    for (SI32 i = 0; i < 50; i++)
    {
        sprintf(tmp, "Field %d", i);
        if (i & 1)
        {
            // This is the second column, the field indices can be left
            // unchanged because they are above 1000.
            pdfCreateTextField(pdf, tmp, -1, false, 0, 210, y, 150, 20);
            y += 25.0; // goto the next line
        }else
        {
            field = pdfCreateTextField(pdf, tmp, -1, false, 0, 50, y, 150, 20);
            pdfSetFieldIndex(pdf, field, index++);
        }
    }
    pdfSortFieldsByIndex(pdf);
    pdfEndPage(pdf);
    pdfCloseFile(pdf);
    pdfDeletePDF(pdf); // Do not forget to delete the PDF instance
}
```

## SetFieldMapName

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldMapName(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle  
    const char* Name) // Mapping name (NULL to delete it)
```

The function sets or changes the mapping name of a field. The mapping is used when exporting interactive form field data from the document. The parameter *AField* must be a field handle. If the mapping name of the field should be deleted set the parameter *Name* to NULL. This function is also available in a Unicode compatible version. However, a mapping name should be defined as an ANSI string.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFieldName

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldName(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle  
    const char* NewName) // New field name
```

The function changes the name of an interactive form field. Field names must sometimes be changed when multiple interactive forms with identical field names are imported. The resulting form will be damaged if the names of such fields are not changed.

The function [SetFieldName\(\)](#) does not check whether a field name is already in use by another field. Such a checking would not be useful, because the usage of the function would be much more complicated. Use the function [CheckFieldNames\(\)](#) to check the integrity of the form after field names were changed.

### Remarks:

Changing of field names can cause problems if the field was used in JavaScript action or global JavaScript. The JavaScript(s) must also be changed to avoid error messages in Adobe's Acrobat. Global JavaScripts can be accessed with the function [GetJavaScript\(\)](#) and changed with the function [ChangeJavaScript\(\)](#). A JavaScript Action can be accessed with the function [GetJavaScriptAction\(\)](#) and changed with the function [ChangeJavaScriptAction\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFieldOrientation

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldOrientation(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,       // Field handle  
    SI32 Value)        // Orientation in degrees (must be a multiple of 90)
```

The function sets or changes the orientation of a field. The parameter *AField* be a valid field handle. The parameter *Value* must a multiple of 90 or 0. Positive values rotate the field counter clockwise, negative values clockwise.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFieldTextAlign

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldTextAlign(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,       // Text field or button field handle  
    TTextAlign Align) // New alignment  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    taLeft,  
    taCenter,  
    taRight,  
    taJustify  
}TTextAlign;
```

The function set or changes the text alignment of a text or button field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid handle of a text field or button field.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFieldTextColor

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldTextColor(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Color)        // Text color defined in the current color space
```

The function sets the text color which is used for newly created interactive form fields. The color value must be defined in the current color space. The color space must not be changed before the fields are created which should use this color.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***SetFieldToolTip***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFieldToolTip(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AField,      // Field handle  
    const char* Value) // Tool tip
```

The function set or changes the tool tip or description string of an interactive form field. The parameter *AField* must be a valid field handle.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The ANSI Version supports ANSI strings of the code page 1252 only. To create a description string in an arbitrary encoding convert the string to Unicode with the function [ConvToIncode\(\)](#) first and use the Unicode version to apply the string.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***SetFillColor***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFillColor(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Color)       // Color value defined in the current color space
```

The function sets the fill color. The parameter *Color* must be defined in the current color space. For example, if the current color space is DeviceGray the color value must be in the range 0 to 255.

CMYK colors can be constructed with the macro `PDF_CMYK()` or with the function `CMYK()` which is available in most programming languages. RGB colors can be constructed with the macro `PDF_RGB()` or with the function `RGB()` which is available in most programming languages.

If the corresponding color space contains more than four color components use [SetFillColorEx\(\)](#) instead.

The function requires an open page, template, or pattern.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFillColorEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFillColorEx(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const BYTE* Color,    // Color to be set  
    UI32 NumComponents) // Number of components
```

The function sets the fill color. The color must be defined as an array of bytes in the logical order of the color space. For example, if the color space is DeviceRGB the array must specify the color values of the red, green, and blue color components in that order. The number of components must be equal to the one of the corresponding color space.

Lab colors can be defined as signed char as usual. Make a typecast to BYTE\* when passing the color to the function. See [CreateCIEColorSpace\(\)](#) for further information.

**Example (C/C++):**

```
...  
char labColor[3] = {50, -34, 77}; // L, *a, *b  
pdfSetFillColor(pdf, (BYTE*)labColor, 3);  
...
```

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFillColorSpace

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFillColorSpace(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    TPDFColorSpace CS) // Color space
```

The function changes the fill color space. In PDF, fill and stroke colors use both their own color spaces. Although it is possible to use different color spaces for strokes and fillings it should be avoided if possible. The fill color space is the relevant color space when creating interactive objects such as form field or annotations. See also [SetStrokeColorSpace\(\)](#).

**Notice:**

This function was added to DynaPDF primarily for testing purposes. The color space should be set with [SetColorSpace\(\)](#) which sets always the same color space for fillings and strokes.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFont

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetFont(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    const char* Name,  // Font name (see note below)
    TFStyle Style,     // Font style
    double Size,       // Font size
    LBOOL Embed,       // If true, the font is embedded
    TCodepage CP)      // Code page

typedef SI32 TFStyle;
#define fsNone          0x00000000 // Regular weight (400) (obsolete)
#define fsItalic        0x00000001
#define fsUnderlined    0x00000004
#define fsStriked       0x00000008
#define fsVerticalMode  0x00000010 // Not considered at this time
// Width Class (defined for future use, ignored at this time)
#define fsUltraCondensed 0x00000100 // 1
#define fsExtraCondensed 0x00000200 // 2
#define fsCondensed     0x00000300 // 3
#define fsSemiCondensed 0x00000400 // 4
#define fsNormal        0x00000500 // 5
#define fsSemiExpanded   0x00000600 // 6
#define fsExpanded      0x00000700 // 7
#define fsExtraExpanded  0x00000800 // 8
#define fsUltraExpanded  0x00000900 // 9
// Weight Class
#define fsThin          0x06400000 // 100
#define fsExtraLight    0x0C800000 // 200
#define fsLight         0x12C00000 // 300
#define fsRegular       0x19000000 // 400 -> Same as fsNone (obsolete)
#define fsMedium        0x1F400000 // 500
#define fsDemiBold      0x25800000 // 600
#define fsBold          0x2BC00000 // 700 -> The old constant 2 is still
supported to preserve backward compatibility
#define fsExtraBold     0x32000000 // 800
#define fsBlack         0x38400000 // 900
#define fsUltraBlack    0x3E800000 // 1000

typedef enum
{
    cp1250,          // Eastern European
    cp1251,          // Cyrillic
    cp1252,          // Latin 1 Western European
    cp1253,          // Greek
    cp1254,          // Turkish
    cp1255,          // Hebrew
    cp1256,          // Arabic
    cp1257,          // Baltic
    cp1258,          // Vietnamese

```

```
cp8859_2,           // Latin 2 Central Europe
cp8859_3,           // Latin 3 Maltese
cp8859_4,           // Baltic
cp8859_5,           // Cyrillic
cp8859_6,           // Arabic
cp8859_7,           // Greek
cp8859_8,           // Hebrew
cp8859_9,           // Latin 5 Turkish
cp8859_10,          // Latin 6 Nordic Area
cp8859_13,          // Latin 7 Baltic Rim
cp8859_14,          // Latin 8 Celtic
cp8859_15,          // Latin 9 French
cp8859_16,          // Latin 10 Hungarian
cpSymbol,           // Symbol
cp437,              // DOS USA
cp737,              // DOS Greek
cp775,              // DOS Baltic Rim
cp850,              // DOS Multilingual
cp852,              // DOS Slavic
cp855,              // DOS Cyrillic
cp857,              // DOS Turkish
cp860,              // DOS Portuguese
cp861,              // DOS Icelandic
cp862,              // DOS Hebrew
cp863,              // DOS French (Canada)
cp864,              // DOS Arabic
cp865,              // DOS Nordic
cp866,              // DOS Russian
cp869,              // DOS Modern Greek
cp874,              // DOS Thai
cpUnicode,          // Unicode without Unioode algorithms
cpCJK_Big5_Uni,     // Big5 plus HKSCS extension
cpCJK_EUC_JP_Uni,   // EUC-JP
cpCJK_EUC_KR_Uni,   // EUC-KR
cpCJK_EUC_TW_Uni,   // CNS-11643-1992 (Planes 1-15)
cpCJK_GBK_Uni,      // MS code page 936 (GB2312, EUC-CN plus GBK)
cpCJK_GB12345_Uni,  // GB-12345-1990 (Trad. Chinese form of GB-2312)
cpCJK_HZ_Uni,       // Mixed ASCII / GB-2312 encoding
cpCJK_2022_CN_Uni,  // ISO-2022-CN-EXT (GB-2312 plus ISO-11643)
cpCJK_2022_JP_Uni,  // ISO-2022-JP
cpCJK_2022_KR_Uni,  // ISO-2022-KR
cpCJK_646_CN_Uni,   // ISO-646-CN (GB-1988-80)
cpCJK_646_JP_Uni,   // ISO-646-JP (JIS_C6220-1969-RO)
cpCJK_IR_165_Uni,   // ISO-IR-165 (extended version of GB-2312)
cpCJK_932_Uni,      // Microsoft extended version of SHIFT_JIS
cpCJK_949_Uni,      // EUC-KR extended with UHC (Unified Hangul Codes)
cpCJK_950_Uni,      // Microsoft extended version of Big5
cpCJK_JOHAB_Uni,    // JOHAB
cpShiftJIS,         // Native CJK character set requires a CJK font
cpBig5,             // Native CJK character set requires a CJK font
```

```

cpGB2312,           // Native CJK character set requires a CJK font
cpWansung,          // Native CJK character set requires a CJK font
cpJohab             // Native CJK character set requires a CJK font
cpMacRoman,         // Mac Roman
cpAdobeStd,         // Special encoding for Type1 fonts; should not used.
cpInternal,         // Internal -> not usable
cpGlyphIndexes,     // TrueType and OpenType fonts only
cpPDFDocEnc,        // Internal -> not usable
cpDingbats          // Internal -> not usable
}TCodepage;

```

The function loads a font that can be used for text output and interactive form fields. The parameter *Name* must be either the Family Name or the PostScript Name depending on the current font selection mode (see [SetFontSelMode\(\)](#) for further information).

Fonts are looked up in the search directories which can be set with [AddFontSearchPath\(\)](#). On Windows and Mac OS X operating systems DynaPDF adds automatically the default font directories of the system to the list of font search paths. See [SetUseSystemFonts\(\)](#) for further information.

### **Font Search Order**

DynaPDF searches for fonts in a specific order which can be changed with [SetFontSearchOrder\(\)](#). The default search order is:

- TrueType, TrueType Collection
- OpenType fonts with Postscript outlines
- Type1
- Standard PDF fonts

OpenType fonts with TrueType outline are treated like ordinary TrueType fonts. All supported font formats can be explicitly disabled if necessary. See [SetFontSearchOrder\(\)](#) for further information.

### **Font names**

All font types support at least two naming schemes, the family name which is normally used on Windows and the Postscript name that is widely used on Linux and UNIX operating systems. Font names are case-sensitive, they must be specified exactly. The naming scheme that should be used for font selection can be set with [SetFontSelMode\(\)](#) (the default is `smFamilyName`).

#### **Family name**

The family name is the typeface of a font, it refers to the member `lfFaceName` of the `LOGFONT` structure on Windows (see [GetLogFont\(\)](#) for further information). Family names are stored in Unicode format in TrueType and OpenType fonts. However, most available fonts can be selected with the ANSI version of [SetFont\(\)](#) too because a usual font name contains no special characters.

A family name is not unique; it specifies the font family and not a specific font of a given style.



For example, the font Arial is available in several different styles such as Regular, Bold, Italic, or BoldItalic. The style information Bold, Italic and so on is **not** part of the font name, that is the reason why the style must be passed separately to `SetFont()`.

The family name **and** the font style together identify a font file. Each font style is physically stored in a separate font file. However, if a requested style is not available `SetFont()` emulates the missing style if a compatible variant can be found. The emulation of bold and italic font styles can be disabled with `SetFontWeight()` and `SetItalicAngle()`.

### ***PostScript name***

The postscript name of a font is a unique name that identifies a font exactly. The style attributes `fsBold` and `fsItalic` are ignored when postscript names are used because the style information is already included in the font's postscript name. PostScript names are normally defined as ANSI strings. However, there are also CJK fonts available which use an arbitrary CJK encoding for the name.

Font selection is a little bit faster when postscript names are used because only the names must be compared. Note that the GDI (Graphical Device Interface) of Windows does not support postscript names for font selection.

It is known that certain font vendors deliver fonts with incorrectly named style variants, e.g. the same postscript name can be assigned to condensed and expanded versions of a font. In such a case the postscript name is no longer unique and avoids correct font selection.

### ***Font Styles***

The parameter *Style* specifies the font style variant that should be loaded from a given font family. A font style is a 32 bit unsigned integer that is encoded as follows:

- Bits 0..7    // Style bits `fsItalic`, `fsUnderlined`, `fsStriked`
- Bits 8..19   // Width class (1..9) -> Defined for future use
- Bits 20..31 // Font Weight (100..1000)

The width class and font weight can be converted to a style constant with the macros `WidthToStyle()` and `WeightToStyle()`:

```
#define WidthToStyle(w)    ((w) << 8)
#define WeightToStyle(w)  ((w) << 20)
// Corresponding macros to extract the values
#define WidthFromStyle(s) (((s) & ~0xFFF2D00F) >> 8)
#define WeightFromStyle(s) (((s) & ~0xC00FFFFF) >> 20)
```

Example:

```
// Width class 5 (Normal), font weight 700 (bold), italic
TFStyle style = WidthToStyle(5) | WeightToStyle(700) | fsItalic;
// or use the defined constants instead
TFStyle style = fsNormal | fsBold | fsItalic;
```

A valid font weight is a multiple of 100 or 100. Values like 450 or 770 are not meaningful.

### **Supported font formats**

The following font formats are supported by DynaPDF (on Mac OS X the same formats are also supported if they are stored in resource or data forks, as well as in .dfont or .suit files):

- TrueType fonts (\*.ttf). MAC Standard, Unicode or CJK encoded fonts.
- TrueType Collection (\*.ttc). These fonts contain multiple fonts into one.
- OpenType fonts (\*.otf) with TrueType or PostScript outlines.
- PostScript Type 1 fonts (\*.pfb or \*.pfa). No metric files are required.

### **Font Subsetting**

When a TrueType, OpenType or a font of a TrueType Collection will be embedded, DynaPDF creates a subset of this font which contains the used characters only. The function constructs a completely new font file that contains no unnecessary information.

Type 1 fonts are always stored unchanged in the PDF file. Font subsetting is not supported for this font format.

### **Font Embedding**

All supported font formats can be embedded as long as font embedding is not restricted in the font file. Font embedding can be disabled when using the code page 1252 or MacRoman, but it is required if another code page is used; the parameter *Embed* is ignored in this case. If font embedding is required but not possible due to licensing restrictions the function will fail.

However, when creating Asian PDF files it is possible to use CID-keyed fonts instead. The CID-Keyed Font Architecture works with embedded and non-embedded OpenType and TrueType fonts. See [SetCIDFont\(\)](#) for further information.

### **The 14 Standard Fonts**

All versions of Adobe's Acrobat support 14 standard fonts. These fonts are always available independent whether they're embedded or not.

Family name	PostScript name	Style
Courier	Courier	fsRegular
Courier	Courier-Bold	fsBold
Courier	Courier-Oblique	fsItalic
Courier	Courier-BoldOblique	fsBold + fsItalic
Helvetica	Helvetica	fsRegular
Helvetica	Helvetica-Bold	fsBold
Helvetica	Helvetica-Oblique	fsItalic
Helvetica	Helvetica-BoldOblique	fsBold + fsItalic

Times	Times-Roman	fsRegular
Times	Times-Bold	fsBold
Times	Times-Italic	fsItalic
Times	Times-BoldItalic	fsBold + fsItalic
Symbol	Symbol	fsRegular, other styles are emulated only
ZapfDingbats	ZapfDingbats	fsRegular, other styles are emulated only

DynaPDF includes the metrics of these fonts only. Please note that standard fonts have the lowest search priority. If a standard font is available in of the font search paths then this version will be used. The font search order can be changed with [SetFontSearchOrder\(\)](#).

### ***Code pages versus character sets***

The following table specifies which code page refers to which Windows character set.

<b>Code page</b>	<b>Windows character set</b>
cp1250	EASTEUROPE_CHARSET
cp1251	RUSSIAN_CHARSET
cp1252	ANSI_CHARSET
cp1253	GREEK_CHARSET
cp1254	TURKISH_CHARSET
cp1255	HEBREW_CHARSET
cp1256	ARABIC_CHARSET
cp1257	BALTIC_CHARSET
cp1258	VIETNAMESE_CHARSET
cp8859_2	EASTEUROPE_CHARSET
cp8859_3	TURKISH_CHARSET
cp8859_4	BALTIC_CHARSET
cp8859_5	RUSSIAN_CHARSET
cp8859_6	ARABIC_CHARSET
cp8859_7	GREEK_CHARSET
cp8859_8	HEBREW_CHARSET
cp8859_9	TURKISH_CHARSET
cp8859_10	BALTIC_CHARSET
cp8859_13	BALTIC_CHARSET
cp8859_14	ANSI_CHARSET
cp8859_15	ANSI_CHARSET
cp8859_16	EASTEUROPE_CHARSET
cpSymbol	SYMBOL_CHARSET
cp437	ANSI_CHARSET
cp737	GREEK_CHARSET
cp775	BALTIC_CHARSET
cp850	ANSI_CHARSET
cp852	EASTEUROPE_CHARSET
cp855	RUSSIAN_CHARSET
cp857	TURKISH_CHARSET

cp860	ANSI_CHARSET
cp861	ANSI_CHARSET
cp862	HEBREW_CHARSET
cp863	ANSI_CHARSET
cp864	ARABIC_CHARSET
cp865	ANSI_CHARSET
cp866	RUSSIAN_CHARSET
cp869	GREEK_CHARSET
cp874	VIETNAMESE_CHARSET
cpUnicode	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_Big5_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_EUC_JP_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_EUC_KR_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_EUC_TW_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_GBK_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_GB12345_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_HZ_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_2022_CN_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_2022_JP_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_2022_KR_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_646_CN_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_646_JP_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_IR_165_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_932_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_949_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_950_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpCJK_JOHAB_Uni	DEFAULT_CHARSET
cpShiftJIS	SHIFTJIS_CHARSET
cpBig5	CHINESEBIG5_CHARSET
cpGB2312	GB2312_CHARSET
cpWansung	HANGUL_CHARSET
cpJohab	HANGUL_CHARSET
cpMacRoman	MAC_CHARSET

### ***How to use CJK encodings?***

DynaPDF supports two types of CJK fonts: Native CJK fonts which support native CJK character sets such as cpShiftJIS, cpGB2312, cpWansung, and so on, and Unicode fonts which contains CJK characters.

Pure Unicode fonts support, as the name suggests, Unicode code points and no mixed 8/16 bit CJK encodings. Mixed 8/16 bit multi-byte strings must be converted to Unicode before they can be used with Unicode fonts. This conversion is automatically applied when a code page is used which ends with a "\_Uni", e.g. cpCJK\_Big5\_Uni or cpCJK\_932\_Uni. The "CJK" in the code page name indicates that mixed 8/16 bit CJK input character sequences must be used with this encoding.

The "\_Uni" at the end of the name means that this code page can be used with a Unicode font. CJK to Unicode conversion algorithms are available in the ANSI versions of string methods only. This is normally no limitation because CJK strings are usually not defined as wide-strings.

The other CJK code pages which are available in DynaPDF are those without the "\_Uni" at the end of the name, such as cpShiftJIS, cpGB2312, and so on. These code pages represent character sets and no code pages. The usage of a pure CJK encoding requires that the TrueType or OpenType font contains a CMap in format 2. This is mostly the case in pure CJK fonts (fonts which provide no Unicode based CMap). Unlike the CJK to Unicode code pages, these character sets can be used with the ANSI and wide string versions of a text method. Native character sets are faster than Unicode based versions because no string conversion is required.

In addition to the above code pages and character sets DynaPDF supports also the CID-Keyed font architecture which was specifically designed to process Asian languages. See [SetCIDFont\(\)](#) for further information.

### ***GDI Font selection in comparison to DynaPDF***

The Windows GDI selects a font in another way than DynaPDF does. Let us see how a font can be selected with the GDI function `CreateFont()` and where are the differences in comparison to DynaPDF:

```
HFONT f = CreateFont(
    -240,           // height of font
    0,             // average character width
    0,             // angle of escapement
    0,             // base-line orientation angle
    500,           // font weight
    1,             // italic attribute option
    0,             // underline attribute option
    0,             // strikethrough attribute option
    ANSI_CHARSET,  // character set identifier
    OUT_TT_ONLY_PRECIS, // output precision
    CLIP_DEFAULT_PRECIS, // clipping precision
    ANTIALIASED_QUALITY, // output quality
    FF_DONTCARE,   // pitch and family
    "Arial")       // typeface name (Family Name)
```

The parameters of the function `CreateFont()` are now discussed in detail:

#### ***nHeight***

The GDI supports three modes how the font size or height can be specified. We want to discuss negative values only because the other modes are not of interest for high precision output (positive values specify the cell height of a font, this value must be converted by DynaPDF to determine the wished font size). The font height we used in the example `CreateFont()` function call is expressed as a negative value. The absolute value of it is transformed to device units by the font mapper. We choose a size of 240 units; this is a normal font size for a 1440 DPI output.

A negative font height in a `CreateFont()` function call is exactly the same as a positive height or size in a `SetFont()` function call in DynaPDF (negative values are not supported by `SetFont()`).

However, GDI coordinates are normally upscaled because GDI functions support integer values only. For example, if we want to use a font size of 12.74 units, we can only upscale the coordinate system because it is impossible to define such a font size with a GDI function. That is why a GDI drawing is usually defined in a specific resolution; GDI coordinates are never really device independent.

However, to avoid such coordinate problems the PDF format uses a completely different system to produce device independent output. PDF coordinates and font sizes are expressed in floating point units so that we can use our font size of 12.74 units directly. We do not need to upscale the coordinate system and we don't need to consider whether the PDF file is drawn on a monitor or printer. All the details about the output resolution are completely hidden for the user. By the way, the master resolution of a PDF file is 72 DPI.

### ***nWidth***

The average character width (*nWidth*) is the same as horizontal text scaling in PDF (see [SetTextScaling\(\)](#)), but the calculation is completely different. The GDI uses the average character width of a font to calculate the text scaling (the unscaled value is returned by the GDI function [GetTextMetrics\(\)](#) if *nWidth* was set to zero during font selection). So, the font must be selected into device context twice to calculate a text scaling, one time to determine the unscaled value, and a second time to select the font width the wished value.

If a text should be scaled to 120% horizontally the calculation is as follows (C++):

```
TEXTMETRIC tm;  
GetTextMetrics(dc, &tm);  
int nWidth = tm.AveCharWidth * 120 / 100;
```

Note that text scaling is an output attribute; the value is not used during font selection.

In PDF, text scaling is a separate property of the current graphics state so that you don't need to determine the average character width of a font beforehand. Text scaling can be applied directly with the function [SetTextScaling\(\)](#) without any further calculation. So, if you want to scale a text to 120% in PDF, you can simply call the function [SetTextScaling\(\)](#) as follows:

```
pdfSetTextScaling(pdf, 120.0);
```

### ***nEscapement***

The angle of escapement specifies the output angle of a text string in tenths degrees. The output angle of a string has nothing to do with a font, it is an output attribute. Rotated text can be printed with the function [WriteAngleText\(\)](#) with DynaPDF.

### ***nOrientation***

This parameter specifies the angle, between each character's base line and the x-axis of the device. DynaPDF does not support a function that enables printing of characters in this way. Each character must be printed separately with the function [WriteAngleText\(\)](#) to get the same result.

***nWeight***

The font weight can be in the range 0 to 1000 (zero means don't know). One font can be installed in up to 10 different font weights where each weight refers to another font file. However, it is not possible to select each font weight separately with [SetFont\(\)](#) if the family name is used to identify the font. We have only two style attributes which determines either a normal weight font (100 - 500) or a bold weight font (600 - 1000). Such fonts can only be selected if the postscript name is used for font selection (see below).

The style flags, such as underlined or strikeout are also supported by [SetFont\(\)](#), the only difference is that each flag can be set with one parameter because the parameter Style of [SetFont\(\)](#) is a bit-mask.

***fdwCharSet***

The last parameter that is of interest is the character set. A character set is not what a user typed in with the keyboard; it specifies a character collection or an alphabet that the font must contain to display the wished characters. The GDI checks whether a font supports the selected character set before it can be selected. Font selection fails if no font can be found that supports the selected character set. This is different in comparison to DynaPDF because DynaPDF selects fonts always by name the character set is ignored during font selection.

The next difference is that the GDI does not automatically map code page code points to Unicode, this must be done manually. This step is not required when working with DynaPDF; the required mapping is automatically applied.

***fdwPitchAndFamily***

The pitch and family specifies whether a proportional or fixed pitch font should be selected. This parameter should be set to FF\_DONTCARE because the pitch has a higher search priority than the family name. A wrong value of this parameter avoids the selection of the wished font by the GDI.

**Remarks:**

The function [SetFont\(\)](#) is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Family names are originally defined in Unicode so that this version is preferred when the font selection mode is set to smFamilyName (default).

All string functions report a warning if one or more glyphs cannot be found. Call [GetMissingGlyphs\(\)](#) to determine which characters could not be found.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the font handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## SetFontEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetFontEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    const char* Name, // Font name (see note below)  
    TFStyle Style,    // Font style  
    double Size,      // Font size  
    LBOOL Embed,      // If true, the font is embedded  
    TCodepage CP)     // Code page
```

The function loads a font that can be used for text output and interactive form fields. The difference in comparison to [SetFont\(\)](#) is the way how the function tries to find the font. If the font style is `fsNone` the function searches the font first by family name. If not found the font is searched again by postscript name.

The search runs are case-sensitive but space characters are ignored when searching by postscript name.

This function can be used if a PDF font should be loaded into memory or if it is not known whether the given font name represents a family or postscript name. See also [SetFont\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the font handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.



## SetFontOrigin

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFontOrigin(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TOrigin Origin)    // New origin

typedef enum
{
    orDownLeft = 0,
    orTopLeft  = 1
}TOrigin;
```

The function sets the current font origin that is used to position text strings. The font origin is automatically set to orTopLeft or orDownLeft if the coordinate system will be changed (see [SetPageCoords\(\)](#) for further information).

Default value = orDownLeft

Font origin:

0|0

---

The origin is top left

Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetFontSearchOrder

Syntax:

```
void pdfSetFontSearchOrder(
    const void* IPDF,
    TFontBaseType Order[4]) // 4 element array or NULL

typedef enum
{
    fbtTrueType, // TrueType, TrueType Collections
    fbtType1,    // Type1 font
    fbtOpenType, // OpenType font with Postscript outlines
    fbtStdFont,  // PDF Standard font
    fbtDisabled  // Can be used to disable a font format
}TFontBaseType;
```

The function changes the font search order. The default search order is:

- TrueType
- OpenType (OpenType fonts with PostScript outlines)
- Type1
- Standard PDF Fonts

Every font type can be disabled if necessary with the value `fbtDisabled`. The array *Order* can be set to `NULL` to reset the search order to the default order as described above. If *Order* is set, then the array must contain four elements and each value in the array must be properly initialized.

#### Example (C/C++):

```
TFontBaseType so[4] = {fbtStdFont, fbtTrueType, fbtOpenType, fbtType1};
// Change the search order
pdfSetFontSearchOrder(pdf, so);
...
// Reset the font search order to the default order
pdfSetFontSearchOrder(pdf, NULL);
```

#### Compatibility Note:

The default font search order in DynaPDF 2.0 was:

- Standard PDF Fonts
- TrueType or Type1

DynaPDF 2.0 selected simply the first font that matched the font name while the 14 PDF Standard fonts had the highest search priority. Applications which use the standard fonts can change the search order so that the standard fonts become a higher search priority than system fonts.

### SetFontSelMode

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFontSelMode(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TFontSelMode Mode) // Font selection mode

typedef enum
{
    smFamilyName      = 0,
    smPostScriptName = 1
}TFontSelMode;
```

The function changes the font selection mode. If the font selection mode is set to `smPostScriptName`, the postscript name of a font must be used to select the font with [SetFont\(\)](#). The selection mode can be changed at runtime whenever necessary.

Default value = `smFamilyName`

## SetFontWeight

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetFontWeight(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 Weight)       // Font weight
```

The font weight specifies the thickness or boldness of a font. Not all fonts are available in a bold style; such a font style can then be emulated only. The property *FontWeight* specifies the weight that should be emulated. The visual weight of a font depends on the base weight in that the font was defined. For example, the glyphs of an ultra-light font look also light if an extrabold weight will be emulated.

However, a bold font will never be emulated if the font is already available in a bold style. To disable the emulation of bold fonts set the property to 100 or 0.

### Font weights:

- 100 - 300 // Ultra-light, Light
- 400 - 500 // Standard
- 600 - 1000 // Bold, Extrabold

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetGStateFlags

Syntax:

```
void pdfSetGStateFlags(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    TGStateFlags Flags,  // See description
    LBOOL Reset)         // See below

typedef UI32 TGStateFlags;
#define gfCompatible      0 // Default
#define gfRestorePageCoords 1 // see below
#define gfRealTopDownCoords 2 // see below
#define gfNativeBlackWhite 4 // Do not convert RGB b/w to gray
#define gfUseImageColorSpace 8 // Use the image color space
#define gfIgnoreICCProfiles 16 // see description below
```

The function sets optional flags affecting the graphics state, coordinate handling, as well as color conversion rules. If the parameter *Reset* is true, the new flags replace existing flags. If set to false, the flags are combined with the existing flags.

Flag	Description
gfCompatible	The graphics state is fully compatible to earlier versions of DynaPDF.
gfRestorePageCoords	If set, the current base coordinate system like bottom or top down is saved and restored with the graphics state.
gfRealTopDownCoords	This flag is reserved for future extensions. It is not implemented yet.
gfNativeBlackWhite	If set, RGB black or white is not converted to DeviceGray. This flag affects text and vector graphics but no images.
gfUseImageColorSpace	If set, the active color space is ignored when inserting an image. The color space is taken from the image file instead. See also " <a href="#">Color spaces and Images</a> ".
gfIgnoreICCProfiles	If set, embedded ICC profiles in image files are ignored when inserting an image. The image is inserted in the base color space instead. This flag is not meaningful if the flag gfUseImageColorSpace is absent. See also " <a href="#">Color spaces and Images</a> ".

## SetIconColor

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetIconColor(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 Color)       // RGB color value
```

The icon color is used for the closed state of a text annotation. The annotation appears then as an icon. The color value must be defined in RGB color space.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

Default value = 0x0099FFFF

## SetImportFlags

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetImportFlags(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TImportFlags Flags) // see below

typedef UI32 TImportFlags;
#define ifImportAll          0x0FFFFFFF // Default
#define ifContentOnly       0x00000000 // No interactive objects
#define ifNoContent         0x00000001 // Interactive objects only
#define ifImportAsPage      0x80000000 // No conversion to templates
#define ifCatalogAction     0x00000002 // Open action, Catalog actions
#define ifPageActions       0x00000004 // Page actions
#define ifBookmarks         0x00000008 // Bookmarks
#define ifArticles          0x00000010 // Articles
#define ifPageLabels        0x00000020 // Page labels
#define ifThumbs            0x00000040 // Thumbnails
#define ifTranspGroups      0x00000080 // Transparency groups
#define ifSeparationInfo    0x00000100 // Separation info
#define ifBoxColorInfo      0x00000200 // Box color info
#define ifStructureTree     0x00000400 // Structure tree (can be large)
#define ifTransition        0x00000800 // Presentation settings
#define ifSearchIndex       0x00001000 // External search index
#define ifJavaScript        0x00002000 // Global JavaScripts
#define ifJSActions         0x00004000 // JavaScript actions
#define ifDocInfo           0x00008000 // Document info entries
#define ifEmbeddedFiles     0x00020000 // File attachments
#define ifFileCollections   0x00040000 // File collections (PDF 1.7)
#define ifAllAnnots         0x0009F000 // All annotations
    #define ifFreeText       0x00010000 // FreeText annotations
    #define ifTextAnnot      0x00020000 // Text annotations
    #define ifLink           0x00040000 // Link annotations
```

```

#define ifStamp          0x00080000 // Stamp annotations
#define if3DAnnot        0x00100000 // 3D annotations
#define ifOtherAnnots    0x00800000 // Other annotations
#define ifFormFields     0x01000000 // Interactive form fields

/* ----- Special flags ----- */
#define ifPrepareForPDF  0x10000000 // See description
#define ifEnumFonts      0x20000000 // Import fonts for EnumDocFonts()
#define ifAllPageObjects 0x40000000 // Import links with ImportPageEx()

```

The function sets optional flags to control the import of external PDF files. The flags are ignored by the function [ImportPage\(\)](#). [ImportPageEx\(\)](#) ignores the flags too if the page is imported outside of an open page (see [ImportPageEx\(\)](#) for further information). The flags are defined as a bit-mask; multiple flags can be combined by using a bitwise or operator.

A second set of flags can be set with [SetImportFlags2\(\)](#).

This function cannot fail; the return value is always 1.

Flag	Description
<code>ifImportAll</code>	If set, all objects of an external PDF file are imported.
<code>ifContentOnly</code>	If set, interactive objects such as annotations, bookmarks or form fields are excluded from import.
<code>ifNoContent</code>	If set, the visual contents of external pages will not be imported. This flag can be used to copy interactive objects from one file into another, such as interactive form fields.
<code>ifImportAsPage</code>	If set, pages are not converted to templates. This flag is useful if an imported page must not be used multiple times. Conversion to templates is recommended if multiple imported pages should appear on the same page; such overlapping pages can cause resource conflicts which produces unpredictable output.
<code>ifCatalogAction</code>	If set, catalog actions will be imported if any. The documents catalog is the root object of a PDF file, which can trigger actions when the file will be opened, closed, or printed. See <a href="#">AddActionToObj()</a> for further information.
<code>ifPageActions</code>	If set, page actions are imported if any. A page action is an action that was added to the page itself, not an object of a page.
<code>ifBookmarks</code>	If set, bookmarks are imported if any.

Flag	Description
ifArticles	If set, Articles are imported if any.
ifPageLabels	If set, page labels are imported if any. If multiple files are imported, DynaPDF imports the page labels of the first file only.
ifThumbs	If set, thumb nail images are imported if any. Thumb nails can be dynamically created by Acrobat since Acrobat 5. The thumb nail images can be removed to reduce disk space.
ifTranspGroups	If set, transparency groups are imported if any. If transparency groups are removed the objects appear then opaque.
ifSeparationInfo	If set, the separation information dictionary will be imported if any.
ifBoxColorInfo	If set, the bounding boxes artbox, bleedbox and trimbox are shown in user defined color. Note that the cropbox represents the current page; the page is already cropped if a cropbox was defined.
ifStructureTree	If set, structure trees are imported if any. A structure tree contains information about the logical structure of a document. This information can be used by screen readers and other accessibility plug-ins to enable certain features. The information of a structure tree is not required to view or print a PDF document.
ifTransition	If set, transition settings are import. A transition dictionary contains information about how a presentation should be displayed. These settings can be removed if the document should not be used in presentation mode.
ifSearchIndex	If set, the file path to an external search index will be imported if any.
ifJavaScript	If set, global JavaScripts are imported if any. Note that JavaScript actions can use the functions defined in global JavaScripts. If these scripts are removed, JavaScript actions must normally also removed to avoid errors. However, it is often useful to remove the scripts for certain debug operations.

Flag	Description
<code>ifJSActions</code>	If set, JavaScript actions are imported if any. This flag is useful if an imported form contains JavaScripts which produces errors or warnings. For instance, a document can define certain scripts which may require specific settings such as a document info string and so on. It is then often difficult to determine which object produces the error or warning because it can be a JavaScript action or a global JavaScript. In such cases, JavaScript actions can be excluded temporarily to check whether the error still occurs.
<code>ifDocInfo</code>	If set, document info entries are imported if any. Already existing entries are not overridden.
<code>ifEmbeddedFiles</code>	If set, embedded files are imported.
<code>ifFileCollections</code>	If set, the global definition of a collection is imported. The file attachments are still imported if the flag <code>ifEmbeddedFiles</code> is set. The PDF file is simply not longer marked as portable collection, also known as PDF Package. See also <a href="#">CreateCollection()</a> .
<code>ifAllAnnots</code>	If set, all types of annotations are imported.
<code>ifFreeText</code>	This flag is meaningful only if the flag <code>ifAllAnnots</code> is clear. If set, FreeText annotations are imported if any.
<code>ifTextAnnot</code>	This flag is meaningful only if the flag <code>ifAllAnnots</code> is clear. If set, text annotations are imported if any.
<code>ifLink</code>	This flag is meaningful only if the flag <code>ifAllAnnots</code> is clear. If set, link annotations are imported if any. This annotation type is used for weblinks, page links, and file links.
<code>ifStamp</code>	This flag is meaningful only if the flag <code>ifAllAnnots</code> is clear. If set, stamp annotations are imported if any.
<code>if3DAnnot</code>	This flag is meaningful only if the flag <code>ifAllAnnots</code> is clear. If set, 3D annotations are imported if any.
<code>ifOtherAnnots</code>	This flag is meaningful only if the flag <code>ifAllAnnots</code> is clear. If set, other annotation types as the ones listed above are imported if any.



Flag	Description
<code>ifFormFields</code>	If set, interactive form fields are imported if any (also called <code>AcroForm</code> ). Form fields are also annotations, but this type is handled separately.
<code>ifPrepareForPDFA</code>	If set, LZW compressed streams are recompressed with Flate, the Interpolate key of images is deleted if set, embedded files are not imported.
<code>ifEnumFonts</code>	If set, only font objects are imported to enable high performance enumeration of the fonts used in a PDF file. The PDF file must be deleted with <code>FreePDF()</code> after the fonts were enumerated. See <code>EnumDocFonts()</code> for further information.
<code>ifAllPageObjects</code>	If set, all types of link annotations are imported when importing a page within an open page with <code>ImportPageEx()</code> . The entire document should be imported in this case.

## SetImportFlags2

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetImportFlags2(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    TImportFlags2 Flags) // See below

typedef UI32 TImportFlags2;
#define if2MergeLayers 0x00000001 // See description
```

The function sets optional flags to control the import of external PDF files. The flags are ignored by the function `ImportPage()`. `ImportPageEx()` ignores the flags too if the page is imported outside of an open page (see `ImportPageEx()` for further information). The flags are defined as a bit-mask; multiple flags can be combined by using a bitwise or operator.

This function cannot fail; the return value is always 1.

Flag	Description
<code>if2MergeLayers</code>	<p>If set, layers of different PDF files with the same name will be merged. In this case, a layer with a specific name can control the visibility of multiple layers which were imported from different PDF files.</p> <p>If the flag is absent (default), layers from different PDF files are separated in the layer hierarchy. Multiple layers with the same name can exist in this case but each layer controls still the visibility of the objects with which they were originally connected.</p>
<code>if2Normalize</code>	This flag must be set if the file should be normalized with <code>CheckConformance()</code> .

## ***SetItalicAngle***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetItalicAngle(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double Angle)      // Angle alpha in degrees
```

The property *ItalicAngle* is used to emulate an italic font if the font is not available in an italic style. To avoid emulation set the angle to zero.

The italic angle must not be smaller than -30 degrees and not larger than 30 degrees.

Default value = 14.0

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetJPEGQuality***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetJPEGQuality(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Value)        // Quality in percent (0..100 or 0..1000)
```

The function sets the quality of JPEG compressed images in percent if JPEG compression is used. Lower values cause higher compression rates, however, worse image quality.

The function accepts also negative values. A negative value indicates that the pass-through mode for JPEG images should be disabled. Note that JPEG images are always recompressed if the pass-through mode is disabled.

If the JPEG2000 compression filter is used the value represents a divisor of the uncompressed image size to the wished compressed image size. The possible range is 0 to 1000. If the value is 0 or 1000 the loss-less variant of JPEG compression is used (see also [InsertImage\(\)](#)). Lower values cause higher compression rates, however, worse image quality.

Default value = 70

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetLanguage

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetLanguage(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const char* ISOTag) // Language identifier see below
```

The property specifies the language of the document. The document's language should always be set when creating Tagged PDF files or Interactive Forms. The spell check feature in Adobe's Acrobat depends on the properly defined document language.

### Language Identifiers

The value of the language property is a string that specifies the language with a language identifier having the syntax, defined in *Internet RFC 3066, Tags for the Identification of Languages*.

This syntax, which is summarized below, is also used to identify languages in XML, according to the World Wide Web Consortium document *Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.0*.

Language identifiers can be based on codes defined by the International Organization for Standardization in ISO 639 and ISO 3166 or registered with the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA, whose Web site is located at <http://www.iana.org>), or they can include codes created for private use. A language identifier consists of a primary code optionally followed by one or more sub codes (each preceded by a hyphen). The primary code can be any of the following:

- A 2-character ISO 639 language code - for example, *en* for English or *es* for Spanish.
- The letter i, designating an IANA-registered identifier
- The letter x for private use

The first sub code can be a 2-character ISO 3166 country code, as in *en-US*, or a 3- to 8-character sub code registered with IANA, as in *en-cockney* or *i-cherokee* (except in private identifiers, for which sub codes are not registered). Sub codes beyond the first can be any that have been registered at IANA.

Language identifiers are treated case-sensitive.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetLeading

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetLeading(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    double Value)        // New leading or 0
```

The function sets the leading that is used by the functions [AddContinueText\(\)](#) and [WriteFText\(\)](#) to calculate the distance between two text lines. The default leading in PDF is the font size. A value of 0 determines that the font size should be used as leading, this is the default behaviour.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetLicenseKey

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetLicenseKey(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const char* Value)    // License key as string
```

Use this function to enter your license key. If the value represents a correct license key the demo string does not longer appear on PDF pages. Once a correct key was set, it will be active until the library is unloaded or the current PDF instance is deleted. Note that the key must be entered for each PDF instance or process of a multi-threading application separately.

To determine whether a specific function is available in DynaPDF Lite, pass the string "Lite" to the function; all functions which are disabled in DynaPDF Lite return then with an error.

The function returns always true, independently whether the key was correct. This behaviour is used to avoid a brute force attack. Create a document and open it in a PDF viewer application to check whether the key was successfully entered.

### Notice:




The license key must **not** be stored in the registry or other files in an unencrypted form.

## SetLineCapStyle

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetLineCapStyle(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    TLineCapStyle Style) // see below  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    csButtCap    = 0,  
    csRoundCap   = 1,  
    csSquareCap  = 2  
}TLineCapStyle;
```

The function sets the line cap style that specifies how the endpoint of a line will be drawn. The property must be applied inside an open page, template, or pattern.

Style	Appearance	Description
csButtCap		The stroke is squared off at the endpoint of the path. There is no projection beyond the end of the path.
csRoundCap		A semicircular arc with a diameter equal to the line width is drawn around the endpoint and filled in.
csSquareCap		The stroke continues beyond the endpoint of the path for a distance equal to half the line width and is then squared off.

Default value = csButtCap

### Return values:







If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetLineDashPattern

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetLineDashPattern(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    const char* Dash,  // Dash array defined as string
    SI32 Phase)        // The pattern's phase
```

The line dash pattern controls the pattern of dashes and gaps used to stroke paths. It is specified by a dash array and a dash phase. The dash array's elements are numbers that specify the lengths of alternating dashes and gaps; the dash phase specifies the distance into the dash pattern at which to start the dash. The elements of both the dash array and the dash phase are expressed in user space units. Before beginning to stroke a path, the dash array is cycled through, adding up the lengths of dashes and gaps. When the accumulated length equals the value specified by the dash phase, stroking of the path begins, using the dash array cyclically from that point onward. The table shows examples of line dash patterns. As can be seen from the table, an empty dash array and zero phase can be used to restore the dash pattern to a solid line (you can also use [ResetLineDashPattern\(\)](#)).

Dash & Phase	Appearance	Description
(NULL, 0)		No dash; solid, unbroken lines
("3", 0)		3 units on, 3 units off...
("2", 1)		1 on, 2 off, 2 on, 2 off, ...
("2 1", 0)		2 on, 1 off, 2 on, 1 off, ...
("3 5", 6)		2 off, 3 on, 5 off, 3 on, 5 off, ...
("2 3", 11)		1 on, 3 off, 2 on, 3 off, 2 on, ...

Dashed lines wrap around curves and corners just as solid stroked lines do. The ends of each dash are treated with the current line cap style, and corners within dashes are treated with the current line join style. A stroking operation takes no measures to coordinate the dash pattern with features of the path; it simply dispenses dashes and gaps along the path in the pattern defined by the dash array. When a path consisting of several sub paths is stroked, each sub path is treated independently - that is, the dash pattern is restarted and the dash phase is reapplied to it at the beginning of each sub path.

### How to create a dotted line?

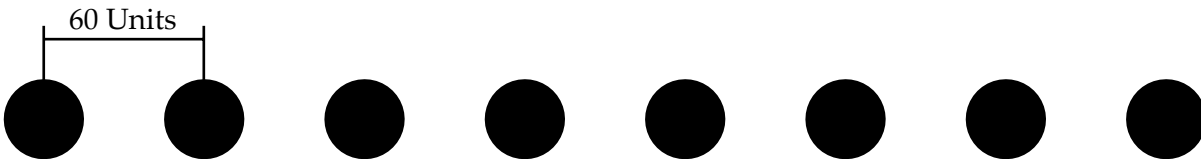
As described above, a line dash pattern is drawn by applying the current line cap style and join style. A round cap is painted as semicircular arc with a diameter equal to the line width. If we set the length of the first on-state to 0 then we get a circle, or dot. The second number of the dash array specifies the length of the off-state measured from the centers of our circles.

It is quite easy to draw the line now:

```
...
pdfSetLineWidth(pdf, 30);
```

```
pdfSetLineCapStyle(pdf, csRoundCap);
pdfSetLineDashPattern(pdf, "0 60", 0);
pdfMoveTo(pdf, 50, 50);
pdfLineTo(pdf, 550, 50);
pdfStrokePath(pdf);
...
```

Output:



#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### ***SetLineDashPatternEx***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetLineDashPatternEx(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const double* Dash,    // Array of doubles representing the pattern
    UI32 NumValues,        // Array length
    SI32 Phase)            // Dash phase
```

The function sets a line dash pattern in the same way as [SetLineDashPattern\(\)](#). However, this version accepts an array of doubles instead of a string value. See [SetLineDashPattern\(\)](#) for further information.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.




### ***SetLineJoinStyle***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetLineJoinStyle(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    TLineJoinStyle Style) // see below

typedef enum
{
    jsMiterJoin = 0,
    jsRoundJoin = 1,
    jsBevelJoin = 2
}TLineJoinStyle;
```

The function sets the line join style which specifies how two line segments are connected. The property must be applied inside an open page, template or pattern.

Style	Appearance	Description
<code>csMiterJoin</code>		The outer edges of the strokes for the two segments are extended until they meet at an angle, as in a picture frame. If the segments meet at too sharp an angle (as defined by the miter limit parameter — see <a href="#">SetMiterLimit()</a> ), a bevel join is used instead.
<code>csRoundJoin</code>		An arc of a circle with a diameter equal to the line width is drawn around the point where the two segments meet, connecting the outer edges of the strokes for the two segments. This pie slice-shaped figure is filled in, producing a rounded corner.
<code>csBevelJoin</code>		The two segments are finished with butt caps (see <a href="#">SetLineCapStyle()</a> ) and the resulting notch beyond the ends of the segments is filled with a triangle.

Default value = `jsMiterJoin`

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetLineWidth

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetLineWidth(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double Value)      // Line width
```

The function sets the line width used to stroke paths. The line width is also used to specify the thickness of the border of annotations and interactive form fields. In the latter case, the line width should be a multiple of one (or zero) and not exceed 3 units. Larger values are still correctly rendered by Adobe's Acrobat but the appearance can be changed when a [Reset Form Action](#) is executed or when other changes are made to the document.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.



## ***SetLinkHighlightMode***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetLinkHighlightMode(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    THighlightMode Mode) // see below  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    hmNone,    // Default  
    hmInvert,  // Invert the contents of the annotation's bounding box  
    hmOutline, // Invert the annotations border  
    hmPush,    // Simulate a push button effect  
    hmPushUpd  // Update the appearance stream on changes  
}THighlightMode;
```

The function sets the highlight mode that is used by link annotations. The highlight mode applies a visual effect when moving the mouse over a link annotation.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetListFont***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetListFont(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle)      // Font handle
```

The function marks an arbitrary font as list font. The font is used in [WriteFText\(\)](#) when a list operator was found. The symbol to be used as list symbol can be set with the list operator. See [WriteFText\(\)](#) for further information. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid font handle that was returned by [SetFont\(\)](#), [SetFontEx\(\)](#), or [LoadFont\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetMatrix***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetMatrix(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    struct TCTM* Matrix) // Transformation matrix  
  
struct TCTM  
{  
    double a;  
    double b;  
    double c;  
    double d;  
    double x;  
    double y;  
};
```

The function left multiplies the current transformation matrix with the new one. The transformation matrix is part of the graphics state. When changing the coordinate system it is usually best to save the graphics state beforehand with [SaveGraphicState\(\)](#). This makes it possible to restore the coordinate system with [RestoreGraphicState\(\)](#).

### **Notice:**

The native coordinate system in PDF is bottom up. Changing the base coordinate system with [SetPageCoords\(\)](#) to top down results in a mirrored coordinate system that is applied with the current transformation matrix. DynaPDF makes sure that text functions and so on produce correct results in the mirrored coordinate system.

However, when multiplying a new matrix with the already changed transformation matrix DynaPDF must set the base coordinate system back to bottom up after multiplying the matrices. This is required because multiplying the transformation matrix again with another one would otherwise produce incorrect results.

Matrix multiplications and every other transformation of the coordinate system should always be applied in bottom up coordinates. It is the only way to avoid side effects when changing the coordinate system arbitrary often.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetMaxFieldLen

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetMaxFieldLen(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    UI32 TxtField,    // Text field handle
    SI32 MaxLen)      // Maximum string length or zero if not restricted
```

The function changes the maximum count of characters which can be entered into a text field. A value of zero determines that the string length should not be restricted.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetMetaConvFlags

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetMetaConvFlags(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TMetaFlags Flags) // see below
```

```
typedef UI32 TMetaFlags;
#define mfDefault          0x00000000 // No flags
#define mfDebug            0x00000001 // Insert debug comments
#define mfShowBounds       0x00000002 // Show the bounding boxes of text
#define mfNoTextScaling    0x00000004 // Do not scale text records
#define mfClipView         0x00000008 // Clip the output rectangle
#define mfUseRclBounds     0x00000010 // Use the raw bounding box rclBounds
#define mfNoClippingRgn    0x00000040 // Ignore clipping regions
#define mfNoFontEmbedding  0x00000080 // Don't embed fonts used by the EMF
#define mfNoImages         0x00000100 // Ignore image records
#define mfNoStdPatterns    0x00000200 // Ignore standard hatch patterns
#define mfNoBmpPatterns    0x00000400 // Ignore bitmap patterns
#define mfNoText           0x00000800 // Ignore text records
#define mfUseUnicode       0x00010000 // Use always Unicode to print text
#define mfUseTextScaling   0x00040000 // Scale text (see description)
#define mfNoUnicode        0x00080000 // Avoid the usage of Unicode fonts
#define mfFullScale        0x00100000 // Scale coordinates to Windows size
#define mfUseRclFrame       0x00200000 // See description
#define mfDefBkModeTransp  0x00400000 // Initial backg. mode is transparent
#define mfApplyBidiAlgo    0x00800000 // Apply the bidirectional algorithm
#define mfGDIFontSelection 0x01000000 // Use the GDI to select fonts
#define mfRclFrameEx       0x02000000 // See description
#define mfSrcCopy_Only     0x08000000 // See description
#define mfClipRclBounds    0x10000000 // See description
#define mfDisableRasterEMF 0x20000000 // Disable the EMF rasterizer

// Obsolete flags -> These flags are ignored, do not longer use them!
#define mfUseSpacingArray  0x0020 // Enabled by default
#define mfIntersectClipRect 0x2000 // Enabled by default
```

The function sets specific flags to control the conversion of metafiles. The flags are described in detail on the next page. This function cannot fail the return value is always 1.

Flag	Description
mfDefault	This is the default behaviour. No specific parameters are used for metafile conversion.
mfDebug	If set, the EMF record names are printed to the content stream which produces a specific output. Open the PDF file in a good text editor such as Textpad to view the output. The PDF file must not be compressed if this flag is used, otherwise you can't see the debug strings. Compression can be disabled with the function <a href="#">SetCompressionLevel()</a> .
mfShowBounds	If set, the bounding boxes of text strings are shown by inserting a stroked rectangle. Use this flag if text strings appear misplaced.
mfNoTextScaling	If set, text strings are not scaled and no kerning space will be applied. EMF files contain sometimes an invalid spacing array especially when the original string was substituted from an Arabic code page. In such cases, characters do overlap. To avoid this effect disable the usage of the intercharacter spacing array; all strings are then printed without scaling or kerning space.
mfClipView	If set, the metafile is drawn into a clipping rectangle in the size of the metafile or currently defined view. This flag should always be set if a user defined view is used. See <a href="#">InsertMetafileExt()</a> for further information.
mfUseRclBounds	If set, the value of rclFrame is not used to calculate the size and position of the EMF file. rclFrame is a member of the EMF's header that specifies the logical output size in 0.01 millimetres. However, this rectangle is changed if the file will be rendered onto a monitor DC or printer DC. To get consistent output results the output frame can be ignored. The graphic must then be placed manually onto the output page because the rectangle rclBounds represents the visible extent of the picture only (the graphic is drawn without a border).

Flag	Description
<code>mfNoClippingRgn</code>	If set, clipping regions will be ignored.
<code>mfNoFontEmbedding</code>	If set, fonts used by an EMF file are not embedded.
<code>mfNoImages</code>	If set, image records are ignored.
<code>mfNoStdPatterns</code>	If set, standard hatch patterns are not applied.
<code>mfNoBmpPatterns</code>	If set, bitmap patterns are ignored.
<code>mfNoText</code>	If set, text records are ignored.
<code>mfUseUnicode</code>	If set, the character set within <code>CreateFont()</code> records will be ignored and all strings are printed in Unicode mode (EMF files contain Unicode strings only). This flag can be used to avoid the conversion of strings to the ANSI character set if <code>ANSI_CHARSET</code> was used in the <code>CreateFont()</code> record. The character set is often wrongly defined in EMF files so that characters outside of the <code>ANSI_CHARSET</code> are replaced by question marks due to the default conversion to ANSI if the character set <code>ANSI_CHARSET</code> is used.
<code>mfUseTextScaling</code>	If set, strings are scaled instead of applying kerning space to get the correct string width. Text scaling produces often better results due to limited precision of the integer values of the intercharacter spacing array. However, text scaling cannot always be used because characters can be placed individually on the x-axis by applying kerning space. In the latter case, strings can overlap or single characters appear on a wrong x-coordinate; do not set this flag in this case.
<code>mfNoUnicode</code>	If set, all strings are converted to the code page 1252 and no Unicode font will be embedded in the PDF file during EMF conversion. This flag should be set if PDF-1.2 compatibility is recommended because PDF-1.2 does not support Unicode fonts. However, note that you get invalid results if the EMF file contains characters outside the code page 1252.
<code>mfFullScale</code>	If set, all coordinates are scaled to the output window size. Set this flag if the EMF file uses 32 bit coordinates, e.g. large CAD drawings. Full scaling avoids floating point overflows in PDF viewer applications because all coordinate transformations are already applied. The resulting file size is also smaller due to the smaller coordinate values which must be stored in the PDF file.

Flag	Description
mfUseRclFrame	If set, the rectangle rclFrame of the EMF header is used to calculate the picture size. This flag is primarily used to convert EMF files which were originally created from non-portable WMF files. Set this flag if the EMF picture appears wrongly scaled.
mfDefBkModeTransp	If set, the initial background mode is set to transparent. SetBkMode records still override this state. The default background mode is opaque in the GDI. This state causes that a rectangle is printed in background of any text string, also if the rectangle is not required. Especially if text strings are printed as single characters the opaque background can drastically increase the resulting file size due to the many rectangles. This flag should always be set if the EMF or WMF files do not initialize the background mode to the required value.
mfApplyBidiAlgo	If set, the bidirectional algorithm is applied on Unicode strings. This flag must be set to process Hebrew text correctly.
mfGDIFontSelection	If set, DynaPDF uses a GDI device context to select fonts. This flag can be set to make sure that DynaPDF selects exactly the fonts which the GDI uses to render to EMF file.
mfRclFrameEx	<p>If set, and if the rclBounds rectangle is larger than rclFrame, <a href="#">InsertMetafile()</a> extends the output rectangle according to rclBounds and uses the resulting bounding box to calculate the image size (rclBounds represents the unscaled image size).</p> <p>This is probably the correct way to calculate the image size. However, to preserve backward compatibility the default calculation cannot be changed.</p>
mfSrcCopy_Only	If set, the ETO_CLIPPED flag in text records is ignored.
mfClipRclBounds	If set, images which use a ROP code other than SRCCOPY are ignored. This can be useful when processing Excel 2007 spool files.
mfDisableRasterEMF	If set, EMF files are no longer rastered to an image if the file uses ROP codes which combine background and foreground colors. However, many EMF files use such ROP codes but it is often not required to raster the EMF file because ROP codes which combines background and foreground colors have no effect if no other object was drawn in background of the object that uses the ROP codes.

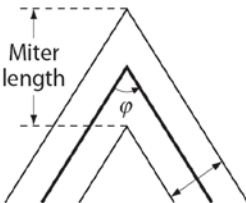
## SetMiterLimit

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetMiterLimit(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double Value)      // New miter limit
```

When two line segments meet at a sharp angle and mitered joins have been specified as the line join style (see [SetLineJoinStyle\(\)](#)), it is possible for the miter to extend far beyond the thickness of the line stroking the path. The miter limit imposes a maximum on the ratio of the miter length to the line width (see Figure below). When the limit is exceeded, the join is converted from a miter to a bevel.

The ratio of miter length to line width is directly related to the angle  $\phi$  between the segments in user space by the formula:

$$\frac{\text{miterLength}}{\text{lineWidth}} = \frac{1}{\sin(\phi/2)}$$


For example, a miter limit of 1.414 convert miters to bevels for  $\phi$  less than 90 degrees, a limit of 2.0 converts them for  $\phi$  less than 60 degrees, and a limit of 10.0 converts them for  $\phi$  less than approximately 11.5 degrees.

Default value = 10.0

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetNeedAppearance

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetNeedAppearance(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    LBOOL Value)      // Value -> true or false
```

The global NeedAppearance flag of an Interactive Form defines whether the viewer should create the field appearances on demand when opening the file or whether the existing definitions should be taken from the PDF file. DynaPDF creates always appearance streams for all field types. However, in certain cases it can be useful to let the viewer render fields with their own algorithms because the exact way how Adobe's Acrobat builds the field appearances is not documented.

For example, when editing the contents of a text field in Adobe's Acrobat the viewer rebuilds first the field appearance before placing the editing cursor into the field. The new appearance created from Adobe's Acrobat can be slightly different in comparison to the one that was created by DynaPDF. The visible contents, especially of text fields, is sometimes not absolutely stable.

If the NeedAppearance flag is set, the viewer uses already its own algorithms to build the field appearances when opening the file. This avoids visible changes when editing a field. However, the NeedAppearance flag must not be set to true if a form contains page templates.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetNumberFormat

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetNumberFormat(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    UI32 TxtField,              // Text field handle
    TDecSeparator Sep,          // Decimal separator
    UI32 DecPlaces,             // Number of decimal places
    TNegativeStyle NegStyle,    // Negative number format
    const char* CurrStr,        // Currency string or NULL
    LBOOL Prepend)              // Position of Currency string

// Thousand separator, decimal separator
typedef enum
{
    dsCommaDot,
    dsNoneDot,
    dsDotComma,
    dsNoneComma
} TDecSeparator;

typedef enum
{
    nsMinusBlack,
    nsRed,
    nsParensBlack,
    nsParensRed
} TNegativeStyle;
```

The function restricts the allowed input characters of a text field to numbers and formats the resulting string as specified. A number format is represented as two separate JavaScript Actions in PDF which are automatically created and added to the text field by this function.

The same formats can also be applied manually by creating two JavaScript actions: one for the OnKeyStroke event, and one for OnFormat event of the text field. See [AddActionToObj\(\)](#) for a description of the events.

DynaPDF uses the JavaScript functions *AFDate\_Keystroke()* / *AFDate\_KeystrokeEx()* or *AFDate\_Format()* / *AFDate\_FormatEx()* to apply a number or date format. The functions are described in the JavaScript scripting reference which is available at <http://www.adobe.com>.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.



## SetOnErrorProc

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetOnErrorProc(    // C/C++, Delphi only
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    const void* Data,      // User defined pointer or NULL
    const void* ErrProc)   // Callback function, see below

typedef SI32 PDF_CALL TErrorProc(
    const void* Data,      // User defined pointer
    SI32 ErrCode,          // Error code starting at zero
    const char* ErrorMessage, // Null-terminated error string
    SI32 ErrType);         // Error types, see below

#define PDF_CALL __stdcall // Windows only, otherwise empty
```

The function sets an error callback function which is called by DynaPDF to output error messages and warnings. The parameter *Data* holds a user defined pointer which is passed unchanged to the callback function. If this pointer is not required set it to NULL.

The calling convention of the callback function is standard call under Windows. Note that a wrongly defined calling convention causes an access violation.

The Visual Basic and VB .Net interfaces use events instead of a callback function, see [Language Binding Visual Basic](#) or VB .Net for further information).

*ErrCode* is a positive error number starting at zero; it is an index into the array of error messages. The error messages are defined in the file `main/drv_base_err_msg.h` (this file is included in DynaPDF Enterprise only). *ErrType* is a bitmask to determine what kind of error occurred. The following constants are defined:

```
#define E_WARNING          0x02000000
#define E_SYNTAX_ERROR    0x04000000
#define E_VALUE_ERROR     0x08000000
#define E_FONT_ERROR      0x10000000
#define E_FATAL_ERROR     0x20000000
#define E_FILE_ERROR      0x40000000
```

At time of publication only one flag is set at any one time. Future versions may be set multiple flags, e.g. `E_SYNTAX_ERROR` and `E_WARNING`. Because of this, it is recommended to mask out the error type with a bitwise and operator.

If the callback function returns a value other than zero (0), processing stops immediately.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetOnPageBreakProc

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetOnPageBreakProc( // C/C++, Delphi only
    const void* IPDF,       // Instance pointer
    const void* Data,       // User defined pointer or NULL
    const void* OnBreakProc) // Callback function, see below

#define PDF_CALL __stdcall // Windows only, otherwise empty

typedef SI32 PDF_CALL TOnPageBreakProc(
    const void* Data,       // User defined pointer
    double LastPosX,       // Last x-coordinate of the string
    double LastPosY,       // Last y-coordinate of the string
    LBOOL PageBreak);      // True, if a manual page break occurred
```

The function sets a callback function which is called by [WriteFText\(\)](#) when a page break occurred. The parameter *Data* holds a user defined pointer which is passed unchanged to the callback function. If this pointer is not required set it to NULL. The calling convention of the callback function is standard call under Windows.

The Visual Basic and VB .Net interfaces use events instead of a callback function, see [Language Binding Visual Basic](#) or VB .Net for further information). The OnPageBreakProc event must be connected manually in these interfaces to avoid different runtime behaviour of the function [WriteFText\(\)](#). To enable the event call the function [ConnectPageBreakEvent\(\)](#) in VB or VB .Net.

The parameter *PageBreak* of the callback function specifies why the callback function was called:

- If true, a page break tag in the string was found (see [WriteFText\(\)](#) for further information).
- If false, the output rectangle was filled with text entirely.

The usage of the callback function is described in detail under [WriteFText\(\)](#). However, the following return values of the callback function can be used to change the text alignment:

```
#define NEW_ALIGN_LEFT      1 #define NEW_ALIGN_CENTER  3
#define NEW_ALIGN_RIGHT    2 #define NEW_ALIGN_JUSTIFY  4
```

A return value of zero indicates that the alignment must not be changed. Negative return values break processing immediately. [WriteFText\(\)](#) returns then with a warning.

### Remarks:

When the callback function is called, the coordinate system is always bottom-up, it can be changed to top-down coordinates inside the callback function if necessary. The current page is still open, the page must be closed with [EndPage\(\)](#) before a new page can be added or opened with [Append\(\)](#) or [EditPage\(\)](#). To determine the current page number, call [GetPageNum\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetOpacity

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetOpacity(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double Value)      // 1.0 = opaque, 0.0 = invisible
```

The function sets the opacity value which is used to render the appearance of a text annotation. The parameter *Value* must be in the range 0.0 to 1.0. If *Value* is zero the annotation is invisible, if *Value* is 1.0, the annotation is completely opaque.

At time of publication the opacity property is used for text annotations only. Later versions of DynaPDF use this property may be for other PDF objects too.

Default value = 1.0

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetOrientation

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetOrientation(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 Value)        // Orientation of the page
```

The function sets the orientation of a page. The parameter *Value* must be a multiple of 90 or 0. Positive values rotate the page clockwise, negative counter clockwise.

Note that the page will be rotated entirely incl. all objects. The width and height of the page are left unchanged, including the coordinates. Creating landscape paper formats require further such as changing the coordinate system. This can be done with [SetOrientationEx\(\)](#). Another way to create a landscape paper format is to change the bounding box of the page, see [SetBBox\(\)](#).

Default value = 0 // Portrait

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetOrientationEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetOrientationEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 Value)        // Orientation of the page
```

The function changes the orientation of a page, incl. important page properties such as the width and height, and the coordinate system. The parameter *Value* must be a multiple of 90 or 0. Positive values rotate the page clockwise, negative values counter clockwise.

The zero point of the coordinate system is set to the upper left or down left point depending on the current page coordinate system (top down or bottom up).

When using a landscape paper format the functions [GetPageWidth\(\)](#) and [GetPageHeight\(\)](#) return the logical width and height of the page. While the real paper format is not changed the functions return the paper format as if the page would have a landscape paper format (the width and height are exchanged).

The coordinate system is also changed so that you can work with the page as if it were not rotated. Form fields and annotations are automatically rotated with the page; there is no need to rotate them manually.

Pages which are rotated with this function appear in a viewer application always in the right orientation. Also if the page is rotated, e.g. by 180 degrees the page is shown as if it were not rotated.

**Notice:**

Since landscape or rotated paper formats require a changed coordinate system, care must be taken into account if further coordinate transformations must be applied. DynaPDF makes sure that one transformation can be applied without causing errors, e.g. rotating or translating the coordinate system, but coordinate transformations must not be nested.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetPageCoords

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetPageCoords(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    TPageCoord PageCoords) // see below

typedef enum
{
    pcBottomUp = 0, // Bottom-up coordinates
    pcTopDown  = 1  // Top-down coordinates
}TPageCoord;
```

The native coordinate system of the Portable Document Format is bottom-up. However, DynaPDF supports also top-down coordinates to make the usage of the library easier. Top-down coordinates are then converted to bottom-up coordinates by DynaPDF, the coordinate system in the PDF file will not be changed by this function.

When changing the coordinate system to top-down, the coordinate origin of text (font origin) will also be changed to the top-left corner (see also [SetFontOrigin\(\)](#)). If the coordinate system will be changed to bottom-up, the font origin is also changed to the down-left corner too.

Default value = pcBottomUp

### Remarks:

The property *PageCoords* is a global property which can be changed at any time. When transforming the coordinate system, bottom-up coordinates must be used.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetPageFormat

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetPageFormat(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TPageFormat Value) // see below

typedef enum
{
    pfDIN_A3    = 0,
    pfDIN_A4    = 1,
    pfDIN_A5    = 2,
    pfDIN_B4    = 3,
    pfDIN_B5    = 4,
    pfDIN_B6    = 5,
    pfDIN_C3    = 6,
    pfDIN_C4    = 7,
    pfDIN_C5    = 8,
    pfDIN_C6    = 9,
```

```

pfDIN_C65    = 10,
pfDIN_DL     = 11,
pfDIN_E4     = 12,
pfDIN_E5     = 13,
pfDIN_E6     = 14,
pfDIN_E65    = 15,
pfDIN_M5     = 16,
pfDIN_M65    = 17,
pfUS_Legal   = 18,
pfUS_Letter  = 19
}TPageFormat;

```

The function sets a predefined page or paper format. If an open page can be detected the format of the page will be changed, the new format will also be used for newly created pages. If no open page is detected, the default format for new pages will be set only. This function changes the media box of a page (see [SetBBox\(\)](#) for further information).

### ***Paper formats:***

Format	Size in units (Width, Height)
pfDIN_A3	842.0 x 1191.0
pfDIN_A4	595.0 x 842.0
pfDIN_A5	419.0 x 595.0
pfDIN_B4	709.0 x 1001.0
pfDIN_B5	499.0 x 709.0
pfDIN_B6	354.0 x 499.0
pfDIN_C3	918.0 x 1298.0
pfDIN_C4	649.0 x 918.0
pfDIN_C5	459.0 x 649.0
pfDIN_C6	323.0 x 459.0
pfDIN_C65	323.0 x 649.0
pfDIN_DL	312.0 x 624.0
pfDIN_E4	623.0 x 879.0
pfDIN_E5	439.0 x 624.0
pfDIN_E6	312.0 x 439.0
pfDIN_E65	312.0 x 624.0
pfDIN_M5	439.0 x 632.0
pfDIN_M65	317.0 x 632.0
pfUS_Legal	612.0 x 1008.0
pfUS_Letter	612.0 x 792.0

Default value = pfDIN\_A4

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetPageHeight

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetPageHeight(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double Value)      // New height
```

The function changes the height of the currently open page if any, or the default height for newly created pages. This function changes the media box of a page (see also [SetBBox\(\)](#)). The page height must be greater zero.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetPageLayout

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetPageLayout(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    TPageLayout Layout) // see below  
  
typedef enum  
{  
    plSinglePage      = 0, // Show one page at time  
    plOneColumn       = 1, // Show the pages continous  
    plTwoColumnLeft   = 2, // Two columns, start with left column  
    plTwoColumnRight  = 3, // Two columns, start with right column  
    plTwoPageLeft     = 4, // PDF 1.5  
    plTwoPageRight    = 5, // PDF 1.5  
    plDefault         = 6  // Use viewer's default settings  
}TPageLayout;
```

The function sets the page layout that is used when opening the document with Adobe's Acrobat.

Default value = plOneColumn

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetPageMode

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetPageMode(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TPageMode Mode)   // see below

typedef enum
{
    pmUseNone          = 0, // Default
    pmUseOutlines       = 1, // Show the outline tree
    pmUseThumbs         = 2, // Show the thumb nails
    pmFullScreen        = 3, // Open the document in full-screen mode
    pmUseOC              = 4, // PDF 1.5
    pmUseAttachments   = 5, // PDF 1.6
} TPageMode;
```

The function sets the page mode that is used when opening the document with Adobe's Acrobat.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetPageWidth

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetPageWidth(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double Value)     // New page width
```

The function changes the width of the currently open page if any, or the default width for newly created pages. This function changes the media box of a page (see also [SetBBox\(\)](#)). The page width must be greater zero.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetPDFVersion

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetPDFVersion(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TPDFVersion Version) // Output PDF version

typedef enum
{
    pvPDF_1_0      = 0, // PDF 1.0
    pvPDF_1_1      = 1, // PDF 1.1
    pvPDF_1_2      = 2, // PDF 1.2
    pvPDF_1_3      = 3, // PDF 1.3
    pvPDF_1_4      = 4, // PDF 1.4 -> default
```



```

pvPDF_1_5      = 5,    // PDF 1.5
pvPDF_1_6      = 6,    // PDF 1.6
pvPDF_1_7      = 7,    // PDF 1.7 -> for future use
pvPDF_1_8      = 8,    // PDF 1.8 -> for future use
pvPDF_1_9      = 9,    // PDF 1.9 -> for future use
pvPDFX1a_2001  = 10,   // PDF/X-1a:2001
pvPDFX1a_2003  = 11,   // PDF/X-1a:2003
pvPDFX3_2002   = 12,   // PDF/X-3:2002
pvPDFX3_2003   = 13,   // PDF/X-3:2003
pvPDFA_2005    = 14    // PDF/A-1b
}TPDFVersion;

```

The function changes the output PDF file version. The default output version is PDF 1.4. If a PDF 1.5 or higher file will be opened for import, the output version will be changed if necessary to the version that the file requires.

To improve processing speed, the output version is **not** checked at runtime and no features are disabled which are maybe not supported by the current PDF version.

However, if a PDF file must be compatible to a specific Acrobat version, change the version and open the file in Adobe's Acrobat. If error messages or other warnings appear, the file contains unsupported features. For example, Unicode output is supported since PDF 1.3. If the output version will be changed to PDF 1.2, you will get an error message in Adobe's Acrobat if the file contains CID fonts (Unicode fonts).

If PDF/X or PDF/A compliant PDF files should be created with DynaPDF we recommended using a preflight tool to check whether no unsupported features are contained in the file. The PDF version should be set at the end of processing, directly before [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [CloseFileEx\(\)](#) is called. See also [PDF/X and PDF/X Compatibility](#).

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetPrintSettings

Syntax:

```

LBOOL pdfSetPrintSettings(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    TDuplexMode Mode,           // See below
    SI32 PickTrayByPDFSize,     // 1 = true, 0 = false, -1 = app default
    UI32 NumCopies,              // 0 = app default, max = 5
    TPrintScaling PrintScaling, // See below
    UI32* PrintRanges,          // Optional start/end page number pairs
    UI32 NumRanges)             // Number of ranges

typedef enum
{
    dpmNone, // Default
    dpmSimplex,
    dpmFlipShortEdge,

```

```

    dpmFlipLongEdge
}TDuplexMode;

typedef enum
{
    psAppDefault, // Default
    psNone
}TPrintScaling;

```

The function adds preferred print settings to the PDF file. Viewer applications use the print settings to initialize the print dialog. Print ranges, if set, consist of two numbers which define the start and end page number that should be printed.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetProgressProc

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfSetProgressProc(           // C/C++, Delphi only
    const void* IPDF,             // Instance pointer
    const void* Data,             // User defined pointer
    const void* InitProgress,     // Initialization callback function
    const void* Progress)        // Progress callback function

typedef SI32 TProgType;
#define ptImportPage 0           // Start page import
#define ptWritePage 1           // Start writing a page to file
#define PDF_CALL __stdcall      // Windows only, otherwise empty

typedef void PDF_CALL TInitProgressProc(
    const void* Data,             // User defined pointer
    TProgType ProgType,          // Current process, see above
    SI32 MaxCount);              // The number of callback function calls

typedef SI32 PDF_CALL TProgressProc(
    const void* Data,             // User defined pointer
    SI32 ActivePage);            // Current page number

```

The function sets two callback functions which can be used to control a progress bar. This function is absent in the Visual Basic and VB .Net interfaces because these interfaces use events instead of callback functions.

The parameter *Data* is a user defined pointer which is passed unchanged to the both callback functions.

The parameter *InitProgress* defines the callback function which is called before the progress callback function is called the first time. The parameters of this callback function can be used to initialize a progress bar. The parameter *ProgType* of the initialization callback function defines the current process; this can be either importing a page or writing a page.

Other operations do not call the progress callback functions because most operations are too fast as if they could be used to display the current progress.

The parameter *MaxCount* defines how often the progress callback function will be called.

The callback functions use the calling convention standard call under Windows. It is highly recommended to use the correct calling convention; a wrongly defined calling convention causes an access violation.

To disable the progress callback functions set the parameters *InitProgress* and *Progress* to NULL.

### Return values of the progress callback function:

The return value of the progress callback function must be 0, any other return value breaks processing. In the latter case, all resources are freed and the changes made before are lost.

### Return values (SetProgressProc()):

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetResolution

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetResolution(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Value)        // Image resolution in DPI
```

The function sets the resolution in DPI (Dots per Inch), in which images are stored by DynaPDF. The property will be ignored if the property *SaveNewImageFormat* was set to false. 1 bit images are always stored in the original resolution. The image resolution must be in the range 72 to 2048 DPI.

Default value = 150 (DPI)

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetSaveNewImageFormat

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetSaveNewImageFormat(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    LBOOL Value)       // If true, images are downscaled if necessary
```

The property *SaveNewImageFormat* specifies whether images should be downscaled if the original resolution of the image is higher than the value of the property resolution (see also *SetResolution()*).

If the property *SaveNewImageFormat* is false, JPEG compressed images will be inserted in pass-through mode as long as the image is not a CMYK JPEG (such images must be converted because Acrobat viewer require another byte order).

Default value = `true`

## SetSeparationInfo

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetSeparationInfo(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Handle)       // Separation color space handle
```

The function sets the separation info of the current open page. The parameter *Handle* must be a valid handle of a Separation color space.

### Remarks:

In high-end printing workflows, pages are ultimately produced as sets of separations, one per colorant. Ordinarily, each page in a PDF file is treated as a composite page that paints graphics objects using all the process colorants and perhaps some spot colorants as well. In other words, all separations for a page are generated from a single PDF description of that page.

In some workflows, however, pages are pre-separated before generating the PDF file. In a pre-separated PDF file, the separations for a page are described as separate page objects, each painting only a single colorant (usually specified in the DeviceGray color space). When this is done, additional information is needed to identify the actual colorant associated with each separation and to group together the page objects representing all the separations for a given page. This information is contained in the separation info of each page object.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetStrokeColor

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetStrokeColor(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Color)       // Color value defined in the current color space
```

The function sets the stroke color. The stroke color is also used by text objects if the text rendering mode is dmStroke or dmFillStroke (see [SetTextDrawMode\(\)](#) for further information).

The color value must be defined in the current color space. CMYK colors can be constructed with the macro PDF\_CMYK() or with the function CMYK() which is available in most programming languages. RGB colors can be constructed with the macro PDF\_RGB() or with the function RGB() which is available in most programming languages.

If the color space contains more than 4 color components use [SetStrokeColorEx\(\)](#) instead.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetStrokeColorEx

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetStrokeColorEx(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    const BYTE* Color,    // Color to be set  
    UI32 NumComponents) // Number of components
```

The function sets the stroke color. The color must be defined as an array of bytes in the logical order of the color space. For example, if the color space is DeviceRGB the array must specify the color values of the red, green, and blue components in that order. The number of components must be equal to the one of the corresponding color space.

Lab colors can be defined as signed char as usual. Make a typecast to BYTE\* when passing the color to the function. See [CreateCIEColorSpace\(\)](#) for further information.

**Example (C/C++):**

```
...  
char labColor[3] = {50, -34, 77}; // L, *a, *b  
pdfSetStrokeColorEx(pdf, (BYTE*)labColor, 3);  
...
```

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetStrokeColorSpace

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfSetStrokeColorSpace(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    TPDFColorSpace CS) // Color space
```

The function changes the stroke color space. In PDF, fill and stroke colors use both their own color spaces. Although it is possible to use different color spaces for strokes and fillings it should be avoided if possible. The fill color space is the relevant color space when creating interactive objects such as form field or annotations. See [SetFillColorSpace\(\)](#).

**Notice:**

This function was added to DynaPDF primarily for testing purposes. The color space should be set with [SetColorSpace\(\)](#) which sets always the same color space for fillings and strokes.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***SetTabLen***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetTabLen(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    SI32 TabLen)      // New tabulator length in number of spaces
```

The function sets the tabulator length, specified in number of spaces, which will be used to emulate tabulators during text formatting (see [WriteFText\(\)](#) for further information).

Because tabulators are emulated with spaces they have no fixed width. The width of a tabulator depends on the width of the space character of the active font.

Default value = 3 (min = 1, max = 256)

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetTextDrawMode

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetTextDrawMode(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    TDrawMode Mode)    // see below

typedef enum
{
    dmNormal          = 0, // Default
    dmStroke           = 1, // Stroke the text (outlines only)
    dmFillStroke       = 2, // Fill and stroke the text
    dmInvisible        = 3, // Neither fill nor stroke text (invisible)
    dmFillClip         = 4, // Fill text and add to path for clipping
    dmStrokeClip       = 5, // Stroke text and add to path for clipping
    dmFillStrokeClip   = 6, // Fill & stroke text and add to path for clipping
    dmClipping         = 7  // Add the text to path for clipping
} TDrawMode;
```

The text draw mode specifies how text should be rendered. Texts can be used as clipping paths such as normal vector graphics; however, the usage is not the same. To use a text as clipping path save the graphics state, set the text draw mode to a clipping mode, paint the objects which should be clipped into the path and restore the graphics state.

Note that the functions [BeginClipPath\(\)](#) and [ClipPath\(\)](#) can **not** be used to define a text as clipping path (see the example below).

Default value = dmNormal

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

Draw Mode	Description
dmNormal	Default, render the text in the usual way. The fill color is used as the text's color.
dmStroke	Tread the glyph outlines as path to be stroked. The current line width and stroke color are used to paint the path.
dmFillStroke	Tread the glyph outlines as path to be stroked and filled. The current line width, fill color, and stroke color are used to paint the path.
dmInvisible	Neither fill nor stroke the text, the text is invisible.

Draw Mode	Description
dmFillClip	Tread the glyph outlines as path to be filled and add this path to the current clipping path. The settings of the current line width and fill color are used to paint the path.
dmStrokeClip	Tread the glyph outlines as path to be stroked and add this path to the current clipping path. The settings of the current line width and stroke color are used to paint the path.
dmFillStrokeClip	Tread the glyph outlines as path to be stroked and filled and add this path to the current clipping path. The settings of the current line width, fill color and stroke color are used to paint the path.
dmClipping	Tread the glyph outlines as path and add this path to the current clipping path.

### ***How to use text as clipping path?***

As mentioned earlier the usage of text as clipping path is not the same as a normal clipping path. The following example shows how a text can be used for clipping:

#### **Example (C++):**

```
#include "dynapdf.h"
using namespace DynaPDF;
// First we declare an error callback function.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrorMessage, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrorMessage);
    return 0; // We ignore non-fatal errors
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
    if (!pdf) return 2; // Out of memory?
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, PDFError);
    // The document info entries are changed by the function if set
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diSubject, "Text as clipping path");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diCreator, "C++ example test project");
    pdfSetDocInfo(pdf, diTitle, "Text as clipping path");
    pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);

    pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:/cppout.pdf");

    pdfAppend(pdf);
```



```

pdfSetFont(pdf, "Bookman Old Style", fsBold, 80, true, cp1252);
// We want to draw an axial shading into the clipping path
SI32 sh = pdfCreateAxialShading(pdf, 0, 50, 0, 130, 1, PDF_BLUE,
                                PDF_YELLOW, false, false);
// Do not forget to save the graphics state
pdfSaveGraphicState(pdf);
pdfSetTextDrawMode(pdf, dmClipping); // Use the text as clipping path
pdfWriteText(pdf, 50, 50 - (80 - pdfGetCapHeight()), "Clipping");
pdfApplyShading(pdf, sh);
// Restore the graphics state now to disable the clipping path
pdfRestoreGraphicState(pdf);
EndPage(pdf);

pdfCloseFile(pdf);
pdfDeletePDF(pdf); // Do not forget to delete the PDF instance
return 0;
}

```

Output:



## ***SetTextFieldValue***

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfSetTextFieldValue(
    const void* IPDF,      // Instance pointer
    UI32 Field,            // Text field handle
    const char* Value,      // Field's value or NULL
    const char* DefValue,  // Field's default value or NULL
    TTextAlign Align)      // Text alignment

```

The function sets or changes the value and default value of a text field. The parameters *Value* and *DefValue* can both be NULL, if both values should be deleted. The parameter *DefValue* defines the default value of the field, this value is shown in Adobe's Acrobat as long as the field has no value; it will be hidden when entering the field.

The strings are drawn with the font that is associated with the field. The font size is taken from the field settings. If set to "auto", the font size is computed from the field's bounding box.

### **Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Because interactive form fields do not support Unicode, the strings must contain characters which are supported by the current code page.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***SetTextRect***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetTextRect(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double Width,     // Width of output rectangle
    double Height)    // Height of output rectangle or -1
```

The function defines the output rectangle that is used to output formatted text by the function [WriteFText\(\)](#). The text is not clipped into the rectangle. [WriteFText\(\)](#) executes a callback if defined (see [SetOnPageBreakProc\(\)](#)), when the rectangle was filled with text and more text is available for output. If no callback function is used, the text continues on the next page by using the same output rectangle. The usage of the function is described in detail under [WriteFText\(\)](#).

The parameter *Height* can be set to **-1** to determine that no page break should occur.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***SetTextRise***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetTextRise(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double Value)     // Text rise in units
```

Text rise specifies the distance, to move the baseline up or down from its default location. Positive values of text rise move the baseline up. Adjustments to the baseline are useful for drawing superscripts or subscripts. The default location of the baseline can be restored by setting the text rise to 0. The figure below illustrates the effect of the text rise. Text rise always applies to the vertical coordinate in text space.

The text <sup>moves</sup> around <sup>the</sup> baseline.

Default value = 0

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetTextScaling

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetTextScaling(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double Value)      // Horizontal text scaling
```

The scaling value adjusts the width of glyphs by stretching or compressing them in the horizontal direction. Its value is specified as a percentage of the normal width of the glyphs, with 100 being the normal width.

Default value = 100

Value = 100	Word
Value = 50	WordWord

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetTransparentColor

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetTransparentColor(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 AColor)      // Color value defined in current color space
```

The function sets the transparent color which is used for newly inserted images. Due to color interpolation during decompression of JPEG images, it not always possible to mask JPEG compressed images correctly.

Default value = 0x00FFFFFF (RGB White)

## SetTrapped

Syntax:

```
void pdfSetTrapped(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    LBOOL Value)      // True or false
```

The function sets the trapped key of the document. Trapping is a technique to avoid unwanted visual artifacts such as brightly colored gaps or bands around the edges of printed objects. In high-

quality reproduction of color documents, such artifacts are commonly avoided by creating an overlap, called a trap, between areas of adjacent color.

The trapped key determines whether the document was trapped. The default value is unknown that means no value is written to the file. The trapped key should be set if possible.

## ***SetUseExactPwd***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetUseExactPwd(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    LBOOL Value)      // True or false
```

If the property *UseExactPwd* is false, an encrypted PDF file can always be decrypted, if either the open or owner password in the file is an empty string. If true, the open or owner password must be known to open the PDF file.

Default value = 1 (*true*)

### **Remarks:**

If your application should allow the modification of encrypted PDF files, you may check the access permissions to grant user rights, if the file was opened with the open password instead of the owner password (see also [GetUserRights\(\)](#)).

Due to the license agreement of Adobe, all manufacturers of applications which make the treatment of encrypted PDF files possible, must respect the access permissions of a PDF file, if the file was opened with the open password.

Only if the file was opened with the owner password, all rights should be granted. See *PDF Reference 1.5* for further information. This document is available at [www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com).

The property *UseExactPwd* should be true, if the application is a commercial product.

## ***SetUseGlobalImpFiles***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetUseGlobalImpFiles(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    LBOOL Value)      // True or false
```

The property can be used to load an external PDF file permanent into memory, e.g. to split a large PDF file into smaller pieces. The next PDF file that will be opened with the function [OpenImportFile\(\)](#) or [OpenImportBuffer\(\)](#) will not be closed when [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [FreePDF\(\)](#) is called. When creating a new PDF file the previously opened import file is still open and it is possible to import pages from this file without loading the file again.

At time of publication only one PDF file can be loaded permanent into memory. When the PDF file is not longer needed set the property back to false so that the internal resources used by the file can be freed.

**Return values:**

This function cannot fail, the return value is always 1.

**Example (Borland Delphi):**

In this example we have a large PDF file that should be splitted into separate files which should contain one page each.

If we would not use the property *UseGlobalImpFiles* we must read the entire file structure each time a page was extracted because the import file would be closed when *CloseFile()* is called. Splitting a large file in this way would be extremely slow. To improve processing speed we set the property *UseGlobalImpFiles* to true so that we must open the import file only one time.

```
// This is our error callback function
function ErrProc(const Data: Pointer; ErrCode: Integer; const ErrorMessage:
PChar; ErrType: Integer): Integer; stdcall;
var s: String;
begin
    s := ErrorMessage + #13#13'Abort processing?';
    if MessageDlg(s, mtError, [mbYes, mbNo], 0) = mrYes then
        Result := 1
    else
        Result := 0;
end;

procedure TForm1.Button2Click(Sender: TObject);
var pdf: TPDF; i: Integer;
begin
    pdf := nil;
    try
        pdf := TPDF.Create;
        pdf.SetOnErrorProc(nil, @ErrProc);
        pdf.SetUseGlobalImpFiles(true);
        // No conversion to templates is required. In addition, we need the
        // page contents only.
        pdf.SetImportFlags(ifImportAsPage);
        pdf.OpenImportFileA('c:/test.pdf', ptOpen, '');
        // In the following loop we create a new PDF file, import one page
        // and close the new file. We continue until all pages are stored
        // in a new PDF file each.
        // We store the files in the directory c:/SplitOut. Note that the
        // size of all single page files is many times larger as the size
        // of the original import file because used fonts and other
        // resources must be exported to each file, they cannot be shared.
        for i := 1 to pdf.GetInPageCount do begin
            pdf.CreateNewPDFa(Format('c:/SplitOut/split%.4d.pdf', [i]));
            pdf.Append;
            pdf.ImportPageEx(i, 1.0, 1.0); // Import a page
            pdf.EndPage;
            pdf.CloseFile;
        end;
    except
        // Handle error
    end;
end;
```

```

        end;
    except
        on E: Exception do MessageDlg(E.Message, mtError, [mbOK], 0);
    end;
    if pdf <> nil then pdf.Free;
end;

```

## SetUseStdFonts

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfSetUseStdFonts(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    LBOOL Value)      // If false, the 14 standard fonts are disabled

```

The function can be used to disable the 14 standard fonts temporarily. PDF viewer applications support 14 standard fonts, these fonts are not embedded by default, also if the parameter *Embed* of the function [SetFont\(\)](#) is true and if the font file is available.

If a standard font should be embedded, it is recommended to disable the internal fonts temporarily because these fonts have the highest search priority and avoid otherwise the selection of your own font file.

Default value = 1 ([true](#))

## SetUseSwapFile

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfSetUseSwapFile(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    LBOOL SwapContents, // If true, content streams are paged out too
    UI32 SwapLimit)    // Memory limit in KB

```

When creating large PDF files with many or large images it is sometimes recommended to page out large objects to a temp file to restrict the memory usage. Images and content streams of pages, templates, and patterns can be paged out. To improve processing speed, content streams should only be paged out if the available memory is low and if very large PDF files must be created.

The parameter *SwapLimit* defines the memory usage in KB that must be exceeded before objects are paged out to the temp file (cache size). If *SwapLimit* is set to zero, no objects will be paged out. If a temp file was already created, the new limit will be considered when the next PDF file is created.

The parameter *SwapContents* defines whether content streams should be paged out too. If *SwapContents* is false, only images are written to the temp file. Due to caching mechanisms of most operating systems paging out of images does not worse processing speed.

However, paging out of content streams causes significant lower processing speed, especially when pages or templates must be accessed multiple times with [EditPage\(\)](#) or [EditTemplate\(\)](#). Because of this, *SwapContents* should only be set to true when minimal memory usage is recommended. It is also

possible to set this parameter to true and setting the *SwapLimit* to a large enough value so that most content streams can be left into memory.

The size of the PDF file and the temporary file is restricted to 2 GB. If the temp file exceeds this limit, processing breaks immediately. The temporary file is internally created with the ANSI function `tmpfile()`; it is automatically deleted when `CloseFile()` or `FreePDF()` is called, or when the PDF instance will be deleted.

If pages or templates must be accessed multiple times with `EditPage()` or `EditTemplate()` it is recommended to disable paging out of content streams, because each time the page or template is opened the contents must be loaded from the temp file and the new content stream must be added at the end of the temp file. It is possible that the size of the temp file exceeds the 2 GB limit in this case, processing speed will also be significant lower.

As mentioned above, the parameter *SwapLimit* defines the memory usage in KB that must be exceeded before objects are paged out. Each time a content stream is closed and when an image is inserted, the size of this object stream is added to the current memory usage. When the size of the next object would exceed the swap limit, it will be paged out to the temporary file.

The sizes of internal structures are not taken into account so that it is possible that the memory usage exceeds *SwapLimit* because additional memory is required to hold the base structure in memory. Imported objects of external PDF files cannot be paged out to temporary files; only the imported content streams can be paged out.

It is possible to change the parameters at run time so that specific objects can be paged out. If a temp file is already open, only the parameters *SwapContents* and *SwapLimit* are updated. The function does not open a new temporary file in this case.

**Remarks:**

The function `tmpfile()` creates the temp file usually in the system's root directory. If you want to use your own directory into which the temp file should be created then use the function `SetUseSwapFileEx()` instead.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetUseSwapFileEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetUseSwapFileEx(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    LBOOL SwapContents,  // If true, content streams are paged out too  
    UI32 SwapLimit,      // Memory limit in KB  
    const char* SwapDir) // Destination directory of the temp file
```

This function enables paging out of large objects to restrict the memory usage in the same way as [SetUseSwapFile\(\)](#). However, the function creates the temp file in the destination directory *SwapDir*. This directory must already exist when this function is called.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetUseSystemFonts

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetUseSystemFonts(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    LBOOL Value)      // see description
```

The property specifies whether the default font directories of the operating system should be automatically added to the list of available font search paths. On Windows this is the %Windows%/Fonts directory and on Mac OS X the following font paths will be added to the list of font search paths:

```
/System/Library/Fonts  
/Library/Fonts  
~/Library/Fonts
```

Additional font paths can be added with [AddFontSearchPath\(\)](#).

Default value = 1 ([true](#))

The fonts are loaded when [SetFont\(\)](#) is called the first time. The property is ignored on Linux or UNIX.

### Remarks:

Please note that the internal font list is not automatically updated when the system's font pool changes. Windows operating systems send a WM\_FONTCHANGE message if the font pool was modified. In this case, the application should call [ClearHostFonts\(\)](#) before calling [SetFont\(\)](#) the next time so that the list of available system fonts can be updated.

On Mac OS X there is no notification when the font database changes. Mac OS X applications need to use functions of the font manager to determine whether font database has been modified.



## ***SetUseTransparency***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetUseTransparency(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    LBOOL Value)       // If false, images appears opaque
```

The property specifies whether images should be masked with the current transparent color to make this color transparent, see also [SetTransparentColor\(\)](#). This technique is known as color key masking.

The default transparent color is white. Please note that the color is changed to the appropriate value when changing the color space.

Alpha based transparency can be applied with an extended graphics state that must be active before inserting an image. See [CreateExtGState\(\)](#) for further information.

Default value = 1 ([true](#))

## ***SetUseVisibleCoords***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetUseVisibleCoords(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    LBOOL Value)       // If false, images appears opaque
```

The property specifies whether DynaPDF should consider the crop box to calculate to position of an object. The crop box crops a page, but the paper format (media box) is left unchanged. To move the coordinates into the visible area, set the property to true. Coordinates can then be used as if no crop box were defined. The bounding boxes are described in detail under [SetBBox\(\)](#).

Default value = 0 ([false](#))

## SetViewerPreferences

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetViewerPreferences(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    TViewerPreference Value,    // Preference
    TViewPrefAddVal AddVal)    // Parameter of the preference if any

typedef SI32 TViewerPreference;
#define vpUseNone                0x00000000 // No preference is set
#define vpHideToolBar            0x00000001 // No parameter
#define vpHideMenuBar            0x00000002 // No parameter
#define vpHideWindowUI          0x00000004 // No parameter
#define vpFitWindow              0x00000008 // No parameter
#define vpCenterWindow           0x00000010 // No parameter
#define vpDisplayDocTitle        0x00000020 // (PDF 1.4) No parameter
#define vpNonFullScrPageMode     0x00000040 // Key, values see below
#define vpDirection              0x00000080 // (PDF 1.3)
#define vpViewArea               0x00000100 // (PDF 1.4)
#define vpViewClip               0x00000200 // (PDF 1.4)
#define vpPrintArea              0x00000400 // (PDF 1.4)
#define vpPrintClip              0x00000800 // (PDF 1.4)

typedef SI32 TViewPrefAddVal;
#define avNone                   0x00000000
#define avNonFullScrUseNone      0x00000001
#define avNonFullScrUseOutlines 0x00000002
#define avNonFullScrUseThumbs   0x00000004
#define avNonFullScrUseOC        0x00000400 // PDF 1.6
#define avDirectionL2R           0x00000008
#define avDirectionR2L           0x00000010
#define avViewPrintArtBox        0x00000020
#define avViewPrintBleedBox      0x00000040
#define avViewPrintCropBox       0x00000080
#define avViewPrintMediaBox      0x00000100
#define avViewPrintTrimBox       0x00000200
```

The function sets the viewer preferences which control certain features in PDF viewers, such as hiding the toolbar or menu bar. The parameters *Value* and *AddVal* are both bitmasks. Multiple values can be set by using a bitwise or operator. It is also possible to call the function multiple times to set each preference separately; the flags are combined with already existing one in this case. Already defined flags can be deleted with the flag *vpUseNone*. A few flags require an additional parameter that must be added to *AddVal*.

The flags are described in detail on the next page.

Default value = *vpUseNone*

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

Preference	Description
vpUseNone	This is the default behaviour; the flag can also be used to delete all flags which were set beforehand.
vpHideToolBar	If set, the toolbar is hidden in Acrobat when the document is active.
vpHideMenuBar	If set, the menubar is hidden in Acrobat when the document is active.
vpHideWindowUI	If set, scrollbars and navigation controls are hidden when the document is active.
vpDisplayDocTitle	(PDF 1.4) If set, Acrobat displays the document's title in the window's title bar.
vpNonFullScrPageMode	(PDF 1.4) The parameter <i>AddVal</i> specifies how to display the document in non-fullscreen mode. This flag is meaningful only if the page mode was set to pmFullscreen (see <a href="#">SetPageMode()</a> ).
vpDirection	(PDF 1.4) The parameter <i>AddVal</i> defines the natural reading order of the document. This entry has no direct effect on the document's contents or page numbering, but can be used to determine the relative positioning of pages when displayed side by side or printed n-up. Default value: L2R.
vpViewArea	(PDF 1.4) The parameter <i>AddVal</i> specifies the name of the page boundary representing the area of a page to be displayed when viewing the document on the screen. The value is the key designating the relevant page boundary in the page object (see <a href="#">SetBBox()</a> for further information). Default value: CropBox.
vpViewClip	(PDF 1.4) The parameter <i>AddVal</i> specifies the name of the page boundary to which the contents of a page are to be clipped when viewing the document on the screen. The value is the key designating the relevant page boundary in the page object (see <a href="#">SetBBox()</a> for further information). Default value: CropBox.

Preference	Description
vpPrintArea	(PDF 1.4) The parameter <i>AddVal</i> specifies the name of the page boundary representing the area of a page to be rendered when printing the document. The value is the key designating the relevant page boundary in the page object (see <a href="#">SetBBox()</a> for further information). Default value: CropBox.
vpPrintClip	(PDF 1.4) The parameter <i>AddVal</i> specifies name of the page boundary to which the contents of a page are to be clipped when printing the document. The value is the key designating the relevant page boundary in the page object (see <a href="#">SetBBox()</a> for further information). Default value: CropBox.

## SetWMFDefExtent

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetWMFDefExtent(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Width,        // Width in 0.01 millimetres  
    UI32 Height)       // Height in 0.01 millimetres
```

The function sets the default size which is used to convert non-portable WMF files to EMF. See [InsertMetafile\(\)](#) for further information.

Default value:

Width = 0;

Height = 0;

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetWMFPixelPerInch

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSetWMFPixelPerInch(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    UI32 Value)        // Pixels per inch of the y-axis see description
```

The function sets the default pixels per inch of the y-axis which are used to convert portable WMF files to EMF. DynaPDF uses a corrected value to get exact proportions. See [InsertMetafile\(\)](#) for further information. The value must be in the range 2000 to 3000.

Default value = 2400

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SetWordSpacing

Syntax:

```
double pdfGetWordSpacing(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double Value)      // Word spacing
```

The function sets the word spacing.

Default value = 0

Value = 0	Word Space
Value = 80	Word                      Space

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SkewCoords

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSkewCoords(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double alpha,      // Angle alpha in degrees
    double beta,       // Angle beta in degrees
    double OriginX,    // Origin of the x-axis
    double OriginY)    // Origin of the y-axis
```

The function skews the coordinate system and sets the coordinate origin to the point *OriginX*, *OriginY*. It is highly recommended to save the graphics state beforehand, otherwise it is very difficult or impossible to restore the coordinate system later.

After the coordinate were changed by the function, bottom-up coordinates are active. It is not possible to use top-down coordinates with a skewed coordinate system.

Skewing is internally calculated as follows:

```
TCTM M; // Transformation matrix, the data type is declared in dynapdf.h
M.a = 1.0;
M.b = tan(alpha / 180 * PI);
M.c = tan(beta / 180 * PI);
M.d = 1.0;
M.x = OriginX;
M.y = OriginY;
```

Because the tangent of the angles alpha and beta represent the skewed coordinate system, the angles must not be 90, 180, 270, or 360 degrees.

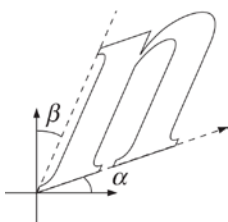
### Remarks:

If the graphics state was not saved beforehand the function set a warning but the transformation will be applied.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0. Use an error callback function or check whether an error occurred with the function [GetErrorMessage\(\)](#). See [Exception handling](#) for further information.

### Skewing:



## SortFieldsByIndex

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSortFieldsByIndex(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function sorts the interactive form fields of a page by comparing the internal indices which can be set for each field separately (see [SetFieldIndex\(\)](#) for further information). The field's index represents the tab order of a field.

If the field indices were not changed beforehand, sorting makes no sense.

To sort the fields of a page, open the page for editing beforehand with [EditPage\(\)](#).

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## SortFieldsByName

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfSortFieldsByName(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer
```

The function sorts the interactive form fields of a page in ascending order by field name. To sort the fields of a page, open the page for editing beforehand with [EditPage\(\)](#). The order in which fields appear in the page's field array specify the tab order of the fields.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## StampAnnot

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfStampAnnot(
    const void* IPDF,           // Instance pointer
    TRubberStamp SubType,       // Stamp type
    double PosX,                 // x-coordinate
    double PosY,                 // y-coordinate
    double Width,                // Stamp width
    double Height,               // Stamp height
    const char* Author,          // Optional
    const char* Subject,         // Optional
    const char* Comment)         // Optional
```

```
typedef enum
{
    rsApproved,
    rsAsIs,
    rsConfidential,
```

```

rsDepartmental,
rsDraft,
rsExperimental,
rsExpired,
rsFinal,
rsForComment,
rsForPublicRelease,
rsNotApproved,
rsNotForPublicRelease,
rsSold,
rsTopSecred,
rsUserDefined // See below
}TRubberStamp;

```

The function creates a stamp annotation. PDF viewers support a large set of predefined stamp types but it is also possible to create user defined stamps. A user defined stamp can be created as follows:

- Create the stamp with the *SubType* rsUserDefined.
- Call [CreateAnnotAP\(\)](#) with the handle of the stamp annotation to create a user defined appereance stream.
- Draw arbitrary contents to the appearance stream and close it finally with [EndTemplate\(\)](#), finish!

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## StrokePath

Syntax:

```

SI32 pdfStrokePath(
    const void* IPDF) // Instance pointer

```

The function strokes the current path without closing it. If no open path can be detected the function returns with a warning.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.



## TextAnnot

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfTextAnnot(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of the annotation
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of the annotation
    double Width,        // Width of the window in open state
    double Height,       // Height of the window in open state
    const char* Author,  // Author of the annotation or NULL
    const char* Text,    // The annotation's Text or NULL
    TAnnotIcon Icon,     // Annotation icon, see below
    LBOOL Open)          // Should the annotation appear open or closed?















typedef enum
{
    aiComment,
    aiHelp,
    aiInsert,
    aiKey,
    aiNewParagraph,
    aiNote,
    aiParagraph
}TAnnotIcon;
```

The function creates a text annotation. The parameters *Width* and *Height* define the size of the annotation's window. The window is shown in the open state of the annotation.

If the parameter *Open* is true, the annotation appears in its open state when opening the document. If the annotation is closed, the annotation's icon appears on screen.

The parameters *Author* and *Text* are optional, they can be NULL. DynaPDF does not embed the annotation icon. However, since Acrobat 5 they are available in Adobe's Acrobat or Reader.

### Acrobat Reader 5/6 on the left, Acrobat Reader 4 on the right

	Comment		Comment
	Help		Help
	Insert		Insert
	Key		Key
	NewParagraph		NewParagraph
	Note		Note
	Paragraph		Paragraph

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. The ANSI Version supports ANSI strings of the code page 1252 only. To create a text annotation in an arbitrary encoding convert the string to Unicode with the function [ConvToIncode\(\)](#) first and use the Unicode version to create the annotation.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## ***TranslateCoords***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfTranslateCoords(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double OriginX,    // New coordinate origin of the x-axis  
    double OriginY)    // New coordinate origin of the y-axis
```

The function translates the coordinate system to the new origin *OriginX*, *OriginY*. Save the graphics state beforehand and restore it when finish.

After the coordinate system was changed by the function, bottom-up coordinates are active. It is not possible to use top-down coordinates with a transformed coordinate system.

**Remarks:**

If the graphics state was not saved beforehand the function set a warning but the transformation will be applied.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0. Use an error callback function or check whether an error occurred with the function [GetErrorMessage\(\)](#). See [Exception handling](#) for further information.

## TranslateRawCode

Syntax:

```
UI32 fntTranslateRawCode(  
    const void* IFont,    // Pointer of the active font  
    const BYTE* Text,     // Raw text to be converted  
    UI32 Len,             // Text length in bytes  
    double ADDR Width,    // The width of the character  
    UI16 OutText[32],     // Static Unicode output buffer  
    SI32 ADDR OutLen,     // Number of characters copied to OutText  
    LBOOL ADDR Decoded,   // If false, Width, OutText, OutLen must be ignored  
    float CharSpacing,    // Current character spacing  
    float WordSpacing,    // Current word spacing  
    float TextScale)      // Current text scaling
```

The function converts a source character to Unicode. The code length of a character depends on the font's encoding. PDF supports encodings with fixed and variable code lengths from one through four bytes per character. The return value is the number of bytes which were consumed to convert the character to Unicode; this value must be used to increment the text pointer and to decrement the remaining text length.

The resulting Unicode character or sequence is stored in the parameter *OutText*, as well as the corresponding output text length and the character width.

The parameter *Decoded* is set to true if the source character could be successfully converted to Unicode. If *Decoded* is false the output string and character width contain no meaningful values.

The function can only fail when processing strings of CID fonts, e.g. if the font depends on an external CMap that could not be loaded, or if the font uses a damaged CMap. The search path(s) to external CMaps should always be set before extracting text from PDF files with [SetCMapDir\(\)](#).

Passing an invalid or undefined code sequence to the function does not result in an error. In this case the notdef character is added to the output string (this is usually 0 or 0xFFFFD if the font contains a ToUnicode CMap).

### Notice:

To improve processing speed the function does not check whether the parameters are valid.

### Remarks:

This function was designed to convert raw strings on a per character basis to Unicode which were returned by [ParseContent\(\)](#) or [GetPageText\(\)](#). The parameters *CharSpacing*, *WordSpacing*, and *TextScale* must be taken from the current graphics state or from the structure *TPDFStack*.

### Return values:

The return value of this function is always greater or equal to one. Check the parameter *Decoded* to determine whether the function succeeded.

## ***TranslateString (obsolete)***

Syntax:

```
SI32 fntTranslateString(  
    struct TPDFStack* Stack, // Structure which holds the current text stack  
    UI16* OutText,           // Output Unicode buffer  
    UI32 Size,               // Length of the Unicode buffer in characters  
    UI32 Flags)              // No flags are defined at this time
```

The function converts a binary string to Unicode that was returned by [GetPageText\(\)](#). This function is marked as obsolete because the member *Kerning* of the structure *TPDFStack* contains already the converted Unicode string. See [GetPageText\(\)](#) for further information.

The converted string is copied to the parameter *OutText*. The output buffer must be allocated by the caller. Note that the string buffer is a Unicode string in UTF-16 format. The parameter *Size* represents the length of the buffer in characters, it must be long enough to hold the entire string.

The output buffer should be at least  $stack.TextLen * 16 / 10 + 32$  characters long. However, to avoid unnecessary memory allocation calls it is usually best to use a static conversion buffer with a length of about 2048 or 4096 characters. Longer strings can normally not occur in well formatted PDF files because a huge paper format would be required to display such a long string.

The parameter *Flags* was defined for future use. No flags are defined at this time, the parameter is ignored.

### **Remarks:**

The output string buffer is automatically allocated in VB .Net and C#. The parameter *OutText* should be initialized with null or Nothing when using these programming languages.

This function should not be used to convert strings of CID fonts. To process strings of CID fonts use the function [TranslateRawCode\(\)](#).

### **Notice:**

To improve processing speed the function does not check whether the parameters are valid.

In C/C++ and Delphi the output string buffer is not null-terminated and the function does not use the exception handling of DynaPDF. In VB .Net and C# the function returns a native .Net string. No error message is returned on failure. However, the only possible error is out of memory.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of Unicode characters copied into the buffer. If the function fails the return value is zero.

## ***TranslateString2***

Syntax:

```
SI32 fntTranslateString2(  
    const void* IFont, // Pointer of the active font  
    const BYTE* Text,  // Raw text to be converted  
    UI32 Len,          // Text length in bytes  
    UI16* OutText,     // Output Unicode buffer  
    UI32 Size,         // Length of the Unicode buffer in characters  
    UI32 Flags);       // No flags are defined at this time
```

The function converts a binary string to Unicode that was returned by [ParseContent\(\)](#) or [GetPageText\(\)](#). The converted string is copied to the parameter *OutText*. The output buffer must be allocated by the caller. Note that the string buffer is a Unicode string in UTF-16 format. The parameter *Size* represents the length of the buffer in characters, it must be long enough to hold the entire string.

The output buffer should be at least  $Len * 16 / 10 + 32$  characters long. However, to avoid unnecessary memory allocation calls it is usually best to use a static conversion buffer with a length of about 2048 or 4096 characters. Longer strings can normally not occur in well formatted PDF files because a huge paper format would be required to display such a long string.

### **Remarks:**

The output string buffer is automatically allocated in VB .Net and C#. The parameter *OutText* should be initialized with null or Nothing when using these programming languages.

This function should not be used to convert strings of CID fonts. To process strings of CID fonts use the function [TranslateRawCode\(\)](#).

### **Notice:**

To improve processing speed the function does not check whether the parameters are valid.

In C/C++ and Delphi the output string buffer is not null-terminated and the function does not use the exception handling of DynaPDF. In VB .Net and C# the function returns a native .Net string. No error message is returned on failure. However, the only possible error is out of memory.

### **Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the number of Unicode characters copied into the buffer. If the function fails the return value is zero.

## Triangle

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfTriangle(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    double x1,                 // X-Coordinate of the first point
    double y1,                 // Y-Coordinate of the first point
    double x2,                 // X-Coordinate of the second point
    double y2,                 // Y-Coordinate of the second point
    double x3,                 // X-Coordinate of the third point
    double y3,                 // Y-Coordinate of the third point
    TPathFillMode FillMode) // Fill mode
```

The function draws a triangle.

The draw direction can be changed with the function [SetDrawDirection\(\)](#).

A triangle is a closed path that can be filled, stroked or both. It is also possible to draw a triangle invisible to apply the filling rules nonzero winding number or even-odd. The filling rules are described under [ClipPath\(\)](#). The parameter *FillMode* is ignored if the triangle is drawn inside a clipping path. The fill modes are described under [ClosePath\(\)](#).

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## UTF16ToUTF32

Syntax:

```
UI32* pdfUTF16ToUTF32(
    const void* IPDF,          // Instance pointer
    const UI16* Source) // Null-terminated UTF-16 Unicode string
```

The function converts a UTF-16 Unicode string to UTF-32. UTF-32 is the default Unicode format on Linux and UNIX operating systems. The input string must be defined in the CPU's byte ordering (little-endian on a little-endian machine and big-endian on a big-endian machine), the output string is also returned in the CPU's byte ordering.

The return value is a pointer to the original conversion buffer; it must not be freed or changed. The function can be called multiple times without causing a memory leak. However, if the conversion buffer is not longer needed it can be freed with the function [FreeUniBuf\(\)](#). The buffer is automatically freed when [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [FreePDF\(\)](#) is called.

The function requires no open PDF file; it can be used at any time. Invalid character sequences are skipped by the algorithm, they do not break conversion.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is a pointer to the converted UTF-32 Unicode string. If the function fails the return value is NULL. The only possible error during conversion is out of memory.

## UTF16ToUTF32Ex

```
UI32* pdfUTF16ToUTF32Ex(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const UI16* Source,  // UTF-16 Unicode string
    UI32 ADDR Len)       // String length in characters
```

The function converts a UTF-16 Unicode string to UTF-32. UTF-32 is the default Unicode format on Linux and UNIX operating systems. The input string must be defined in the CPU's byte ordering (little-endian on a little-endian machine and big-endian on a big-endian machine), the output string is also returned in the CPU's byte ordering.

The used conversion algorithm is binary save. The parameter *Len* holds the string length in characters before and after conversion. The new string length is normally not longer than original one, but it is possible that the new string length will be shorter because surrogates are expressed as two character sequence in UTF-16, but as one character in UTF-32.

The return value is a pointer to the original conversion buffer; it must not be freed or changed. The function can be called multiple times without causing a memory leak. However, if the conversion buffer is not longer needed it can be freed with the function [FreeUniBuf\(\)](#). The buffer is automatically freed when [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [FreePDF\(\)](#) is called.

The function requires no open PDF file; it can be used at any time. Invalid character sequences are skipped by the algorithm, they do not break conversion.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is a pointer to the converted UTF-32 Unicode string. If the function fails the return value is NULL. The only possible error during conversion is out of memory.

## UTF32ToUTF16

Syntax:

```
UI16* pdfUTF32ToUTF16(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const UI32* Source)  // Null-terminated UTF-32 Unicode string
```

The function converts a UTF-32 Unicode string to UTF-16. UTF-32 is the default Unicode format on Linux and UNIX operating systems. This function uses the macro [ToUTF16\(\)](#) which can be used to convert UTF-32 strings to UTF-16.

The macro is mostly used to convert literal strings in parameterized function calls, which can contain more than one Unicode parameter. Because of this, the function needs another strategy to store the conversion buffer so that a second or third call of the macro does not override or free the buffer of the previous call. DynaPDF holds an array of **four** separate conversion buffers so that the function can be used in functions with maximal 4 Unicode parameters.

**Example:**

```
// Linux uses UTF-32 as Unicode string format
Anyfunction(pdf, ToUTF16(pdf, L"First"), ToUTF16(pdf, L"Second"),
ToUTF16(pdf, L"Third!"));
```

The code above produces no access violation because each call of the macro [ToUTF16\(\)](#) uses its own conversion buffer. DynaPDF contains no function that supports more than 2 Unicode string parameters so that the number of 4 separate conversion buffers is large enough for all functions which are currently defined in DynaPDF.

The number of conversion buffers is defined by the constant `PDF_UTF16_BUF_COUNT` in the header file `pdf_main.h`; it can be changed if necessary (you need the source code of DynaPDF and the library must be recompiled when changing the value).

The input string must be defined in the CPU's byte ordering (little-endian on a little-endian machine and big-endian on a big-endian machine), the output string is also returned in the CPU's byte ordering.

The return value is a pointer to the original conversion buffer; it must not be freed or changed. The function can be called multiple times without causing a memory leak. However, if the conversion buffers are not longer needed they can be freed with the function [FreeUniBuf\(\)](#) (this will free all four buffers). The buffers are automatically freed when [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [FreePDF\(\)](#) is called.

The function requires no open PDF file; it can be used at any time. Invalid character sequences are skipped by the algorithm, they do not break conversion.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is a pointer to the converted UTF-16 Unicode string. If the function fails the return value is NULL. The only possible error during conversion is out of memory.

***UTF32ToUTF16Ex***

Syntax:

```
UI16* pdfUTF32ToUTF16Ex(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const UI32* Source,  // UTF-32 Unicode string
    UI32 ADDR Len)       // String length in characters
```

The function converts a UTF-32 Unicode string to UTF-16. UTF-32 is the default Unicode format on Linux and UNIX operating systems. The input string must be defined in the CPU's byte ordering (little-endian on a little-endian machine and big-endian on a big-endian machine), the output string is also returned in the CPU's byte ordering.

The used conversion algorithm is binary save. The parameter *Len* holds the string length in characters before and after conversion. The new string length can be longer then original one because surrogates are expressed as two character sequence in UTF-16, but as one character in UTF-32.



The return value is a pointer to the original conversion buffer; it must not be freed or changed. The function can be called multiple times without causing a memory leak. However, if the conversion buffer is not longer needed it can be freed with the function [FreeUniBuf\(\)](#). The buffer is automatically freed when [CloseFile\(\)](#) or [FreePDF\(\)](#) is called.

The function requires no open PDF file; it can be used at any time. Invalid character sequences are skipped by the algorithm, they do not break conversion.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is a pointer to the converted UTF-32 Unicode string. If the function fails the return value is NULL. The only possible error during conversion is out of memory.

## WebLink

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfWebLink(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of bounding rectangle  
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of bounding rectangle  
    double Width,     // Width of bounding rectangle  
    double Height,    // Height of bounding rectangle  
    const char* URL) // URL defined as null-terminated 7 bit ASCII string
```

The function inserts a web link onto the current open page. The parameter *URL* holds the URL defined as 7 bit ASCII string. A uniform resource locator (URL) is a string that resolves to a resource on the internet - typically a file that is the destination of a hypertext link, although it can also resolve to a query or other entity. A web link opens the standard browser to view the resource by default. The full version of Adobes Acrobat enables you also to embed a revered html resource in your document.

If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower left corner of the bounding rectangle. If the coordinate system is top-down it defines the upper left corner.

The border of the link annotation is drawn by using the current line width, stroke color and line dash pattern. If the link should appear without a border set the line width to zero beforehand.

When clicking on a link annotation the rectangle is highlighted, that is a simple visual effect. Several highlight modes are supported, see [SetLinkHighlightMode\(\)](#) for further information.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. Because the URL must be defined as 7 bit ASCII string, a Unicode URL must not contain characters outside of 7 bit ASCII.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is the annotation handle, a value greater or equal zero. If the function fails the return value is a negative error code.

## WriteAngleText

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfWriteAngleText(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    const char* AText,   // Text to be printed
    double Angle,        // Angle alpha in degrees
    double PosX,         // X-Coordinate of the text
    double PosY,         // Y-Coordinate of the text
    double Radius,       // Output radius or 0, see below
    double YOrigin)      // Origin of the y-axis, see below
```

The function prints a string in a user defined angle around a radius. If the coordinate system is bottom-up the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the lower-left corner of the text, otherwise the top-left corner. The parameter *Radius* moves the string in the rotated coordinate system on the x-axis so that the string will be printed on a radius. The parameter *YOrigin* moves the string also in the rotated coordinate system, but on the y-axis; the origin is measured in bottom-up coordinates independently of the current coordinate system. The y-origin is required when the text should be centered on the y-axis.

For instance, if the coordinate system is bottom-up, the point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the baseline of the text that is the center of the rotation. If the text should be centred on the y-axis the origin of the y-axis must be moved downward by the half cap height of the current font (see example below).

### Remarks:

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

### Example (C++):

```
#include "dynapdf.h"
using namespace DynaPDF;
// First we declare an error callback function
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMsg, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMessage);
    return 0;
}

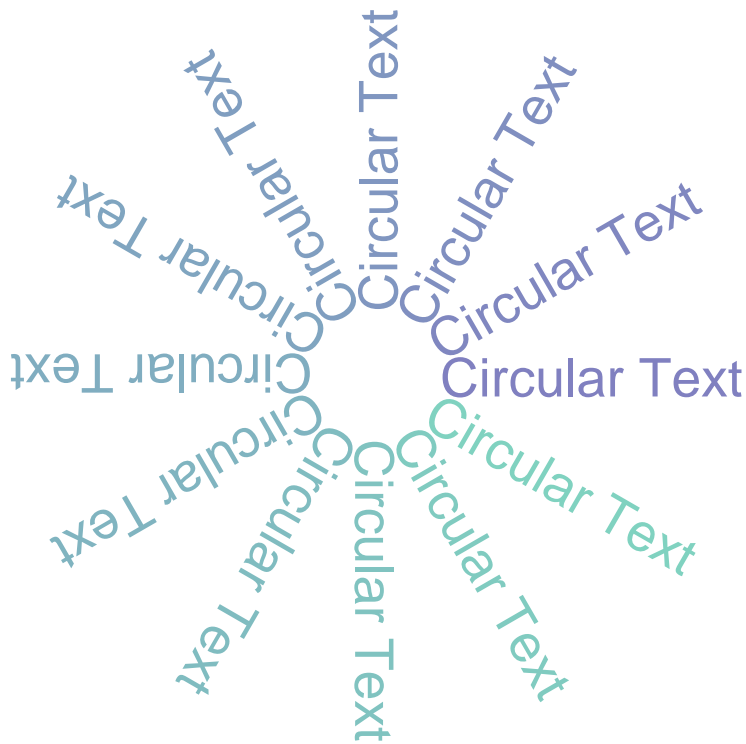
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    double alpha = 0.0;
    double y, pageCenter;
    SI32 i;
```

```

void* pdf = pdfNewPDF();
if (!pdf) return 2; // Out of memory?
pdfSetOnErrorProc(pdf, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
pdfSetPageCoords(pdf, pcTopDown);
pdfCreateNewPDF(pdf, "c:/cppout.pdf");
pdfAppend(pdf);
pdfSetFont(pdf, "Arial", fsNone, 20.0, true, cp1252);
pageCenter = pdfGetPageWidth(pdf) / 2.0;
y = -(20.0 + pdfGetDescent(PDF)) / 2.0; // Font size + descent
for (i = 0; i < 12; i++)
{
    pdfSetFillColor(pdf, (0x00C08080 | ((SI32)alpha) << 6));
    pdfWriteAngleText(pdf, "Circular Text", alpha, pageCenter, 300, 24, y);
    alpha += 30.0;
}
pdfEndPage(pdf);
pdfCloseFile(pdf);
}

```

Output:



## WriteFText

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfWriteFText(
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer
    TTextAlign Align,    // Base alignment
    const char* AText)   // Null-terminated string to be printed

typedef enum
{
    taLeft      = 0,      // Left aligned text
    taCenter    = 1,      // Centered text
    taRight     = 2,      // Right aligned text
    taJustify   = 3,      // Justified text
    taPlainText = 0x10000000 // Process the text as is
}TTextAlign;
```

Instead of printing text on a line by line basis it is also possible to output text into a rectangle by applying a formatting algorithm. The parameter *Align* defines the base alignment of the text to be printed. The alignment can be changed inside the text by using an alignment tag.

The parameter *Text* holds a null-terminated string which can contain optional format tags to enable more complex formattings.

WriteFText() supports a callback function as well as several format tags which can be used to apply more complex formattings. The following sections describe the formatting options and the usage of the function in detail, please read these sections carefully.

### Output rectangle

The output rectangle that is used by the function must be defined with the function [SetTextRect\(\)](#). If no output rectangle was set beforehand the function uses a default rectangle that is defined as follows:

- If the page contains a crop box the output rectangle becomes the dimension of the **crop box** with a border of 50 units (width - 100, height -100).
- If no crop box is present the output rectangle becomes the dimension of the **media box** with a border of 50 units (width - 100, height -100).

The bounding boxes are described in detail at [SetBBox\(\)](#).

WriteFText() supports a callback function which is called when the output rectangle was filled with text and if more text is available for output (see [SetOnPageBreakProc\(\)](#) for further information). If no callback was set, the text continues on the next page by using the same output rectangle.

To avoid page breaks set the height of the output rectangle to -1. Note that the Visual Basic and VB .Net interfaces use events instead of callback functions. The OnPageBreak event must be manually connected with the function [ConnectPageBreakEvent\(\)](#).

## Text formatting

WriteFText() can be used to output simple formatted text such as right aligned or justified text, but it is also possible to use certain format tags to create a list or other specific formattings. It is also possible to use a callback function to create multi-column text or other more complex formattings. First, we want to see how the text alignment can be changed inside a text block. WriteFText() supports 4 format tags which can be used to do this, we call these tags alignment tags.

### Alignment tags

An alignment tag changes the text alignment in a text block. The base alignment that is used by the function was already defined by the parameter *Align*, this base alignment can also be changed inside the text by inserting an alignment tag. The following tags are available:

- \le# // Left aligned text
- \re# // Right aligned text
- \ce# // Centred text
- \ju# // Justified text

Like all format tags, an alignment tag begins with a backslash (character code 92) and ends with a numbersign (character code 35).

It is not possible to use multiple alignments in one text line. When an alignment tag is found the current line is closed and the cursor moves to the next line and continues with the new alignment.

### Example:

```
char fText[] = "Left aligned text, this is left aligned text, this is "  
"left aligned text...\ju#\FC[255]This is justified text, this is "  
"justified text, this is justified text, this is justified text, this "  
"is justified text, this is justified text, this is justified text, "  
"this is justified text...\re#\FC[165536]This is right aligned text, "  
"this is right aligned text, this is right aligned text..."  
"\le#\FC[233512]Back to left aligned text, we go back to left "  
"aligned text...";
```

```
pdfSetTextRect(pdf, 50, 50, 150, -1);  
pdfWriteFText(pdf, taLeft, fText);  
double height = pdfGetPageHeight(pdf) - pdfGetLastTextPosY(pdf) - 50;  
pdfRectangle(pdf, 50, 50, 150, height, fmStroke);  
...
```

Output:

```

Left aligned text, this is left
aligned text, this is left
aligned text...
This is justified text, this is
justified text, this is justified
text, this is justified text, this
is justified text, this is
justified text, this is justified
text, this is justified text...
This is right aligned text,
this is right aligned text, this
is right aligned text...
Back to left aligned text, we
go back to left aligned text...
  
```

As you can see above, the string is not delimited, each alignment tag follows just a string without a carriage return or line feed. We use the command tag "`\FC[ ]`" to change the text color so that we can better distinguish between the alignments. However, after changing the alignment the cursor moves always to the next line and the text is printed in the new alignment.

You can also see how the rectangle was filled with text. The function `GetLastTextPosY()` returns the baseline of the last text line in bottom-up coordinates. We use this value to calculate the height of the rectangle. However, the last baseline is often required to place other objects onto the page after the text was printed.

The x-coordinate can also be determined by the function `GetLastTextPosX()` so that it is quite easy to get the exact position of the end of the string.

The text alignment is active until it will be changed by an alignment tag. If the string contains no alignment tag, the entire text is printed in the same alignment. Now we want to see what kind of command tags are available. You have already seen a command tag (`\FC[ ]`), let's take a look on the other tags.

### **Command tags**

A command tag is a tag that causes the execution of a function. This function can change a property, set a font, create a bookmark, or other things.

- `\ul#`            // underline
- `\st#`            // strikethrough
- `\us#`            // underline + strikethrough
- `\np#`            // new page
- `\TL[int]`        // tab length
- `\LD[float]`      // leading
- `\CS[float]`      // char spacing
- `\TR[float]`      // text rise
- `\TS[float]`      // text scaling

- \FS[[float](#)] // font size
- \FC[[UI32](#)] // font color
- \FT[[int](#) or [char\\*](#)] // font handle or PostScript name
- \BM[[char\\*](#)] // add a bookmark
- \LI[[float](#), [int](#), [float](#)] // list, see description at the next page
- \EL# // end list

Two categories of command tags are available, those without a parameter and the others which require one or more parameters. The tags which require no parameter end with a numbersign (character code 35). Parameters are always encapsulated into brackets. The values inside the brackets must be defined without trailing spaces or other characters. Note that all characters before and after a tag will be printed.

#### Example:

"This is a \\ul#\\FC[255]red\\FC[0]\\ul# string!" = This is a red string!

Tag	Description
\ul#	Draw the following text as underlined text. The next \ul# tag deactivates underlined output:  "This is \\ul#underlined\\ul# text!" = This is <u>underlined</u> text!
\st#	Draw the following text as strikeout text. The next \st# tag deactivates underlined output:  "This is \\st#strikeout\\st# text!" = This is <del>strikeout</del> text!
\us#	Draw the following text as underlined and strikeout text. The next \us# tag deactivates the tag:  "This is \\us#underlined + strikeout\\us# text!" = This is <u><del>underlined + strikeout</del></u> text!
\np#	This tag creates a page break event. If the <a href="#">OnPageBreak</a> callback function was set, the function is called without leaving the current page. The current page is still open, so that it is possible to make arbitrary changes inside the callback function such as changing the font, changing the output rectangle or closing the current page and opening another one so that the remaining text can be printed.  If no callback function was set, the current page will be closed and the remaining text will be printed on the next page by using the same output rectangle. See also <a href="#">SetOnPageBreakProc()</a> , <a href="#">ConnectPageBreakEvent()</a> .
\TL[ <a href="#">int</a> ]	The tag changes the current tabulator length. The value must be in the range 1 to 255. See also <a href="#">SetTabLen()</a> .

Tag	Description
<code>\LD[ float ]</code>	The tag changes the current leading. The value must be greater or equal zero. See also <a href="#">SetLeading()</a> .
<code>\CS[ float ]</code>	The tag changes the current character spacing. The value must be in the range -100 to 100 units. Note that negative values push the characters into the others. See also <a href="#">SetCharacterSpacing()</a> .
<code>\TR[ float ]</code>	The tag changes the current text rise. Text rise can be used to create superscript or subscript text parts inside a text block. The value must be in the range -100 to 100 units.
<code>\FS[ float ]</code>	The tag changes the current font size. The new font size must be greater zero.
<code>\FC[ UI32 ]</code>	The tag changes the current font color. The color value must be defined in the current color space. See also <a href="#">SetFillColor()</a> .
<code>\TS[ float ]</code>	The tag changes the current horizontal text scaling. The value must be greater zero. See also <a href="#">SetTextScaling()</a> .
<code>\FT[ various ]</code>	<p>The tag changes the current font. The font can be changed either by using a font handle or by using the PostScript name of the font. The using of a font handle is supported due to compatibility reasons to the old version 1.7 of DynaPDF.</p> <p>Font handles should not longer be used. However, if a font handle is used, the font(s) must be created beforehand by the function <a href="#">SetFont()</a> in the correct order. Unused fonts are removed by DynaPDF, they will not be added to the file. The second way to change the font is by using the PostScript name. The PostScript name is already a unique font name incl. style information. The maximum length of a font name is 64 characters. Note that <b>all</b> characters between the brackets are used as font name.</p> <p><b>Example1:</b> <code>"\FT[ ArialMT ]This is WRONG!!!"</code></p> <p>The example string above contains space characters inside the brackets, the font cannot be found!</p> <p><b>Example2:</b> <code>"\FT[ArialMT]The font was changed to Arial!"</code></p> <p>Font names are case-sensitive, they name must be specified exactly. The PostScript names of the available fonts can be enumerated with the function <a href="#">EnumHostFonts()</a>. If the font cannot be found, the function creates a warning. If font errors should be handled as fatal errors, processing stops immediately.</p>



Tag	Description
<code>\BM[ <a href="#">char</a>* ]</code>	<p>WriteFText adds a bookmark which gets a destination of the type <code>dtXY_Zoom</code>, and the x, y coordinate will be set to the position where this tag appear (the y-coordinate system is the baseline plus leading), the zoom factor is left unchanged. The parameter of the tag is the bookmark's title. Note that the title is <b>not</b> printed onto the page. To print the bookmarks title onto the page, add the string behind the tag again:</p> <pre>"\\BM[My first bookmark...]My first bookmark..."</pre> <p>The bookmark title and the string that appears on the page can be different.</p>
<code>\LI[ <a href="#">float</a>, <a href="#">int</a>, <a href="#">float</a> ]</code>	<p>This tag creates a list. The tag has three parameters which must be delimited with a comma. The first parameter defines the left margin of the list character measured from the x-coordinate of the output rectangle. Positive values move the list character to right, negative values move it to left.</p> <p>The second and third parameters are optional; they define the list character that should be used and the distance between the list character and the text. The list character must be a valid character index of the font <i>Wingdings-Regular</i>, or it must be an index into the current list font if set (see <a href="#">SetListFont()</a>). It is also possible to create a numbered list:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If no value is defined, the character index <b>159</b> of the font <i>Wingdings-Regular</i> is used as list symbol. This is the same character as you see in this list.</li> <li>• A value between <b>32</b> to <b>255</b> is treated as character index of the current list font. If no list font was set it defaults to the font <i>Wingdings-Regular</i> which is normally available on all Windows operating systems. Make sure that this font is available under Linux or UNIX.</li> <li>• Values in the ranges <b>0</b> to <b>31</b> and <b>256</b> to <b>999</b> are not valid; the list will not be created.</li> <li>• Values greater or equal <b>1000</b> are used to create a numbered list. The function subtracts 1000 from the number and prints the resulting number as list symbol plus a dot using the current font:</li> </ul> <pre>"\\LI[10,1001]This is a numbered list!\\EL#" =</pre>

### 1. This is a numbered list!

A list supports the alignments left and justified text only. Right aligned or centred text produce unpredictable output. A list must be finished with the tag \EL#.

The default distance between the list character and the text is 10 units.

\EL#

This is an end of list marker, it requires a preceding create list tag, see above. The tag turns off the current list so that the following text can be printed in the usual way.

### Special characters

The following list defines which characters can be used to insert new lines, tabulators and so on.

Character code (Hex)	Description
0x10 or 0x13 or 0x13 + 0x10	New line or end-of-line character code. The combination of a carriage return plus a line feed will be treaded as single end-of-line character.
0x09	A tabulator is emulated by inserting a variable count of space characters. The number of characters can be adjusted inside the text with the command tag \TL[ ] or outside with the property <a href="#">SetTabLen()</a> .

The function supports also specific Unicode characters which are used to control the bidirectional algorithm. The bidirectional formatting codes are also supported by all other text functions.

Character code (Hex)	Description
0x202A	<i>LRE</i> Left-to-Right Embedding (treat the following text as embedded left-to-right)
0x202B	<i>RLE</i> Right-to-Left Embedding (treat the following text as embedded right-to-left)
0x202C	<i>PDF</i> Pop Directional Format (restore the bidirectional state to what it was before the last LRE, RLE, LRO or RLO)
0x202D	<i>LRO</i> Left-to-Right Override (force the following characters to be treated as strong left-to-right characters)
0x202E	<i>RLO</i> Right-to-Left Override (force the following characters to be treated as strong right-to-left characters)
0x200E	<i>LRM</i> Left-to-Right Mark (left-to-right zero-width character)
0x200F	<i>RLM</i> Right-to-Left Mark (right-to-left zero-width character)

Character code (Hex)	Description
0x200C	Zero width non-joiner
0x200D	Zero width joiner

The bidirectional code pages 1255 and 1256 support the character codes 0x200E and 0x200F only (the mapped codes are 253 and 254).

Note that the Unicode character codes are supported by the Unicode version of the function only.

### ***Escape Sequences***

In situations where an alignment or command tag should be output as plain text it is possible to precede the tag with an additional backslash. This marks the string as plain text and the function does not interpret the string as a command or alignment tag. The first backslash is treated as escape character and will be removed.

#### **Example:**

```

\\          = \\
\\ce#       = \ce#
\\le#       = \le#
\\LI [...] = \\LI [...] // No valid tag -> always processed as text
\\LI[...]   = \LI[...]

```

The function compares the first four characters of command tags which accept parameters. If the sequence matches a command tag an additional backslash is required if the string should be output as text.

It is also possible to fully disable alignment and command tags with the flag `taPlainText` that can be passed to the parameter *Align*. Combine the flag with the wished alignment constant with a binary or operator, e.g. `(TTextAlign)(taRight | taPlainText)`. This can be useful when it is known that the incoming text cannot contain valid alignment or command tags. Line breaks and so on are still processed as usual but all kinds of alignment and command tags will be interpreted as plain text.

### ***How to create multi-column text?***

`WriteFText()` supports a callback function which can be used to create various formattings. The callback function is required to print text into multiple columns.

The Visual Basic and VB .Net interfaces use events instead of callback functions. However, the usage is identical but the event must be manually connected with the function [ConnectPageBreakEvent\(\)](#) so that the event can be raised.

A good example to demonstrate the usage of the callback function is the output of multi-column text. In the following example we have a text file that contains the text that should be printed. The text that we use in this example is not of interest, it must only be large enough so that `WriteFText()` generates an `OnPageBreak` event. Note that it is also possible to create this event manually with the command tag `\np#`.

**Example (C++):**

First, we define a structure which contains all variables we need to calculate the output rectangle. we pass this structure to the `SetOnPageBreakProc()` function so that we don't need any global data.

```
struct TOutRect
{
    void*   iPDF;           // Active PDF instance
    double  PosX;           // X-coordinate of first output rectangle
    double  PosY;           // Y-coordinate of first output rectangle
    double  Width;          // Original width of the output rectangle
    double  Height;         // Original height of the output rectangle
    double  Distance;       // Space between columns
    SI32    Column;         // Current column
    SI32    ColCount;       // Number of columns
};

// This is our callback function
SI32 PDF_CALL OnPageBreakProc(const void* Data, double LastPosX, double
LastPosY, SI32 PageBreak)
{
    TOutRect* r = (TOutRect*)Data; // get a pointer to our structure
    pdfSetPageCoords(r->iPDF, pcTopDown); // we use top-down coordinates
    if (!PageBreak && r->Column < r->ColCount - 1)
    {
        ++r->Column;
        // Calculate the x-coordinate of the column
        double posX = r->PosX + r->Column * (r->Width + r->Distance);
        // change the output rectangle, do not close the page!
        pdfSetTextRect(r->iPDF, posX, r->PosY, r->Width, r->Height);
        switch(r->Column)
        {
            case 1: return NEW_ALIGN_JUSTIFY;
            case 2: return NEW_ALIGN_RIGHT;
            default: return 0; // do not change the alignment
        }
    }
    else
    {
        // the page is full, close the current one and append a new page
        pdfEndPage(r->iPDF);
        pdfAppend(r->iPDF);
        pdfSetTextRect(r->iPDF, r->PosX, r->PosY, r->Width, r->Height);
        r->Column = 0;
        return NEW_ALIGN_LEFT;
    }
}
```

```
// First we declare an error callback function.
SI32 PDF_CALL PDFError(const void* Data, SI32 ErrCode, const char*
ErrMsg, SI32 ErrType)
{
    printf("%s\n", ErrMsg); return 0;
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    // The structure TOutRect holds all required variables to calculate
    // the output rectangle.
    TOutRect r;

    // The text is stored in a text file
    FILE* f = fopen("c:/sample.txt", "rb");
    if (f == NULL) return 2;

    char* fText;
    UI32 bufSize;
    fseek(f, 0, SEEK_END);
    bufSize = ftell(f);
    fseek(f, 0, SEEK_SET);

    // allocate one more character for the null-terminator
    fText = (char*)malloc(bufSize + 1);
    fread(fText, 1, bufSize, f);
    fclose(f);
    fText[bufSize] = 0;    // Do NOT forget to add a null-terminator!!!

    r.iPDF = pdfNewPDF(); // Get a new PDF instance

    if (!r.iPDF)          // Out of memory?
    {
        free(fText);
        return 2;
    }
    pdfSetOnErrorProc(r.iPDF, NULL, (void*)PDFError);
    pdfSetDocInfo(r.iPDF, diCreator, "C++ test app");
    pdfSetDocInfo(r.iPDF, diSubject, "Multi-column text");
    pdfSetDocInfo(r.iPDF, diTitle, " Multi-column text ");

    // We use top-down coordinates
    pdfSetPageCoords(r.iPDF, pcTopDown);
    pdfCreateNewPDFA(r.iPDF, "c:/cppout.pdf");
    pdfAppend(r.iPDF);
    pdfSetFont(r.iPDF, "Arial", fsNone, 8.0, true, cp1252);
    r.ColCount = 3;
    r.Column    = 0;
    r.Distance  = 5.0;
    r.PosX      = 50.0;
```

```

r.PosY      = 50.0;
r.Height    = 150.0;
r.Width     = (pdfGetPageWidth(r.iPDF) - 100.0 -
               (r.ColCount - 1) * r.Distance) / r.ColCount;
// The structure is passed to the callback function now
pdfSetOnPageBreakProc(r.iPDF, &r, (void*)OnPageBreakProc);
// Set the output rectangle first
pdfSetTextRect(r.iPDF, r.PosX, r.PosY, r.Width, r.Height);
pdfWriteFText(r.iPDF, taLeft, fText); // Now we can print the text

free(fText); // free the text buffer

pdfEndPage(r.iPDF); // Close the last page
pdfCloseFile(r.iPDF); // Close the file
pdfDeletePDF(r.iPDF); // Delete the PDF instance
}

```

The output of the previous example could look like this:

#### Bruder Lustig

Es war einmal ein großer Krieg, und als der Krieg zu Ende war, bekamen viele Soldaten ihren Abschied. Nun bekam der Bruder Lustig auch seinen Abschied und sonst nichts als ein kleines Laibchen Kommißbrot und vier Kreuzer an Geld; damit zog er fort. Der heilige Petrus aber

hatte sich als ein armer Bettler an den Weg gesetzt, und wie der Bruder Lustig daherkam, bat er ihn um ein Almosen. Er antwortete: "Lieber Bettelmann, was soll ich dir geben? Ich bin Soldat gewesen und habe meinen Abschied bekommen, und habe sonst nichts als das kleine Kommißbrot und vier Kreuzer Geld, wenn das all ist, muß ich betteln, so gut wie du.

Doch geben will ich dir was." Darauf teilte er den Laib in vier Teile und gab davon dem Apostel einen und auch einen Kreuzer. Der heilige Petrus bedankte sich und ging weiter, setzte sich aber zum dritten Mal in einer andern Gestalt als ein Bettler an den Weg und sprach den Bruder Lustig an.

As you can see, the first column is left aligned, the second is justified and the third is right aligned. By using manual page breaks it is possible to get full control over the formatting algorithm.

The parameter *PageBreak* of the callback is set to true if a page break tag was found, otherwise it is always false. Because of this, it is possible to distinguish between a manual page break and a page break that occurred due to a filled rectangle.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## WriteFTextEx

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfWriteFTextEx(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of output rectangle
    double Width,     // Width of output rectangle
    double Height,    // Height of output rectangle or -1
    TTextAlign Align, // Base alignment
    const char* AText) // Null-terminated string to be printed
```

The function prints a formatted text exactly in the same way as [WriteFText\(\)](#). However, the function contains already the parameters to set the output rectangle. The function supports a callback function to enable the output of multi-column text in the same way as [WriteFText\(\)](#). However, if no callback function is set, the text continues on the next page by using the same output rectangle.

To avoid a page break set the parameter *Height* to **-1**. Manual page breaks which can be created with the command tag `\np#` are still executed. See [WriteFText\(\)](#) for further information.

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

#### Return values:

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## WriteText

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfWriteText(
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of the text
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of the text
    const char* AText) // Null-terminated string to be printed
```

The function prints a text on the current open page, template, or pattern. The point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the baseline of the text if the coordinate system is bottom-up, otherwise the top-left corner of the text's bounding box. The font origin can be changed with the function [SetFontOrigin\(\)](#).

The function requires a font that must be set with the function [SetFont\(\)](#) beforehand.

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. If non-null-terminated strings must be printed use [WriteTextEx\(\)](#) instead.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***WriteTextEx***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfWriteTextEx(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    double PosX,      // X-Coordinate of the text  
    double PosY,      // Y-Coordinate of the text  
    const char* AText, // Text to be printed  
    UI32 Len)         // Text length in characters
```

The function prints a text on the current open page, template, or pattern. The point *PosX*, *PosY* defines the baseline of the text if the coordinate system is bottom-up, otherwise the top-left corner of the text's bounding box. The font origin can be changed with the function [SetFontOrigin\(\)](#).

The function requires a font that must be set with the function [SetFont\(\)](#) beforehand.

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

## ***WriteTextMatrix***

Syntax:

```
SI32 pdfWriteTextMatrix(  
    const void* IPDF, // Instance pointer  
    struct TCTM* M,    // Transformation matrix  
    const char* AText) // Null-terminated string to be printed
```

The function prints a text on the current open page, template, or pattern by using a transformation matrix to calculate the position of the string. This function can be used in combination with [GetPageText\(\)](#) to print a text on the same position as the original text that was found. The usage of the function is described at [GetPageText\(\)](#).

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version. If non-null-terminated strings must be printed use [WriteTextMatrixEx\(\)](#) instead.



**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.

***WriteTextMatrixEx***

Syntax:

```
LBOOL pdfWriteTextMatrixEx(  
    const void* IPDF,    // Instance pointer  
    struct TCTM* M,      // Transformation matrix  
    const char* AText,    // Text to be printed  
    UI32 Len)            // Text length in characters
```

The function prints a text on the current open page, template, or pattern by using a transformation matrix to calculate the position of the string. This function can be used in combination with [GetPageText\(\)](#) to print a text on the same position as the original text that was found. The usage of the function is described at [GetPageText\(\)](#).

**Remarks:**

This function is implemented in an ANSI and Unicode compatible version.

**Return values:**

If the function succeeds the return value is 1. If the function fails the return value is 0.